

REFERENCE BOOK

HOW TO LEARN RUSSIAN.

REFERENCE BOOK

A MANUAL

FOR

STUDENTS OF RUSSIAN.

Based upon the Ollendorffian System of Teaching Languages,  
and Adapted for Self-Instruction.

BY

HENRY RIOLA;

TEACHER OF THE RUSSIAN LANGUAGE.

WITH A PREFACE

BY

W. R. S. RALSTON, M.A.

London :

TRÜBNER & CO., LUDGATE HILL.

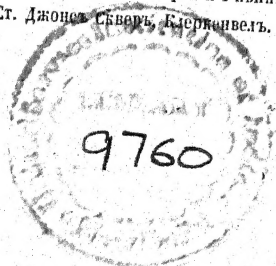
1878.

[All rights reserved.]

9760

R 507

Лондонъ :  
Печатано въ типографіи Гилберта и Ривингтона,  
52, Ст. Джонс Сквайръ, Есертонвелъ.





## P R E F A C E

BY

W. R. S. RALSTON, ESQ., M.A.

---

HITHERTO students of Russian who attempted to learn the language without the help of a teacher have been met by a grave initial difficulty — the want of a good Grammar. As a general rule they availed themselves of Reiff's "English-Russian Grammar," but it left much to be desired. There existed, it is true, in French and German, Grammars on the Ollendorff System, but in English there was little aid to be obtained beyond what Reiff could give. In order to meet the demand caused by the growing interest in the Russian language—a language which has been neglected in a manner for which it is difficult to account, but to which political circumstances have lately given a novel importance—Mr. Trübner has caused the present work to be prepared, and he has asked me to supply it with a few lines of Preface, which I do willingly.

I am far from thinking Ollendorff's System the best possible, but in the present instance there was not much choice. For Mr. Riola's present work, which is based upon that system, there will doubtless be a demand,

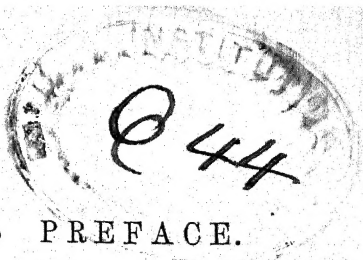
there being numbers of students who wish to gain some acquaintance with Russian, but who are unable, if living in the country, to find a master. To them the present work will be practically useful, whereas a scientific Grammar, such as would satisfy a linguist, would be of little value to the general public, and would command little or no sale.

I can vouch, from personal knowledge, for the fact that Mr. Riola has performed his work most conscientiously, having taken very great pains to elucidate what in previous works on the subject was left obscure, and having, I think, succeeded in rendering comparatively easy what has generally been considered a difficult task. I shall be glad indeed if I find it serves the purpose of aiding those readers who take an intelligent interest in a language spoken by forty millions of people, a language rich, sonorous and lucid, and which is the key to a vigorous young literature, destined, I am sure, to make its voice widely heard. The greater the number in England of Students of Russian, the more Englishmen will there be free from the extraordinary ignorance about all things Russian which now makes itself so widely felt.

W. R. S. RALSTON.

8, ALFRED PLACE,

*April 25, 1878.*



## AUTHOR'S PREFACE.

---

THE almost total neglect that the Russian Language has hitherto met with in this country is capable of two explanations, one of which may be said to include the other, namely, its supposed insurmountable difficulties and the want of a good Grammar. On the first point, suffice it to say that there is nothing—absolutely nothing—which should deter the student. The prominent features of the language are clearness and methodical arrangement. If the contrary have been found to be the case, it is owing to no other causes than the defective methods and the insufficient or faulty explanations presented by the Grammars hitherto published both in this country and on the Continent.

Now the fact is well worthy of notice that while, on the one hand, English authors in every department of History, Fiction and Poetry are known and appreciated throughout the length and breadth of the Russian Empire; on the other hand, save to a select few, the bulk of a new, vigorous and original literature, comprising invaluable geographical, ethnological and linguistical treasures, the product of Slavonic life, thought and culture as developed in Russia, has imparted nothing to the educated classes of England beyond a few paltry translations and a few names. What reasons are we to assign for this failure of reciprocity? We have not far to seek. The student of Russian, however diligent, is confronted at the outset by a paucity of Grammars. But not only is his choice thus limited, but even should he select

Reiff's, as the one best known, he will search through its pages in vain for the solution of the difficulties he may encounter in his course of reading. If to this we add, as is too often the case, a teacher unable to enlighten him, what wonder that, in the face of ever new and recurring obstacles and discouragements, he should relinquish altogether the study, under the despairing conviction that the chief phenomena of the language are beyond the reach of comprehension and illustration?

I confidently repeat, however, that this is far from being the case, and that Russian is easy of acquirement by dint of average diligence and perseverance. It now remains for me to state briefly in what respects I have opened new paths, or made old ones less rugged, for the attainment of this object.

The experience of a course of tuition of this my native language during several years in London has convinced me that Ollendorff's Method, qualified by some necessary modifications, is the one most suitable for all classes of learners. On its merits it is not for me to expatiate here: they have stood the test of time; and leaving this point for the present, I proceed to indicate the special features which, I trust, render this work far superior to those published in France or Germany.

To begin with Pronunciation, I have devoted a minute and exhaustive treatise, supplemented with tables of reference, to the powers of the Alphabet, both proper and accidental. One observation, however, is here necessary. Some Grammarians have sought to represent the ambiguous distinctions of unaccented vowels by numerical indications. To make my meaning clear, the reader must know that Russian is similar to English in this respect. For instance,

in "admirable," the vowel-sounds of the three last syllables are somewhat equivocal, although Walker attempted to assign a fixity to each in this and in all other examples. Again, take *a* in "Indian." Is not its proper sound purely conventional? Now it must be understood that Russian polysyllables are open to analogous observations. Nevertheless, I have considered it my duty to refrain from laying down rules thereon, feeling convinced that all such attempts must prove not only burdensome to the memory, but utterly illusory and abortive. These niceties, the result doubtless of rapidity of colloquial utterance, are influenced, be it remembered, by nature, education, caprice, and a variety of other causes, and defy classification. Under the guidance of a native, they are readily apprehended and retained; and I will add, for the benefit of the self-instructor, that if he thoroughly possess the distinct vowels, both proper and accidental, he may safely let the unaccented ones shift for themselves, and rest assured that his pronunciation will be perfectly intelligible to the ear of any Russian.

In treating of Orthography, I have considered a knowledge of words in which the letter **Ѣ** occurs so indispensable, that I have subjoined a complete list of them, the more so that this letter is a stumbling-block even to many natives.

I cannot too strongly recommend the mastery of inflexions and terminations, inasmuch as they constitute, so to speak, the be-all and end-all of this great Slavonic idiom. This step once passed over, the storing up of roots in the memory becomes an easy and profitable task, and the rules of construction can be digested at leisure. And this object I have constantly borne in mind in the framing of the exercises. I have purposely grouped the most difficult



combinations, in order to bring the learner face to face with this paramount requisite, and that too at the risk of trifling inelegancies and incongruities, especially in the early themes. It is chiefly in this department that the value of Ollendorff's Method becomes apparent. The mere learning of rules, or of any other grammatical exposition, will never impart the faculty of readiness and resource in using the inflexions of a living language, unless a progressive praxis of combination and inversion be superadded. This, however, cannot be afforded by dealing with each part of speech in separate detail, but by a judicious intermixture of all, at the very outset, and thus passing gradually from the simplest to the most complex forms of discourse. That examples, however varied, are valueless without rule or guiding principle, is also true; and on this head I trust that I leave nothing to be desired in point of conciseness and intelligibility. At the same time, throughout the Exercises, I have strenuously and, I hope, successfully aimed at variety of topic and illustration, to the end that the learner who has worked at this branch may find himself in possession, not only of a *copia verborum*, but of a *copia fundi* on subjects of common life, such as he may search for in vain in Manuals of Dialogues and Vocabularies. Exception might possibly be taken by some persons to the frequency of interrogative sentences with *ан*; but it cannot be known too soon that herein lies a cardinal point of conception in the Russian mind, affecting especially the construction of interrogative clauses; and unless this point be fully seized by the Englishman, he will fall into grievous blunders in the framing of questions.

My exposition of the Verb is founded on that of the Russian Grammarians most in repute. Some foreign ones

have presumably aimed at journeying by easy stages, by means of minute subdivisions of what they are pleased to misname classes and branches. All such methods are erroneous, and lead to inevitable confusion. The simple and easily retained distinctions are those on which my countrymen have settled, namely, two conjugations, and these subdivided into ten classes, eight of which belong to the first and two to the second conjugation. Besides this, each verb is susceptible of three *branches*—the present, past, and iterative. Thus the verb is the stem from which the branches spring. To these we add only thirteen irregular verbs. All the regular ones I have not failed to illustrate by complete tables of reference.

But inasmuch as the Russian verb possesses Aspects, by whose agency it becomes such a supple instrument of thought as to be unrivalled even by the Greek verb, I felt it my duty to enter into great detail on this point, and I trust that the lessons given on this subject leave nothing to be desired by way of explanation. At the same time, I conceived that I should fail in presenting a full picture of moods and aspects had I stopped there. I have therefore given in the Appendix paradigms of conjugation in all voices, and, by parallel contrasts of aspects, it will be seen at a glance in what particular tense each one is found or wanting. Any mere statement by itself would have afforded less valuable assistance.

The declensions, with copious tables, are given in the Practical Part, according to gender, as being most suited to the requirements of a beginner. In the Appendix, however, for those already initiated, Nouns are divided into two classes, according to the inflexions of the genitive, as laid down by Russian Grammarians.

A list of Adverbs and Prepositions, with their govern-

ment, are to be found, with copious illustrations, and leave, I hope, nothing unnoticed in this vital part of Syntax.

Idiomatic forms, a constant source of embarrassment, are fully grappled with and lucidly explained throughout the work. I would point especially to those of *было* and *бывало*, which, although of frequent recurrence both in writing and speaking, have hitherto failed in securing their due share of attention.

On the Order of Words no less than two lessons are given, with much detail and appropriate exercises and examples. It seemed to me that a subject so important, embracing as it does the arrangement and structure of periods, and presenting wide divergences from the genius of the English language, was deserving of nothing short of a separate and somewhat lengthy treatise.

It were perhaps tedious to enumerate the other features of this work; they can be easily discovered by a fair and intelligent comparison with any of its predecessors. I will only state, in addition, that I have steadily kept in view the object of self-tuition, and have constantly endeavoured to afford every assistance in cases where oral teaching might be either unattainable or insufficient.

After all, it must be borne in mind that the merits or the shortcomings of an undertaking like the present are unaffected by the praise or censure of critics alone, however discerning. Their true test and arbiter is time, upon whose verdict I confidently rely. I trust, too, that my humble labours may prove of some assistance in promoting the interchange of enlightenment between two great nations, on whose mutual esteem and friendship so much depends the welfare of the world.

HENRY RIOLA.

31, CHARING CROSS, S.W.

*April 2, 1878.*

# CONTENTS.

	Page.		Page.
INTRODUCTION . . . . .	iii	Future Tense . . . . .	324
PREFACE . . . . .	v	Imperative Mood . . . . .	330
Alphabet . . . . .	4	Reflective Verbs. . . . .	353
Pronunciation . . . . .	9	Impersonal Verbs . . . . .	361
PRACTICAL PART, IN 66 LESSONS :		Aspects. . . . .	374
Masculine Nouns . . . . .	30	Double Verbs . . . . .	382
Neuter Nouns . . . . .	127	Formation of the Iterative	
Feminine Nouns . . . . .	155	Aspect . . . . .	389
Augmentative and Diminu-		Verbs of Perfect Aspect . . . . .	398
tive Nouns. . . . .	184	Perfect Simple Verbs . . . . .	404
Names of Natives . . . . .	203	Prefixes . . . . .	415
Possessive Adjectives . . . . .	222	Compound Verbs . . . . .	420
Infinitive Mood, First Con-		Inchoative Aspect . . . . .	421
jugation . . . . .	238	Irregular Verbs. . . . .	439
Ditto, Second Conjugation . . . . .	257	Verbs of Irregular Forma-	
Degrees of Comparison . . . . .	259	tion . . . . .	444
Formation of Indeclinable		Government . . . . .	450
Comparatives. . . . .	265	Prepositions . . . . .	459
Augmentative and Diminu-		Indirect Government . . . . .	480
tive Adjectives . . . . .	273	Position of Words . . . . .	486
Relative Adjectives . . . . .	281	APPENDIX. . . . .	499
Active Participle . . . . .	293	Etymology . . . . .	499
Passive Participle . . . . .	300	Syntax . . . . .	544
Gerund. . . . .	307	Orthography . . . . .	547
Potential and Subjunctive . . . . .	315	Tonic Accent. . . . .	557
Branches of the Verb . . . . .	322	INDEX . . . . .	562

## TABLES.

	Page.		Page.
Masculine Nouns . . . . .	31, 76	Irregular Verbs . . . . .	440
Neuter Nouns . . . . .	127, 137	Verbs of Irregular For-	
Feminine Nouns . . . . .	157, 170	mation . . . . .	444
Possessive Adjectives . . . . .	223	Declension, according to	
Branches of the Verb . . . . .	323	Genitive . . . . .	505
Regular Verbs . . . . .	406		

## RUSSIAN ALPHABET.

Printed Characters.		Name.	Proper Sound.	Corresponding Sound in English.	Accidental Sound.
1	А а	ah	like a in	father, art,	e, o
2	Б б	bay	.. b ..	book, nob,	p
3	В в	vay	.. v ..	vest, love,	f
4	Г г	gay	.. g ..	go, big,	v, h, k, kh
5	Д д	day	.. d ..	do, did,	t
6	Е е	yay	.. ye, e ..	yes, or e in met	yo, o
7	Ж ж	zhay	z (zh) } .. or s }	azure, pleasure,	sh
8	З з	zay	.. z in	zeal, brazen,	s
9	И и	ê	.. e ..	me, be,	yê
10	І і	ê	.. ê ..	ditto,	
11	К к	kah	.. k ..	key, baker,	g, kh
12	Л л	el	.. l ..	land, all,	
13	М м	em	.. m ..	me, prim,	
14	Н н	en	.. n ..	no, den,	
15	О о	o	.. o ..	on, stock,	a
16	П п	pay	.. p ..	part, stop,	
17	Р р	airr	.. r ..	road, barren,	
18	С с	es	.. s, ss ..	seat, pass,	z
19	Т т	tay	.. t ..	top, spot,	d
20	У у	oo	.. oo ..	ooze, moon,	



RUSSIAN ALPHABET (*Continued*).

Printed Characters.	Name.	Proper Sound.	Corresponding Sound in English.	Accidental Sound.
21	Ф ф	eff	like f in	sh
22	Х х	khah	Ger. (kh)	
23	Ц ц	tsay	.. ts, tz	
24	Ч ч	chay	.. ch in	
25	Ш ш	shah	.. sh ..	
26	Щ щ	shchah	..shch ..	sh
27	Ъ ъ	year	..e mute	wê
28	Ы ы	yearee	.. y in	
29	Ь ь	yeari	e mute (i)	
30	Ѣ ѣ	yahti	like ye, e	yô, ê
31	Э э	eh	.. e in	
32	Ю ю	you	.. u ..	
33	Я я	yah	.. ya ..	
34	Ө ө	pheetah	.. f, ph ..	
35	В в	êzhitsah	.. ê ..	
36	Ѧ ѧ	ê short	.. ymute	

(hard semivowel: has no sound by itself: serves to show that the consonant preceding it must be pronounced *hard*.)

(soft semivowel: has no sound by itself, and serves to show that the consonant preceding it must be pronounced *soft*.)

In order to help the learner, this Table of English Letters representing Russian sounds is given, in accordance with the subsequent rules of Pronunciation. (See note, page 9.)

## VOWELS.

English.	Russian.	As in	English.	Russian.	As in
a	а	far	u	ю	use, tube
e	е, ё	met	y	й	may
е	э	end	y	ы	pity
ê	и, i	me	ya	я	yard
i	ь	soft semiv.	ye	е, ё	yes
o	о	on	yê	и after i or ь	
oo	y	moon	yo	ё	yoke

## CONSONANTS.

English.	Russian.	As in	English.	Russian.	As in
b	б	be	p	п	part
ch	ч	church	r	р	rot
d	д	do	s	с	seat
f, ph	ф, 0	far, phrase	sh	ш	she
g	г	go	shch	щ	—
k	к	key	t	т	top
kh	х	German ch	ts	ц	howitzer
l	л	land	v	в	vest
m	м	me	z	з	zeal
n	н	no	zh	ж	azure

# Russian Written Alphabet

А, а	М, м.	Ш, ш.
Б, б.	Н, н.	Щ, щ.
В, в.	О, о	Ъ, ъ.
Г, г.	П, п.	Ы, ы
Д, д.	Р, р.	Э, э.
Е, е.	С, с.	Ю, ю.
Ж, ж.	Т, т.	Я, я.
З, з.	У, у.	О, о
И, и.	Ф, ф.	У, у
Л, л.	Х, х.	У, у
К, к.	Ц, ц.	У, у
М, м.	Ч, ч.	У, у

Русская Словесность, бывшая  
долгое время подражательною,  
со времени Пушкина и  
Гоголя становится вполне  
национальною и самобытною.

# ERRATA.

---

Page	Line	For	Read
20	18	ko-moo	ka-moo.
28	1	Vowels	Letters.
36	13	Obs.	Obs. 5.
38	16	man	a man.
42	1	четвёртый	четвёртый.
49	4	Obs.	Obs. 13.
61	25	Obs.	Obs. 4.
81	18	as	has.
147	5	Obs. 4	Obs. 5.
200	24	a miserable	miserable.
285	15	all others	any other.

## DIVISION OF THE LETTERS OF THE RUSSIAN ALPHABET.

THERE are in the Russian Alphabet thirty-six letters, of which twelve are vowels, twenty-one are consonants, and three are semivowels.

The vowels (гласныя буквы) are :

а, е, и, і, о, у, ы, ѣ, э, ю, я, v.

It may be well to note that the following five, е, ѣ, я, ю, и are also called diphthongs (дугласныя).

The twenty-one consonants (согласныя буквы) are :

б, в, г, д, ж, з, к, л, м, н, п, р, с, т, ф, х, ц, ч, ш, щ, ѳ.

The three semivowels (полугласныя буквы) are :

ъ, ь, й.

The English Alphabet has no letters corresponding to the following in the Russian Alphabet :

ы, ѣ, я, ь, ѣ, й, ц, ч, ш, щ, ѳ, v.

The Russian Alphabet, on the other hand, has not the English j, w, x, the h mute, or the sounds of *th* as in the English words *that* and *thin*.

## PRONUNCIATION OF THE LETTERS.

NOTE.—Each syllable in English words, representing the Russian pronunciation, should be pronounced as is directed in Table No. II. ; and until the student is thoroughly sure of the correct sound of every Russian letter, he should always consult that table. By following closely the sounds as they are given he will be able, without the assistance of a teacher, to pronounce so as to be understood even by uneducated Russians.



## A. THE VOWELS (ГЛАСНЫЯ БУКВЫ).

## A, a.

*Proper Sounds.*

This vowel, when accented, is pronounced :

1. as the *a* in the following English words : *art, far, star* ; as, for example,

даръ, *dar*, 'the gift ;' дала, *da-la*, 'gave.'

2. When not accented is pronounced in the same way, but somewhat weaker, and approaching the sound of *a* in the English word *fat* ; as,

наша, *na-sha*, 'our ;' пара, *para*, 'the pair.'

*Accidental Sounds.*

1. When not accented in the middle of a word, after the hissing consonants, ж, ч, ш, щ, the vowel *a* is pronounced as the *e* in the words *met, bet* :

кожа, *kozhe*, 'the skin ;' часы, *che-sy*, 'the watch.'

лошадь, *loshedí*, 'a horse ;' пища, *pësh-cha*, 'the food.'

2. When accented in the termination *aro* of the genitive case of adjectives, the vowel *a* is pronounced like the *o* in the words *no, blow* :

дурнаго, *door-no-ra*, 'of bad ;'

глупаго, *ne-mo-ra*, 'of dumb.'

It should be observed that at the end of words the vowel *a*, whether accented or not, always retains its proper sound of *a*, as in *far* or *fat*.

## E, e.

*Proper Sounds.*

This soft vowel after a consonant has—

1. The sound of *e*, as in the words *met, bet* :

берегъ, *be-reg*, 'the shore ;'

чело, *che-lo*, 'the brow.'

NOTE.—In the above examples of *met* and *bet* the sound of Russian *e* is well represented ; but after some other consonants an Englishman is apt to pronounce the *e* much harder than is required. It must therefore be born in mind that the *e* should always be heard soft, as if the consonant were followed by the English *yea* ; thus *нетъ*, *детъ*, *летъ*, *тетъ* should not be pronounced as the English *net*, *det*, *let*, *tet*, but as if they were written with *yea*, as *neyat*, *dyeat*, *lyeat*, *tyeat*, etc.

2. At the beginning of words and after vowels it has the sound of diphthong *ye*, as in the words *yes*, *yellow* :

*если*, *yes-lē*, 'if ;' *ему*, *ye-moo*, 'to him.'

*Accidental Sounds.*

- I. The diphthong *e* (*ye*) is pronounced also like *yo* (*ë*) :

1. When accented, as in the words *yonder*, *yoke* :

*ёлка*, *yo-l-ka*, 'the fir ;'

*моё*, *ma-yo*, 'mine.'

2. In the accented terminations *еуѣ*, *емѣ*, *емѣ*, *еме* of the present tense of verbs :

*даёшь*, *da-yosh*, 'thou givest ;'

*берѣтъ*, *be-ryot*, 'he takes.'

- II. After the consonants *ж*, *ч*, *ш*, *щ*, *п*, the vowel *e* has the sounds of *o* in the following cases :

1. At the end of words :

*лицѣ*, *lē-tso*, 'the face.'

2. When coming before a consonant, which is followed by one of the hard vowels *a*, *o*, *y*, *vi*, or *ѣ* :

*счѣтъ*, *s-chot*, 'the account.'

- III. It sounds like *yo* or *o* in the accented termination *ёю* or *ёу* of the instrumental case of feminine nouns :

*землёю*, *zem-lyo-u*, 'with the land ;'

*душёю*, *doo-sho-u*, 'by the soul ;'

and, when accented, before the gutturals *г, к, х* and the hissing letters *ж* and *ш* :

ѣ—далѣкъ, *da-lyok*, 'distant;'

о—жѣръ, *zhog*, 'burnt.'

Obs.—Many writers place a diæresis (¨) over the letter *ѣ* when it is to be pronounced as *yo* or *o*. In order therefore to facilitate the pronunciation of this letter, whenever in this work the letter *e* is pronounced as *yo* or *o*, a diæresis (¨) will be placed over it, and in such case it will be used instead of the tonic accent.

## И, и.

### *Proper Sound.*

When by itself, either at the end of a word or when it follows a consonant, this vowel is pronounced as the English *é* in the words *me, be* (*mé, bē*) :

Ивѣнъ, *é-ven*, 'John;'

иди́, *é-dé*, 'go.'

### *Accidental Sound.*

After the semivowel *ѣ*, or after *і* (dotted), the vowel *и* has the sound of the diphthong *yé* :

статѣи, *stati-yé*, 'the articles;'

Марѣи, *maré-yé*, 'of Mary.'

## І, і.

This vowel has the same sound as the preceding letter *и*, but it must always be followed by another vowel :

ли́нїа, *lě-ně-ya*, 'the line;'

мнѣ́нїе, *mne-ně-ye*, 'the opinion.'

Obs.—The only instance in which this letter is found standing before a consonant is in the word миръ, *měr*, 'the world;'; in order to distinguish it from the similar word, миръ, *mér*, 'the peace.'

## O, o.

*Proper Sound.*

This vowel when accented has the sound of o, as in the words *on, pot* :

ДОМЪ, *dom*, 'a house ;'  
ЗАКОНЪ, *za-kon*, 'the law.'

*Accidental Sound.*

When unaccented it is pronounced like a short in *fat* :

ОБМАНЪ, *ab-man*, 'the deception ;'  
ОСНОВАТЬ, *as-na-rati*, 'to found.'

## Y, y.

The corresponding sound of this vowel in English is *oo*, as in *moon, book* :

УТРО, *oot-ra*, 'the morning ;'  
ДУБЪ, *doob*, 'the oak.'

## Ы. ы.

*Proper Sounds.*

This hard vowel, the Russian hard *u* or the English *e* hard, has a sound, the perfect idea of which cannot be rendered in English words, as the language does not possess so hard a sound as the vowel *ы*. The *y* in the words *pity, charity*, or *ea* in *tea*, approximately represent it. An Englishman, after hearing this vowel pronounced by a Russian, can easily catch it :

ТЫ, *ty*, or *tea*, 'thou ;'  
ДЫРЬ, *dyr*, or *dear*, 'of holes.'

*Accidental Sound.*

The vowel *ы* after the labial consonants sounds nearly like *we* :

ВЫ, *weé*, 'you ;'  
БЫЛЪ, *bwel*, 'was ;'  
РЫЛЪ, *rwel*, 'dug.'

NOTE.—The hard vowel *u* will be represented in English by the letter *y*.

## Ѣ, Ѥ.

### *Proper Sounds.*

This soft vowel has the same sound as the Russian *e*, or English *e* as in *met*, or *ye* as in *yes*, with the exception that it is never pronounced as *o*.

ОBS.—The same can be said of *ѣ* as of *e*; i.e. нѣтъ, дѣтъ, лѣтъ, etc. must be pronounced not as *net*, *det*, *let*, etc., but as if they were written *nyeat*, *dyeat*, *lyeat*, etc.

### *Accidental Sound.*

As *yo*, when accented, it is heard only in the following words:

звѣзды, *zvyoz-dy*, 'stars';  
гнѣзда, *gnyz-da*, 'nests';  
обрѣлъ, *ab-ryol*, 'he found';  
цвѣлъ, *tsvyol*, 'he flourished';  
сѣдла, *syod-la*, 'the saddles.'

And also in their derivatives and compounds, as:

звѣздочка, *zvyoz-doch-ka*, 'little star';  
приобрѣлъ, *prî-ob-ryol*, 'acquired.'

## Ә, ә.

This vowel has the same sound as the *e* in the word *end*, and it is never pronounced as the diphthong *ye*. At the beginning of words and after vowels, therefore, whenever the diphthong sound of *ye* is not wanted, the vowel *ә* must be used.

The following Russian words only are written with *ә*:

это́тъ, э́та, э́то, 'this';  
э́такій, э́дакій, 'such,' 'such like';  
э́такъ, 'so,' 'thus';  
э́кій, э́къ, 'what (a man).'



OBS.—There are some other words beginning with the letter э, but they are of foreign origin, mostly Greek, and have merely been adopted by the Russian language, as :

эра, *era*, 'era.'

экзаменъ, *ek-za-men*, 'the examination ;'

эшафотъ, *e-sha-fot*, 'the scaffold,' etc.

## Ю, ю.

### *Proper Sound.*

1. At the beginning of words, and after vowels or semi-vowels, the vowel ю has exactly the same sound as the English *u* in the words *use*, or *ew* in the words *pew*, *new*.

югъ, *ug*, *youg*, 'the south ;'

даю, *da-u*, *da-you*, 'I give ;'

пью, *p-u*, *pew*, 'I drink.'

2. After consonants, ю has no longer the sound of the diphthong *u* (*you*), but approaches it, like *u* in the word *tube* :

говорю, *ga-ta-ru*, 'I speak ;'

люблю, *lub-lu*, 'I love.'

OBS.—Particular care should be taken that ю should never be pronounced as the English *u* in *full*, *bull*, etc., but always as in *tube*.

### *Accidental Sound.*

In words 'which' have come from the French language, ю retains the sound of French *u* :

Брюссель, 'Brussels ;'

Дюма, 'Dumas.'

NOTE.—The English *u* represents the Russian ю.

## Я, я.

### *Proper Sound.*

1. At the beginning of words and after vowels and semi-

vowels, this letter when accented has the sound of the diphthong *ya*, as in the word *yard*:

яма, *ya-ma*, 'hole;'

дѣлая, *de-la-ya*, 'doing.'

2. After consonants the vowel *я* is no longer pronounced as diphthong *ya*, but when accented it sounds very much like *ya*:

любі́я, *lu-byá*, 'loving;'

заря́я, *za-ryá*, 'the dawn;'

Obs.—At the end of words the vowel *я*, whether accented or not, retains its proper sound of *ya*: except in the suffix *ся* in reflexive verbs pronounced *sa*.

коро́ля, *ku-ra-lyá*, 'of the king;'

потѣ́ря, *pa-te-ryá*, 'the loss.'

#### *Accidental Sounds.*

1. At the beginning of words, and after vowels or semi-vowels, when unaccented the vowel *я* is pronounced as *ye* in the word *yes*:

яйцо́, *yey-tso*, 'an egg;'

за́яць, *za-yets*, 'the hare;'

та́яль, *ta-yel*, 'melted.'

2. After consonants, and when unaccented, it has the sound of the simple vowel *e*, as in *met*:

па́мять, *pa-met*, 'the memory;'

потѣ́ряно, *pa-te-re-no*, 'lost.'

## V, v.

This vowel never changes its natural sound of *u* (English *é*), and is pronounced as the English *é* in the words *bé*, *mé*.

Obs.—It is used in but very few words, derived from the Greek, as *мѹро*, *внострѹсь*, etc.

## B. THE CONSONANTS (СОГЛАСНЫЯ БУКВЫ).

*Proper Sound.*

THE consonants б, в, д, з have the same sound as the English *b, v, d, z*. All these consonants retain their proper sound before vowels, or when they are followed by a liquid or by any other weak consonant.

*Before vowels.*

БѢДА, *be-da*, 'ill-luck ;'  
 ВІДѢЛЪ, *vě-del*, 'he saw ;'  
 ДАЛЪ, *dal*, 'he gave ;'  
 ЗОВЪ, *zof*, 'the call.'

*Before liquid and weak consonants.*

БЛАГО, *bla-ho*, 'good ;'  
 ВНЕ, *vne*, 'out ;'  
 ДЛЯ, *dlya*, 'for ;'  
 ЗРІТЬ, *zrét*, 'he sees.'

*Accidental Sounds.*

All the above letters at the end of words ending with the hard semivowel ь, or when placed before strong consonants, take the sound of their corresponding letters :

П, Ф, Т, С  
 p, f, t, s

*Before ь at the end of words.*

БОБЪ, *bor*, 'the bean ;'  
 РОВЪ, *rof*, 'the ditch ;'  
 САДЪ, *sat*, 'the garden ;'  
 ВОЗЪ, *vos*, 'the knife.'

*Before hard consonants.*

БАВКА, *báp-ka*, 'the knuckle ;'  
 ЛОДКА, *lót-ka*, 'the boat ;'  
 ЛОВКО, *lof-ko*, 'cleverly ;'  
 СВЯЗКА, *svyas-ka*, 'the bundle.'

## Ж, ж.

As there is no equivalent letter in the English Alphabet for this consonant, *zh* will represent the letter ж.

The proper sound of this consonant is the same as the French *j* in the word *jour*.

The sound of *s* in the English words *treasure*, *pleasure*, of the sound of *z* as in the words *glazier*, *grazier*, represent well the sound of the consonant ж.

*Proper Sound.*

Before a vowel, or before a liquid, or any other weak consonant, the letter ж retains its proper sound :

ЖИТЬ, *zhêl*, 'he lived ;'

ЖМУ, *zhmoo*, 'I press.'

*Accidental Sound.*

At the end of a word ending in т, or ъ, or before a strong consonant, the ж is pronounced like its corresponding letter ш (*sh*), as :

НОЖЪ, *knife*, is pronounced ' *nosh* ;'

НОЖКА, *little foot*, is pronounced ' *noshka*.'

Г, Г.

*Proper Sound.*

1. The sound of this consonant is generally the same as that of the English *g* before *a*, *o*, *r*, as in *game*, *God*, *grass* :

ГОДЪ, *god*, 'the year ;'

ГАДЪ, *gad*, 'the reptile ;'

ГРЪША, *groo-sha*, 'the pear.'

2. Г aspirated is pronounced like the English *h* in *hay*, *habit* :

ГОСПОДИ, *hós-podé*, 'God ;'

БЛАГО, *bla-ha*, 'well.'

Obs.—At one time the Russian language had only the *r* aspirated, as in the words *hay*, *habit* ; but in the language of the present day it is no longer used, except in a few

words, as Господи, бѣго, the former г being replaced by г hard, as the *g* in *God, game, grass*.

*Accidental Sounds.*

1. When the letter г ends a word, or is placed before the consonant ш, it sounds very nearly like к :

кругъ, *krook*, 'the circle ;'  
помогъ, *pa-mok*, 'he helped.'

Obs.—Exceptions to this rule are met with in the words Богъ and убогъ, wherein г is not pronounced as к, but as х (*kħ* or German *ch*) :

Богъ, *bokħ*,—боѣ, 'God ;'  
убогъ, *oo-bokħ*,—оо-боѣ, 'poor.'

2. Before the consonants к and т (*k, t*) г is pronounced as х (*kħ*) as :

легко, *lekh-ko*, 'easily ;'  
ногти, *nokh-tē*, 'the nails.'

3. In foreign words ending in ргъ the sound of х (*kħ*) is heard instead of г, as in

Петербургъ, *pe-ter-boorkħ*, 'St. Petersburg ;'  
Днѣбургъ, *dē-na-boorkħ*, 'Dunaburg.'

4. Г is pronounced as в (*v*) in the terminations аго, яго, оро, еро of the genitive case of Adjectives or Pronouns :

добро, *do-bra-va*, 'of good ;'  
сѣняго, *sē-ny-a-va*, 'of blue ;'  
того, *ta-vo*, 'of that ;'  
моего, *ma-ye-vo*, 'of mine.'

## К, к.

*Proper Sound.*

The sound of this consonant is exactly like the English *c*

hard before the vowels *a, o*, as in the words *can, come*, or the English *k* in the words *key, king*:

КОТЪ, *kot*, 'the cat';

КАКЪ, *kak*, 'how';

КРИКЪ, *krék*, 'the cry.'

### *Accidental Sounds.*

The accidental sounds of *к* are *г* or *х*. When the letter *к* occurs in the preposition *къ* before the feeble consonants *б, д, ж, з*, it has the sound of its corresponding consonant *г*, as:

КЪ БОГЪ, *g' bo-hoo*, 'to God';

КЪ ДОМУ, *g' do-moo*, 'to the house';

КЪ ЖЕНѢ, *g' zhêne*, 'to the wife';

КЪ ЗЕМЛѢ, *g' zêmle*, 'to the earth.'

When before the strong consonants *к, т, ч*, the letter *к* is pronounced like *х* (*kh*, German *ch*), as:

КТО, *khto*, 'who';

КЪ КОМУ, *kh ko-moo*, 'to whom';

КЪ ЧАСУ, *kh cha-soo*, 'to the hour.'

NOTE.—The letter *к* will be represented by the English *k*.

## C, T.

### *Proper Sound.*

These consonants have the same sound as the English letters *s* and *t* in the words *sister, sat, cross, tar, trot*.

СЛОВО, *slo-va*, 'the word';

ИСТОРИЯ, *is-to-rê-ya*, 'history';

ТРАВА, *tra-va*, 'the grass';

ТОТЪ, *tot*, 'that.'

### *Accidental Sounds.*

Before *б, г, д, ж, з*, the letters *c* and *т* take the sound of their corresponding consonants *з* and *д*, as in

сбродъ, *zbrod*, 'the mob ;'  
 сговоръ, *zga-ror*, 'the betrothal ;'  
 сдалъ, *zdal*, 'he gave up ;'  
 сжёгъ, *z-zhog*, 'he burnt ;'  
 сзади, *z-zadé*, 'from behind ;'  
 оддалъ, *od-dal*, 'he gave up.'

Before the hissing consonants *ш* and *ч*, the letter *с* is pronounced nearly like *ш* (*sh*), as :

съ шапкой, *sh' shap-koy*, 'with the cap ;'  
 съ часу, *sh' cha-soo*, 'from the hour.'

When *cr* is followed by *н*, the consonant *т* is not heard at all, as in the English word *listen*, when the *t*, as in Russian, is not heard :

честный, *ches-nay*, 'honest ;'  
 постный, *pos-nay*, 'meagre.'

## П, Ф

have corresponding sounds in the English letters *p* and *f*, as in *post*, *proper* ; *far*, *grief* :

пара, *pa-ra*, 'a pair ;'  
 проза, *pro-sa*, 'prose ;'  
 франція, *fran-tsé-ya*, 'France ;'  
 фонари, *fa-na-ré*, 'the lanterns.'

## Х, х.

The sound of this letter is the same as the German *ch* :

ихъ, *éch—ékch*, 'them ;'  
 хоръ, *chor—khor*, 'the choir ;'  
 духъ, *dooch—dookch*, 'the spirit.'

NOTE.—The letter *x* will be represented by *kh*.

## III, III.

The English double consonant *sh*, as in the words *she*, *dish*, represents this consonant :

шипъ, *shép*, 'thorn ;'

мышь, *mysh*, 'mice ;'

душá *doo-sha*, 'soul.'

## III, III.

The English language has no such sound as III. This letter, however, being composed of the two combined sounds of *sh* and *ch* (*shch*), both of which are in the English language, a little practice only is needed to acquire a perfect pronunciation of this compound consonant. Particular attention must be drawn to the fact that foreigners have always a tendency to commence this consonant with the single letter *s*, instead of the *sh*. Students should therefore be careful in the pronunciation of this letter, and avoid the simple sound of *s*.

*Proper Sound.*

щитъ, *shchét*, 'the shield ;'

пища, *pésh-cha*, 'the food ;'

тащѣль, *tash-chél*, 'he dragged.'

*Accidental Sound.*

The consonant III, when followed by H, is pronounced as III (*sh*), as in

помощникъ, *pa-mosh-nik*, 'assistant ;'

овощный, *o-vash-nay*, 'vegetable.'

## Ч, Ч.

*Proper Sound.*

This letter has exactly the same sound as the English double consonant *ch* in the words *church*, *chose*, *which* :

чудо, *choo-da*, 'marvel ;'

лечу, *le-choo*, 'I fly ;'

ночи, *no-ché*, 'nights.'



*Accidental Sound.*

Before the consonants т and н it is pronounced as ш (*sh*):

что, *sh-to*, 'what;'

нарѣчно, *na-rosh-na*, 'expressly.'

## Ц, ц.

The proper sound of this consonant is the same as the German *ç*; its sound is as *tz* in the noun *howitzer*.

цѣна, *tse-na*, 'price;'

дворѣцъ, *dva-rets*, 'palace;'

лицо, *lê-tso*, 'face.'

NOTE.—The letter ц will be represented by *ts*.

## Θ, θ.

This consonant (the English *ph*) has the same sound as *f*, but is used only in words derived from the Greek, as:

Аѳины, *a-phē-ny*, 'Athens;'

Апоѳеозъ, *a-po-phē-oz*, 'apotheosis;'

Θеодоръ, *phē-o-dor*, 'Theodore;'

Каллиграфія, *kal-lē-gra-phē-ya*, 'caligraphy.'

## Л л, М м, Н н, Р р.

These four liquid consonants have the same sound as the English *l, m, n, r* in the words *land, me, name, road; ball, drum, on, bar*:

лѣсъ, дѣло, *less, dela*, 'the forest, business;'

мало, зима, *mala, zēma*, 'a little, the winter;'

нашъ, она, *nash, ana*, 'our, she;'

родъ, бѣра, *rod, boo-rya*, 'the gender, the storm.'

ОBS. 1.—Before the hard vowels or strong consonants л is heard much more distinctly or much stronger than it is elsewhere; in fact as though it were double, as in the English words *well, Lloyd*.

Obs. 2.—P is like the Irish *r*, i.e. the rolling produced by the tip of the tongue coming against the roof of the mouth and upper front teeth needs to be stronger than it usually is with the English *r*.

### C. THE SEMIVOWELS (Полугласныя).

#### Ъ, Ъ, and Ъ.

Ъ.—The hard semi-vowel *ъ* has no sound whatever when by itself; it can be placed only at the end of a syllable or word, and in that case it gives to the preceding consonant a strong harsh sound, as if the consonant were pronounced with an effort, or were doubled, as *ll* in *roll*, *ball*, or *rr* in *burr*:

полъ, *poll*, 'flour;'

стопъ, *stop*, 'stop;'

золъ, *zoll*, 'cross;'

нотъ, *nott*, 'of notes;'

поръ, *porr*, 'of pores.'

Ь.—The soft semivowel *ь* gives a very soft, liquid sound to the preceding consonant, as if the latter was followed by the Russian *и* or English *e* mute. The sound of the *n* in the termination *gne*, in the French words *champagne*, *montagne*, *cigogne*, or the sound of *l* in the French words *peril*, *steril*, may approximately represent the sound of the soft semivowel *ь*:

брáнь, *bragne*, 'contest;'

кинь, *kigne*, 'throw.'

Obs.—Neither of the above semivowels can be placed after a vowel or at the beginning of a word.

Ъ and Ъ can be met with in the middle of compound words and inflexions only, and in that case they are placed

to indicate that the vowel, which immediately follows, is to be pronounced separately. Thus it appears that the semi-vowels *ъ* and *ь* can be joined to consonants only, and never to vowels.

The *ъ* and *ь*, when they come after the hissing consonants *ж*, *ч*, *ш*, *щ*, sound nearly alike; thus, in the words

ПОЖЪ, — ЛОЖЬ  
КАМЫШЪ — МЫШЬ,

there is scarcely any difference in sound between *жъ* and *жь*, or *шъ* and *шь*.

It is well to remark that for an Englishman the hard semivowel *ъ* does not present any difficulty of pronunciation. The same cannot be said of the soft *ь*. Under careful guidance, however, by a Russian teacher, it is readily acquired. For those, however, who may have to study Russian without assistance, the following observation is of importance:—In no case should the tongue touch the front teeth or the front part of the palate; if this be done the pronunciation of any consonant, with the softness required in Russian, would be impossible. In commencing the study of the soft *ь*, the use of the English *i*, as in the word *bit*, pronounced *very* short, is advisable; and the tongue should touch only the side of the teeth, or the side of the palate or cheek:

дѣнь, *dani*, 'tribute';  
бровь, *brovi*, 'eyebrow'  
честь, *chesti*, 'honour';  
боль, *boli*, 'pain';  
косарь, *ko-sari*, 'mower';  
скорбь, *scorbi*, 'grief';  
есмь, *yemî*, 'I am';  
степь, *stepi*, 'prairie';  
грязь, *gryazi*, 'mud';  
будь, *boodi*, 'be';  
ось, *osi*, 'axe.'

NOTE.—As the letter *e* represents the Russian letter *к*, the soft semivowel *ь* may be represented by *i*, which should however, scarcely be heard.

*Exercise on the pronunciation of the semivowels ь and ъ.*

Билъ, he beat ;  
 Былъ, he was ;  
 Быть, the state ;  
 Господъ, of gentlemen ;  
 Данъ, given ;  
 Жаръ, the heat ;  
 Кровъ, the roof ;  
 Матъ, mate (in chess) ;  
 Паръ, the steam ;  
 Сынъ, the son.

Билъ, the ball ;  
 Быль, an event ;  
 Быть, to be ;  
 Господъ, Lord ;  
 Данъ, the tribute ;  
 Жаръ, fry, imp. ;  
 Кровъ, the blood ;  
 Матъ, the mother ;  
 Паръ, steam out, imp. ;  
 Синъ, blue.

## Й.

This soft semivowel, the Russian *и* short, has an imperfect sound by itself, and can be distinctly heard only after a vowel, with which it forms one syllable. The letter *y* in the words *may, say, way*, represents the sound of the semivowel *й* very well :

май, *may*, 'may ;'  
 вѣй, *wey*, 'blow ;'  
 пей, *pey*, 'drink.'

NOTE.—Й will be represented henceforth by the English letter *y*. Although the letter *y* has been already adopted to represent the hard vowel *ы*, there can be no confusion, as *ы* can only be placed after consonants, and *й* only after vowels.

## CLASSIFICATION OF VOWELS AND CONSONANTS.

According to the pronunciation of the letters in Rus-

sian, the vowels are divided into *hard* and *soft*. The semi-vowels are either hard or soft, and the consonants are divided into *sharp*, *flat* and *liquid*.

#### A. THE VOWELS (Гласныя Буквы).

1. Hard (дѣбѣлыя), а, э, о, у, ы.
2. Soft (тѣнкія), я, е or ѣ, и or і, ю, ё.

#### B. THE SEMI-VOWELS (Полугласныя Буквы).

1. Hard (твёрдая), ъ.
2. Soft (мѣгкія), ь and й.

#### C. THE CONSONANTS (Согласныя Буквы).

1. Sharp (твёрдыя), ф, п, т, с, ш, к, х, ц, ч, щ, ѿ.
2. Flat (мѣгкія), б, в, г, д, ж, з.
3. Liquid (плавныя), л, м, н, р.

Obs.—The liquid consonants, л, м, н, р, may be also called semiconsonants ; all other consonants are mute.

The consonants are also, according to their organic formation, divided into :

1. Labials (губныя), б, в, м, п, ф.
2. Palatals (поднёбныя), л, н, р.
3. Dental (зубныя) :
  - a. Linguals (язычныя), д, т, ц.
  - b. Lispings (шепелеватыя), з, с.
  - c. Hissings (шипѣющія), ж, ч, ш, щ.
4. Gutturals (горланныя), г, к, х.

## UNION AND PERMUTATION OF VOWELS.

Two hard vowels are never united together.

The vowels я, е, ю and the semivowel ь never admit before them the consonants г, к, х, nor do they in some instances even admit д, т, з, с.

In the same way the vowel и, in the formation of derivative words, never admits before it г, к, х, ц.

### A. PERMUTATION OF CONSONANTS.

1. А, Г, З	}	before	{	Ж
2. Т, К, Ц				Ч
3. С, Х		Ш		
4. СТ, СК		Щ.		
		change into		

### B. PERMUTATION OF VOWELS.

- я { after г, к, х, ц, ж, ч, ш, щ } а.  
ю { change into } у.
- ы after ж, ч, ш, щ, г, к, х changes into и.
- о when unaccented after ц, ж, ч, ш, щ, changes into е.\*
- ѣ after і changes into и

### C. PERMUTATION OF SEMIVOWELS.

- The semivowel ь after a vowel changes into й.
- The semivowel ь before a consonant with ь changes into е.
- The semivowel ь before two consonants changes into о.
- The semivowel й before a consonant followed by ь changes into е.

---

\* When е is pronounced as уо (ѣ) it is usually replaced by о; as, яйцѣ, плечѣ, instead of яйцѣ, плечѣ.

## EPENTHESIS (Вста́вка), AND PROSTHESIS (Приста́вка).

The vowels *e, o*, in accordance with the rule, when they replace the semivowels, are introduced for the sake of euphony between two consonants, as :

вѣтеръ instead of вѣтръ ;  
врънокъ and not врѣнкъ.

The consonant *л* is inserted after the consonants *в, ф, п, б, м* when they are followed by the vowels *e* or *ю*, thus will be :

люблю instead of любю ;  
ловлю instead of ловю ;  
куплю instead of купю.

The consonants *в* and *н* are sometimes added before vowels, as :

восьмь instead of осмь ;  
на него instead of на егѡ.

## APOCOPE (Усѣ́ченіе), AND SYNCOPE (Изы́тіе).

1. Apocope is the shortening or the omission of a syllable at the end of a word :

мноѣ instead of мною ;  
чтоѡ instead of что́бы.

2. Syncope is the elision of a letter in the middle of a word, thus will be :

двѣну instead of двѣгнѹ.

## THE TONIC ACCENT.

In dissyllabic and polysyllabic words one syllable is always pronounced with more marked emphasis and with greater effort of the voice than the remaining syllables in the same word. This modification of the voice is called the *tonic*



*accent* (ударѣніе). The accented syllable of a word is called long, (долгій), and all other syllables are short (короткій). The tonic accent in Russian books is printed only in the case of a few homonymous words, such as :

замокъ, 'castle,' and замокъ, 'lock ;'

or, in order to point out certain grammatical inflexions, as

слова, 'of the word,' genit. sing.

словá, 'the words,' nom. plur.

The tonic accent is indicated by a little mark ( ' ) over the vowel. As the tonic accent in Russian words cannot be determined by any definite rule, and as moreover in the formation of derivatives and in many inflexions it changes its place from one syllable to another, the accent over all Russian words in this Grammar will be marked.

## FIRST LESSON. — ПЕРВЫЙ УРОКЪ.

THE SUBSTANTIVE. — Имя Существительное.

*Declension of Masculine Nouns, singular number.*

Склонѣніе единственнаго числа мужескаго рода.

There are in the Russian Language seven Cases, one of which, however, the Vocative, is always the same as the Nominative, having a distinct termination of its own in a few Church Slavonic words only ; as, Бóже ! Иису́се Христе́ ! Отче !

The Nominative,	Именительный падежъ.
The Vocative,	Звательный падежъ.
The Genitive or Possessive,	Родительный падежъ.
The Dative,	Дательный падежъ.
The Accusative or Objective,	Винительный падежъ.
The Instrumental or Ablative,	Творительный падежъ.
The Prepositional or Locative,	Предложный падежъ.

# TABLE OF DECLENSION.

Таблица Склонений.

## FIRST DECLENSION.

*Termination of Masculine Gender. — Окончания Мужского Рода.*  
*Singular. — Единственное Число.*

Cases. Падежи.	<i>Regular Substantives</i> Существительныя правильныя.		<i>Adjective. — Имя Прилагательное.</i>		
	Hard Inflex.	Soft Inflex.	<i>Full termination.</i>		<i>Aprosopated termination.</i>
			Hard Declension.	Soft Declension.	
Nom.	ть	й	ый ой	ий ий	ь
Gen.	а	и	аго	яго бяго	я
Dat.	у	ю	ому	ему бему	ю
Ace.	like the Nom. or Gen.				
Inst.	омъ (емъ)	емъ емъ	ымъ	имъ бимъ	имъ
Prep.	ѣ	ѣ (и) ѣ	омъ	емъ бемъ	емъ

<i>Nom.</i>	The fruit,	<i>Имен. падѣжъ,</i>	Плодъ.
<i>Genit.</i>	Of the fruit,	<i>Родит. пад.</i>	Плода.
<i>Dat.</i>	To the fruit,	<i>Дат. пад.</i>	Плоду.
<i>Accus.</i>	The fruit,	<i>Вин. пад.</i>	Плодъ.
<i>Instr.</i>	By the fruit,	<i>Твор. пад.</i>	Плодомъ.
<i>Prepos.</i>	Of [about] the fruit,	<i>Предл. пад.</i>	Плодѣ.

|| OBS. 1.—There are no Articles in the Russian Language, but in order to indicate the mutual relation of objects, the Nouns and Adjectives have different inflexions, by means of which they are declined.

OBS. 2.—The accusative case is like the genitive in the names of animate beings, and like the nominative in Nouns designating an inanimate or abstract object.

OBS. 3.—Substantives and Adjectives of hard termination are declined according to the hard declension; those of soft termination follow the soft declension.

*I, thou, he. — Я, ты, онъ.*

The court, a yard,	Дворъ.
A boy,	Мальчикъ.
The apricot,	Абрикосъ.
A fruit,	Плодъ.
A town,	Городъ.
A man,	Человѣкъ.
A house,	Домъ.
Solomon,	Соломонъ.
A prophet,	Пророкъ.
The table,	Столъ.
The bread,	Хлѣбъ.
Paris,	Парижъ.
The palace,	Дворецъ.
The castle,	Замокъ.
The lock,	Замокъ.

ОBS. 4.—The present tense of the Auxiliary Verb *To be* (быть), in its proper sense, is always omitted. Thus in the phrases :

I am a man,	Я человекъ ;
A house is a building,	Домъ строеніе.

*Am* (есмы) and *is* (есть) are omitted although understood.

This, Этого ; Not, Не.

ОBS. 5.—The negative particle *не* always precedes the word to which it refers :

Not I,	Не я ;
Not the table,	Не столъ.

### Ли.

Interrogation is rendered by the particle *ли*, which must always follow the interrogative word :

Добръ-ли мальчикъ ?	Is he a kind boy ?
Мальчикъ-ли добръ ?	Is the boy kind ?
Мальчикъ-ли онъ ?	Is he a boy ? (or a girl).
Онъ-ли мальчикъ ?	Is he a boy ? (Is it he who is a boy, or some one else) ?

When ?	Когда ?
Yes,	Да.
No,	Нѣтъ.
But,	Но.
Also, as well,	Также, и.
And,	И.
Mine,	Мой.
Mine, (my own),	Свой (when it refers to the subject of the phrase).
Who ?	Кто ?
Your,	Вашъ.
Your (own), yours,	Свой (when it refers to the subject of the phrase).

Obs.—**Он** is not used with an Interrogative Pronoun or Adverb; as,

Who is he?

Кто онъ?

When was he?

Когда онъ былъ?

The English *it* has no equivalent in Russian, and is therefore rendered by one of the Personal Pronouns of the third person: онъ, она, оно,—*he, she, it*; as,

Is this house yours?

Вашъ-ли домъ?

Yes, it is mine.

+ Да, онъ мой

### EXERCISE I.

An apricot is a fruit.—Paris is a town.—A castle is a house.—Solomon is a prophet.—He is a boy.—Is an apricot a fruit?—Yes, it is a fruit.—Is Solomon a prophet?—Yes, he is a prophet.—Is the castle a house?—Yes, it is a house. Is Paris a town?—Yes, it is a town.—Is a boy a man?—No, he is not a man, he is a boy.—The boy is not a man.—Bread is not a fruit.—He is not the prophet.—A yard is not a house. Who is he?—He is a prophet.—Is he also a prophet.—No, he is not a prophet, but this man is a prophet.—Is this house yours?—No, this house is not mine.—Who art thou? I am a man.

---

## SECOND LESSON—Второй Урокъ.

Have you?      { † Есть-ли у Васъ?  
                              Имѣете-ли Вы?

OBS. 1.—The verb *to have* may be rendered in Russian by *есть* (*is*), followed by the preposition *у*, which governs the genitive case; or, literally, by the verb *имѣть*, which governs the Accusative. The first mode of expressing possession is more widely used, and, owing to its being a purely Russian idiom, it has no equivalent expression in English. Therefore, for a few lessons, the verb *есть* will be treated in preference to *имѣть*.

To interrogate, the particle *ли* is added to *есть*, as in

Have you?      Есть-ли у Васъ.

It has already been remarked that the present tense of the verb *to be* (*быть*) is rarely made use of by Russians. The first and second persons are never used, while the third person is used, as is shown above in the place of *to have* or in the sense of

There is, There are,      Есть.

OBS. 2.—Есть, the third person of *быть*, *to be*, in the sense of 'exist,' though the subject be in the plural, remains in the singular, as:

There is a house in the town,	Есть домъ въ городѣ.
There are houses in town,	Есть дома въ городѣ.

OBS. 3.—The third person of *To be*, *есть*, is often omitted, not only in affirmative, but even in interrogative phrases, as:

Have you the fruit?	У васъ-ли плодъ?
I have the fruit.	У меня плодъ.

NOTE.—У меня есть, 'I have;' literally, 'There is to me.'

OBS. 4.—As there are no Articles in Russian, “*I have a fruit*” and “*I have the fruit*” are rendered in the same way, as :

У меня плодъ.

The cheese,	Сырѣ.
The sugar,	Сахарѣ.
The honey,	мёдѣ.
The cloak,	Плащѣ.
The chair,	Стулѣ.
The master,	Хозяинѣ.

Have you the fruit ?	+ У васъ-ли плодъ ?
I have it.	+ У меня онъ.

OBS. — *It*, referring to fruit, which is masculine, is translated by онъ (*he*).

Genders in Russian words are distinguished chiefly by their termination ; but if by their nature they represent an animate being, irrespective of their termination, they belong, as in English, to the gender of the sex they represent ; thus the word дѣдѣ, ‘uncle,’ although of feminine termination, is of masculine gender.

There are three Genders in the Russian Language :

1. Masculine,	Мужескій родъ.
2. Feminine,	Жёнскій родъ.
3. Neuter,	Средній родъ.

OBS. 6.—There are some Nouns ending in а, я, ѣ, and designating some quality in men, which can be used with the same termination both for masculine and feminine genders, as :

Бродѣга,	Vagabond,	} (man or woman).
Сиротѣ,	Orphan,	

Such words are of common gender, общій родъ.



Yours,      Вашъ.

What (sort), which ?	Какѳй ?
Which (one) ?	Котѳрый ?

Which cheese have you ?	Какѳй сыръ у Васъ ?
I have yours.	У меня Вашъ.
I have your cloak.	У меня Вашъ плащъ.
Which table have you ?	Какѳй столъ у Васъ ?
I have my table.	У меня свой столъ.
Which chair have you,	Какѳй стулъ у Васъ,
Mine or yours ?	Мой или свой ?
I have yours.	У меня Вашъ.

The palace,	Дворецъ, gen. дворца.
The castle,	Замокъ, gen. замка.
The lock,	Замѳкъ, gen. замка.
Sir,	Сударь.

## EXERCISE II.

Have you the fruit?—Yes, I have the fruit.—Have you your fruit?—Yes, I have my fruit.—Have you the bread ? Yes, I have the bread.—Have you your bread ?—I have my bread.—Have you the cloak?—Yes, I have the cloak.—Have you my cloak?—I have mine.—Have you the cheese and the apricot?—Yes, I have the cheese and the apricot.—Which fruit have you?—I have my fruit.—Have you my table?—I have your table.—Which table have you?—I have yours. Have you a castle?—Yes, I have a castle.—Have you also a chair?—Yes, I have also a chair.—Which chair have you?—I have yours.—Which garden have you?—My own. Have you the honey?—I have the honey.—Which honey have you?—I have my honey?—Have you your honey? I have mine.—Have you a lock?—Yes, I have a lock Which lock have you?—I have my own.

## EXERCISE III.

What fruit have you?—I have the fruit of the garden. Which garden have you?—I have the garden of the palace. Which apricot have you?—I have the boy's apricot (the apricot of the boy.)—Have you the garden and the yard of the palace?—No, I have the lock.—Which lock have you? I have mine and also the lock of the garden.—Have you the boy's apricot and the man's bread?—No, I have the man's apricot and the boy's bread.—Which is my fruit?—This fruit is yours.—Is an apricot a fruit?—Yes, it is a fruit. Is this bread a fruit?—No, bread is not a fruit.—Who is Solomon?—He is Solomon, but I am not Solomon.—Are you a prophet?—No, but he is a prophet.—Is this boy a prophet?—No, he is not a prophet.—Is a prophet a man? Yes, a prophet is a man.—Who is a boy?—He is a boy. Who is man?—I am a man.—Is Paris a town?—Yes, Paris is a town.—The castle and the garden of Paris.—The prophet of the town and the boy of the house.—The yard of the palace. Is a castle a town?—No, the castle is not a town.—Is he the master of the house?—No, not he, but I am the master of the house and the master of the garden also.—Who is the master of the palace?—He is the master.—Who is the master of the yard?—I am the master of the yard.—The yard of the house is mine, but the lock of the garden is yours.—Is this table yours?—No, it is not mine.

## THIRD LESSON. — Третій Урокъ.

The boot,	Сапогъ.
The shoe,	Башмакъ.
The stocking,	Чулѣкъ.
The goose,	Гусь.
The lantern,	Фонарь.
The knife,	Ножъ.

The handkerchief,	Платѣкъ.
The horse,	Конь.
The candlestick,	Подсвѣчникъ.
Good,	Хорошій.
Bad,	Дурной, худой.
Fine, handsome, pretty,	Красивый.
Ugly,	Некрасивый, безобразный.
Old,	Старый.
New,	Новый.
Large, big,	Большой.
Small, little,	Малый, маленькій.
Beautiful, fine,	Прекрасный.
Gold candlestick,	Золотой подсвѣчникъ.
Leathern shoe,	Кожаный башмакъ.
The lead, свинецъ.	Leadен, adj. свинцовый.
The pewter, бѣло.	Pewter, adj. оловянный.
The silver, серебрѣ.	Silver, adj. серебряный.

Obs. 1. — Material possessive adjectives (вещественныя) are formed from names of material objects by changing their termination into **ый, ный, нный, ѳный, ѳнный** овый, евый, as :

Fruit, Плодъ; adj. Плодовый, of fruit.  
Table, Столъ; adj. Столовый, of table.

Obs. 2. — Many Nouns of masculine gender ending in **ъ** or **ь**, in the nominative case, have the vowel **о** or **е** inserted for the sake of euphony between the two last consonants. In declining such Nouns **о** or **е** is omitted, as :

Nominative,	The stocking,	Именительный пад.	Чулѣкъ.
Genitive,	Of the stocking,	Родительный пад.	Чулѣа.
Dative,	To the stocking,	Дательный пад.	Чулѣу.
Accusative,	The stocking,	Винительный пад.	Чулѣкъ.
Instrumental,	By the stocking,	Творительный пад.	Чулѣомъ.
Prepositional,	Of the stocking,	Предложный пад.	О чулѣѣ.

EXCEPTION. — In some substantives ending in **окъ**, the vowel **о**, although in the termination, is preserved in the declension, as :

Знатокъ, A connoisseur,	gen. Знатока́.
Игрокъ, A player,	gen. Игрока́.
Челнокъ, A boat,	gen. Челнока́.
Чеснокъ, The garlic,	gen. Чеснока́.
Вздокъ, The rider,	gen. Вздока́.
Сѣдокъ, A passenger,	gen. Сѣдока́.

OBS. 3.—There are also substantives ending in *окъ* in which *o*, being a radical vowel, is also preserved in all the cases, as :

Бокъ,	The side.
Рокъ,	The fate.
Урокъ,	The lesson.

OBS. 4.—By the same rule the vowel *e*, when inserted between two consonants in the words ending in *ецъ*, is left out in the declension, as :

The father,	Отѣцъ,	gen. Отца́, etc.
The merchant,	Купѣцъ,	gen. Купца́, etc.

OBS. 5.—There are, however, words which preserve the vowel *e* in all the cases, as :

The blacksmith,	Кузнѣцъ,	gen. Кузнеца́, etc.
A proud man,	Гордецъ,	gen. Гордца́, etc.

OBS. 6.—The euphonic vowel *e* after the liquid consonants *л*, *н*, *р*, is replaced in declension by the soft semivowel *ь*, in order to preserve the soft pronunciation of these liquid consonants, thus :

The lion,	Левъ,	gen. Льва́.
The polecat,	Хорѣцъ,	gen. Хорька́.

OBS. 7.—When the euphonic *e* in the nominative case is preceded by a vowel, it is changed in all other cases into *й* :

A fighter,	Боѣцъ,	gen. Бойца́.
The hire,	Наѣмъ,	gen. Найма́.
The forehead,	Лобъ,	gen. Лба́.
An eagle,	Орѣлъ,	gen. Орла́.
The corner,	Уголъ,	gen. Угла́.

Which candlestick have you ?

I have the gold candlestick.

Which shoe have you ?

I have the pretty leather shoe.

Какой у Васъ подсвѣчникъ ?

У меня золотой подсвѣчникъ.

Какой у Васъ башмакъ ?

У меня красивый кожаный башмакъ.

Obs. 8.—Adjectives of full termination are usually placed before the substantives which they qualify, and agree with them in gender, number and case.

#### EXERCISE IV.

Have you my beautiful shoe?—Yes, sir, I have it.—Have you my old shoe?—No, I have it not.—Have you my golden candlestick?—No, I have it not.—Which eagle have you? I have the big eagle.—Have you my ugly handkerchief? No, I have (it) not.—Who has the beautiful handkerchief? I have (it) not, I have only the old one.—Which sugar have you?—Yours.—Which boot have you?—I have my leathern boot.—Which goose have you?—I have the big goose. Have you my goose?—No, I have my own.—Have you my old knife?—No, I have the new knife.—Have you a good knife?—Yes, I have a good knife.—Which lantern have you?—I have your old lantern.—Have you a handsome cloak?—Yes, I have a handsome cloak.—Which cloak have you?—I have the new cloak.—Have you a new table?—No, I have the old table only.—Have you a large house?—No, I have only a small house.—Which polecat have you?—I have the little polecat.—Is this golden knife yours?—No, the golden knife is not mine, but the silver knife is (mine). Which knife have you?—I have the golden knife.—Is this yard large?—Yes.—Which yard is small?—Mine.—Have you a new lantern?—No, I have an old lantern.

---

## LESSON FOURTH.—ЧЕТВЕРТЫЙ УРОКЪ.

Nominative,	The horse,	Именительный пад.	Конь.
Genitive,	Of the horse,	Родительный пад.	Коня.
Dative,	To the horse,	Дательный пад.	Коню.
Accusative,	The horse,	Винительный пад.	Коня.
Instrumental,	With the horse,	Творительный пад.	Конёмъ
Prepositional,	About the horse.	Предложный пад.	О конѣ
	A king,	Король.	
	The prince,	Князь.	
	The polecat,	Хорь, dim. Хорёкъ, gen. Хорья́.	

Obs. 1.—There are three substantives ending in екъ, which preserve in all the cases the euphonic vowel e, as :

Намёкъ, A hint.	gen. Намёка.
Упрёкъ, } The reproach.	gen. Упрёка.
Попрёкъ, }	gen. Попрёка.
Anything,	Что нибۇдь,
Something.	Что то, что нибۇдь.
Have you { Something ? }	Есть-ли у васъ что нибۇдь ?
I have nothing.	У меня нѣтъ ниче́го.
Nothing,	Ничто́, ниче́го.
I have not,	† У меня нѣтъ.

Obs. 2.—Transitive verbs preceded by a negative always govern the genitive.

Obs. 3.—When ничто́ is with a preposition, it is placed between the negative particle ни and the pronoun что, as :

Ни за что, For nothing, not for anything.	
Have you a horse ?	Есть-ли у Васъ конь ?
I have no horse,	У меня нѣтъ коня́.
The cord,	Шнуро́къ.
The coffee,	Кофе́й.
The tea,	Чай.

Nominative,	The tea,	Именительный	пад. Чай.
Genitive,	Of the tea,	Родительный	пад. Ча́я.
Dative,	To the tea,	Дательный	пад. Ча́ю.
Accusative,	The tea,	Винительный	пад. Чай.
Instrumental,	By the tea,	Творительный	пад. Ча́емъ.
Prepositional,	Of the tea,	Предложный	пад. О ча́ѣ.

Anything good, Что нибудь хоро́шаго.

Have you anything good ? }  
 Have you something good ? } Есть-ли у Васъ что нибудь хоро́шаго ?

Nothing of bad, Ничего́ ду́рнаго.

I have nothing bad. У меня́ нѣтъ ничего́ ду́рнаго,  
 I have nothing good. У меня́ нѣтъ ничего́ хоро́шаго.

Some (*quantity*), Нѣско́лько.

What? Что ?

Obs.—*Some* and *any*, used in an unlimited sense, are not translated, as :

Have you any tea ? Есть-ли у васъ чай ?—I have some, У меня́ есть чай.

What have you ?	Что́ у васъ ?
What have you good ?	Что́ у васъ хоро́шаго ?
I have good tea.	У меня́ хоро́шій чай.

Obs. 4.—The impersonal verb нѣтъ is never omitted. Нѣтъ derived from the ancient Russian нѣсть or не есть, and means 'is not, there is not;' therefore, у меня́ нѣтъ, word for word, will be, 'there is not to me.'

Iron,	adj.	Желе́зный.
Wooden,	adj.	Дере́вѣнный.
Cotton,	adj.	Бума́жный.
Paper,	adj.	
Stone,	adj.	Ка́менный.
Copper,	adj.	Мѣ́дный.
Woollen,	adj.	Сукно́нный.



## DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

СКЛОНЕНІЕ ИМѢНЪ ПРИЛАГАТЕЛЬНЫХЪ.

*Full Hard Termination.*

<i>Singular.</i>		ЕДИНСТВЕННОЕ ЧИСЛО.	
Nominative,	Old,	Именительный, пад.	Старый.
Genitive,	Of the old,	Родительный, пад.	Старого.
Dative,	To the old,	Дательный, пад.	Старому.
Accusative,	Old,	Винительный, пад.	Старый
		от старого.	
Instrumental,	By the old,	Творительный, пад.	Старымъ.
Prepositional,	Of the old,	Предложный, пад.	О старомъ.

Obs. 5.—The Adjectives in declension must follow either the hard or soft termination, according to the table at the commencement of the First Lesson.

Only, ТОЛЬКО.

What have you ?	Что у васъ ?
I have only the cloak.	У меня только плащъ.
Have you anything good ?	Есть-ли у васъ что нибудь хорошаго.
I have nothing good.	У меня нѣтъ ничего хорошаго.

Him, Ero, (accusative and genitive of the pers. pron. онъ).

## EXERCISE V.

Have you my golden cord ?—I have it.—Have you the good sugar ?—I have (it) not.—Which sugar have you ? I have the bad sugar.—Have you your gold candlestick ? No, I have it not.—What have you ?—I have the silver candlestick.—What have you bad ?—I have nothing bad ? Have you the cheese ?—No, I have nothing.—Which cord have you ?—I have the gold cord.—Have you good coffee ? I have no good coffee, I have good tea.—Which tea have you ?—I have your tea.—Have you something good ?—I

have good sugar and coffee.—What have you bad?—I have a bad shoe.—Which shoe have you?—I have your shoe. What have you handsome?—I have a handsome woollen cloak.—Have you the handsome horse?—No, I have him not.—Which boot have you?—I have the old leathern boot. Have you my good cheese?—Yes, I have it.—Have you the silver cord?—No, I have it not.—What have you?—I have my bread.—Have you the fine goose?—I have not the fine goose, I have the little polecat.

# FIFTH LESSON.—Пятый Урокъ.

This, Этотъ,	gen. этого, }	Demonstrative pro- nouns.
That, Тотъ,	gen. того. }	

This man,	этотъ человекъ.
That fruit,	тотъ плодъ.

OBS. 1.—Substantives having an adjectival termination are declined as adjectives:

The tailor,	Портной, gen. портнаго.
-------------	-------------------------

OBS. 2.—Some masculine nouns, ending in *ъ*, *ь*, *й* when they signify divisible matter have in the genitive case the inflexion of *у* or *ю* instead of *а* or *я*, as:

The tobacco,	табакъ, gen. табакъ.
The glue,	клѣй, gen. клѣю.

OBS. 3.—The same inflexion of *у* or *ю* in the genitive is also taken by some nouns of inanimate or abstract objects, which preserve in the genitive the tonic accent of the nominative case, as:

The taste,	вкусъ, gen. вкусу.
The hour,	часъ, gen. часу.
The occasion,	случай, gen. случаю.

OBS. 4.—All such substantives may, however, have also in the genitive their regular inflexion of *a*, or *я*.

NOTE.—The inflexion of *у* or *ю* in the genitive is used to indicate a quantity, and the inflexion of *a*, *я* in all other instances, thus will be:

A pound of tea,      ФУНТЪ ЧАЮ.  
The aroma of tea,    АРОМАТЪ ЧАЯ.

OBS. 5.—There are monosyllabic and dissyllabic words which, when preceded by the preposition *въ* or *на*, take in the prepositional case the inflexion of *у* or *ю* instead of *ѣ*, as:

In the honey,      ВЪ МЕДУ, instead of ВЪ МЕДѢ.  
On the bridge,    НА МОСТУ, instead of НА МОСТѢ.

OBS. 6.—Many of these monosyllabic and dissyllabic words may, however, take in the prepositional case either of these inflexions, i. e. *у*, *ю*, or *a*, *я*, as:

НА ДОМѢ, 'On the house;' and НА ДОМУ, 'at home.'  
ВЪ ВѢДѢ, 'In the aspect;' and ВЪ ВИДУ, 'in view.'

NOTE.—In most cases, as is seen from the above examples, the nouns ending in the prepositional case in *у*, *ю*, lose their primary signification.

OBS. 7.—The tonic accent is placed on the last syllable when a noun in the prepositional case ends in *у*, *ю*, as:

НА ДОМУ́,    ВЪ КЛѢ́ТѢ, etc.

That which,	ТОТЪ, КОТО́РЫЙ.
That (person) whom,	ТОТЪ, КОТО́РАГО.
The one whom,	ТО́РО, КОТО́РАГО.

OBS. 8.—The English possessive case is rendered in Russian by the repetition of the noun with the genitive.

Which bread have you ?	Какбѣй у васъ хлѣбъ ?
I have my neighbour's.	У меня хлѣбъ сосѣда.
Which cloak have you ?	Какбѣй у васъ плащъ ?
I have the tailor's.	У меня плащъ портнаго.
I have that, which you have.	У меня тотъ, который у васъ.
Have you my horse, or my fathers ?	†. Мой-ли конь у васъ, или конь моего отца ?
I have this horse.	У меня этотъ конь.
Have you that horse ?	У васъ-ли тотъ конь ?
I have not your father's horse.	У меня нѣтъ коня вашего отца.
Have you my tailor's velvet ?	У васъ-ли бархатъ моего портнаго
I have not the tailor's.	У меня нѣтъ бархату портнаго.

My, mine,

Мой.

Nominative,	My, mine,	Именительный пад. Мой.
Genitive,	Of my, of mine,	Родительный пад. Моего.
Dative,	To my, to mine,	Дательный пад. Моему.
Accusative,	My, mine,	Винительный пад. Мой.
Instrumental,	By my, by mine,	Творительный пад. Моимъ.
Prepositional,	Of my, of mine.	Предложный пад. О моемъ.

Thy, thine,

Твой.

His,

†Свой.

Obs. 9.—Твой and свой are declined like мой.

His,

Его.

Ero, as possessive pronoun, is not declined.

NOTE.—The Russian language has no possessive pronoun for the third person; it is rendered by the genitive case of the third personal pronoun :

Ero, 'his (of his),' from онъ, 'he.'

Obs. 10.—Свой may be also called a possessive reflective pronoun, as it is used for all the three persons; thus свой is used for *my, thy, his* when it refers to the subject of the phrase, and *ero* when it has no reference to the subject.

Which tobacco has your brother? Какóй табакъ у вáшего брата?

He has his (own). У него́ свой.

I have not my tobacco, I have his. У меня́ не свой табакъ, у меня́ его́ табакъ.

He has, У него́.

OBS. 11.—Here is the genitive of the third personal pronoun онъ. To this pronoun, when preceded by a preposition, the letter н is added.

But, Но, а.

The bell-ringer,	Звонарь.
The husband,	Мужъ.
The brother,	Братъ.
The cousin,	Двоюродный братъ.
The friend,	Другъ.
An enemy,	Врагъ.
The thimble.	Напёрстокъ.

What sort? Какóй?—Whose? Чей?

Whose horse have you? Чей конь у васъ?

I have your horse. У меня́ вашъ конь.

And, †А (disjunctive).

OBS. 12.—*And* when used as a disjunctive, is translated а.

Have you the new horse, or the old one? Но́вый-ли у васъ конь, или ста́рый?

I have this new horse. У меня́ это́й но́вый конь.

Have you my horse? Мой-ли конь у васъ?

I have my brother's. У меня́ конь моего́ брата.

The ass, Осе́ль, gen. осе́ля.

The hammer, Мо́лотокъ, gen. мо́лотка́

A stupid man, a fool, Глупе́ць, gen. глупца́.

The merchant, Купе́ць, gen. купца́.

The old man, a monk, Ста́рецъ, gen. ста́рца.

Oats, (collect), Ове́сь, gen. овса́.

The handkerchief, Плато́къ, gen. платка́.

The player, Игро́къ, gen. игрока́.

Barley, (collect), Ячме́нь, gen. ячме́ня and ячменю́.

Much, plenty, many,	Много.
A little, not much,	Мало, немного.
Enough,	Довольно.

Obs.—Много, мало, довольно, and несколько govern the genitive.

#### EXERCISE VI.

Have you a hammer?—I have no hammer.—Has the merchant a hammer?—Yes, he has.—What (sort of a) hammer has your brother?—My brother has no hammer, but my cousin has an iron hammer.—Whose handkerchief have you?—I have my brother's handkerchief.—Whose enemy is he?—He is my enemy.—Which ass has the old man?—The old man has your old ass.—Whose horse have you?—I have the player's horse.—Whose hammer has he? He has my iron hammer.—Has he also your old leathern shoe?—No, he has it not.—Has the husband a brother? No, the husband has no brother.—Whose husband is this man?—This man is my old husband.—Has your enemy his horse?—No, sir, he has mine.—Whose thimble has the old tailor?—He has my cousin's thimble.—Have you my sugar and my honey?—No, sir, I have my honey and his sugar. Has this old player a new handkerchief?—No, he has no handkerchief, but his brother has.—Have you good tea? I have no good tea, I have good coffee.—Is this a silver thimble?—No, sir, it is an iron thimble.—Whose is this copper lantern?—Mine.—Is it not his?—No, he has no lantern.

#### EXERCISE VII.

Have you some oats?—I have no oats.—What have you? I have plenty of sugar.—Has your father enough tobacco? He has not much, but enough.—Have you plenty of honey?

I have not enough honey.—Have you my tobacco?—I have no tobacco.—I have your tea, and he has your sugar. The brother has not much bread.—Has not the merchant my silver lantern?—He has not the lantern.—Has the stupid man plenty of tobacco and plenty of tea?—He has plenty of tobacco, but not much tea.—The old merchant's young son has plenty of beautiful velvet.—Has the stupid man my large knife?—He has not yours, but his own small knife.—Which merchant has fine barley?—The rich one. Has not the blacksmith the hammer?—He has not the hammer, but some oats.—Whose bread has he?—He has the old man's bread.—Has not the merchant's boy an ass?—He has no ass, but a horse.—Has the merchant my table?—Yes, he has your table.—The merchant has no bread, and the old man has no cheese.—The player has some bread, but not enough cheese.—Have you not my good friend's handkerchief? You have it.—Has he not his stocking?—He has.—Has his brother plenty of tobacco?—A little.—Has the player the white handkerchief?—Yes.—Which eagle has the boy? He has the white eagle.—Whose is the white eagle?—The boy's white eagle.

---

### SIXTH LESSON.—Шестой Урокъ.

The bootmaker,	Сапожникъ.
The shoemaker,	Башмачникъ.
The blacksmith,	Кузнецъ, gen. кузнеца.
Coal,	Каменный уголь.
Charcoal,	Уголь, gen. угля.
The stag,	Олень, gen. оленя.
The pigeon,	Голубь.
The kettle,	Котёлъ, gen. котла.

The banker,	Банкиръ.
A commission agent,	Биржевой маклеръ,
The pot,	Горшокъ, гер. горшка.
A friend,	Другъ.
A friend (an acquaintance),	Пріятель.
The lead pencil,	Карандашъ.
The penknife,	Перочинный ножикъ.
The chocolate,	Шоколатъ.
A confectioner,	Кандитеръ.
A cook (man),	Поваръ.
The wax,	Воскъ, гер. воску.

Neither, nor, Ни, ни.  
At, У.

I have neither the confectioner's chocolate nor the cook's.	У меня нѣтъ ни шоколата кандитера ни шоколата повара.
Have you the bread or the cheese?	Хлѣбъ-ли у васъ или сыръ?
I have neither the bread nor the cheese.	У меня нѣтъ ни хлѣба ни сыру.
Have you my sugar or yours?	Мой-ли сахаръ у васъ или свой?
I have neither mine nor yours.	У меня нѣтъ ни своего ни вашего.

The umbrella,	Зѣтникъ.
The carpenter,	Плотникъ.
The cabinet-maker, joiner,	Столяръ.
Of the cabinet-maker,	Столяръ.
By the cabinet-maker,	Столяромъ.
A mason,	Каменьщикъ.
A nail,	Гвоздь.
A morsel, piece,	Кусокъ.
What have you?	Что у васъ?
What is the matter with you?	Что съ вами?

Nothing, Ничто, ничегó.

OBS.—No negative word in Russian abolishes the negative particle не before a verb, as :



I have nothing,	{ Я ничего не имѣю. У меня ничего нѣтъ.
Have you anything ?	Есть-ли у васъ что нибудь ?
He has,	{ У него есть. Онъ имѣеть.
Nominative, He,	Имен. п. Онъ.
Genitive, Of him,	Родт. п. Его, or (негѣ, <i>with a preposit.</i> ).
Dative, To him,	Дат. п. Ему, or (немѣ, <i>when with a preposition</i> ).
Accusative, Him,	Вин. п. Его, or (негѣ, <i>when with a preposition</i> ).
Instrumental, By him,	Твор. п. Имъ, or (нимъ, <i>when with a preposition</i> ).
Prepositional, Of him.	Пред. п. Объ немъ.
A Frenchman,	Французъ,
A Russian,	Русскій.
A German,	Нѣмецъ,
An Englishman,	Англичанинъ,
An Italian,	Итальянецъ,
A Spaniard,	Испанецъ,
Also, И, также.	

## EXERCISE VIII.

What has the little boy?—He has a piece of cheese. Have you the cabinet-maker's hammer?—I have neither the cabinet-maker's nor the carpenter's hammer.—Which umbrella have you?—I have my brother's cotton umbrella. What have you?—I have nothing.—Which thimble has his diligent son?—He has my tailor's (thimble).—Has he not also my cotton umbrella?—He has neither yours nor his umbrella.—Have you the Frenchman's woollen cloak?—I have not, his brother has it.—Which and whose lead pencil have you?—I have my good friend's lead pencil.—Which nail have you?—I have the blacksmith's nail.—Have you also the bootmaker's nail?—No, I have the shoemaker's only.—What have you, chocolate or sugar?—I have neither chocolate nor sugar, but I

have plenty of bread and some honey.—Whose black horse have you?—I have not the black, but the rich banker's white horse.—Is this fine big pigeon yours?—It is not mine.—Have you not any coal?—I have some charcoal. Who has plenty of tobacco?—The carpenter and the mason have not plenty of tobacco, but they have wax.—Who has good strong tea?—The Russian or the German has it. Has the Spaniard plenty of sugar?—He has a little of it. Has the merchant enough coal?—He has not enough (of it), but the rich Englishman has plenty (of coal).—Has the carpenter the wooden hammer?—He has not.—Has not the joiner a wooden chair or a table?—He has neither the wooden chair nor the wooden table, but (he has) a good iron coffer.

---

#### EXERCISE IX.

Has the Russian a good umbrella?—Yes, he has a good umbrella.—Whose good umbrella?—The German's.—Have you my brother's good lead-pencil, or this good boy's small penknife?—I have neither his lead-pencil nor the penknife. What has your friend?—He has his and my old neighbour's coal and wax.—Which old neighbour's?—The baker's. Has not the Englishman the stocking and the cord?—He has not the stocking but (he) has the Russian's golden cord. Has not the Italian a little glue?—Neither the Italian nor the Spaniard have any glue.—Have you the Frenchman's or the merchant's tobacco?—I have neither the Frenchman's nor the merchant's tobacco, I have the shoemaker's white wax only.—Has the young Englishman a silver candlestick? No, not a silver but a copper one.—Who has the blacksmith's large iron hammer?—Neither the merchant nor he

has it.—What have you?—I have nothing.—Has not the fighter a lion?—He has neither the lion nor the polecat. Has the handsome horse a white forehead?—No, he has a black forehead.—He has no good taste.—The Russian has plenty of good black tea, but the Italian has neither white nor black tea.—Have I not something good?—I have nothing good.—Have you my cotton handkerchief or the Englishman's brother's silk handkerchief?—I have neither your cotton handkerchief, nor that of the Englishman's brother's.—What have you?—I have the tailor's cloak only. Whose tea have you?—I have the commission-agent's tea. Have you not also the merchant's tea?—I have not the merchant's tea.—Has the blacksmith enough tea, sugar, cheese, wax and glue?—No, not enough, but he has plenty of black coffee.—Whose is this iron coffer?—The banker's.

### SEVENTH LESSON.—Седьмой Урокъ.

Our, ours, Нашъ.

Nominative,	Our, ours,	Именительный пад. Нашъ.
Genitive,	Of our,	Родительный пад. Нашего.
Dative,	To our,	Дательный пад. Нашему.
Accusative,	Our, of our,	Винительный пад. Нашъ, нашего.
Instrumental,	By our,	Творительный пад. Нашимъ.
Prepositional,	Of our,	Предложный пад. О нашемъ.

The sand,	Песокъ.
An ox,	Быкъ.
A bull,	Волъ.
The biscuit,	Сухарь.
The pie,	Пирогъ.
The cake,	Пирожокъ.
The captain,	Капитанъ.
The lieutenant,	Поручикъ.
The major,	Маіоръ.
A cavalry captain,	Ротмистръ.
The colonel,	Полковникъ.

Have I ?	{ Имѣю ли я ?
Have I the cloak ?	{ Есть-ли у меня ?
You have it.	+ У меня-ли плащъ ?
You have not.	Онъ у васъ.
	{ Онъ не у васъ.
	{ Его у васъ нѣтъ.
Have I something good ?	{ Имѣю ли я что нибудь хорошаго ?
You have nothing good.	{ Есть ли у меня что нибудь хорошаго ?
	У васъ нѣтъ ничего хорошаго.

Obs. 1.—In interrogative sentences the verb stands before the subject, but when a sentence begins with an interrogative pronoun or other interrogative word, the verb may be placed either before or after the subject, as:

Видите ли вы ?	Do you see ?
Что вы видите ?	{ What do you see ?
Что видите вы ?	

Obs. 2.—As it has been already remarked, the interrogative in Russian may be rendered in four different ways :

1. Commencing a sentence with **есть-ли**, as :

Have you the bread ?    **Есть-ли у васъ хлѣбъ ?**

2. Commencing a sentence by a verb, followed by the interrogative particle **ли**, as :

Have you an umbrella ?    **Имѣете ли вы зонтикъ ?**

3. By an adverb or an adjective apocopated, followed also by **ли** :

Is this a kind man ?    **Добръ-ли этотъ человекъ ?**

4. By the preposition **у**, followed by a noun or pronoun with **ли**, as :

Has the father a horse ?    **У отца ли конь.**

Have I the umbrella ?    **У меня ли зонтикъ ?**

I have,	Я имѣю.
Thou hast,	Ты имѣешь.
He has,	Онъ имѣетъ.
We have,	Мы имѣемъ.
You have,	Вы имѣете.
They have,	Они имѣютъ.

What have I? { Что я имѣю?  
 { Что у меня?

Have I the cook's knife? У меня ли ножъ повара?  
 You have it not. У васъ его нѣтъ.  
 Have you it? У васъ ли онъ?

I have it. + { Онъ у меня.  
 { Я его имѣю.  
 I have it not. { Его у меня нѣтъ.  
 { Я его не имѣю.  
 Have I it? У меня ли онъ?

The ram, Баранъ.  
 The calf, Телёнокъ.

Who? Кто?  
 Which? Какой, который.  
 That which, Тотъ, который.

Fresh, new, Свѣжій.  
 Dear, expensive, Дорогой.  
 Bright, light, Свѣтлый.  
 Dark, Тёмный.

Nominative,	Bright, light,	Именительный пад.	Свѣтлый.
Genitive,	Of bright,	Родительный пад.	Свѣтлаго.
Dative,	To bright,	Дательный пад.	Свѣтлomu.
Accusative,	Bright,	Винительный пад.	{ Свѣтлый. Свѣтлаго.
Instrumental,	By bright,	Творительный пад.	Свѣтлымъ.
Prepositional,	Of bright,	Предложный пад.	О свѣтломъ.
	The evening,	Вѣчеръ.	
	To day,	Сегодня.	
	The day,	День, ген. дня.	

To-day we have a very dark evening, Сегодня у насъ очень тёмный вѣчеръ.

Nominative,	Fresh,	Именительный	пад. Свежій.
Genitive,	Of fresh,	Родительный	пад. Свежаго.
Dative,	To fresh,	Дательный	пад. Свежнему.
Accusative,	Fresh,	Винительный	пад. Свежій, свежаго.
Instrumental,	By fresh,	Творительный	пад. Свежимъ.
Prepositional,	Of fresh,	Предложный	пад. О свежемъ.

Steel, *adjective*, Стальной.

### EXERCISE X.

Have you my ram or that of my cook?—I have neither your ram nor your cook's.—Whose ram have you?—I have the captain's ram.—Is it big?—No, it is not big.—Has he the white biscuit and the baker's good new bread?—He has neither the white biscuit nor the baker's new bread. Has he enough cheese?—He has not enough cheese, but he has plenty of good wax.—Has not the Frenchman good taste?—The Frenchman has good taste.—Who has my leathern boot?—Neither I nor he (has it), but the poor bootmaker has it.—Have you the steel knife?—No, I have not, and he also has not (it).—Have you good tea?—Yes. Is your tea good?—No, not good, but it is new.—Whose umbrella has the banker?—He has the neighbour's brother's umbrella.—His own neighbour's?—No, not his own, but that of his neighbour.—Has he something good?—He has nothing good.—What have I?—You have nothing.—Whose penknife has this boy?—He has his father's little penknife. Has the father or the merchant the cook's knife?—The merchant has not, but the cook has it.—Has the boy the knife or the thimble?—Not the knife, but the thimble. Has this rich Englishman a wooden or stone castle?—He has neither a stone nor a wooden castle, he has only a good wooden house.—Has the boy plenty of sand and wax? Which boy?—The German's boy.—This boy has neither

sand nor wax.—Has the ass enough oats?—No, he has not enough.—Has the old bootmaker his own boot or mine? Not yours, but his (own).—Whose stag has he?—The merchant's.—Has he the stag only, or also the pigeon?—He has the stag only.—Who has no tea?—The confectioner's brother and the old joiner have (it) not.

#### EXERCISE XI.

Which ox has your friend?—My kind friend has his neighbour's, the Russian's ox.—Has he also the cook's big ram?—No, he has not his ram.—Whose pigeon has that merchant?—That merchant has no pigeon.—Has the confectioner a good pie, and is he your neighbour?—The confectioner has no pie, and he is not my neighbour.—Has this poor merchant and that rich banker plenty of sugar, honey, tea and wax?—The poor merchant has only plenty of honey, and a little sugar, tea and wax; but the rich banker has nothing, neither wax nor tea.—How much black tea has this merchant's father?—He has not enough of it. Whose friend is this Frenchman? and whose friend is that German?—This Frenchman is the friend (acquaintance) of that Englishman, and that German is the friend of this Spaniard.—Is your cook a Spaniard?—He is not a Spaniard, but a Russian.—What is the matter with you?—There is nothing the matter with me.—Which piece of bread is mine?—This small piece is yours.—Has the joiner or the mason the carpenter's nail?—Neither the joiner nor the mason (has it), but his cook has it.—Has not the neighbour an iron or wooden hammer?—He has neither a wooden nor iron hammer.—Have not I good sugar or bad coffee?—You have nothing.—Have I something good?—You have good tea.—Has the prince the stone castle and the beautiful

garden?—The prince has neither a stone castle nor a beautiful garden.—Is it a wooden knife?—The knife is not a wooden but an iron one.—Has the old baker any new bread?—Which baker?—The Englishman.—The Englishman has no new bread, but the German has.—Who has neither ram nor calf?—He.—Which calf is dear?—The calf which I have.—Has he any new bread and fresh fruit?—He has.

### EIGHTH LESSON.—Восьмой Урокъ.

I give,	Я даю.
Thou givest,	Ты даёшь.
He gives,	Онъ даётъ.
We give,	Мы даёмъ.
You give,	Вы даёте.
They give,	Они дають.

OBS. 1.—There is only one form in Russian for the present tense, thus:

*I give, I am giving, and I do give,* is rendered by я даю.

Who gives?	Кто даётъ?
I do not give.	Я не даю.
Do you give?	Даёте ли вы?
Do you not give?	Не даёте ли вы?
You do not give?	Вы не даёте?
Do I give?	Даю ли я?
He does not give.	Онъ не даётъ.
Does he give?	Даётъ ли онъ?
He does not give.	Онъ не даётъ.
What does he give you?	Что онъ вамъ даётъ?
He gives me nothing.	Онъ ничего мнѣ не даётъ.

OBS. 2.—Давать, 'to give,' governs, as in English, the dative of the person (indirect govern) and the accusative of the thing (direct govern).



He gives me a coffer,	Онъ даётъ мнѣ сундукъ.
To me,	Мнѣ.
To thee,	Тебѣ.
To him,	Ему.
To myself,	} + Себѣ.
To thyself,	
To himself,	

Obs. 3.—Себѣ is the dative of the reflective personal pronoun себя, which has neither nominative case nor plural number. This reflective pronoun is used for the three persons whenever the action returns on the agent, as :

I give to myself,	Я даю себѣ.
Thou givest to thyself,	Ты даёшь себѣ.
He gives to himself,	Онъ даётъ себѣ.
We give to ourselves,	Мы даёмъ себѣ.
You give to yourselves,	Вы даёте себѣ.
They give to themselves,	Они даютъ себѣ.

What has my friend ?	Что у моего друга.
He has nothing,	У него ничего нѣтъ.

To whom does the baker give the bread ?	Кому булочникъ даётъ хлѣбъ ?
He gives it to his neighbour.	Онъ даётъ его своему сосѣду.
To which neighbour ?	Какому сосѣду ?
To the carpenter.	Плотнику.

To whom ?	Кому (dative of кто) ?
To which ?	Какому (dative of какой) ?
To which (one) ?	Которому (dative of который) ?
To nobody,	Никому (dative of никто).
To somebody,	Кому нибудь (dative of кто нибудь).

White bread,	Бѣлый хлѣбъ.
Brown bread,	Чёрный хлѣбъ.
Stale bread,	Чёрствый хлѣбъ.

Diligent,	Прилежный.
Laborious, }	
Assiduous, }	Трудолюбивый.
Cotton, <i>adjective</i> ,	Бумажный.
Silk, <i>adjective</i> ,	Шёлковый.
Wooden,	Деревянный.
White,	Бѣлый.
Black,	Чёрный.
The ham,	Окорокъ.
The sentinel,	Часовой.
The diamond,	Алмазъ.
The footman,	Лакѣй.
The doctor,	Врачъ.
The master (teacher),	Учитель.
The pupil,	Ученикъ.
His penknife,	Его перочинный ножикъ.
His eye,	Его глазъ.
His tea,	Его чай.

Somebody, Кто *нибѣдь* (genitive, *кого*  
*нибѣдь*).

Has somebody my penknife? Есть ли у *кого* *нибѣдь* мой перочинный  
ножикъ?

Nobody, } Никто (genitive, *никого*).  
Not anybody, }

Obs.—When there is a preposition before *никто*, it must be placed between the negative particle *ни* and the pronoun *кто*, thus:

Nobody has it, Ни у *кого* *его* нѣтъ.

The rice,	Рисъ.
Barley,	Ячмень, gen. ячменя.
A stone,	Камень, gen. камня.
An officer,	Офицеръ.

The soldier,	Солдатъ.
A burgher,	Мѣщанинъ.
The citizen,	Гражданинъ.
A gentleman,	Дворянинъ.
Andrew,	Андрѣй.
Nicolas,	Николай.
Alexis,	Алексѣй.

## EXERCISE XII.

Who is this soldier?—He is an Englishman.—To whom does this officer give his lion?—He gives it to his father. To whom do I give my handsome horse?—You give him to nobody.—Who has my red coffer?—The kind blacksmith has it.—Do I give the diligent boy my lead-pencil? No, you give him your penknife only.—Does he not give him good vinegar?—He gives him only a little tea and sugar.—Do we not give the merchant enough velvet?—Yes, we give the rich merchant enough velvet, but little silk. To whom do you give a little silk?—To the kind brother's shoemaker.—Does the blacksmith give his iron hammer? No, he does not give it, and he has not his own hammer. Has not the burgher oats?—He has no oats, but the citizen has plenty.—Which gentleman has a stone house?—The rich gentleman.—Does not the master give tobacco to his footman?—He gives him nothing.—To whom do you give your leathern boot?—I give it to nobody.—To whom does this burgher give that ram?—He gives it to his brother. Does not he give him also his ox?—No, he has no ox.—Do I not give the pretty pigeon to his diligent son?—You do not give it to him.—Who has my white biscuit?—The baker has it.—Which baker?—The industrious baker.—Who has the black bread?—Nobody has it.—Has the peasant a cotton handkerchief?—He has not a cotton, but a silk one.

Has not the soldier rice, tea, sugar and coffee?—He has nothing, he has stale bread only.—What do I give to the sentinel?—You give him nothing.—Has the officer his (own) coffer?—He has not his own coffer.—Who is this Russian?—This Russian is the banker's doctor.—Is he a good doctor?—Yes, he is a very good one.

### EXERCISE XIII.

Has some one my cloak?—The tailor has it.—Has some one my velvet?—No, nobody has it.—Does the Englishman give his horse to this rich citizen?—He gives him his lion only.—Which Frenchman has a beautiful castle?—The rich one.—Has not Andrew his boot?—He has no boot; he has Nicolas's bad shoe.—Which Nicolas?—The one who has a pretty wooden house.—Has the kind citizen plenty of sugar and tea?—He has a little sugar, but enough tea.—Do not I give the peasant my honey?—You do not give him your honey, but you give your barley.—Who has the diligent boy's pencil?—The industrious peasant has it.—Which peasant?—The one who has a poor wooden house.—To whom do you not give your umbrella?—I do not give it to my footman.—Has not the carpenter my hammer?—He has neither yours nor his hammer.—What has he?—He has nothing.—Do you not give him something?—I give him nothing.—Has somebody my coffer?—The poor peasant has it.—Which peasant?—The one who has the handsome cock and the chicken.—Who has the white diamond?—The commission-agent has it.—Which diamond has he?—The kind Russian's diamond.—Has this player my umbrella? He has not yours, but his own.—Has he an iron nail or a wooden hammer?—He has neither nail nor hammer.—Who has the ham?—Nobody has it.—Has the boy his brother's

biscuit or Alexis's biscuit?—He has no biscuit.—Has Alexis the ham?—No, Andrew has it.—Have Andrew and Nicolas rice?—Neither Andrew nor Nicolas has any rice.—Has Alexis or this Englishman some tea?—Alexis has plenty of tea, but the Englishman a little.—Is this diamond white or yellow?—This beautiful diamond is not yellow, but black.

### NINTH LESSON.—Девятый Урокъ.

The sailor,	Матросъ.
A foreigner,	Иностранецъ.
The foreigner's garden,	Садъ иностранца.
His pocket-book,	Его бумажникъ.
His pistol,	Его пистолетъ.
An hotel-keeper,	Содержатель гостиницы.
An inn,	Трактиръ.
The inn-keeper,	Трактирщикъ.
The postman,	Почтальонъ.
The goat,	Козёлъ.
The guide,	Вожакъ.

#### *Singular.*

#### Единственное число.

I see,	Я вижу.
Thou seest,	Ты видишь.
He sees,	Онъ видитъ.

#### *Plural.*

#### Множественное число.

We see,	Мы видимъ.
You see,	Вы видите,
They see,	Они видятъ.
Rich,	Богатый.
Poor,	Бѣдный.
Celebrated,	Знаменитый.
Green,	Зелёный,
Blue,	Голубой, синій.
Red,	Красный.

The man (whom) he sees is my friend.

Человѣкъ, котораго онъ видитъ, мой другъ.

The knife (which) he gives him is mine.

Ножъ, который онъ даётъ ему, мой.

OBS. 1.—The relative pronoun *который* in Russian is never omitted.

## DECLENSION OF DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

### *Masculine Singular.*

Nominative,	This,	этотъ.	That,	тотъ.
Genitive,	Of this,	этого.	Of that,	того.
Dative,	To this,	этому.	To that,	тому.
Accusative,	This,	этотъ, этого.	That,	тотъ, того.
Instrumental,	By this,	этимъ.	By that,	темъ.
Prepositional,	Of this,	объ этомъ.	Of that,	о томъ.

OBS. 2.—The impersonal verb *нѣтъ* and the negative particle *не* before active verbs govern the genitive case, as :

I have no bread,

У меня нѣтъ хлѣба.

I do not see the garden,

Я не вижу сада.

But if *не* does not imply negation of a verb, it does not govern the genitive, as :

Have I this or that?

Этотъ ли у меня или тотъ ?

You have this, but not that.

У васъ этотъ а не тотъ.

But,

но, а, однако.

Has the merchant the green or the red velvet ?

Зелёный ли бархатъ у купца или красныи ?

He has not the green, but the red.

У него не зелёный а красныи.

He has this, but not that.

У него этотъ а не тотъ.

Strong,

Крѣпкий.

Yellow,

Жёлтый.

The ticket,

Билетъ.

The garret,

Чердакъ.

The warehouse,

Амбаръ.

The grain,

Зерно.

The corn,

Хлѣбъ (зерновѣй).

To love, to like, Любить.

Do you love ? }  
Do you like ? }

Любите ли вы ?

I love, }  
I like, }

Я люблю.

Do you like a large house ?

Любите ли вы большой домъ ?

I do not like.

Я не люблю.

What do you like ?

Что вы любите ?

I love my father and my brother.

Я люблю своего отца и своего брата.

I love, Я люблю.

We love, Мы любимъ.

Thou lovest, Ты любишь.

You love, Вы любите.

He loves, Онъ любитъ.

They love, Они любятъ.

To see,

Видѣть.

What ship do you see ?

Какой корабль видите вы ?

I see the rich Englishman's ship.

Я вижу корабль богатаго Англичанина.

Whom do I see ?

Кого я вижу ?

What do I see ?

Что я вижу.

Whom (relative pronoun), Кого, котораго.

Who ?

Кто ?

Which (relative pronoun), Который, котораго.

Obs. 3.—The relative pronoun который is used in both cases, whether the antecedent is an animate or inanimate object.

Do you see the friend whom your brother loves ?

Видите ли вы друга, котораго любитъ вашъ братъ ?

I do not see him.

Я его не вижу.

Dost thou see ?

Видишь ли ты ?

Thou dost not see

Ты не видишь

The table, which I do not give.

Столъ, котораго я не даю.

What do they see ?

Что они видятъ ?

Do you like this man ?

Любите ли вы этого человека ?

No, I do not like him.

Нѣтъ, я его не люблю.

Do you like the lemon which you have ?

Любите ли вы лимонъ, который у васъ ?

That which,	Тотъ, который.
That (person) whom,	} Того, котораго.
The one whom,	

I do not like the one whom you love, Я не люблю того, котораго вы любите.

OBS. 4.—The Russian language has no word equivalent to the English auxiliary verb *to do* ; therefore, whenever in English, in order to avoid repetition, the auxiliary verb *to do* is used, in Russian the verb must be repeated.

Do you see the pocket-book (which) Видите ли вы бумажникъ, который я

I see ?

вижу ?

No, I do not (see it).

Нѣтъ, я его не вижу.

#### EXERCISE XIV.

What does the good father give to his diligent son ?—He gives him sugar and bread.—Whose oats has the inn-keeper ?—He has my neighbour's oats.—Has the foreigner my tobacco ?—No, he has (it) not.—Whose sugar does the father give to his son ?—He gives him the rich merchant's sugar.—Does he give oats to the ass ?—He does not give them to the ass, but to the horse.—Do you like tobacco ? No, I do not like it.—What do you like ?—I like tea and coffee.—Do you see that green velvet, which I like ?—Yes, I do see it, and I see the green stocking.—Do you not see the green stocking ?—I do not see the green, but I see the white one.—What has this pretty boy's brother ?—He has a steel knife.—Which knife ?—That which the merchant gives him.—Has he plenty of cheese ?—No, he has little cheese, but plenty of sugar and coffee.—Who has my ticket ? This sailor has it.—Who has your neighbour's bread ?—I have that of my neighbour, the peasant.—Do you like your



neighbour, the peasant?—I like him and he likes me.—Has the master the diligent boy's pencil?—He has not the boy's pencil, he has my friend's pencil only.—Has the peasant the ox or the ram?—He has neither the ox nor the ram, he has the goat.—Do you see the rich Englishman's garden? I see his pretty garden and his large house.—Do you see the guide's house?—I see it, and I see the young prince's large horse.—Which prince?—The one (whom) you like. Which wooden hammer do you see?—My brother's and my wooden hammer.—Does he see the great king's large town? Yes, he sees his large town, but does not see his magnificent castle.

#### EXERCISE XV.

Which castle do you see?—I see the rich prince's castle. Do you see also the king's castle?—No, I do not see his castle, but I see his beautiful garden.—Whose garden do you see?—I see the rich Englishman's garden.—Do you not see my handkerchief?—I do not see it, but I see mine. Whom do you like?—I like my friend's son and my enemy's pupil.—He likes neither your friend's son nor your enemy's pupil.—What tea do you like?—I like good tea and strong coffee.—What garden has the prince?—He has a large and beautiful garden.—Whose friend (acquaintance) is this Russian?—He is my father's friend.—Has the celebrated foreigner his own pocket-book?—No, he has (it) not.—Who has it?—My kind cousin has it.—Have I this cock or that goose?—You have neither this cock nor that goose.—What have I?—You have a large eagle.—Do you like this pie? No, I do not like this pie.—Which pie do you like?—That which you see.—I do not see the pie.—What do you see? I see nothing.

## EXERCISE XVI.

Do you give bread to your goat?—No, I give him oats only.—Does he give good oats to his (own) ass and to my goat?—He gives neither oats nor bread, but (gives) barley only.—Has the inn-keeper a red or yellow handkerchief? He has neither a red nor yellow handkerchief, but he has a white one.—Which inn do I see?—That which the kind officer, your friend, sees.—What tobacco have you?—I have the sailor's excellent tobacco.—Do you give to your brother a little tobacco?—I give him a little tobacco, but I give the sailor plenty of it.—Who gives the poor peasant a piece of stale bread?—The kind boy gives him the bread.—To whom do you give the young cock?—I give him to nobody.—Who has my old shoe?—The shoemaker has it.—Which shoemaker?—Yours.—Has he the iron hammer?—He has (it) not.—Who has it?—His carpenter has it.—Has the banker my red leather pocket-book?—No, he has not yours, but his own.—What has the rich prince's cook?—He has nothing. Has somebody my steel penknife?—Nobody has it.—Do you like your cousin?—I like him, but my brother does not. Do you not give this boy the bread?—I do not.

## TENTH LESSON.—Десятый Урокъ.

By whom? Кѣмъ?

Who has done this?

Кто это сдѣлалъ?

By whom is this done?

Кѣмъ это сдѣлано?

My father.

Мой отецъ.

By my father.

Моимъ отцомъ.

OBS. 1.—With the passive voice the agent must be in the instrumental case without a preposition; the instrumental case is also used in answer to the questions, *By whom? by what? (with what?)*

This (thing), Это.

OBS. 2.—*This*, when not followed by a substantive, is translated *это*, neuter of *этотъ*.

I have done this,  
This is done by me,  
Have you done this ?  
Is this done by you ?

Я сдѣлалъ это.  
Это сдѣлано мною.  
Вы ли это сдѣлали ?  
Вами ли это сдѣлано ?

I have done,      Я сдѣлалъ.  
Thou hast done,    Ты сдѣлалъ.  
He has done,      Онъ сдѣлалъ.

We have done,      Мы сдѣлали.  
You have done,    Вы сдѣлали.  
They have done,    Они сдѣлали.

This is done,

Это сдѣлано.

By me,              мною.  
By thee,            тобою.  
By him,            имъ, (нимъ).

By us,              нами.  
By you,            вами.  
By them,          ими, (ними).

With whom do you speak ?  
I speak with my father.

Съ кѣмъ говорите вы ?  
Я говорю съ моимъ отцомъ.

To speak (with some one, of  
some one, of something).

Говорить, II: 10\* (съ  
кѣмъ, о кѣмъ, о чѣмъ).

OBS. 3.—The Russians say, as the English, *to speak with* some one and *to* some one, as :

I spoke to him.  
Do you speak ?  
I speak.  
I do not speak.  
Who speaks ?  
Nobody speaks.

Я говорилъ ему.  
Говорите вы ?  
Я говорю.  
Я не говорю.  
Кто говорить ?  
Никто не говорить.

I speak,            я говорю.  
Thou speakest,    ты говоришь.  
He speaks,        онъ говоритъ.

We speak,        мы говоримъ.  
You speak,      вы говорите.  
They speak,     они говорятъ.

\* Roman figures will indicate the conjugation, Arabic the class, and asterisks irregular verbs.

*The Instrumental Case.*

By whom?	Кѣмъ?	By what?	Чѣмъ?
By nobody,	} Никѣмъ.	By nothing,	} Ничѣмъ.
Not by anybody.		Not by anything.	

Who gave this?

Кто это далъ?

By whom is this given?

Кѣмъ это дано?

By this merchant,

Этимъ купцомъ.

By his father,

Его отцомъ.

By your shoemaker.

Вашимъ башмачникомъ.

By my, by mine,

Моймъ.

By thy, by thine,

Твоимъ.

By his (own),

Своимъ.

By our, by ours,

Нашимъ.

By your, by yours,

Вашимъ,

By their (own), by theirs,

Своими.

By his,

Его.

By their, by theirs.

Ихъ.

Obs. 4.—The possessive pronouns мой, твой, свой, нашъ, вашъ have only one form, whether placed before a noun or standing alone, as :

This is my house,

Это мой домъ.

This house is mine,

Этотъ домъ мой.

*The Prepositional Case.*

Of whom?	О комъ?	Of what?	О чѣмъ?
Of nobody,	} Ни о комъ.	Of nothing,	} Ни о чѣмъ.
Not of anybody.		Not of anything.	

With, Съ, со, (governs the instr.).

Obs. 5.—Съ changes into со when coming before nouns, commencing with two or more consonants, which do not easily combine with it in sound.

Of (about, concerning), O, (объ, обо).

Obs. 6.—O changes into объ before words commencing with pure vowels (a, o, y, э, и).

Of the angel,	Объ ангелѣ.
Of the father,	Объ отцѣ.
Of the beehive,	Объ ульѣ.
Of this,	Объ этомъ.
Of their,	Объ ихъ.
Of his,	О егѣ.
Of the anchor,	О якорѣ.
Of the south,	О югѣ.
Of the ride,	О вѣдѣ.
Of my, of mine,	О моёмъ.
Of thy, of thine.	О твоёмъ.

Объ occasionally becomes обо before words commencing with two consonants, as :

Of me,	Обо мнѣ.
Of everything,	Обо всѣмъ.
Of whom do you speak ?	О комъ говорите вы ?
I speak of my kind father.	Я говорю о моёмъ добромъ отцѣ.
Of what does your brother speak ?	О чёмъ говорите вашъ братъ ?
He speaks of nothing,	Онъ ни о чёмъ не говоритъ.
He does not speak of anything. }	
He speaks of his old friend.	Онъ говоритъ о своёмъ старомъ другѣ.
Of which shoe does he speak ?	О какомъ башмакѣ говоритъ онъ ?
He speaks of the old leather shoe.	Онъ говоритъ о старомъ кожаномъ башмакѣ.

By which, (with which),	Которымъ.
Of which,	О которомъ.
By this, by that, (with this, with that), }	Этимъ, тѣмъ.
Of this, of that.	Объ этомъ, о томъ.

By whom is this made?

By this man.

Of which man do you speak?

Of that man.

Кѣмъ это сдѣлано?

Этимъ человекомъ.

О какомъ человекѣ говорите вы?

О томъ человекѣ.

With whom is your brother?

He is with his father.

Съ кѣмъ вашъ братъ.

Онъ со своимъ отцомъ.

### EXERCISE XVII.

With whom is your brother?—He is with my father.—Is the modest pupil with the master?—No, he is not with him, but with his own brother.—Do you see the bootmaker with my new boot?—I do not see him, but my brother does. With whom does the kind prince speak?—He speaks with my kind old father.—Whom do you see?—I see my cook with a piece of bacon.—Whose bacon has he?—He has that of my neighbour, the baker.—By whom is this table made? It is made by this honest joiner.—What has this boy?—He has a pie with cheese.—With whom does he speak?—He speaks with the kind master's modest pupil.—Do you see the baker with the white bread?—I do not see the baker with the white bread, but I see the young man with the pie. With which pie?—With the confectioner's pie.—Has he not my wooden coffer?—He has (it) not.—Do you not see the carpenter with the iron hammer?—I see him with his brother.—Which sack has the peasant?—He has the miller's new sack.—Of which boy do you speak?—I speak of that pretty boy, whom you see.—Of which ship does the captain speak?—He speaks of his neighbour's pretty ship. Which neighbour?—The rich banker.—Do you speak of your shoe or of mine?—I speak neither of mine nor of yours, but of my shoemaker's shoe.—Which polecat has he?—He has the miller's polecat.

## EXERCISE XVIII.

Which tea do you like?—I like black tea.—Which tea do you speak of with the merchant?—Of mine.—Of what does he speak with that rich merchant?—He speaks with him of his son, who is his clerk.—Does he speak with him also?—No, he does not speak with him.—Has he the white bread with cheese?—With what?—With the young merchant's good cheese?—He has no bread with cheese, but has a pie with honey.—By whom is the steel nail given to thee? By the industrious blacksmith.—Does he see the eagle? He sees the boy with the eagle.—Has not the blacksmith a new iron nail and an old wooden hammer?—He has nothing.—Of which lantern do you speak?—I speak of that of the king's sentry.—With which sentry is your brother? With the kind king's sentry.—Do you see me with my young brother?—I see you, but do not see your brother. To whom does he give his large house with the beautiful garden?—He gives his (own) house with the garden to his son.—Of which son do you speak?—Of the one that has a castle with a large yard.—Are your new houses large?—No, they are not, but those of my brother are. By whom is this castle given to the prince?—It is given to the prince by the king.—I speak of his garden, but he speaks of his house.—Thou speakest of the castle, of the yard, and his ship.—The house is mine, but the garden is his; the garden is thine, but the castle is his.—These houses are yours, but those are mine.—Has he your hammers?—No, he has his own hammers only.

---

## ELEVENTH LESSON.

## Одѣнадцатый Урокъ.

Masculine Plural, Множественное Число Мужскаго  
Рода.

There are two numbers in the Russian language :—

The Singular, Единственное Число.  
The Plural, Множественное Число.

Masculine Substantives have in the plural, as in the singular, two declensions—hard and soft.

Nominative, { Old gardens. Старые сады.	Nom. { Ancient kings, Heroes. Древние короли, Герои.
Genitive, Старыхъ садовъ.	Gen. Древнихъ королевъ, Героевъ.
Dative, Старымъ садамъ.	Dat. Древнимъ королямъ, Героямъ.
Accusative, Старые сады.	Acc. Древнихъ королевъ, Героевъ.
Instrumental, Старыми садами.	Inst. Древними королями, Героями.
Prepositional, Старыхъ садахъ.	Prep. Древнихъ королевъ, Героевъ.

According to the above examples are declined all regular masculine nouns in the plural, subject however to the rules of permutation of vowels, of which the following are the most important :

1. Substantives ending in ѣ, preceded by г, к, х, ж, ч, ш, щ, form their nominative plural in и instead of ы.

2. Substantives in ѣ, preceded by ж, ч, ш, щ, take in the genitive plural the inflexion of ей instead of овъ.



## FIRST DECLENSION.

## TABLE OF DECLENSIONS.—Таблица Склонений.

*Plural.* — Множественное Число.

Cases. Падежи.	<i>Substantive.</i> Имя Существительное.		<i>Adjective.</i> — Имя Прилагательное.			
			<i>Full termination.</i>		<i>Ascoropated termination.</i>	
			Hard Declension.	Soft Declension.	Hard Declension.	Soft Declension.
Nom.	ы (и, а).	и, (я) и.	ые.	ие, би.	ы.	и.
Gen.	овъ (ей).	евъ, ей.	ыхъ.	ихъ, ыхъ.	ыхъ.	ихъ.
Dat.	амъ.	ямъ, ямъ.	ымъ.	имъ, ымъ.	ымъ.	имъ.
Like the Genitive or the Nominative.						
Acc.						
Inst.	ами.	ями, ями.	ыми.	ими, ыми.	ыми.	ими.
Prep.	ахъ.	яхъ, яхъ.	ыхъ.	ихъ, ыхъ.	ыхъ.	ихъ.

I have,  
We have,

У меня есть.  
У насъ есть.

OBS. 1.—Есть, when expressing possession, is used also for the plural, as :

Have the merchants ships?  
They have ships.

Есть ли у купцовъ кораблі?  
У нихъ есть кораблі.

They, Они.

OBS. 2.—Они, when with a preposition, takes the letter н in oblique cases.

The masters (teachers),  
The candlesticks,  
The booksellers,  
The cloaks,  
The neighbours,  
The merchants,  
The umbrellas,  
The hammers,  
The joiners,  
The oxen,  
The captains,  
The bakers,  
The knives,  
The smokers,

Учителѣ and Учители.  
Подсвѣчники.  
Книгопродавцы.  
Плащи.  
Сосѣди, gen. сосѣдей.  
Купцы.  
Зѣвники.  
Молотки.  
Столяры.  
Быки.  
Капитаны.  
Булочники.  
Ножі.  
Курильщики.

OBS. 3.—Substantives ending in ѣ, which take in the nominative plural а or я instead of ы, have the accent generally on the last syllable, as :

The house,  
The sleeve,  
The doctor,  
The bell,  
The cook,  
The town,

Домъ, plur. дома.  
Рукавъ, plur. рукава.  
Докторъ, plur. докторѣ.  
Колоколъ, plur. колоколѣ.  
Поваръ, plur. повара.  
Городъ, plur. города.

OBS. 4.—Some homonymous words have more than one termination in the nominative plural, *i. e.* **Ы**, **а** and **Я**, as :

The tooth,	Зубъ,	plur.	{ Зубы (of animate beings). Зубья (of combs, saws, etc.).
The leaf, sheet,	Листъ,	plur.	{ Листы (of paper). Листья (of plants).
The man,	} Мужъ,	plur.	{ Мужі, men, (Slavonic).* Мужья, the husbands.
The husband,			
The bellows,	} Мѣхъ,	plur.	{ Мѣхи, the bellows. Мѣха, the furs.
The fur,			
The son,	Сынъ,		{ Сыны (Slavonic).* Сыновья, the sons.
The bread,	} Хлѣбъ,	plur.	{ Хлѣбы, the loaves of bread. Хлѣба, corn.
The corn,			
The flower,	} Цвѣтъ,	plur.	{ Цвѣты, the flowers. Цвѣта, the colours.
The colour,			
The skull,	} Черепъ,	plur.	{ Черепы, the skulls. Черепья, the shells.
The shell,			

OBS. 5.—Some substantives take for the plural both **Ы** and **а**, without affecting the meaning, as :

The houses,	{ Дѣмы, Домѣ.
-------------	------------------

OBS. 6.—Some substantives, employed in a collective sense, take **а** or **Я** for the plural, as :

The root,	Корень, plural коренья.
The house,	Домъ, plural домѣ.
The hair,	Волосъ, plural волосѣ.

OBS. 7.—Collective nouns, whether animate or inanimate, have always the accusative like the genitive: **вѣйско**, 'army,' accusative **вѣйско**.

How many sons have you ? Сколькѣ у васъ сыновѣй ?

---

\* As 'sons of the country,' }  
children of the soil, } сыны отечества.

OBS. 8.—Most substantives ending in ёнокъ form their plural in ята or ата, as :

The child,	ребёнокъ ;	plural,	ребята.
The calf,	телёнокъ ;	plural,	телята.
The bear's cub,	медвѣженокъ ;	plural,	медвѣжата.

OBS. 9.—In the declension of the plural of substantives ending in анинъ or янинъ, аринъ or яринъ, the last syllable ин is omitted, and they take for the plural e instead of ы.

The citizen,	гражданинъ ;	plural,	граждане.
The gentleman,	дворянинъ ;	plural,	дворяне.
The peasant,	крестьянинъ ;	plural,	крестьяне.
A Bulgarian,	Болгаринъ ;	plural,	Болгаре.
A lord, gentleman,	бояринъ ;	plural,	боаре.
A gipsy,	цыганъ ;	plural,	цыгане.

OBS. 10.—The substantive сосѣдь, 'the neighbour,' and холопъ, 'the servant,' have for the plural сосѣди, холопи.

OBS. 11.—The substantives братъ, 'the brother;' хозяинъ, 'the master;' другъ, 'the friend;' сынъ, 'the son;' шуринъ, 'the brother-in-law;' have for the plural братья, хозяева, друзья, сыновья, шурыя.

The sentry,	часовой ;	genitive, часоваго ; plural,	часовые.
The tailor,	портной ;	genitive, портнаго ; plural,	портные.
The waiter,	половой ?	genitive, половаго ; plural,	половые.

OBS. 12.—Substantives ending in жъ, чъ, шъ, щъ, take ей for the genitive plural, as :

The husband,	мужъ ;	plural, мужья ; genitive, мужей.
The cloak,	плащъ ;	plural, плащи ; genitive, плащей.
The key,	ключъ ;	plural, ключи ; genitive, ключей.
The cabin,	шалашъ ;	plural, шалаши ; genitive, шалашей.

Obs. 13.—Some few words take, in the genitive plural, the inflexion of the nominative singular, as :

The hair,	волосъ ;	plural, волоса ;	genitive, волосъ.
The soldier,	солдатъ ;	plural, солдаты ;	genitive, солдатъ.
A pood (weight),	пудъ ;	plural, пуды ;	genitive, пудъ.
One time (once),	разъ ;	plural, разы ;	genitive, разъ.
The boot,	сапогъ ;	plural, сапоги ;	genitive, сапогъ.
The eye,	глазъ ;	plural, глаза ;	genitive, глазъ.

Obs. 14.—Substantives forming their plural irregularly will be enumerated hereafter.

The friends,	Друзья.
The good friends,	Добрые друзья.
Russians,	Русские.
Frenchmen,	Французы.
I speak of Frenchmen,	Я говорю о Французахъ.
Englishmen, }	Англичане.
The English, }	

Whom did you see ?	Кого вы видѣли ?
I saw Englishmen.	Я видѣлъ англичанъ.
Of whom do you speak ?	О комъ говорите вы ?
Of peasants.	О крестьянахъ.

The pencils,	Карандаши.
The noses,	Носы.
The fire, the fires,	Огонь, огни.
The castles,	Замки.
The locks,	Замки.
The hammers,	Молоты.
Black horse,	Вороный конь.
Grey horse,	Серый конь.
The ships,	Корабли.

Have you my old cloaks ?  
I have not your old cloaks, I have  
my new ones.

У васъ ли мои старыя плащи ?  
У меня нѣтъ вашихъ, у меня свои  
новыя.

*Singular.**Masculine.*

My, mine, мой, свой.  
 Thy, thine, твой, свой.  
 His, *ero*,\* (feminine *ся*), свой.  
 Our, ours, нашъ, свой.  
 Your, yours, вашъ, свой.

His cloaks,  
 Our houses,  
 Their gardens,

*Plural.**Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.*

My, mine, мой, свой.  
 Thy, thine, твой, свой.  
 Our, ours, наши, свой.  
 Your, yours, ваши, свой.  
 Their, theirs, ихъ, свой.

Его плащъ.  
 Наши дома.  
 Ихъ сады.

## Where? Гдѣ?

Where are your candlesticks?  
 Which candlesticks?  
 The golden ones.

Гдѣ ваші подсвѣчники?  
 Какіе подсвѣчники?  
 Золотые.

What? (plural),

Какіе?

Which?

{ Какіе?  
 { Которые?

These those,

Эти, тѣ.

What sort of eyes as this young man?

Какіе глаза у этого молодого человека?

He has blue eyes.

У него голубые глаза.

The eye, the eyes.

Глазъ, глаза.

Has the rich inn-keeper large gardens?

Есть ли у богатаго трактирщика большіе сады.

No, he has (them) not.

Нѣтъ, у него ихъ нѣтъ.

OBS. 15.—*It* being rendered in Russian by the third personal pronoun онъ, *them* will be ихъ.

*Those of*, as *that of*, is rendered by the repetition of the substantive, as:

Have they the horses of the Russians?

У нихъ ли лошади Русскихъ?

No, they have those of the English.

Нѣтъ, у нихъ лошади Англичанъ.

\* The possessive pronoun *ero*, '*his*,' must not be confounded with *ero* the genitive and accusative of the third person. pron. онъ.

## Whose? (plural), Чѣй.

Whose loaves (of bread) have you ?  
I have those of the rich bakers.

Чѣй у васъ хлѣбы?  
У меня хлѣбы богатыхъ булочни-  
ковъ.

Which shoes have you, these or those ?  
I have neither these nor those.

Какіе башмаки у васъ, эти или тѣ?  
У меня нѣтъ ни этихъ ни тѣхъ.

They, them,

Онѣ, ихъ (нихъ).

These ones, those ones,

Эти, тѣ.

Genitive,	Of these, of those,	Этихъ, тѣхъ.
Dative,	To these, to those,	Этимъ, тѣмъ.
Accusative,	Like the genitive or the nominative.	
Instrumental,	By these, by those,	Этими, тѣми.
Prepositional,	Of these, of those,	Объ этихъ, о тѣхъ.

Nominative,	Which, (plural),	Которые, какіе.
Genitive,	Of which,	Которыхъ, какихъ.
Dative,	To which,	Которымъ, какимъ.
Accusative,	Which,	Like the genitive or the nominat.
Instrumental,	By which,	Которыми, какими.
Prepositional,	Of which,	О которыхъ, какихъ.

NOTE.—*Men,*

Люди.

*People,*

{ Народаъ.  
{ Люди.

Obs. 16.—The word 'man,' человекъ, forms an irregular plural—люди, genitive людей, etc.

Of which men do you speak ?  
Of the ones, whom you see.

О какихъ людяхъ говорите вы ?  
О тѣхъ, которыхъ вы видите.

Those which,  
The ones whom,  
To seek, }  
To be seeking, }

Тѣ, которые.  
Тѣ, которыхъ.  
Искать. I. 2.

Whom are you seeking ?  
I am seeking these men.

Кого вы ищете ?  
Я ищу этихъ людей.

I seek, } я ищу.  
I am seeking,

Thou seekest, ты ищешь.

He seeks, онъ ищетъ.

We seek, мы ищемъ.

You seek, вы ищете.

They seek, они ищутъ.

Have you many horses ?

I have not many.

Много ли у васъ коней ?

У меня не много.

### EXERCISE XIX.

What has the shepherd ?—He has oxen, goats and asses. What oxen has he ?—He has large and young oxen.—Have the merchants velvet ?—They have no velvet, but the merchants, who have the beautiful stockings, have good velvet also.—Do not you see those geese with the beautiful young pigeons ?—I do not see them, but I see here the old eagles, which he sees also.—What do you seek ?—I seek my pencils.—With whom do you speak ?—I speak with my friends.—Do you like your friends ?—Yes, I do (like them). Have the tailors their own thimbles ?—They have their own.—Where have you my knives ?—I have them not, I seek them.—What have the carpenters ?—They have the joiners' iron hammers.—Do you not seek the asses of the Italian ?—No, I seek those of the miller.—Do you like horses ?—I do.—Have the rich tailors the cloaks ?—No, they have them not, the inn-keepers have them.—What have the brave captains ?—They have good soldiers.—What does the rich banker seek ?—He seeks his leather shoes.—Has he many brothers ?—He has many (of them).—Has he not your pretty handkerchiefs ?—He has not mine, but his own. What handkerchiefs have the merchants ?—They have the bad handkerchiefs of the foreigners.—Which foreigners ? The ones, whom you do not like.—Have the sailors good ships ?—The sailors have no good ships.—Who has them ? The rich captains have them.—Have the boys pretty umbrel-



las?—Yes, they have.—What have your booksellers?—They have fine houses.—What are their houses?—Their houses are large.

### EXERCISE XX.

Has the joiner iron nails?—No, he has not nails.—What houses have they?—They have pretty houses.—What castles have the Frenchmen?—They have no castles, but have houses with yards.—Whose iron hammers has he? He has those of the joiners.—Have these pupils good masters?—They have excellent masters.—Whose biscuits has the baker?—He has those of his neighbours, the confectioners.—Have your friends my fine knives?—They have not your knives, they have those of the cooks only.—Whose cooks are these men?—Mine.—Has he wooden tables? Yes, he has plenty of them.—Who has the rich merchants' gold candlesticks?—Nobody has them.—They have them. What horses does your friend like?—He likes black horses, but does not like grey ones.—Who gives him the pies? The rich merchant's cooks.—What have their brothers? They have wooden coffers, large copper lanterns and pretty silver candlesticks.—What bags have these peasants? These peasants have no bags, but our cooks have (some). Are you seeking the soldier's tobacco or the smoker's?—I seek neither the soldier's nor the smoker's tobacco, I seek my own.—Have you many boots?—I have no boots, I have shoes only.—Have the cocks and the pigeons barley? They have a little barley.—What has this officer?—Which officer?—The one whom the colonel does not like.—He has nothing.—Has he his own boots?—He has not his own, he has the bootmaker's boots only.—Have you any shoes? Yes, I have.

## TWELFTH LESSON.—Двѣнадцатый Урокъ.

*Augmentative and Diminutive Nouns.*

OBS. 1.—Masculine augmentative nouns have the termination in *ище* or *йна*, which represent the object in a magnified form, sometimes also express contempt for, or deformity in the object, as :

Мужикъ, a peasant,	{ Мужичище, a big peasant.
	{ Мужичина, a big, coarse peasant.
Домъ, a house,	{ Домище, a big house.
	{ Домйна, a big, ugly house.

As the above terminations are not of the masculine gender, they will be treated hereafter.

Masculine diminutives have the following terminations :

икъ, окъ, екъ, ецъ,

which represent the object diminished in size, as :

A table, столъ,	diminutive	Столикъ,	little table.
A shed, сарайъ,	„	Сараецъ.	little shed.
A horse, конь,	„	Конёкъ,	little horse.
A town, городъ,	„	Городокъ,	little town.
A man, человекъ,	„	Человѣчекъ,	{ a little man, { a manikin.

OBS. 2.—The diminutive full terminations for adjectives are : *енькій* or *енькой*, and *онькій* or *онькой*. These terminations indicate a diminution of quality or a softening of the force of their primitives.

More detailed explanations of augmentative and diminutive nouns will be given further on.

Nominative,	We, you, they,	Мы, вы, онѣ.
Genitive,	Of us, of you, of them,	Насъ, васъ, ихъ (нихъ).
Dative,	To us, to you, to them.	Намъ, вамъ, имъ (нимъ).
Accusative,	Us, you, them,	Насъ, васъ, ихъ (нихъ).
Instrumental,	By us, by you, by them,	Нѣми, вами, ими (ними).
Prepositional,	Of us, of you, of them,	О насъ, о васъ, о нихъ.

Obs. 3.—То ихъ, имъ, ими, when with a preposition, the letter н is prefixed, as нихъ, нимъ, ними

Both, (the one and the	{ Оба.
other),	{ Тотъ и другой.
One, the one,	Одинъ.
The other, another,	Другой.

Have you the gold or silver thimble? Золотой ли наперстокъ у васъ или серебряный ?

I have both, { У меня тотъ и другой.  
У меня оба.

Both, plur. (those and	{ Оба.
the others),	{ Тѣ и другіе.
Neither (neither that	{
nor the other),	{ Ни тотъ ни другой.
Neither, plur. (neither	{
those nor the others),	{ Ни тѣ ни другіе.

*Singular.*—The other.

Nominative,	Другой.
Genitive,	Другаго.
Dative,	Другому.
Accusative,	Другой, другаго.
Instrumental,	Другимъ.
Prepositional,	О другомъ.

*Plural.*—The others.

Nominative,	Другіе.
Genitive,	Другихъ.
Dative,	Другимъ.
Accusative,	Другіе, другихъ.
Instrumental,	Другими.
Prepositional,	О другихъ.

Красивый садъ,

*Singular.*

Nominative,	Красивый садъ.
Genitive,	Красиваго сада.
Dative,	Красивому саду.
Accusative,	Красивый садъ.
Instrumental,	Красивымъ садомъ.
Prepositional,	О красивомъ садѣ.

A pretty garden.

*Plural.*

Nominative,	Красивые сады.
Genitive,	Красивыхъ садовъ.
Dative,	Красивымъ садамъ.
Accusative,	Красивые сады.
Instrumental,	Красивыми садами.
Prepositional,	О красивыхъ садахъ.

Obs. 4.—According to the above example are declined all regular substantives and adjectives of hard termination. In names of animate beings, however, the accusative is like the genitive, as :

Ан ох, Быкъ ; accusative singular, Быка ; accusative plural, Быковъ.

### *Exceptions.*

The following substantives—зубъ, ‘a tooth ;’ чѣрепъ, ‘a scull ;’ клинъ, ‘a wedge ;’ колъ, ‘a stake ;’ стулъ, ‘a chair ;’ бодъ, ‘a felly ;’ братъ, ‘a brother ;’ листь, ‘a leaf ;’ лоскутъ, ‘a rag, scrap ;’ пруть, ‘a twig ;’ полъзъ, ‘a slide ;’ брусъ, ‘a beam ;’ колось, ‘an ear (of corn) ;’ батогъ, ‘a rod ;’ клюкъ, ‘a lock ;’ крюкъ, ‘a hook ;’ сукъ, ‘a knot (in wood) ;’ камень, ‘a stone ;’ корень, ‘a root ;’ уголь, ‘coal ;’ воддырь, ‘a boil’—form their plural irregularly, *i.e.* nom. in *ья*, gen. *ьевъ*, dat. *ьямъ*, inst. *ьями*, prep. *ьяхъ*. The gutturals *г*, *к*, before *ь*, changing into *ж*, *ч*, as : батогья, клочья, крючья, сучья.

Obs. 5.—In all the above substantives the accent, if on the first syllable, passes to the middle one, except in the word уголь, which preserves the accent on the first syllable, as :

уголь, plural уголья.

Obs. 6.—In a partitive sense, батогъ, крюкъ, камень, корень, form also their plural in *и*, as батогѣи, крюкѣи, камнѣи.

Obs. 7.—Братъ, свать, сынъ, for the gen. and acc. plur. have also братѣи, сватовѣи, сыновѣи. Листы, sheets (of paper), gen. листовъ.

What does the banker seek ?  
He is seeking his pocket-book.

Что ищетъ банкиръ ?  
Онъ ищетъ свой бумажникъ.

Why?

Зачѣмъ?

Wherefore?

Почему?

Because.

†Потому что.

OBS. 8.—Потому что—literally, ‘for that that.’

Why does he seek him?

Зачѣмъ онъ его ищетъ?

Because he wants him.

†Потому что онъ ему надобенъ

(нуженъ).

OBS. 9.—Надобенъ, нуженъ,—literally means ‘necessary.’

I want, I need,  
(It is necessary to me). }

†Мнѣ надобно.

There are,

Есть, (impers. verb.)

*There are* many men, whom  
no one likes.(Есть) много людей, которыхъ  
никто не любитъ.

OBS. 10.—Есть, ‘there are,’ is usually omitted, although understood.

I was speaking,	Я говорѣлъ.	We were speaking,	Мы говорѣли.
I did speak,	Я говорѣлъ.	We did speak,	Мы говорѣли.
I spoke,	Я говорѣлъ.	We spoke,	Мы говорѣли.
I have or had spoken,	Я говорѣлъ.	We have or had spoken,	Мы говорѣли.

I saw,	Я видѣлъ.	We saw,	Мы видѣли.
I did see,	Я видѣлъ.	We did see,	Мы видѣли.
I have seen, etc.	Я видѣлъ.	We have seen, etc.	Мы видѣли.

I was giving,	Я давалъ.
We were giving,	Мы давали.

I gave,	Я далъ.
Thou gavest,	Ты далъ.
He gave,	Онъ далъ.
We gave,	Мы дали.
You gave,	Вы дали.
They gave,	Они дали.

OBS. 11.—There is only one past tense in the Russian verbs. Thus, 'I did see, I saw, I have seen this man,' are rendered in Russian by

Я видѣлъ этого человека.

OBS. 12.—The three persons of the past tense in the singular end in *лъ* (fem. *ла*, neut. *ло*), and the three persons of the plural, for all genders, end in *ли*: the person is distinguished by the personal pronoun which precedes the verb.

The shepherd,	Пастухъ.
Merchandise (goods),	Товаръ.
The emperor,	Императоръ.
The czar,	Царъ.
A count,	Графъ.
The baron,	Баронъ.
The mendicant, beggar,	Нищий.
The market,	Рынокъ, genitive, рынка.

John,	Павъ.	Peter,	Пётръ.
Charles,	Карлъ.	Andrew,	Андрей.
Alexis,	Алексей.	Joseph,	Иосифъ, Осипъ.
Basil,	Василій.	Constantine,	Константинъ.
Alexander,	Александръ.	Paul,	Павелъ.

Grand duke,	Великій князь.
Hemp, конопель ;	genitive, Конопля.
Curious, inquisitive,	Любопытный.
The flax, лёвъ ;	genitive, Льну, and льна.
Wise,	Мудрый.

Where did you see his brothers ?	Гдѣ вы видѣли его братьевъ ?
I saw them in the market.	Я видѣлъ ихъ на рынкѣ.

OBS. 13.—The preposition *въ*, 'in,' having the strict meaning of 'inside,' the Russians say, *on the market* instead of *in the market*.

## EXERCISE XXI.

Are you seeking your boots or mine?—I seek neither yours nor mine, I seek those of the count.—Which count? The one who has excellent gardens.—What have these beggars?—They have old shoes.—What tickets does he seek?—He does not seek tickets, he seeks his pocket-books. Do you like this kind prince?—I like not only this kind prince, but his sons also.—Does he like this merchant's sons?—Yes, he likes them.—To whom did you give your pencils, to masters (teachers) or pupils?—I gave them neither to masters nor pupils, I gave them to my diligent brother.—Did you speak with the baron?—No, I did not speak with him, but I spoke with the count.—Does not he see you?—He does not see me.—Does his brother see my steel knives?—No, he does not (see them).—What oxen have the shepherds?—The shepherds have no oxen, they have rams and asses only.—Have you blue or red velvet? I have neither blue nor red velvet, I have green satin only. Did you not see the banker's beautiful horses?—I did not see his horses.—Do you see the masters (teachers) with their diligent pupils?—I do not see the masters, but I see their sons and their brothers.—Which is your tea?—My tea is that with sugar.—Have you my cloaks or those of the tailor?—I have neither.—What has he?—He has the old boots of the young sailor.—What umbrellas have you? I have blue, black, white and yellow silk umbrellas.

## EXERCISE XXII.

Of which emperor were you speaking?—I spoke of the emperor who has many brave soldiers.—What did the industrious sailors see?—They saw fine ships with white

sails.—With whom did you speak?—I spoke with the sons of the rich merchants.—Have you seen this merchant's pretty houses?—I saw only those of his neighbours.—Did you speak with father Constantine?—No, but I spoke with his sons.—Why did you not speak to either Alexander or Constantine?—Because they did not speak to his father. What have their friends?—They have his brother's young pigeons.—Who has spoken to the brothers of your friends? Nobody has spoken to them.—What oxen has the butcher? Which butcher?—The one whom you do not like.—The butcher, whom I do not like, has no oxen; he has rams only.—Where did he see the emperor with the sons of the grand duke?—He saw them in the king's palace.—Does he like eagles and pigeons?—No, he does not like eagles, but pigeons only.—Where does he see the peasants?—He sees them in (на) the market.—What merchandise have these rich merchants?—They have tea, sugar, coffee, honey, wax, flax and hemp.—Have they plenty of flax and hemp?—They have enough flax, but little hemp.—Why did you not give them a little tobacco?—Because they do not like it.

---

### THIRTEENTH LESSON.—Трина́дцатый Уро́къ.

The belt,	Поясъ.
The comb,	Гребень.
A small comb,	Маленький гребень, гребешокъ.
The glass, tumbler,	Стаканъ.
The mouth (of animals),	Ротъ, genitive, рта.
The nose,	Носъ.
The eye,	Глазъ, plur. глаза́, gen. plur. <i>глазъ</i> .
The forest, wood,	Лѣсъ, plural, лѣса́.
The horseman	Всадникъ.



OBS. 1.—It has already been remarked that many substantives ending in *ъ, ъ, ѣ* form their plural in *а, я*, instead of *ы, и*, as :

*Домъ*, 'the house ;' *Якорь*, 'the anchor ;' *Край*, 'the edge.

*Plural.*

Nominative,	<i>домá,</i>	<i>якоря́,</i>	<i>края́.</i>
Genitive,	<i>домо́въ,</i>	<i>якорей,</i>	<i>краёвъ.</i>
Dative,	<i>дома́мъ,</i>	<i>якоря́мъ,</i>	<i>края́мъ.</i>
Accusative,	<i>домá,</i>	<i>якоря́,</i>	<i>края́.</i>
Instrumental,	<i>дома́ми,</i>	<i>якоря́ми.</i>	<i>края́ми.</i>
Prepositional,	<i>о дома́хъ,</i>	<i>якоря́хъ,</i>	<i>края́хъ.</i>

OBS. 2.—According to the above examples are declined the following substantives, of which nearly all, as shown in brackets, have also in the nominative plural their regular termination in *ы* or *и* :

A boar,	<i>Бо́ровъ, (ы and а).</i>
A millstone,	<i>Жёрновъ.</i>
A pannier,	<i>Ку́зовъ.</i>
A sleeve,	<i>Рука́въ.</i>
A woodcock,	<i>Тётере́въ.</i>
An island,	<i>Островъ.</i>
A stall,	<i>Хлѣ́въ.</i>
A gutter, spout,	<i>Жѣло́въ, (ы and а).</i>
A hamper,	<i>Ко́ровъ, (ы and а).</i>
A cellar,	<i>По́гребъ.</i>
The bread,	<i>Хлѣ́бъ, (ы and а).</i>
A vulture,	<i>Ястре́бъ, (ы and а).</i>
The farming,	<i>Откупъ, (ы and а).</i>
A whip,	<i>Шѣле́въ, (ы and а).</i>
A room, attic.	<i>Тѣремъ, (ы and а).</i>
An order (decoration),	<i>Орде́въ, (ы and а).</i>
A midshipman,	<i>Ми́чманъ, (ы and а).</i>

and other dissyllabic foreign nouns ending in *манъ*.

The bell,	<i>Ко́локолъ.</i>
A cupola,	<i>Ку́полъ, (ы and а).</i>
A ramrod,	<i>Шо́мполъ, (ы and а).</i>
The evening,	<i>Вѣ́черъ.</i>
A cook,	<i>По́варъ.</i>

and foreign words, having an unaccented termination in еръ, оръ, as :

Ка́теръ, 'a cutter;' докторъ, 'doctor;' etc.

The year,	Годъ, (ы and а).
The town,	Городъ.
The honey,	Мёдъ, (ы and а).
The cold,	Холодъ.
The age,	Возрастъ, (ы and а).
A flower, colour,	Цвѣтъ, (ы and а).
A form, shape, image,	Образъ, (ы and а).
The voice,	Голосъ.
A body, corps,	Корпусъ, (ы and а).
A forest,	Лѣсъ.
A sail,	Парусъ, (ы and а).
The belt, girdle,	Поясъ, (ы and а).
A guard, watchman,	Сторожъ.
The shore,	Берегъ.
A meadow,	Лугъ.
A curtain,	Полотъ.
The horn,	Рогъ, (и and а).
The snow,	Снѣгъ, (и and а).
A rick (of hay),	Стогъ, (и and а).
The plane, barge,	Стругъ, (и and а).
The side, flank,	Бокъ.
A century, age,	Вѣкъ, (и and а).
The fur, bellows	Мѣхъ, (и and а).
The bowels, intestines,	Потрохъ, (и and а).
An edge, country,	Край.
A bill of exchange,	Бѣксель, (и and я).
A monogram,	Бѣзель, (и and я).
A cracknel,	Крѣндель, (и and я).
A stamp,	Штѣмпель, (и and я).
Wing of a house,	Флигель, (и and я).
A surgeon,	Лѣкарь, (и and я).
A writer,	Писарь, (и and я).
An anchor,	Якорь, (и and я).
A hunter,	Егеръ, (и and я).

Have the cooks my knives ?	У поваровъ ли мой ножъ ?
They have them not.	Онѣ не у нихъ.
Have they seen the boars ?	Видѣли ли онѣ борововъ ?
Where are the boars ?	Гдѣ боровы ?
I see only one boar.	Я вижу только одного борова.
A German,      Germans,	Нѣмецъ,      нѣмцы.
A Turk,          Turks,	Турокъ,      турки.
An Italian,      Italians,	Итальянецъ,      итальянцы.
A Spaniard,      Spaniards,	Испанецъ,      испанцы.
A Russian,      Russians,	Русскій,      русскіе.
An American,      Americans,	Американецъ,      американцы.

Obs. 3.—The Russians do not commence the names of nations with capital letters.

Give (imperative),	Дай, plural, дайте.
Give me the cloak.	Дайте мнѣ плащъ.

If you please, (pray),	Пожалуйста, пожалуйста.
To grant, to confer, }	
To present, to give, }	Пожаловать.

Give me this, if you please.	Дайте мнѣ это пожалуйста.
(Pray, give me this).	Пожалуйте мнѣ это.
Give me some sugar, if you please.	{ Дайте мнѣ, пожалуйста сахару.
	{ Пожалуйте мнѣ сахару.

Obs. 4.—Пожалуйте, imperative from *пожаловать*, is used extensively by Russians for politeness' sake, in place of *to give, to come, etc.*, and also in order to avoid a lengthy phrase with *пожалуйста*, thus :

Come to me if you please, or }	Приходите пожалуйста ко мнѣ,
pray come to me,	

may be just as well rendered by *пожалуйте ко мнѣ*.

Will you have a piece of ham ?	Хотите ли вы кусокъ окорока ?
Yes, if you please.	Да, пожалуйста.

To will,	}	Хотѣть.
To wish, to want,		
To have a mind to,		
To know,		Знать.

Conjugation of the present tense of the verbs Я хочу, 'I want;' and Я знаю, 'I know:—

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
1. Я хочу,	Я знаю.	1. Мы хотимъ,	Мы знаемъ.
2. Ты хочешь,	Ты знаешь.	2. Вы хотите,	Вы знаете.
3. Онъ хочетъ,	Онъ знаетъ.	3. Они хотятъ,	Они знаютъ.
He has no cloth.		У него нѣтъ сукна.	
Have you good velvets ?		Есть ли у васъ хорошіи бархаты ?	
I have no good velvet.		У меня нѣтъ хорошаго бархату.	

Obs. 5.—Нѣтъ, 'no,' placed before a substantive, governs the genitive.

There,	Тамъ.
Thence,	Туда.

### THE CARDINAL NUMERALS.—Количественныя Числа.

One, the one, a	}	Одинъ.
Alone,		
Ones, the ones,	}	Одни.
Alone,		

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
Nominative,	Одинъ.	Nominative,	Одни.
Genitive,	Одногo.	Genitive,	Однихъ.
Dative,	Одному.	Dative,	Однимъ.
Accusative,	Одинъ, одногo.	Accusative,	Однихъ, однихъ.
Instrumental,	Однимъ.	Instrumental,	Одними.
Prepositional,	Объ одномъ.	Prepositional,	Объ однихъ.
Some say, this and others that.		Одни говорятъ это а другіе то.	

How much ? }	Скóлько, governs genitive.
How many ? }	
Some, others,	Однѣ, другіе.
How many tables have you ?	Скóлько столóвъ у васъ ?
I have one table.	У меня однѣ столъ.
How many men (persons) do you see ?	Скóлько человѣкъ видите вы ?
I see one man.	Я ви́жу одного человѣка.

Two, 'два;' three, 'три;' four, 'четыре.'

OBS. 6.—The numerals два, три and четы́ре, when in the nominative, are always followed by substantives in the genitive singular.

How many writers have you ?	Скóлько у васъ писаре́й ?
I have two writers.	У меня два пи́сателя.
I have as many as you have.	У меня сто́лько скóлько у васъ.

As much as, }	Сто́лько, скóлько.
As many as, }	
Three pieces,	Три куса́.
Four pieces,	Четы́ре куса́.

OBS. 7.—Substantives following any of the above three numerals never have the inflexion у or ю in the genitive, but always а or я.

OBS. 8.—When a substantive with два, три, четы́ре, is preceded by an adjective, the latter may be in the nominative or genitive plural, as :

Three rich men spoke.	{ Три хоро́шие челове́ка говори́ли.
	{ Три хоро́шихъ челове́ка говори́ло.

OBS. 9.—The nominative, as shown in the above example, is used with personal, and the genitive with impersonal verbs.

There were three new tables.	{ Были три хоро́шие столá.
	{ Было три хоро́шихъ столá.
They have four houses,	У нихъ четы́ре до́ма.

Both, Оба.

The Declension of the numerals два, три, четыре, and the definite pronoun оба :—

Nominative,	два,	три,	четыре,	оба.
Genitive,	двухъ,	трѣхъ,	четырёхъ,	обоихъ.
Dative,	двумъ,	трѣмъ,	четыремъ,	обоимъ.
Accusative,	Like the nominative or genitive,			
Instrumental,	двумя,	трёмя,	четырьмя,	обоими.
Prepositional,	о двухъ,	трѣхъ,	четырёхъ,	обоихъ.

I see both your friends.

Я вижу обоихъ вашихъ друзей.

Do you see the shepherd with the three oxen ?

Видите ли вы пастуха съ тремя быками.

On both shores.

На обоихъ берегахъ.

The painter,

Живописецъ.

The sculptor,

Ваятель.

The shore, bank,

Берегъ.

The dinner,

Обѣдъ.

The breakfast,

Завтракъ.

The supper,

Ужинъ.

The luncheon,

Полдникъ.

Rouble,

Рубль.

Do you know your lesson ?

Знаете ли вы свой урокъ ?

We know it.

Мы его знаемъ.

Who knows ?

Кто знаетъ ?

Nobody knows.

Никто не знаетъ.

A Dane, Danes,

Датчанинъ, датчане.

A Swede, Swedes,

Шведъ, шведы.

A Swiss, Swiss,

Швейцарецъ, швейцарцы.

A Norwegian, Norwegians,

Норвежецъ, норвежцы.

Five, пять ; six, шесть ; seven, семь ; eight, восемь, (о́семь) ;  
nine, де́вять ; ten, де́сять.

Obs. 10.—The cardinal numbers пять, шесть, etc., govern the genitive plural, and are declined as follows :

Nom.	пять,	шесть,	семь,	восемь,	девять,	десять.
Gen.	пяти́,	шести́,	семи́,	восьми́,	девяти́,	десяти́.
Dat.			Like the genitive,			
Acc.			Like the nominative,			
Inst.	пятью́.	шестью́,	семью́,	восемью́,	девятью́,	десятью́.
Prep.			Like the genitive.			

Have you five oxen ?

I have only one.

Only,  
Nothing but, }  
From,

Actual, present, }  
True, real,  
Genuine,  
Faithful, true, correct,  
False,  
An acquaintance,

Under,

Where is the boy ?  
He is under the table.

{ Имѣете ли вы пять быко́въ ?

{ Пять ли быко́въ у васъ ?

У меня только одинъ.

Только.

Отъ (governs the genitive).

Настоящій.

Вѣрный.  
Фальшивый, ложный.  
Знакомый.

Подъ (governs the instr.).

Гдѣ мальчикъ ?  
Онъ подъ столомъ.

*Singular.*

Nom.	вѣрный,	настоящій.
Gen.	вѣрнаго,	настоящаго.
Dat.	вѣрному,	настоящему.
Acc.	Like the nomin. or genit.	
Inst.	вѣрнымъ,	настоящимъ.
Prep.	вѣрномъ,	настоящемъ.

*Plural.*

Nom.	вѣрные,	настоящіе.
Gen.	вѣрныхъ,	настоящихъ.
Dat.	вѣрнымъ,	настоящимъ.
Acc.	Like the nomin. or genit.	
Inst.	вѣрными,	настоящими.
Prep.	вѣрныхъ,	настоящихъ.

## EXERCISE XXIII.

How many anchors have your brothers?—They have two only, but this sailor has seven anchors.—Have their brothers true friends?—They have acquaintances only, but no true

friends.—Who has the beautiful tumblers?—The hunters have them.—Have you not the fine horses of the Englishmen?—I have (them) not.—How many bills of exchange has the banker?—He has eight bills of exchange.—Do you want a piece of cheese?—No, I do not.—Do you not want some tea?—No.—Has the painter's boy any pencils?—He has some.—From whom did he have them?—From the painter.—From which painter?—From my neighbour. What belts have these soldiers?—They have leathern belts. How many horsemen and hunters do these watchmen see? They see five horsemen and three hunters.—Did he see also one or two asses?—He saw one ass and two horses.—Do you see the anchors of this fine ship?—I do not see the anchors, but I see the sails.—What do you see there?—I see white snow.—How many ricks have these peasants?—They have eight ricks.—How many cooks have you?—I have as many as you.—What furs have the blacksmiths?—They have no furs, but bellows.—How many horns has this ram? He has two horns.—What colour are your flowers?—My flowers are (of) yellow and blue (colour).—Which colours do you like?—I like red and blue (colours), but dislike (do not like) black.—Have his sons good voices?—They have excellent voices.—Who has my son's comb?—Nobody has it.—Has he (it) not?—No, he has not your son's comb, he has his own.—Whose is this magnificent palace?—This is the palace of the king's sons.—Have you not good coal? I have neither good nor bad.—How many roubles did the father give to his sons?—He gave the one (whom) he likes nine roubles and to his other son he gave only two roubles.—With whom is this celebrated painter?—He is with the king's sculptor.—Have the citizens of this rich town pretty houses?—The citizens have large, but not



pretty houses.—Have the rich Germans and their neighbours, the industrious Dutchmen, many ships?—The Dutch have many ships, but the Germans have only three or four ships.

#### EXERCISE XXIV.

Why is he not in the king's palace?—Because there are three emperors there, four grand dukes, and seven princes. Has the baron, your neighbour, forests?—He has no forests, but has excellent meadows.—What do you give him?—I gave him three woodcocks, four hares, five stags and three geese.—Who gave you the ham?—The grand duke's cook gave it me.—How many umbrellas have you?—I have two (of them).—How many new cloaks have you?—I have seven (of them).—Of which new cloaks are you speaking? I am speaking of the seven new cloaks, which the tailors gave you.—Who has seen the waistcoats of their brothers? I saw your waistcoats, but have not seen those of your brothers.—With whom hast thou spoken?—I spoke with the celebrated master's diligent pupils.—Of what were you speaking with them?—I was speaking with them of the beautiful town of the mighty king.—How many vultures did you see in the forest?—I saw there ten vultures and three woodcocks.—Of which vultures are you speaking?—I am speaking of the three large vultures.—Has your cousin's surgeon (врач) his own house?—The surgeon has no house of his own, but the doctor has (his own house).—Has this old man good teeth?—He has good teeth, and his comb has also good teeth.—Do you want to give him three roubles?—Yes, I want to give them to him.—Have you my keys and my hammer?—I have neither (neither that nor the other).—Do you like Spaniards or Turks?—I like

neither.—Where have you seen white and grey geese?—I saw them on both the banks.—Who is your true friend, this painter or that sculptor?—Both are my true friends.—With whom do you wish to speak?—I wish to speak with his brother.—Will you speak with the captain of this fine ship?—I will speak with him.

# FOURTEENTH LESSON.—Четырнадцатый Урокъ.

This, that,	}	Онѣй.
This one, that one,		
It,		

OBS. 1.—The pronoun *онѣй* is declined as an adjective, *i.e.* genitive *оного*, dative *оному*, etc. This pronoun is rarely used, the repetition of the substantive or the use of the pronoun *онѣ* being preferable, as :

Have you a pocket-book?

I have (it).

I have it not.

Есть ли у васъ бумажникъ?

{ Есть.

{ У меня онѣй (онѣ).

{ У меня нѣтъ бумажника.

{ У меня нѣтъ оного (его).

Very,

Have you sugar?

I have very good sugar.

Very large, big,

Very young,

Очень, весьма.

Есть ли у васъ сахаръ?

У меня очень хорошій сахаръ.

Очень большій.

Очень молодой.

Many, much, several,

Little, but little,

Not much, few,

Много, with the gen.

Мало, „

Немного, „

Enough, sufficiently,	Довольно, with the gen.
Very few,	Очень мало, „
Too,	Слишкомъ.
Too much,	{ Слишкомъ много.
	{ Черезъ чуръ.

We have but few houses.	У насъ мало домовъ.
They have very few friends.	У нихъ очень мало друзей.
Have you enough tobacco?	Довольно ли у васъ табаку?
I have too much of it.	У меня его слишкомъ много.
I have too little of it.	У меня его слишкомъ мало.
How many houses has this merchant?	Сколько домовъ у этого купца?
He has many (of them).	У него ихъ много.
He has not any.	У него ихъ нѣтъ.
He has few shoes.	У него мало башмаковъ.

Why, (from what),	Отъ чего.
-------------------	-----------

The hatter,	Шляпочникъ.
The gunmaker,	Оружейникъ.
A wine-merchant,	Виноторговецъ.
A butcher,	Мясникъ.
A sausage-maker,	Колбасникъ.
The masters,	Хозяева.

Totally, quite,	Вовсе.
Not at all,	Вовсе не, совсѣмъ не.
Not many, } plur.	Не много.
Few,	
But, only,	Только.

I have no horses at all.	У меня вовсе нѣтъ коней.
Has he many friends?	Много ли у него друзей.
He has very few (of them).	У него ихъ очень мало.
He has but (only) two (of them).	У него ихъ только два.

Very much,      Очень много.

NOTE.—When by itself, '*very much*' is rendered by *очень*, without the word *много*, as :

I like him very much.      Я его очень люблю.

Why ?      { Зачѣмъ.  
                     { Почему.

Obs. 2.—Зачѣмъ is indicative of object, purpose, as :

Why did you come ? }      Зачѣмъ вы пришли ?  
(What was your object in coming) ? }

Почему is indicative of cause, as :

Why is your house empty ? }      Почему вашъ домъ пустой ?  
(What is the cause of your }  
house being empty) ?

To be,      БЫТЬ.

He is,      Онъ есть.  
They are,      Они суть.

Obs. 3.—Есть, 'is,' and суть, 'are,' may be used when a particular emphasis or importance is to be expressed.

I was,	я былъ.	We were,	мы были.
I have been,	я былъ.	You were,	вы были.
I had been,	я былъ.	They were,	они были.

Obs. 4.—Было, neuter of былъ, is the past tense of the impersonal verb есть.

*Future tense of the auxiliary verb БЫТЬ.*

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
я буду,	I shall, or will be.	Мы будемъ,	We shall, or will be.
ты будешь,	Thou shalt, or wilt be.	Вы будете,	You shall, or will be.
онъ будетъ,	He shall, or will be.	Они будутъ,	They shall, or will be.

OBS. 5.—There is only one future tense in Russian verbs.

OBS. 6.—Будеть and будутъ, the third persons of the future tense of the verb быть, 'to be,' when expressing possession, may be used in place of the future tense of the verb имѣть, 'to have,' as:

Present, I have,	У меня есть.
Past, I had,	У меня было, а, о.
Future, I shall have,	{ У меня будетъ. У меня будутъ.

He will have a house.	У него будетъ домъ.
They will have houses.	У нихъ будутъ дома.
There will be a holiday.	Будетъ праздникъ.
There will be rain.	Будетъ дождь.

Eleven,	одинадцать.	Thirty,	тридцать.
Twelve,	двенадцать.	Forty,	сорокъ.
Thirteen,	тринадцать.	Fifty,	пятьдесятъ.
Fourteen,	четырнадцать.	Sixty,	шестьдесятъ.
Fifteen,	пятнадцать.	Seventy,	семьдесятъ.
Sixteen,	шестнадцать.	Eighty,	восемьдесятъ.
Seventeen,	семнадцать.	Ninety,	девяносто.
Eighteen,	восемнадцать.	Hundred,	сто.
Nineteen,	девятнадцать.	Hundred and one,	сто одинъ.
Twenty,	двадцать.	Two hundred,	двѣсти.
Twenty-one,	двадцать одинъ,	A thousand,	тысяча.
Twenty-two,	двадцать два.	Million,	миллионъ.

The day,	день, gen. дня.	Monday,	понедѣльникъ.
The evening,	вѣчеръ,	Tuesday,	вторникъ.
Mid-day,	полдень, gen. полудня.	Wednesday,	среда, среда. (fem.)
The hour,	{ часъ.	Thursday,	четвергъ.
(One o'clock),		Friday,	пятница. (fem.)
The watch,	{ часъ.	Saturday,	суббота. (fem.)
The clock,		Sunday,	воскресенье. (neuter).

Obs. 7.—For the days of the week, the preposition *въ* 'in,' with the accusative is used, as :

On Monday,

Въ понедѣльникъ.

On Tuesday,

Во вторникъ, etc.

What have you *for* breakfast ?

†Что у васъ на завтракъ ?

I will have *for* breakfast ham,  
bread and coffee.

У меня будетъ на завтракъ беконъ,  
хлѣбъ и кофе.

### EXERCISE XXV.

Did you not speak with the masters of these houses ?  
No, sir, we have not seen the masters, but only their sons-in-law.—Have not the Swedes good cheese ?—They have (it) not, but the Swiss have plenty of it.—Have the Dutch plenty of cheese ?—They have too much of it.—What are the peasants seeking ?—They seek the sacks of (with) coals. Of which coals are you speaking ?—I am speaking of the coals, (which) your coal-dealer (угольщикъ) gave me.—Have these young scholars steel knives ?—These scholars have not steel, but iron knives.—What bread hast thou, stale or new ? I have neither (that nor the other).—Has he much bread ? He has very little (of it).—Who has a little tea ?—My cousin has too little of it.—Has this merchant one son only ?—He has six sons.—Is the pocket-book (which) I gave him good ?—The pocket-book is of leather and a very good one, but you did not give it to him.—How many brothers has this Swede ?—He has two (of them) only. With which brother did you speak ?—I spoke with both. Has the father spoken with his parents ?—He has not spoken with them.—Who has spoken with them ?—Nobody. Where were your brothers on Monday ?—They were in the grand duke's fine castle.—Which grand duke ?—The one whom I like.—Does the master like his (own) scholars ?

He likes them very much.—Do not you want some coffee? No, I do not like coffee.—What captain have the sailors? They have a very good one.—Has he good sailors?—They were good, but now they are bad.—Why are they bad? Because their captain is too kind.—Will your friend (acquaintance) be here on Thursday?—No, he will not be. Why?—Because he will be on that (этого) day at his friend's, the American.—Have the Italians good painters? They have many.—Are the painters rich?—They were rich, but now they are poor.—Have these merchants good merchandise?—The merchandise of these merchants is very good.

#### EXERCISE XXVI.

How many pieces of velvet have they?—They have nineteen (of them).—How many soldiers did you see?—I saw forty-four soldiers.—Who has seen these four men? Both the watchmen of this garden.—What has this hatter? He has nothing.—Has the cook plenty of pepper?—Not much, but enough.—Has the butcher coffee?—He has (it) not, but he has many oxen and rams.—Has the blacksmith hammers?—He had, but now he has (them) not.—What sort of hair have these old men?—They have grey hair.—Have you any breakfast?—I have not.—Who has it?—My friend, the Englishman, has an excellent one.—What (sort of a) breakfast have you?—I have tea, cheese, ham and new white bread.—What breakfast will you have on Tuesday? It will be a good one.—Does the master speak of the theatre?—He does not speak of the theatre.—Why does he not speak of it?—Because he does not like it.—Have the citizens of this town good gardens?—They have, and very good ones.—What have these soldiers?—They have very

good steel pistols.—Who has given them to them?—The brave lieutenant.—Who has real friends?—My brother has many real friends.—Who has a good wooden coffer?—My attendant has a very good one.—What barley have these peasants?—These peasants have very good, but those very bad.—Who has spoken to you of me?—My son-in-law has spoken much of you to me.—How many oxen has the butcher?—He has three good oxen.—Were you in the castle on Monday?—No, but I was there on Tuesday and on Thursday.—Have you a good attendant?—I have many and they are very good and faithful.

# FIFTEENTH LESSON.—Пятнадцатый Урокъ

To be afraid, to fear,

Боя́ться.

To be afraid of,

Боя́ться.

Is this boy afraid?

Бой́тся ли э́тотъ мальчи́къ?

He is afraid of his father. }

Онъ бо́ится своего́ отца.

He fears (dreads) his father. }

Obs. 1.—The verb боя́ться governs the genitive.

Always, ever,

Всегда́.

Never,

Никогда́.

Sometimes,

Иногда́.

Have you bread always?

Всегда́ ли у васъ хлѣ́бъ?

I never have it.

У меня́ его́ никогда́ нѣтъ.

Has he good friends?

Есть ли у него́ хоро́шие друзья́?

He has them sometimes.

Онъ ихъ иногда́ имѣ́етъ.

Brave, valiant,

Хра́брый, арос. хра́бръ.

He is a very brave soldier.

Онъ о́чень хра́брый солда́тъ.

The valiant captain of this ship.

Хра́брый капита́нъ э́того́ кора́бля.



Obs. 2.—Adjectives connected by means of the auxiliary verb 'to be,' *i.e.* when used as predicate of a proposition, have an apocopated termination, as :

Is this soldier brave ?  
He is brave.  
He was brave.

Храбръ ли этотъ солдатъ ?  
Онъ храбръ.  
Онъ былъ храбръ.

But few,  
Almost,  
Hardly any, }  
Scarcely any, }  
Not at all, }  
Not any, none, }  
A great deal,

Только мало.  
Почти.  
Почти вовсе не.  
Вовсе не.  
Очень много.

He is not at all brave.  
I have scarcely any socks.  
Have you any tobacco ?  
Sometimes I have, and sometimes  
I have not.

Онъ вовсе не храбръ.  
У меня почти вовсе нѣтъ чулокъ.  
Есть ли у васъ табакъ ?  
Иногда у меня есть, а иногда нѣтъ.

Who has the vinegar ?  
My brother always has it.  
Have you always good tea ?  
I have always.  
Pepper,  
Vinegar,

У кого уксусъ ?  
Мой братъ его всегда имѣетъ.  
Всегда ли у васъ хорошій чай ?  
Всегда есть.  
Перецъ (gen. перца and перцу).  
Уксусъ (gen. уксуса and уксусу).

Я хочу, I want, I will.  
Ты хочешь, Thou wantest, wilt.  
Онъ хочетъ, He wants, will.  
Мы хотимъ, We want, will.  
Вы хотите, You want, will.  
Они хотятъ, They want, will.

Я могу, I can.  
Ты можешь, Thou canst.  
Онъ можетъ, He can.  
Мы можемъ, We can.  
Вы можете, You can.  
Они могутъ, They can.

Obs. 3.—The object of a proposition may be used in the

genitive instead of the accusative, when it is required to express not the whole, but only part of a thing, as :

Do you want the tea ? }  
(Will you have the tea) ? }

Do you want (some) tea ?

Can you give me some vinegar ?

I can, but I will not.

Who wants this, of this ?

Nobody wants this.

Хотите ли чай ?

Хотите ли чаю ?

Можете ли вы мнѣ дать уксусу ?

Я могу, но не хочу.

Кто хочетъ это, этого ?

Никто не хочетъ этого.

To speak, Говорить.

To give, Давать, дать.

To see, Видѣть.

To take, Взять.

To whom do you want to speak ?

I want to speak to the artist.

Of what do you wish to speak to him ?

I wish to speak to him of the temple.

Съ кѣмъ хотите вы говорить ?

Я хочу говорить съ художникомъ

О чѣмъ хотите вы говорить съ нимъ ?

Я хочу говорить съ нимъ о храмѣ.

An artist,

The temple,

Have you much velvet ?

I have scarcely any.

Художникъ.

Храмъ.

Много ли у васъ бархату !

У меня его почти вовсе нѣтъ.

Out, out of, from,

From,

Whence ?

Where from ? }

Изъ, governs the genitive.

Отъ, governs the genitive.

Откуда ?

Where are you coming from ?

I am coming from the castle.

He took this out of his coffer.

He goes out of this house.

Откуда вы идёте ?

Я иду изъ замка.

Онъ взялъ это изъ его сундука.

Онъ идётъ изъ дому.

*Singular.*

Я иду, I am going.

Ты идёшь, Thou art going.

Онъ идётъ, He is going.

*Plural.*

Мы идёмъ, We are going.

Вы идёте, You are going.

Они идутъ, They are going.

To go, }  
To walk, }

Идти.

What are these people?  
These are Christians.  
These are peasants.

Какіе это люди?  
Это христіане.  
Это крестьяне.

OBS. 4.—Substantives ending in *нинъ* form their plural in *не*, genitive in *нъ*, dative *намъ*, etc.

The master (lord),	Бáринъ, plural бáра.
Mister N. (Mr. N.).	Господи́нъ N. (Гнъ. N.).
Master (of a servant),	Господи́нъ, plural господа́
A Tartar,	Тата́ринъ, plural тата́ра.

OBS. 5.—Some Substantives forming their nominative plural in *а*, are declined according to the second declension, as :

Nominative plural,	Ба́ра,	Господа́,	Тата́ра.
Genitive plural,	Ба́ръ,	Госпо́дъ,	Тата́ръ, etc.
A lord, nobleman,		Бо́йринъ,	plural бо́ре, gen. бо́ръ

OBS. 6.—Бо́йринъ was formerly a title of nobility, and is now superseded by the word ба́ринъ.

Су́дарь, 'sir,' is used when addressing a person, or госу́дарь мой, 'dear sir,' and often ми́лостивый госу́дарь, 'my dear sir,' (respected sir), when more politeness is required. The last is used in correspondence, being equivalent to the English 'dear sir.'

Господи́нъ, abr. Гнъ., 'mister,' is placed before proper names, and some military grades or official titles, as : Гнъ. Горчако́въ, Гнъ. Поручи́къ, 'lieutenant ;' Гнъ. Почме́йстеръ, 'postmaster.' Господи́нъ is used also for 'gentleman,' in the sense of person, as :

'I know this gentleman,' Я знаю́ этого господа́на.

Госудáрь, 'sire,' must be used when addressing a monarch.

Судáрь and госудáрь мой are seldom used in ordinary conversation. Russians, in preference to these words, make use of the Christian with the patronymic name, as :

Пáвель Петрóвичъ,	Paul, son of Peter.
Андрéй Алексéевичъ,	Andrew, son of Alexis.

OBS. 7.—The substantives, сосéдь, 'neighbour;' холо́пъ, 'serf;' чéрътъ or чорътъ, 'devil,' have for the plural сосéди, холо́пыя, чéрты; the first two, however, may be also declined regularly, viz. холо́пы, сосéды.

OBS. 8.—The genitive plural is like the nominative singular in the words :

Гренадёръ,	A grenadier.	Глазъ,	The eye.
Драгунъ,	A dragoon.	Ту́рокъ,	A Turk.
Солда́тъ,	A soldier.	Сапо́гъ,	The boot.
Кадéтъ,	A cadet.	Чулóкъ,	The stocking.

In the word во́лосъ, 'hair,' which has in the genitive plural the accent transfered to the last syllable, as, nom. sing. во́лосъ; genit. plur. волóсъ; and in the following words when preceded by any of the cardinal numbers :

Алты́нь,	Altin (a coin).
Разъ,	Time (one time).
Человѣ́къ,	Man.
Арши́нь,	Arshin (measure).
Пудъ,	Pood (weight).

OBS. 9.—The 'rouble,' рубль ; genitive, рублѣ́ and рублѣ́й.

Two roubles,	два рублѣ́,	and	два́ рублѣ́й.
Two days,	два́ дня,	and	два́ дни.

NOTE.—Два дни and два рублёй are only used in conversation.

OBS. 10.—Adjectives having an accented termination end in ой, instead of ый or ий, as :

Bad,	Дурной.
Simple,	Простой.
Woollen,	Шерстяной.
As—as,	{ Такъ—какъ.
	{ Также—какъ и.
May I? can I?	Могу ли?
At,	У, governs the genitive.
At Peter's (house),	У Петра.
At our house,	У насъ.
Good many,	Много.
Some,	{ Не много.
	{ Несколько.
Nothing else,	Ничего другаго.
What else,	Что другаго.
He gave me some tea.	Онъ далъ мнѣ немного чаю.

### EXERCISE XXVII.

Has this gentleman (person) many real friends?—He has but few.—Has this master (teacher) twenty pupils? He has scarcely (hardly) any pupils.—How many ships has this rich merchant?—He has many.—Is your garden good? It is as good as yours.—Do not you want (wish) to take (взять) these boots?—No, I do not want to take them, but

my shoemaker does (want).—Have you new bread?—I have plenty (great deal) of new bread, but he has neither new nor stale.—How many horses have the rich Tartars? They have forty-three (of them).—Of which Tartars are you speaking?—Of the ones (whom) you do not like.—Are his pies as good as those of the confectioner?—Yes.—How much pepper has he?—He has thirty-four sacks of it. Have these peasants enough bread?—They have enough of it.—Of which bread do you speak?—I am speaking of the white and brown bread.—Give me, please, some honey. I cannot give you any honey, but he can.—Who does not like vinegar?—Nobody likes it.—May I take (взять) some vinegar?—You may take it.—Who cannot take it?—My brother cannot take it.—How many iron coffers has he? As many as you.—Are they as good as mine?—No.—Have you three hundred roubles, and can you give them to him? I have (a) hundred and twenty-two roubles only, and I can give them to nobody.—How many arshines of velvet have you?—I have ninety-four arshines of it.—Who has too few biscuits?—The sailors have too few (of them).—Has the watchman of your garden many locks?—He has no locks at all.—Have these peasants a great deal of barley?—They have only a little (of it).

#### EXERCISE XXVIII.

Can you give me this fine horse?—No, I cannot.—Why? Because he is not mine, but my master's.—Is your master kind?—Yes, he is very kind.—Has this sausage-maker sufficient ham?—He has not sufficient.—Do you see the large horns of this goat?—This goat has no horns, but those ten oxen have very large and fine horns.—I do not see the ten

oxen you are speaking of.—The ten oxen I speak of are in (na) the meadow.—Has the shepherd many geese?—He has only a few.—Have the English many ships?—They have many.—Has the Frenchman many francs?—He has only a few, but he has enough.—Who has a good many roubles?—The Russians.—Have you no other tea?—I have no other.—Have you any other cheese?—I have another. Have the shoemakers no other shoes?—They have no others. Have you no other attendant?—I have no other.—Has the blacksmith other bellows?—No, he has no others.—Which fur is yours, this or that?—Both are mine.—What hair has the old man?—He has no hair on his head at all.—What do you see in your father's warehouse?—I see two sorts of corn, barley and oats, but I see nothing else.—What else do you see in his garden?—I see only the gardener with fruits, but I see nothing else.—What day of the week is it?—It is Monday.—No, not Monday, but Tuesday. Can you be at our house with your brother on Thursday? I can and will.—Has your son many combs?—He has five (of them).—Who is brave, the soldier or the sailor?—Both (of them) are brave.—Which lemons are you seeking?—I seek the lemons, (which) you like.—Do you like also pies and cakes?—I like them also.—Is there any thing bad in this young man?—There is much that is bad in him, but also much that is good.—Do you see our godfathers? Yes, I see them and I see also your faithful friends.—How many soldiers do you see?—I see five grenadiers, thirty hussars, and four hundred lancers.—How many poods of honey have you?—I have eleven poods of it.

## SIXTEENTH LESSON.—Шестнадцатый Урокъ.

A few, } Some, }	Нѣсколько.
Some, a, } Certain, }	Нѣкоторый, plur. нѣкоторые.

Have you a few pencils ?

Есть ли у васъ нѣсколько карандашей ?

He has a few.

У него ихъ нѣсколько.

OBS. 1.—The adverb нѣсколько governs the genitive.

None, not one,  
Nobody, no one,Ни одинъ.  
Никто.

Have you a few shillings ?

Есть ли у васъ нѣсколько шиллинговъ ?

I have a few, but he has none.

У меня ихъ нѣсколько, а у него нѣтъ ни одного.

How many of them have you ?

Сколько ихъ у васъ ?

I have a great many of them.

У меня ихъ очень много.

Thou hast none.

У тебя нѣтъ ни одного.

A thaler,	Талеръ.
A sovereign (coin),	Червонецъ.

A franc,	Франкъ.
A sou,	Су.

OBS. 2.—The word cy is indeclinable.

OBS. 3.—The following words ending in обѣ, овѣ, омѣ, опѣ, олѣ, орѣ, орь, отѣ, drop the euphonic o in the declension:

A call,	Зовѣ,	gen.	зва, etc.
The forehead,	Лобѣ,	gen.	лоба.
A psalm,	Псаломѣ,	gen.	псалма.
Sleep,	Сонѣ,	gen.	сна.
An ambassador,	Посолѣ,	gen.	посла.
An angle, corner,	Уголѣ,	gen.	угла.
A goldfinch,	Щеголѣ,	gen.	щегла.
A cover, case,	Чехолѣ,	gen.	чехла.



A harpoon,	Багѡръ,	gen.	багрá.
A hillock, heap,	Бугѡръ,	gen.	бугрá.
A father-in-law,	Свѣкоръ,	gen.	свѣкрá.
A whirlwind,	Вѣхоръ,	gen.	вѣхрá.
The fringe,	Мохѡръ,	gen.	мохрá.
The mouth,	Ротъ,	gen.	рта.
Fire,	Огѡнь,	gen.	огнá.

There are exceptions to this rule, as there are some words in which the o, being a radical vowel, cannot be left out, as :

A thief, Воръ,	gen.	вѡра.	A roof, Кровъ,	gen.	•крѡва.
A bolt, Запѡръ,	gen.	запѡра.	A forest, Боръ,	gen.	бѡра.

OBS. 4.—In the declension of the following words the euphonic vowel e is omitted.

A lion,	Левъ,	gen.	льва.
A morsel,	Кусѡчекъ,	gen.	кусѡчка.
A goat,	Козѣлъ,	gen.	козлá.
The Ram (Aries),	Овѣнь,	gen.	овнá.
The wind,	Вѣтеръ,	gen.	вѣтрá.
Ice,	Лѣдъ,	gen.	льдá.
Oats,	Овѣсь,	gen.	овсá.
A ridge,	Хребѣтъ,	gen.	хребтá.
An elm-tree,	Племъ,	gen.	плъма.
A stone,	Кáмень,	gen.	кáмня.

Of the sixteen words ending in енъ, in which the e cannot be left out, the most useful are :

A stag,	Олѣнь,	gen.	олѣня.
A seal,	Тюлѣнь,	gen.	тюлѣня.
Rhubarb,	Рѣвень,	gen.	рѣвѣня.
Barley,	Ячмѣнь,	gen.	ячменá.
The ash-tree,	Ясень,	gen.	ясѣня.

OBS. 5.—Some words ending in ецъ, preserve in the declension the euphonic e, when preceded by two consonants, as :

A flatterer,	Лъстѣцъ,	gen.	лъстѣцá.
A proud man,	Гордѣцъ,	gen.	гордѣцá.
A deserter,	Бѣглецъ,	gen.	бѣглецá.

Obs. 6.—In the following nouns ending in емъ, preceded by the vowel а, the е of the nominative changes into ѱ in all the other cases, as :

The hire,	Наёмъ,	gen. найма.
The loan,	Заёмъ,	gen. займа.
The cessation,	Уёмъ,	gen. уйма.

Obs. 7.—In the following nouns ending in ей, the vowel е of the nominative changes into ѣ in all the other cases, as :

A sparrow,	Воробѣй,	gen. воробѣя, etc.
A nightingale,	Соловѣй,	gen. соловѣя.
An ant,	Муравѣй,	gen. муравѣя.
A beehive,	Улей,	gen. улья.
A boil,	Чирѣй,	gen. чирѣя.
A brook,	Ручѣй,	gen. ручѣя.

The number, } Числѡ.  
The date, }

What day of the month is it ?

†Какоѣ у насъ числѡ ?

The first.

Первое числѡ.

It is the second of November.

†У насъ второе ноябра.

It is the first of May.

У насъ первое мая.

Obs. 8.—For the days of the month, the Russians, like the English, use the ordinal numerals, and the name of the month must be in the genitive.

The corkscrew,

Прѡбочникъ.

The handle,

Черенѡкъ, gen. черенка.

At one time—at another,

†То—то.

First,	Первый,	plur. первые.
Second,	Второй,	plur. вторыя.
Third,	Третій,	plur. третья.
Fourth,	Четвёртый,	plur. четвёртые.
Fifth,	Пятый,	plur. пятые.
Sixth,	Шестой,	plur. шестые.
Seventh,	Седьмой,	plur. седьмые.
Eighth,	Осьмой,	plur. осьмые.
Ninth,	Девятый,	plur. девятые.

Tenth,	Деся́тый,	plur. десяти́е.
Eleventh,	Оди́надцатый,	plur. оди́надцатые.
Twelfth,	Два́дцатый,	plur. два́дцатые.
Thirteenth,	Три́дцатый,	plur. три́дцатые.
Fourteenth, etc.	Четы́рнадцатый,	plur. четы́рнадцатые.
Twentieth,	Два́дцатый,	plur. два́дцатые.
Twenty-first, etc.	Два́дцать пе́рвый,	plur. два́дцать пе́рвые.
Thirtieth,	Три́дцатый,	plur. три́дцатые.
Fortieth,	Сороко́вый,	plur. сороко́вые.
Fiftieth,	Пяти́десятый,	plur. пяти́десятые.
Fifty-first, etc.	Пяти́десятъ пе́рвый,	plur. пяти́десятъ пе́рвые.
Sixtieth,	Шести́десятый,	plur. шести́десятые.
Seventieth,	Семиде́сятый,	plur. семиде́сятые.
Eightieth,	Осьмиде́сятый,	plur. осьмиде́сятые.
Ninetieth,	Девяно́стый,	plur. девяно́стые.
Hundredth,	Сото́й,	plur. со́тые.
Hundred and first,	Сто пе́рвый,	plur. сто пе́рвые.
Two hundredth,	Двухсо́тый,	plur. двухсо́тые.
Thousandth,	Ты́сячный,	plur. ты́сячные.
Millionth,	Миллио́нный,	plur. миллио́нные.

## Which one ?

## Ка́кой.

Have you the first or the second horse ?

Пе́рвый ли ко́нь у ва́съ или второ́й ?

I have the third one.

У меня́ тре́тий.

My two horses were the third ones.

Мо́и два ко́ня бы́ли тре́тий.

Which one of the pupils is he

Ка́кой онъ уче́никъ ?

He is the fifth.

Онъ пя́тый.

January,	Январь.
February,	Февраль.
March,	Мартъ.
April,	Апрель.
May,	Май.
June,	Июнь.

July,	Июль.
August,	Августъ.
September,	Сентябрь.
October,	Октябрь.
November,	Ноябрь.
December,	Декабрь.

OBS. 9.—‘Month of January,’ ‘month of February,’ etc. are translated Январь мѣсяцъ, Февра́ль мѣсяцъ, etc.

OBS. 10.—In the compound ordinal numerals the last number only, as in English, has an ordinal termination ;

all foregoing ones remain cardinal. Care must be taken to observe that the copulative conjunction *and* must not be translated, as :

Three hundred and fifth.

The year one thousand eight hundred  
and seventy-six.

Four and twenty.

Триста пѣтый.

Тысяча восемьсотъ семьдесятъ шестой  
годъ.

Двадцать четыре.

Yet, still,

More,

More than,

Ещё, всё ещё.

Болѣе, ещё.

{ Болѣе нежелш.  
Болѣе чѣмъ.

OBS. 11.—Болѣе, 'more,' comparative of много, 'much,' governs the genitive.

More than this one.

More than two months.

More than one.

You have more than I.

I have one more.

He has two more.

{ Болѣе чѣмъ этотъ.  
+Болѣе этого.

Болѣе двухъ мѣсяцевъ.

Болѣе одного.

+У васъ больше моего.

У меня ещё одинъ.

У него ещё два.

Which of?

Very many,

On the ice,

In the ice,

A little more.

Который изъ?

Очень много.

На льду.

Во льду.

Ещё немного.

### EXERCISE XXIX.

What have you seen to-day in the market?—I have seen two goldfinches, three nightingales and four hares.—Are there many hares in your garden?—There are very few hares in my garden, but plenty of sparrows.—What handles have the king's knives and those of the prince?—Both

have silver handles.—Who is the master of this inn?—The master of this inn is that handsome gentleman, whom you see in the garden.—Has the shepherd many goats?—He has a few.—Which of these goats is yours?—The first and the second one.—Which of these pencils did this painter give you?—He gave me the red pencil.—Has the painter many red and green pencils?—He has but few red, but plenty of green ones.—How many ducats (sovereigns) has this German?—He has not many, he has only a few.—Who says this?—Certain gentlemen say this.—Have the French many ships?—They have a great many, but the rich English have still more than the French.—Where has this boy been?—He has been on the ice.—Has the confectioner plenty of ice?—He has now but a little of it.—Have these Germans a good many thalers?—They have only a few (not many).—Have they enough of them?—No, they have not enough.—How many days are there in this month? There are only thirty days in this month.—What day of the month is it?—To day is the fifth of September, of the year one thousand eight hundred and seventy-six.—How many months are there in a year?—The year has twelve months.—(There are twelve months in a year).—And days? At one time three hundred and sixty-five, at another three hundred and sixty-six.—How many days are there in the months?—Some months have thirty days, some thirty-one; February alone has at one time twenty-eight and at another twenty-nine days.—In which year are there twenty-nine days?—In leap year (высокосный год).—How many beehives has this gardener?—He has forty-four beehives, he has more than that gardener.

## EXERCISE XXX.

Which one of these horses is yours?—The fourth and the seventh one.—Which months of the year (in the year) do you like?—I like the months of May and June very much, but I do not like the months of September and October. To which father-in-law did you speak of your son?—I spoke with this rich bookseller's father-in-law.—What do you see on this goat's forehead?—I see on his forehead large horns.—How many corners are there in the yard?—Only three corners.—What has this ram in his mouth.—He has some barley in his mouth.—Give me a light (fire). What is this boy afraid of?—He is afraid of the fire. Where do you see the fires?—I see them in the meadow. Where do you see those two elms.—I see them on the hill-lock.—How many covers have you?—I have thirty-three new covers and nineteen old.—Has Mr. N. good and faithful attendants?—He has many attendants, but few good and faithful.—What knives has this master's pupil?—He has two knives, one with a wooden and the other with a silver handle.—Have you seen the new stone bridge?—No, I did not (see it), but I saw the old iron bridge.—How many bridges have you?—We have four wooden and three stone ones.—Have you any other bridges?—No, we have no others, we have no more bridges.—Have you spoken to him?—No, I have not yet.—Have you some other shoes also?—I have no other shoes (also).—Who has no houses here?—Certain citizens have not houses here of their own (their own houses).—Have we another cheese?—No, we have no other.—How many stags has this hunter?—He has more than ten.—How many steel corkscrews has this merchant?—He has no steel corkscrews, but he has plenty

of iron ones.—Which soldier has no pistol?—The hundred and fifth one.—Have you a little more tea?—I have no more tea, but I have plenty of coffee.

# SEVENTEENTH LESSON.—Семнадцатый Урокъ.

The former, (first),      Пёрвый, прѣжній.  
The latter, last,      Послѣдній.

How many roubles did you give him?

Сколько вы дали ему рублей?

I gave him my last rouble.

Я далъ ему свой послѣдній рубль.

Have you as much good tea as bad?

Есть ли у васъ столько же хорошаго чая какъ и дурнаго?

I have as much of the one as of the other.

У меня столько же одного какъ и другаго.

Have your sons as many pencils as knives?

Есть ли у вашихъ сыновей столько же карандашей какъ и ножей?

They have more of the former than of the latter.

У нихъ болѣе первыхъ нежели (чѣмъ) послѣднихъ.

Yet, still, as yet,  
There, here (is),

Ещё.  
Вотъ.

Some more, any more (of),  
There is some more bread.  
There (here) is some more tea.

+Ещё.  
Вотъ ещё хлѣба.  
Вотъ ещё чая.

To-day,                      Сегодня.  
Yesterday,                Вчера.  
The day before yesterday,      Третьяго дня.

To-morrow,                Завтра.  
After to-morrow,      Послѣ завтра.  
On the eve,                На канунѣ.

Did you give him some more of this?  
I gave him some more.  
Have you another loaf?  
I have two more loaves.

Дали ли вы ему еще этого?  
Я далъ ему ещё.  
Есть-ли у васъ ещё другой хлѣбъ?  
У меня есть ещё два хлѣба.

No more than that,      Не бóльше того.

*Of words defective in number.*

OBS. 1.—Proper names, and certain classes of other words, are used only in the singular, as: ‘John,’ Ив́анъ; ‘gold,’ зóлото; ‘attention,’ внимáние.

There are, on the other hand, some substantives in which the singular is altogether wanting, or is used in a different sense from the plural. Of such a nature, for instance, are:

Twins,	Близнецы.	Pincers,	Клещи.
A pair of scales,	Вѣсы	Persons born in	Однорóдки.
Diamonds (on cards),	Бубны.	the same year.	
Fetters,	Кандалы, (орó- вы).	Sawdust,	Опилки.
People,	Люди.	Spectacles,	Очки.
Wall paper,	Обои.	Gallery,	Переходы.
Vegetables,	Овощи.	A watch, }	Часы.
Cream,	Сливки.	A clock, }	
Twilight,	Сумерки.	A screw-vice,	Тиски.
Firewood,	Дрова.	Trowsers,	{ Панталоны.
White lead,	Бѣлыя.		{ Брюки.
Bran,	Отруби.	A pitchfork,	Вилы.
Alum,	Квасцы.	A sledge,	Сани.
Coach box,	Козлы.	A mouth,	Уста. (slavon.)
Slops,	Помои.	A cruet-stand,	Судки.
Whims,	Причуды.	Banisters,	Перила.
Embroidery frame,	Пильцы.	Characters,	Письмена.
Funeral,	Похороны.	Ink,	Чернила.
Trouble,	Хлѣботы.	Yard-gate,	Ворота.
Church calendar,	Святцы.	Post fare,	Прогоны.
Counting-board,	Счёты.	One's saint's day,	Пмянины.
		Tongs, snuffers,	Щипцы.
One more,		Еще одинъ.	
Quite as much, }		†Столько же.	
Quite as many, }			
Just as much, }		Столько же.	
Just a many, }			



Seldom,

Already,

No more, }  
No longer, }

Рѣдко.

Уже, уже.

Уже не, болѣе не.

Have you already seen your brothers ?

I have not seen them yet.

Has the watchmaker still your watch ?

He has it no more.

We have two more pencils.

How many pairs of scissors have  
these tailors ?

They have as many as you have.

Видѣли ли вы уже своихъ братьевъ ?

Я еще не видѣлъ ихъ.

У часовщика ли еще ваши часы ?

У него ихъ уже нѣтъ.

У насъ есть еще два карандаша.

Сколько парницъ у этихъ портныхъ ?

У нихъ столько же, сколько у васъ.

Too,

Too little, }  
Too few, }

Слишкомъ, черезъ чуръ.

Слишкомъ, мало, не много.

Are you often at your cousin's ?

I am there very seldom.

Часто ли вы у своего двоюроднаго  
брата.

Я тамъ весьма рѣдко.

So much,

As much as,

As many as,

Столько.

†Столько-же какъ и.

Столько-же сколько.

Is he still here ?

He is no longer here.

Здѣсь ли онъ еще ?

Его уже здѣсь болѣе нѣтъ.

The peasants have too much oats  
and too little barley.

We saw as many soldiers as you did.

У крестьянъ слишкомъ много овса, а  
слишкомъ мало ячменя.Мы видѣли столько же солдатъ какъ  
и вы.

Often,

A few more,

Часто.

Еще нѣсколько.

Have you many more good screw-  
vices ?

I have a few more.

Есть ли у васъ еще много хорошихъ  
тисковъ ?

У меня есть еще нѣсколько.

## EXERCISE XXXI.

Who sees my embroidery frame?—We see it.—Who has not yet seen it?—Your neighbour's sons have not yet seen it.—What has the poor blacksmith?—He has a hammer and pincers, but has no screw-vices.—Has the kind monk (монахъ) a psalter and a church calendar?—He has neither one nor the other, he has only the beautiful new spectacles. Have not you a new pair of trowsers?—I have them no more, this poor boy has them now.—Has he still his four beautiful nightingales?—He has them no more.—What do you see there?—We see two large lions there.—Do you see any thing else (besides)?—No, we see nothing else.—Has the boy still his pencil?—He has it no longer, but he has another.—Have these people still pigeons and geese?—They have no more, either pigeons or geese.—How many pliers has the locksmith?—He has forty-eight (of them).—Where is his gardener?—He is in your garden.—Do you like vegetables?—Yes, very much.—How many soldiers are there in your regiment?—There are in my regiment three thousand four hundred and seventy-five men.—That is too many.—What are these writers seeking?—They are seeking the ink.—Where is my pocket-book?—Here it is.—Are these boys twins?—No, they are not twins, but they are of the same year.—Have we any more sugar?—We have some more.—Have the sailors some more biscuits?—They have not any more.—Has the young man any more friends? He has no more (of them).—Has our neighbour one more garden?—He has one more.—Has my friend one more umbrella?—He has no more.—Have his sons a few more cakes?—They have a few more.—What else have you? We have a few more ships and a few more good sailors.

Have you a little more of honey?—We have a little more.

### EXERCISE XXXII.

Have you not a little (some) more tobacco?—I have already no more tobacco, but these merchants have a good deal of good tobacco and as much of good tea.—Have you already seen these beautiful furs?—No, sir, I have not yet seen them.—Has the captain of this ship enough coffee? Yes, sir, but he has little (not much) sugar and pepper, too many biscuits and too little honey.—Has not the sailor another pair of trowsers?—He has another pair of trowsers.—Do you speak with the Englishmen as much as with the Russians?—I speak as much with the former as with the latter.—Do you see another ship?—I see one ship only, but my brothers see six large ships of that rich Dutchman, whom you see on that stone bridge with the young Englishmen.—Have you already seen the beautiful flowers in (на) that green meadow?—No, I have not yet seen them.—Are you a peasant, my friend, or a lord?—I am neither peasant nor a lord, but a merchant.—Have you a few roubles more?—I have a few more.—Have these Englishmen a few shillings more?—They have some more, but a very few.—What day of the month is it to-day?—It is (we have) the twenty-eighth of September, of the year one thousand eight hundred and seventy-six.—What has this boy given to this beggar?—He gave him his last franc. Have you more cheese than bread?—We have as much of the former as of the latter.—Who has more tea than you?—This merchant has more tea than I (have), but I have as much sugar as he (has).—How many friends have you?—I have one good friend only.—Has the peasant too much of corn?

He has not enough.—Have we as much bread as tea?—We have as much of the one as of the other.—Has the banker as many friends as enemies?—He has more friends than enemies, but I have plenty of both.

# EIGHTEENTH LESSON.—Восемнадцатый Урокъ.

## SECOND DECLENSION.

### *Declension of Neuter Substantives and Adjectives.*

Склонѣніе именъ существительныхъ и прилагательныхъ  
срѣднѣго рода.

*Singular.*—Единственное число.

Cases.	<i>Substantives.</i>			<i>Adjectives.</i>			
	<i>Inflections.</i>			<i>Full terminations.</i>		<i>Apocopated.</i>	
	Hard.	Soft.		Hard.	Soft.	Hard.	Soft.
Nom.	о.	е.	мя.	ое.	ее.	о.	е.
Gen.	а.	я.	ени.	аго.	яго.	а.	я.
Dat.	у.	ю.	ени.	ому.	ему.	у.	ю.
Acc.	Like the nominative.						
Inst.	омъ.	емъ.	ениемъ.	ымъ.	имъ.	ымъ.	имъ.
Prep.	ѣ.	ѣ, (п).	ени.	омъ.	емъ.	омъ, (ѣ).	емъ.

From the above table it will be seen that the first two

terminations of both substantives and adjectives have the same inflexions as those of masculine nouns, observing however that the accusative of neuter substantives in the singular is always like the nominative.

OBS. 1.—Of the few neuter substantives ending in я, to which in declension the syllable ят is added, only the word дитя, 'child,' preserves its singular inflexions; as genitive, дитяи, dative and prepositional дитяти, instrumental дитятю. All other such words in я, as ослия, 'young ass;' теля, 'a calf;' порося, 'young pig,' are obsolete; these diminutives being superseded in the language of the present day by masculine forms ending in ёнокъ, as ослёнокъ, 'young ass;' телёнокъ, 'a calf;' поросёнокъ, 'little pig.' All these words, however, resume in the plural their original Slavonic inflexions with the syllable ят; as, nominative plural, ослията, телята; genitive, ослиятъ, телятъ, etc.

There are only ten substantives ending in мя:

Время,	Time.	Стремя,	Stirrup.
Бремя,	Burden.	Тёмя,	Sinapiut.
Имя,	Name.	Вѣмя,	Udder.
Знамя,	Standard.	Пламя,	Flame.
Плѣмя,	Tribe.	Сѣмя,	Seed.

OBS. 2.—Вѣмя and знамя are declined also irregularly; as, genitive and accusative, вѣмя, знамя; dative, вѣмю, знамю; instrumental, вѣмемъ, знамемъ; prepositional, вѣмѣ, знамѣ.

Пламя or пламень is used only in the singular.

This regiment has no standard.

У этого полка нѣтъ { знаменъ,  
знамя.

Business, }	Дѣло.	A mirror,	Зѣркало.
Affair, }		A family,	Семѣйство.
A building,	Строѣніе.	Butter,	Масло.
Meat,	Мясо.	Medicine,	Лѣкарство.
Wine,	Вино.	Beer,	Пиво.
Grief,	Горе.	The sea,	Море.
The field,	Поле.	The light,	Свѣтъ.
Iron,	Жѣлѣзо.	Woollen cloth,	Сукно.
Gold,	Золото.	Milk,	Молоко.
Silver,	Серебро.	Linen,	Полотно.

It, Онó, neuter (declined like онъ).

Does this child see my mirror?  
No, it does not see it.  
Do you see the blue sea?  
I do not (see it).

Видитъ ли это дитя моѣ зѣркало?  
Нѣтъ, онó его не видитъ.  
Видите ли вы синее море?  
Я его не вижу.

This, Ціе, это, } neuter.  
That, То, }

OBS. 3.—Это and то are declined like этотъ and тотъ ;  
ціе, 'this,' follows the same inflexions as сей, i.e. genitive  
сею, dative ему, instrumental имъ, prepositional сѣмъ.

Does he see this building?  
He does not see this building.  
Have you this wine or that?  
I have neither (this nor that).  
Give me a piece of bread and butter.  
On that shore of the sea.

Видитъ ли онъ это (сіе) зданіе?  
Онъ не видитъ этого зданія.  
Это ли вино у васъ или то?  
У меня ни этого ни того нѣтъ.  
+ Дайте мнѣ кусокъ хлѣба съ масломъ.  
На томъ берегу моря.

To buy, Купитъ.  
To receive, Получитъ.

I have bought.  
Have you bought?  
He has received.  
We did not receive.

Я купилъ.  
Купили ли вы?  
Онъ получилъ.  
Мы не получили.

One,

Одно, neuter (declined like  
одинъ).

The one and the other,

То и другое.

Hast thou meat or butter ?

Есть ли у тебя мясо или масло ?

I have the one and the other, }

у меня то и другое.

I have both.

Both,

Оба, } masc. and neut., de-

Two,

Два, } clined like masc.

Whose,

Чьё, neuter (plural чьи).

Obs. 4.—Чьё is declined like чей, *i.e.* genitive чьего, dative чьему, instrumental чьимъ, prepositional чьёмъ.

Whose milk hast thou ?

Чьё молоко у тебя ?

I have the child's milk.

У меня молоко дитяти.

Distant, далёкій, ое.

Dear, expensive, дорогой, ое.

Great, великій, ое.

Cheap, дешёвый, ое.

Linen, *adj.* полотняный.

Incautious, неосторожный.

Roast meat,

Жаркое.

Ices,

Мороженое.

Obs. 5.—Neuter substantives ending in ое are declined like adjectives.

My, mine,

Моё, } neuter, declined like

Thy, thine,

Твоё, } мой, твой, свой.

His (own),

Своё,

Whose is this incautious child ?

Чьё это неосторожное дитя ?

This is our neighbour's child.

Это дитя нашего соседа.

The child has no milk.

У дитяти нѣтъ молока.

Who has my wine ?

У кого моё вино ?

I have my own wine.

У меня своё вино.

He has thy beer.

У него твоё пиво.

I shall or will have,  
Thou shalt or wilt have,  
He shall or will have,  
We shall or will have,  
You shall or will have,  
They shall or will have,

Я буду имѣть.  
Ты будешь имѣть.  
Онъ будетъ имѣть.  
Мы будемъ имѣть.  
Вы будете имѣть.  
Они будутъ имѣть.

What shall we have for dinner ?  
We shall have for dinner goose,  
meat and beer.

Что будетъ у насъ за обѣдомъ ?  
Мы будемъ имѣть за обѣдомъ гуся,  
мясо и пиво.

Whither, where to ?  
In, into (at, to),

Куда ?  
Въ (во), gov. accus. and  
prepositional.

ОBS. 6.—The prep. въ governs the accusative in answer to the question *whither?* or when indicating movement, and the prepositional when there is no motion indicated from one place to another.

To do, }  
To make, }

Дѣлать.

To go,

{ Идти.  
{ Ходить.

Towards, to,

Къ (ко), governs the dat.

ОBS. 7.—The verb идти, 'to go,' denotes an action at some given moment, as :

I am going now.  
He is going to-morrow.

Я иду теперь.  
Онъ идетъ завтра

Ходить, 'to go,' expresses an action without reference to any particular time, a habit or power of performing the action, as :

I go there every day.  
He often goes with him.  
Men can walk.

Я хожу туда каждый день.  
Онъ часто ходитъ съ нимъ.  
Люди ходятъ.



*Present Tense of the Verb Ходить, 'to go.'**Singular.*

Я хожу.  
Ты ходишь.  
Онъ ходитъ.

*Plural.*

Мы ходимъ.  
Вы ходите.  
Онѣ ходятъ.

Where are you going ?  
I am going to my brother's.  
Do you go often to him ?  
No, I go seldom.  
With whom is he going to-morrow ?  
He is going with my brothers.  
He goes backwards and forwards.

Куда вы идёте ?  
Я иду къ своему брату.  
Часто ли вы къ нему ходите ?  
Нѣтъ, я хожу рѣдко.  
Съ кѣмъ онъ идётъ завтра ?  
Онъ идётъ съ моими братьями.  
Онъ ходитъ взадъ и вперёдъ.

*To trade in,*

I trade in tea.  
He trades in coal.  
Where is he going ?  
He is going into the garden.  
Where is the child ?  
It is in the garden.  
He goes often to the temple.  
The image is in the temple.  
Hungry,  
Health,  
Healthy,

*Торговать, gov. instr.*

Я торгую чаемъ.  
Онъ торгуетъ углемъ.  
Куда онъ идётъ ?  
Онъ идётъ въ садъ.  
Гдѣ дитя ?  
Онѣ въ саду.  
Онъ ходитъ часто въ храмъ.  
Образъ въ храмъ.  
Голодный, ое.  
Здоровье.  
Здоровый, ое.

I am well, Я здоровъ.  
I am unwell, Я не здоровъ.

I am hungry, Я голоденъ.  
The child is hungry, Дитя голодно.

Is he hungry ?  
Is he quite well ?  
No, he is unwell.  
But he is not ill ?  
He is only unwell.  
I do not feel well.  
The child does not feel well.  
I feel thirsty.

Голоденъ ли онъ ?  
Здоровъ ли онъ ?  
Нѣтъ, онъ не здоровъ.  
Но онъ не боленъ.  
Онъ только нездоровъ.  
+ Мы не здоровы.  
+ Дитя не здоровится.  
+ Я чувствую жажду, (жажда,  
'thirst,' fem.)

How do you do ?

+Какъ ваше здорѣе ?

Very well, thank you.

Благодарю васъ, довольно хорошо.

What do you think ?

Что вы думаете ?

What are you thinking of ?

О чёмъ вы думаете ?

To think,     Думать.

## EXERCISE XXXIII.

Where is the peasant with the seed going ?—He is going to his master's barn.—Where are you going ?—I am going to our rich butcher.—Has he good meat ?—He has plenty of good and fresh meat.—Is his meat cheap ?—No, his meat (meat he has) is very dear, but he has plenty of cheap butter.—In which building do you see the large, beautiful mirror ?—I see neither the building nor the beautiful mirror, I see only the beautiful green field.—Whose field do you see ?—I do not know whose it is.—Where are the industrious mowers ?—They are in (on) the field, in which you see so many beautiful flowers.—Has your cook time ?—He has no time, but our peasant has.—What do these surgeons see ?—They see a bad medicine.—What did he buy ?—He bought a good medicine.—What business have the brothers of this kind German ?—They have no business.—What are these boys speaking of ?—They speak of the two ships on the sea.—Do they not see the boats of both the Russians, whom we see on the other (that) shore of the sea ?—They see them also.—How much milk, butter, wine, beer and meat have you ?—I have a great deal of butter and meat, a little milk and wine, and plenty of beer.—Do you give your child any beer ?—I do not give it beer, but I give it plenty of milk.—How many

pieces of bread and butter has your child?—It has three pieces of bread and butter and also a very large piece of meat.

#### EXERCISE XXXIV.

Do you like that poor but industrious family, which has neither bread nor meat?—No, I do not like it.—To whom are you going so often, my friend?—I do not go often to anybody.—To whom are you going now, my friend?—I am going to (на) the field, where you see our lazy mowers.—Are we not going to that magnificent building with the handsome gate?—We are not going to that building, but to the other one.—Do you like roast meat?—No, I do not like it.—Do you want some butter and cheese?—No, thank you, I am not hungry.—Give me, if you please, a little beer.—Of which beer are you speaking?—Of that which he gave me. Has he plenty of time?—He has not any time at all. With whom and where are they going?—They are going with my kind friend's family into the garden.—To whose garden are they going?—To our neighbour's garden.—Is his family now in town?—No, sir, they are no longer in town.—Were this family in town yesterday?—They were not in town yesterday.—Have you already given the little boy some beer and bread and butter?—I gave him plenty of both (the one and the other), and I gave him also some wine and meat.—Were you at the theatre yesterday?—I was not there yesterday.—Where and with whom are you going to-day?—I am going to-day with the kind master (teacher) of the grand duke, but to the temple, and not to the play.—To which temple?—To the one (which is) in the market of our large town.

## EXERCISE XXXV.

To whom are you going?—I am going to him.—Has this old peasant a large field?—No, sir, he has no large field, but he has good meadows and forests.—Has this peasant's son-in-law plenty of white linen and yellow flax? He has plenty of both, but he has only a few cotton handkerchiefs and woollen cloaks.—Has he much business in town?—He has no business in town.—Does this child like milk?—Yes, very much.—What merchandise has your son-in-law?—He has the goods which he bought in Paris. What does this child dislike?—It dislikes medicine.—Did you see this young man the day before yesterday?—I saw him to-day with my own eyes.—Where will you be to-morrow?—I do not know yet.—Will you be in your garden to-day?—No, we will be (there) where we were yesterday. Are all the flowers green?—No, some of them are white. What has this joiner bought?—He has bought a few beams.—What for?—For stakes.—When will your brother be at your house?—In the month of February.—How many pounds of black tea did my cousin buy from you?—He bought three pounds only from me.—Who bought the alum?—The chemist bought it.—What does this peasant trade in?—He trades in meat, butter, onions, garlick, milk and bread.

---

## NINETEENTH LESSON.—Девятнадцатый Урокъ.

*Neuter Plural.* — Множественное число среднего рода.

The words,	слова.	The seas,	моря.
The windows,	окна.	The fields,	поля.
The rings,	кольца.	The buildings,	строения.
The mirrors,	зеркала.	The calves,	телята.

Nominative,	{ The times,
Genitive,	{ Времена.
Dative,	Времени.
Accusative,	Временамъ.
Instrumental,	Времена.
Prepositional,	Временами.
	Временахъ.

All neuter substantives in *мя* are declined in the plural, according to the above example.

Obs. 1.—The word *сѣмя*, 'the seed,' retains in the gen. plural the Slavonic inflexion *сѣмянъ*, instead of *сѣмѣнъ*, in order to distinguish it from the proper name *Семѣнъ*, 'Simeon.'

Obs. 2.—To the ten substantives ending in *мя*, must be added two words used only in the plural: *писмена*, 'characters,' and *рамена*, 'shoulders,' which have in Slavonic the nominative singular *писмя*, *рамо*.

## SECOND DECLENSION.

## DECLENSION OF NEUTER SUBSTANTIVES AND ADJECTIVES.

Таблица Склонений.

*Plural.* — Множественное Число.

Cases. Падежи.	<i>Substantives.</i> Имя Существительное.		<i>Adjectives.</i> — Имя Прилагательное.		
	Hard Inflex.	Soft Inflex.	<i>Full terminations.</i>		<i>Ascorparated terminations.</i>
			Hard Declension.	Soft Declension.	
Nom.	а	я.	мѣна.	ія.	и.
Gen.	ъ.	ей, (і, ій).	ыхъ.	ихъ.	ихъ.
Dat.	амъ.	ямъ.	емъ.	имъ.	имъ.
Like the Genitive or the Nominative.					
Acc.					
Inst.	амп.	ямп.	емп.	имп.	имп.
Prep.	акъ.	якъ.	екъ.	икъ.	икъ.

Few, some,  
Some, certain,

Нѣскѣлькіе. } plural.  
Нѣкоторые. }

Our father is going to the castle  
with a few friends.

Нашъ отецъ идѣтъ въ замокъ съ нѣ-  
сколькими пріятелями.

They are going to some (certain)  
friends.

Онѣ идѣтъ къ нѣкоторымъ пріате-  
лямъ.

A dish, блюдо.  
A ring, кольцо, перстень.  
A treasure, сокровище.  
A monster, чудовище.

An egg, яйцо, gen. plur. яицъ.  
Pewter, олово.  
A herd, стадо.

German, нѣмецкій.  
English, англійскій.  
Dutch, голландскій.  
London, Лондонъ.  
St. Petersburg, Санктъ-Петербургъ,  
or simply Петербургъ.

Russian, русскій, російскій.  
Slavonic, славянскій.  
Turkish, турецкій.  
Paris, Парижъ.

These,  
Those,

Сіи, эти. } Masculine and  
Тѣ. } neuter.

Obs. 3.—The following, having two consonants before  
the final vowel, take the euphonic e or o in the genitive  
plural, as :

A letter, писмѣ, писемъ.  
A beam, бревнѣ, бревенъ.  
A grain, зернѣ, зеренъ.  
Linen, полотнѣ, полотень.  
A saddle, сѣдлѣ, сѣделъ.  
An oar, веслѣ, весель.  
An easy chair, креслѣ, кресель.  
The bottom, днѣ, донъ.  
A window, окнѣ, оконъ.  
Woolen cloth, сукнѣ, суконъ.  
An oar, грѣслѣ, грѣбелъ.  
Little window, окѣшко, окѣшекъ.  
Little ring, колѣчко, колѣчекъ.

A spot, пятнѣ, пятень.  
A trade, ремеслѣ, ремесель.  
A number, числѣ, чисель.  
A ring, кольцѣ, колець.  
The heart, сѣрдцѣ, сердѣць.  
Door-steps, крыльцѣ, крылецъ.  
A towel, полотѣнце, полотѣ-  
нецъ.  
A rib, ребрѣ, реберь  
and ребрь.  
A pail, ведрѣ, ведерь  
and ведръ.  
A kernel, ядрѣ, ядеръ  
and ядръ.

All words having an unaccented termination in *чко, шко*, take the vowel *e* before the final consonant in the genitive plural, as :

Колѣчко, little ring, genitive plural, колѣчекъ.  
Окошко, little window, genitive plural, окóшекъ.

OBS. 4.—Дѣрево, 'a tree;' полѣно, 'a log;' звѣно, 'a link;' крыло, 'a wing;' помелó, 'a besom;' шило, 'an awl;' перó, 'a feather, a pen;' дно, 'the bottom,' form their plural irregularly, in *ья, вьвъ, ѣмъ*, etc., as :

Дерѣвья, trees ; genitive, дерѣвьевъ, dative, дерѣвѣмъ, etc.  
Крылья, wings ; genitive, крыльевъ, dative, крыльѣмъ.

OBS. 5.—The word *колѣно*, according to its meaning, is declined in the plural in three different ways :

Колѣно,	{	A tribe,	plural, колѣна, gen. колѣнъ, etc.
		The knee,	plural, колѣни, gen. колѣней.
		A joint (of a plant),	plural, колѣнья, gen. колѣньевъ.

The word *дитя*, 'child,' is declined in the plural irregularly : nominative дѣти, genitive дѣтей, dative дѣтямъ, instrumental дѣтьми, prepositional дѣтяхъ.

Кольцо, a ring, nominative plural, кольца and кольца.  
Плечó, the shoulder, nominative plural, плечи, and плеча.

OBS. 6.—Words forming their plural in *ята* or *ата*, end in the singular in *енокъ*, as :

Гусенокъ, a gosling,	plural, гусята.
Утенокъ, a duckling,	plural, утята.
Цыпленокъ, a chicken,	plural, цыплята.
Ребенокъ, a child,	plural, ребята.
Мышенокъ, little mouse,	plural, мышата.



Obs. 7.—All neuter substantives ending in *ко*, except the word *войско*, ‘an army,’ and *облоко*, ‘a cloud,’ form their plural in *ки* instead of *ка*, as :

Окѣшко, a window,	plural, окѣшѣи,	gen. окѣшекъ, etc.
Дрѣвко, a spear-shaft,	plural, дрѣвки,	gen. дрѣвѣкъ.

All words having an accented termination in *ко*, as *очко*, ‘a point ;’ *ушко*, ‘small year ;’ and also the word *яблоко*, ‘an apple,’ take, in the plural, masculine inflexions, as :

Nominative,	Очкіи,	ушкіи,	яблоки.
Genitive,	Очкѣвъ,	ушкѣвъ,	яблоковъ.

Obs. 8.—The words *око*, ‘the eye’ (Slavonic), and *ѣхо*, ‘the year,’ form an irregular plural :

Nominative,	Очи,	ѣшѣи,
Genitive,	Очѣй,	ѣшѣй, etc.

Obs. 9.—Augmentatives ending in *ище*, formed of neuter nouns, are declined in the plural regularly, as, *окно*, ‘a window,’ augmentative *окніище*, plural *окніища*, genitive *окніищъ*, etc. ; but those formed of masculine nouns take in the plural *ищи*, *ищей*, etc., as, *столъ*, ‘a table,’ augmentative *століище*, plural *століищи*, genitive *століищей*, etc.

Obs. 10.—The following nouns are declined in two different ways :

- |           |               |                 |                        |
|-----------|---------------|-----------------|------------------------|
| 1. Судно, | { a chalice,  | plural, судна,  | genitive, суденъ, etc. |
|           | { a ship,     | plural, суда,   | genitive, судѣвъ.      |
| 2. Чудо,  | { a wonder,   | plural, чудеса, | genitive, чудѣсъ, etc. |
|           | { a monster,  | plural, чуда,   | genitive, чудъ.        |
| 3. Небо.  | { heaven,     | plural, небеса, | genitive, небѣсъ, etc. |
|           | { the palate, | plural, нѣба,   | genitive, нѣбъ.        |

Obs. 11.—Nouns ending in *ство*, *здо*, *ско*, *сто*, although

having two or more consonants before the final vowel, are declined regularly, without the insertion of any euphonic vowel, as :

Богáтство,	wealth,	plural, богáтства,	genitive, богáтствá, etc.
Вóйско,	army,	plural, вóйскá,	genitive, вóйскъ.
Гнѣздó,	nest,	plural, гнѣздá,	genitive, гнѣздъ.
Мѣсто,	place,	plural, мѣстá,	genitive, мѣстъ.

Upon, on,

На, (governs prepositional).

A village, селó ; plural, сѣла.  
The mouth (of a river), устье.  
Oil, мáсло.  
Salad oil, деревáнное мáсло.

Opinion, мнѣнiе.  
Domicile, жилъѣ.  
A dress, плáтье.  
A lance, копъѣ.

Good day, sir.

†Здравствуйте, сýдарь, (first *в* is not pronounced).

How are you getting on ?

Какóвъ поживáете ?

Very well, thank you.

Благодáрю, доволъно хорóшó.

Good evening !

Добры́й вѣчеръ.

Good bye.

Прощáйте.

What sort of a mirror ?

Какóе зѣркало ?

What have you got ?

Что у вáсъ ?

I have nothing.

†У менíа ничегó нѣтъ.

OBS. 12.—The verb '*to get*,' when meaning possession, is not translated.

Nobody's, }  
No one's, }

Ничѣ́й, neuter ничѣ́ё.

### EXERCISE XXXVI.

Has the child any rings ?—The child has no rings, but his father has plenty of silver and gold rings.—How much butter has your cook got ?—He has a piece of fresh butter and two pots of milk.—Has he an iron or pewter pot ?—He has a good pewter pot.—Of which pewter are you speak-

ing?—Of English pewter.—Give them the dishes, which you see there, on the table.—I do not see any dishes on this wooden table.—I am not speaking of this, but of that table, upon which there are so many dishes with meat, butter and milk.—Whose are these six large and beautiful mirrors? I see two large mirrors only, the other four are small and ugly mirrors.—Where are your brothers going?—They are going into the garden.—With whom are they going into the garden?—With a few true friends and with their own children.—Where is the young player going?—He is going to the ball.—Who are at (on) the ball?—There are a few of (изъ) his friends and acquaintances.—Where is the ball you speak of?—It is at (in) our young king's theatre. How many wings has a nightingale?—It has as many wings as a sparrow; it has two wings.—Has it also two or three feathers only?—No, it has a great many feathers. Have you my steel pens?—I have them not.—How many apples do you see upon those trees?—I see only a few apples on the trees, but I see plenty of them on these dishes.—Where are the fields of these big peasants?—These big peasants have no fields.—Whose are these hovels (домишко)?—They are this big peasant's.—How many ears has a man?—A man has two ears and as many eyes.—How many trees are there in that forest?—In that forest there are many fine old and young trees.—Do you not see any fine trees and new buildings in our prince's garden?—I see neither.—Does not this thief see our clothes, or those of our pupils (воспитанникъ).—He sees neither (those nor the others), he sees only his own.

## EXERCISE XXXVII.

Have you seen old sparrows' nests on those high trees? I did not see any nests.—Where did you see these large grey eggs?—I saw them in the field, in the old eagle's nest. In whose palace are the treasures?—In no one's; there are no treasures in the palace.—Have you any other affairs here?—We have other affairs in town, but we have no affairs here.—What does this labourer give to his five sons?—He gives them five hares, some meat, three pots of milk, five chickens, ten ducklings, three young pigs and a few pounds of honey.—Where are you going?—I am going to the village.—What did these peasants see in the rich villages?—They saw there rich and poor men, many brave soldiers, also many monks, beggars, thieves and other people.—Have they not seen also young asses, calves and other animals?—The blacksmiths on your estate have seen them, but the peasants saw nothing.—I have no estates; Noblemen only have estates, and I am not a Nobleman, I am a Priest.—To whom did you give your counting board? I gave it to my clerk.—Have you bought pincers?—I did not buy any pincers.—Are you going home?—No, I am going to (B) the play.—Will you be at home to-day?—I am already at home.—How many months have you been in London?—I have been there three months already.—Do the soldiers like the sea?—The soldiers do not like the sea. What seeds have his peasants?—They have plenty of good seeds.—With whom art thou going into the garden? With a few companions.—Is the bottom of this sea deep? The bottom of this sea is very deep.—How many ears has a man?—A man has two ears, two eyes, one mouth, one nose and one forehead.—Are the windows of this house

high?—The windows of this house are not high.—How many pails of wine have you?—I have three pails of German wine.—Who bought this fine estate?—My cousin bought it.—Is your cousin rich?—I have a very rich cousin. Has your butcher many calves?—My butcher has six calves and twenty-three oxen.

### TWENTIETH LESSON.—Двадцатый Урокъ.

To thank, благодарить.  
To give, давать, дать.  
To sting, колоть.  
To order, велѣть.  
To rub, тереть.

To draw, рисовать.  
To fade, вѣнчать.  
To wish, желать.  
To go, идти.  
To lead, вести.

To be able, can, Мочь.  
To burn, Жечь.

OBS. 1.—The usual ending of the infinitive mood of almost all Russian verbs is *тъ*, which is the contraction of the Slavonic termination *ти*. There remain in modern Russian only a few verbs ending in *ти*, as :

Везти, 'to carry;' тристи, 'to shake;

and only seventeen verbs with infinitive in *чь*, as :

Стеречь, 'to guard;' стричь, 'to shear.'

OBS. 2.—Verbs ending in *ти* are accented on the last syllable.

The following neuter nouns are used only in the plural :

The yard-gate,	Воротá.
The hand-rail,	Пери́ла.
The mouth,	Уста́, (Slavonic).
Ink,	Черни́ла.
An arm-chair,	Крѣсла.
Fire-wood,	Дрова́.

Have you a little ink?

We have plenty of it.

The cabinet-maker has no arm-chairs,  
but he has plenty of firewood.

Such,

Such as,

The same as, }

As good as, }

What dress have you?

I have such a dress.

They have no such dresses.

Neither of you has such a ring as I  
have.

No, sir, we have the same as you  
have (as good as you have).

After, for,

To go for,

Is he going for any thing?

What is he going for (after)?

He is going for some wine.

What is your servant going for?

He is going for some tobacco.

Whom is he going to fetch? }

Whom is he going after, for? }

After no one.

Is he going for some meat?

No, for some milk.

Every thing,

Everybody, all,

I like every thing here, and every-  
body, but he likes nothing  
and no one.

I gave them every thing (that) I had.

Есть ли у васъ немного чернилъ?

У насъ ихъ очень много.

У столярá нѣтъ креселъ, но у него  
много дровъ.

Такѡй, genitive такого;  
plural такіе, такія.

Такѡй, какѡй.

Такѡй-же, какъ и.

Какое платье у васъ?

У меня такое платье.

У нихъ нѣтъ такихъ платьевъ.

Ни у одного изъ васъ нѣтъ такого  
перстня какъ у меня.

Нѣтъ, сударь, у насъ есть такой же  
какъ и у васъ.

За (governs the instr.).

Идти за.

Идѣтъ ли онъ за чѣмъ нибудь?

За чѣмъ онъ идѣтъ?

Онъ идѣтъ за винѡмъ.

За чѣмъ идѣтъ вашъ слуга?

Онъ идѣтъ за табакѡмъ.

За кѣмъ онъ идѣтъ?

Ни за кѣмъ.

Идѣтъ ли онъ за мясомъ

Нѣтъ, за молокомъ.

Всѣ.

Всѣхъ.

Я люблю здѣсь все и всѣхъ, а онъ не  
любитъ ничего и никого,

Я далъ имъ все что имѣлъ.

Obs. 3.—The relative pronoun что, 'which,' 'that,' is never omitted in Russian.

The owner,	владѣлецъ.	Young pigeon,	голубѣнокъ.
The room,	пороѣй, комната.	Glass, pane,	стекло.
The ring,	перстень.	Roasted,	жареный.
The promenade,	гулянье.	Boiled,	вареный.
The edge,	лезвѣе.	Blunt, dull,	тупой.
Rags,	рѣбище.	Sharp,	острый.
A big table,	столѣще.	Coarse,	грубый.
Well,	хорошѣ.	Badly,	дурно.

Many (plural),

Многіе, многія.

A few (plural),

Немногіе, немногія.

Many of our friends are in the garden already.

Многіе изъ нашихъ пріятелей уже въ саду.

Only a few houses here are good, all the others are bad.

Только немногіе дома здѣсь хорошіе, все другіе дурны.

Obs. 4.—*Many* and *few* in the singular can be used only in neuter, when there is no subject mentioned to denote the gender, as :

We spoke of many things.  
A few things here are good.

Мы говоримъ о многѣмъ.  
Не многое здѣсь хорошо.

To play (a game).

Играть въ (with the accus.).

To play cards.  
What game are you playing?  
We are not playing any game.  
To play at whist.  
To play at skittles.

Играть въ карты.  
† Во что вы играете.  
† Мы ни во что не играемъ.  
Играть въ вѣсть.  
Играть въ кѣгли.

Without,

Безъ (governs the genitive).

What will you take? }  
What would you like? }  
What you like. }  
Anything you like. }

Что, or чего вамъ угодно?  
Что вамъ угодно.

Do as you please.  
Which would you like?  
Whichever you like.  
They do not like this.

Дѣлайте какъ вамъ угодно.  
Который вамъ угодно?  
Какій вамъ угодно.  
Имъ не угодно этого.

Obs. 4.—With *угодно*, the subject must be used in the dative, as:

Мнѣ угодно,  
Емѹ угодно,

I should like.  
He should like, etc.

Will you take some pie?  
Thank you, I am not hungry.  
Have you been long in London?  
Since yesterday.  
It is the same to me.

Не угодно ли вамъ пирога?  
Благодарю, я не голоденъ.  
Давно ли вы въ Лондонѣ?  
Со вчерашняго дня.  
Мнѣ всё равно.

### EXERCISE XXXVIII.

What is the cook going to the shed for?—He is going for a few logs of wood.—Into whose shed is he going for firewood?—He goes always into the shed of the owner of those beautiful buildings.—Has Andrew got my ink and steel pens?—I think that he has neither (those nor the others).—Of which teacher's son are you speaking?—I speak of the one, to whom I am going.—Have you such a good easy-chair as my father has?—No, we have not as good, but we have some others.—They have very good new chairs and easy-chairs.—Are you going to the ball with many or only with a few friends?—I am going only with three friends, with my master (teacher) and his modest sons. Where did you see the English artist?—Not I, but my brother saw him at the promenade in the forest.—Where are the nice walks, to which the artists go so often?—They are in those blooming (цвѣтущіи) meadows and fields, to which (or whither) these young men are going.—The



windows of these new houses are still unglazed (without panes), but the windows of this magnificent building are glazed (with panes).—Do you not see those pails with beer or with wine?—I see neither the pails, nor the beer nor wine; I see only the cook, (who is) going to the yard of that building for a few young pigeons, goslings and ducklings. Of what and with whom did this old soldier's children speak?—They spoke with us of their poor father.—You have too little roast chicken.—I have as much as you have. Who sees the iron gate of this fine palace?—Some see it, and others do not.

#### EXERCISE XXXIX.

What a high gate!—Yes, it is a very high one.—What gate is it?—It is a wooden gate.—Have you bought much firewood of the peasant?—I bought very little.—What sort of ink did you give your clerk?—I gave him the black and blue, but did not give the red.—Why did you not give him the red ink?—Because he has red.—Are not the banker's children ill?—Yes, they are very ill.—How long have they been ill?—They have been ill since yesterday. What handkerchiefs did you buy from the rich merchant? I bought from him such a handkerchief, as you have not got.—How many logs of wood have you in the yard?—I do not know, but I think (that) I have still a good deal of firewood.—How long have you been here?—Already three hours, already six hours.—Where are the young officers? I think (that) they are either at the ball or in the theatre. Who says this?—Many say this.—Does everybody say this?—No, not everybody.—Where are the young grey asses?—They are either in (на) the yard or in (на) the field.—Are there many mirrors in the grand duke's palace?

The grand duke has many large and magnificent mirrors. Is this child hungry?—No, I have already given it some milk with sugar.—Did you not give it also something else?—No, I gave it nothing else.—What should you like to have?—Give me a little roast meat, if you please. What roast meat would you like?—Any you like, I do not care (it is the same to me).—Give me some roast goose. Would you not like also some roast chicken?—Yes, and give me also a piece of ham, if you please.—Where and with whom are your children playing?—They are playing in the yard with our neighbours' children.—What game are they playing?—They are playing at skittles.—What game is the banker playing with the merchants?—He is playing at whist.—Does he play well at whist.—Everybody plays well here.—Would they like to play with us at whist? No, they would not like, they do not want to play with you.

---

TWENTY-FIRST LESSON.—Двадцать первый Урокъ.

I must,	}	Я долженъ.
I have to,		
I am obliged,		
Thou must,		Ты долженъ.
He must,		Онъ долженъ.
We must,		Мы должны.
You must,		Вы должны.
They must,		Они должны.
I had to, I was to, or	}	Я долженъ былъ.
I was obliged.		
I shall have to,	}	Я долженъ буду.
I shall be obliged,		

What has he to do to-day?	Что онъ долженъ дѣлать сегодня?
He has to go to the castle.	Онъ долженъ идти въ замокъ,
To whom had you to give all your money?	Кому вы должны были дать все свои деньги.
I had to give it to poor peasants.	Я долженъ былъ дать ихъ бѣднымъ крестьянамъ.
Who will have to go with the children?	Кто долженъ будетъ идти съ дѣтьми?
I shall have to go with them.	Я долженъ буду идти съ ними.

Obs. 1.—Some words ending in *енокъ*, take in the plural masculine inflexions in *и*, *овъ*, etc., as well as in *ята*, *ять*, etc., as :

Мышенокъ,	little mouse ;	plur. мышѣнки and мышата.
Медвѣенокъ,	bear's cub ;	plur. медвѣѣнки and медвѣята.
Щенокъ,	pup ;	plur. щенки and шенята.
Галченокъ,	young jackdaw ;	plur. галчѣнки and галчата.
Львенокъ,	lion's whelp ;	plur. львѣнки.

Usually, Обыкновенно.

To be (indefinite), Бывать.

What news? Что новаго?

Have you something new? Есть ли у васъ что новое?

Obs. 2.—After the interrogative pronoun *что* the neuter adjective is used in the genitive, but when *что* signifies 'something,' the adjective agrees with it in case.

Something (a certain thing),	Нѣчто,	} demonstr.pronouns, declined like <i>что</i> .
Nothing,	Ничто,	

I see there something white.

He sees nothing good in that.

Я вижу тамъ нѣчто бѣлое.

Онъ ничего хорошаго въ томъ не  
видитъ.

Tallow, Сало.  
 A herd, flock, Стадо.  
 A stud, Табуны.  
 Hay, Сено.  
 Soap, Мыло.  
 Mahogany, Красное дерево.  
 Sky-blue, Голубой.  
 Playful, Ртзвый.  
 Little Jew, Жидёнокъ.  
 A goldsmith,

Glass (material), Стекло.  
 A pane, Стекло.  
 Thrashing floor, Гумно.  
 An outskirt, Предмѣстье.  
 A foal, Жеребёнокъ.  
 The soup, Супъ.  
 High, Высокій.  
 Low, Низкій.  
 Little Turk, Турченокъ.  
 Золотыхъ дѣлъ мастеръ.

Both,

И,—и.

Have you got good hay here ?  
 We have both good and bad.

Есть ли здѣсь хорошее сѣно ?  
 У насъ есть и хорошее и дурное.

Every kind, }  
 All sorts, }

Всѣмъ.

What sort of people are in this suburb ?

Какіе люди въ этомъ предмѣстьи ?

All sorts of people are in it.

Всѣмъ въ нёмъ люди.

He gave the peasants every kind of grain.

Онъ далъ крестьянамъ всякаго зерна.

To warm,

Грѣть I. 1.

To warm one's self,

Грѣться.

I warm myself.

Я грѣюсь.

Thou warmest thyself,

Ты грѣешься.

He warms himself.

Онъ грѣется.

We warm ourselves.

Мы грѣемся.

You warm yourselves.

Вы грѣетесь.

They warm themselves.

Они грѣются.

Obs. 3.—Reflective verbs are formed of active verbs by adding the syllable ся (contracted reflective pronoun себя, 'self'). This syllable ся in conjugation, when coming after a vowel, is contracted into съ.

I wash myself.

Я моюсь.

They wash themselves.

Они моются.

You wash yourself.  
 We wash ourselves.  
 I warmed myself.  
 We warmed ourselves.

Вы моетесь.  
 Мы моемся.  
 Я грѣлся.  
 Мы грѣлись.

To fry, to roast, } жарить.  
 To be frying, }  
 To cook, } варить.  
 To be cooking, }

To fry (thoroughly), изжарить.  
 To boil (thoroughly), сварить.

Cook, there is goose, fry it for me.  
 Who cooked those eggs ?  
 Fry a few eggs.  
 Yes, sir.

Поваръ, вотъ гусь, изжарь мнѣ его.  
 Кто сварилъ эти яйца ?  
 Изжарьте нѣсколько яицъ.  
 Слушаю-сь.

Obs. 4.—Слѣшаю-сь means 'I obey, sir.' This expression is generally used by subordinates answering their superiors.

#### EXERCISE XL.

Will you have chickens for dinner to-day?—We will have for dinner to-day, not only chickens, but also two pies; one large for the guests, and another small one for the children.—Have you in your stud many foals and young asses?—I have not a single (ни одинъ) young ass in my stud, but I have twenty-three foals.—What do you see in this sack?—I see two pretty pups.—What has this merchant new?—He has fresh butter, fine white woollen cloth and a great many new mahogany chairs.—Has he not also tumblers (made) of (изъ) red and blue glass?—No, he has no other goods.—Are there little mice in your father's house?—There are no little mice in our house, but in our barn there are plenty of them.—Are the trees in your forest high?—There are both high and low trees.—Have you something new?—I have nothing new, I have only (that) what you have seen already.—Did I see every thing?—I think (that) you did.—Does his child wish to see the pretty

kittens and the little mice?—It wishes to see only the kittens.—And why does it not wish to see the little mice? Because it is afraid of them.—Is that old man with his family going to the play or to the ball?—He is going neither to the play nor to the ball, but to (на) the seashore (shore of the sea).—Do you see something black on those high trees?—We see a few nests with young jackdaws. Has anybody any tobacco and soap?—Nobody here has either tobacco or soap.—Has not anybody here something magnificent?—We have a magnificent pond.—He wants to give to these two lion's whelps some meat, and to this playful kitten a few little mice.—Do you not want to go with him to the kind prince, to his magnificent castle?—No, I do not want to go to the prince, I am going into the low barn, to the old beggar.—Have you seen in the village the poor little Jews in black coats and bad trousers?—No, because there are no little Jews in our villages.—Do the peasants see something on that field?—They see nothing. Do you not see something?—We see high corn in (on) the fields of the rich proprietor.—What sort of eyes have these inquisitive children?—One has grey eyes, and the other blue.

#### EXERCISE XLI.

Have I to speak with him?—No, you must not speak with him.—Who has to do this?—No one has to do this. Have not we to give you something?—You have to give us some money.—Do you want much tallow?—I do not want much of it, give me some of it.—Have the joiners enough mahogany (wood)?—No, they have too little of it. Will you not take a little more meat?—No, I have enough meat, but give me another little piece of chicken.—In

whose village have the boys been?—They were not in the village, but in the yard.—Who says that his tailor has good taste?—Nobody says this, because his tailor has very bad taste.—Is he often at (въ) the grand duke's palace? No, he is very seldom there.—To whom do they want to give these ducklings?—They want to give them to their cook.—Has he made the soup already?—No, he has not yet.—Did you see in (on) the meadows herds of oxen? I did not see the herds of oxen, but I saw three studs of horses (лошади).—Has the locksmith much iron?—He has plenty, but not so much as the blacksmith has.—Is your gold good?—It is as good as yours.—Where are they warming themselves?—They are warming themselves at the fire.—Who else is warming himself at the fire?—The kittens are also warming themselves at the fire.—Are you often at St. Petersburg?—No, I am seldom there, but I am often in Paris and in London.—What kind of people are (usually) here?—All kinds: rich and poor, good and bad. Do you prefer (предпочитаете) the stag to the hare?—I prefer the hare to the stag, but I like also the meat of a young stag.—What kind of bread has the baker?—He has every kind of bread.

---

TWENTY-SECOND LESSON.—Двадцать Второй Урокъ.

*Feminine Gender.*—Женскій Родъ.

A wife,	жена, супруга.	A cell,	кѣлія.
A woman,	женщина.	A bible,	бібія.
A fly,	муха.	A mouse,	мышь, f.*
A hat,	шляпа.	A net,	сѣть, f.
A maid-servant,	служанка.	A horse,	лошадь, f.
A sister,	сестра.	A bed,	постель, f.
A candle,	свѣча.	A seal,	печать, f.
A widow,	вдова.	A mill,	мельница.
A mistress (of a	хозяйка, барыня.	A cup,	чашка.
servant),		A bench, shop,	лавка.
Madam,	сударыня.	A glove,	перчатка.

Obs. 1. Masculine nouns ending in a or я follow the inflexions of feminine nouns, as :

Мужчина, 'man,'	gen. мужчины,	dat. мужчѣнѣ, etc.
Судья, 'a judge,'	gen. судьи,	dat. судѣѣ, etc.

It must be observed here that adjectives qualifying such nouns follow the masculine and not the feminine inflexions, as :

Добраго, мужчины,	Of the kind man.
Мудрому судѣѣ,	To the wise judge.

Obs. 2.—Nouns ending in жа, ча, ша or ща, form the instrumental singular in ею, instead of ою, as :

Стужа, a cold,	instrumental стужею.
Туча, a cloud,	instrumental тучею.
Крыша, a roof,	instrumental крышею.
Роща, a grove,	instrumental рощею.

---

\* Nouns in ѣ, which are feminine, will be marked with f.



## THIRD DECLENSION.

## DECLENSION OF FEMINE SUBSTANTIVES AND ADJECTIVES.

Таблица Склонения.

Singular. — Единственное Число.

Cases. Падскій.	<i>Substantives.</i> Имя Существительное.		<i>Adjectives.</i> — Имя Прилагательное.		
			<i>Full termination.</i>		<i>Ascorporated termination.</i>
	Hard Inflex.	Soft Inflection.	Hard Inflex.	Soft Inflex.	Soft Inflex.
Nom.	а.	я.	ая.	ия.	я.
Gen.	ы.	и.	ой.	ей.	ей.
Dat.	ѣ.	ѣ.	ой.	ей.	ей.
Acc.	у.	ю.	ую.	юю.	ю.
Inst.	ою.	ею.	ою.	ею.	ею.
Prep.	ѣ.	ѣ, и.	ой.	ей.	ей.

OBS. 3.—The inflexions *ю* and *ю* of the instrumental case, of all substantives in *а* or *я*, can be shortened into *ю* or *ю*, as :

Жен<sup>ю</sup>ю, with the wife, instead of жен<sup>ю</sup>ю.  
Нед<sup>ю</sup>ю, by the week, instead of нед<sup>ю</sup>ю.

Care must be taken not to use the abridged inflexion *ю* in those substantives which have already their genitive plural in *ю*, as, for example :

Юноша, 'a youth,' genitive plural юнош<sup>ю</sup>.

In such words the inflexion *ю* must remain unaltered, as :

Юнош<sup>ю</sup>, 'by the youth,' and not юнош<sup>ю</sup>, 'of youths.'

On the other hand, the inflexion *ю* of the instrumental case of feminine nouns in *ь* may be replaced by *ю*, which is however only used in formal language, as,

Вл<sup>ю</sup>стью, 'by the power,' instead of вл<sup>ю</sup>стью ;

and in ordinary conversation, after letter *ш*, in order to facilitate the pronunciation, as :

Вещ<sup>ю</sup>, 'by the thing,' instead of вещ<sup>ю</sup>.  
Помощ<sup>ю</sup>, 'by the help,' instead of помощ<sup>ю</sup>.

This, that (fem.) Эта, та, сія.

She, it, Она.

*Singular.*

Nominative,	This,	Эта,	Сія.	That,	Та.
Genitive,	Of this,	Этой,	Сей.	Of that,	Той.
Dative,	To this,	Этой,	Сей.	To that,	Той.
Accusative,	This,	Эту,	Сію.	That,	Ту.
Instrumental,	By this,	Этою, ою,	Сео.	By that,	Тою, той.
Prepositional,	Of this,	Этой,	Сей.	Of that,	Той.

Nominative,	She,	она́.	My, mine,	мо́я, f.
Genitive,	Of her,	ея́, (еѣ).	Of my,	мо́ей, еѣ.
Dative,	To her,	ей.	To my,	мо́ей.
Accusative,	Her,	еѣ.	My,	мою́.
Instrumental,	By her,	ею́.	By my,	мо́ею, еѣ.
Prepositional,	Of her,	о ней.	Of my,	о мо́ей.

Obs. 4.—The third personal pronoun она́, 'she,' when preceded by a preposition, takes an н in all the cases, as :

Для нея, 'for her ;' къ ней, 'to her.'

Thy, thine (fem.)	Тво́я.
Thy, (own) (fem.)	Сво́я.
Her, her own (fem.)	Ея́, сво́я.

Obs. 5.—The possessive pronoun тво́я and the reflective possessive pronoun сво́я are declined like мо́я.

Which (fem.)	{ Кака́я, } declined like an
	{ Кото́рая, } adjective.
One, alone (fem.)	Одна́, (declined like э́та).

Who has my hat ?	У когó мо́я шля́па ?
I have mine.	У меня́ сво́я.
To whom did she give the hat ?	Кому́ дала́ она́ шля́пу ?
To her mother.	Свое́й ма́терп.
Which hat did you give her ?	Кото́рую шля́пу вы ей́ дали́ ?
I gave her my daughter's silk hat.	Я далъ ей́ шелковую́ шля́пу мо́ей дочерп.
Does she see our servant ?	Ви́дит ли она́ нашего́ слугу́ ?
She does not see the servant.	Она́ не ви́дит слуги́.
With whom is thy wife going ?	Съ кѣмъ и́детъ тво́я жена́ ?
She is going with my mother and thy daughter.	Она́ и́детъ съ мо́ею ма́терью и тво́ею дочерью.
I see the mother and the daughter.	Я ви́жу ма́ть и дочь.
Of which hat is the servant-maid speaking ?	О како́й шля́пѣ говори́тъ горничная́ ?
Of this man's hat.	О шля́пѣ э́того́ мужчи́ны.

Obs. 6.—The following feminine nouns—

любовь, 'love ;' любовь, 'a lie ;' церковь, 'a church ;' рожь, 'rye,'

drop the vowel o in all the cases, except in the instrumental singular, as :

любовь, genitive, любви, instrumental, любовью.  
 любовь, genitive, любви, instrumental, любовью, etc.

Obs. 7.—The word мать, 'a mother,' and дочь, 'a daughter,' take in declension, before the final vowel, the syllable ep, as :

мать, дочь ; genitive, матерп, дочерп, etc.

Obs. 8.—The accusative of all feminine nouns in ь is in the singular *always* like the nominative :

Obs. 9.—Substantives ending in ая or яя are declined like adjectives :

дѣтская, a nursery.  
 прихожая, an ante-room.  
 спальная, a bed-room.

столовая, a dining-room.  
 конная, a horse-market.  
 горничная, a maid-servant.

To burn,  
 To be burning, }  
 To sing,

Горѣть, II. 9.

Пѣть,\* I. 1.

I am burning, я горю.  
 Thou art burning, ты горѣшь.  
 He is burning, онъ горѣтъ.  
 We are burning, мы горѣмъ.  
 You are burning, вы горѣте.  
 They are burning, они горѣтъ.

I sing, я пою.  
 Thou singest, ты поѣшь.  
 He sings, онъ поѣтъ.  
 We sing, мы поѣмъ.  
 You sing, вы поѣте.  
 They sing, они поѣтъ.

I was burning, я горѣлъ, а, о, etc.  
 I shall be burning, я буду горѣть.

I sang, я пѣлъ, а, о, etc.  
 I will sing, я буду пѣть.

What is burning ?  
 The wood is burning.

Что горѣтъ ?  
 Дрова горѣтъ.

Is not the candle burning also ?  
Yes, the candle is burning also.

Не горѣтъ ли тоже и свѣча.  
Да, и свѣча тоже горѣтъ.

A salmon, лосось.  
An eel, угорь.  
A pike, щука.  
A sterlet, стерлядь.

A carp, карпъ.  
A sturgeon, осетеръ.  
A crawfish, ракъ.  
A partridge, куропатка.

### EXERCISE XLII.

Did she see his wife?—Yes, she saw his wife, and her sister also.—Did his wife speak to her (own) sister?—Yes, she spoke to her.—Where is your old servant going?—He is going to the ante-room.—What for?—He is going there for his mistress's hat.—With whom is he speaking in the ante-room?—He is speaking with the old maid-servant. Of what is he speaking?—He is speaking with her of his kind master.—What does the mother order her daughter to do?—She orders her to cook one fowl and five eggs. The lazy cook's wife wants to speak to the rich merchant's mother.—About what?—About the poor widow and her little daughter.—How many children has this poor widow got?—She has got three daughters and five sons.—Where is our kind judge?—He is in the old monk's cell.—Where is the kind mother with her modest daughter going?—She is going with her daughter to church.—Where is the lazy child?—It is in bed.—Why?—Because it is ill.—Is your sister still in the church?—She is no longer there, I think she is now at home.—Did you speak yesterday with his pretty daughter?—No, I did not speak with her; I did not see her.—Did you see the master's handsome sister? Yes, sir; I have to go with her to the church to-day.—To which church?—To the Russian church.—What has this

kitten got in its mouth?—It has a mouse in his mouth. In which cupboard are the eggs and the roast chickens? In the (that) cupboard which is in the ante-room.—Has the peasant any rye?—No, he has not any rye.—Do you see that hen?—I see the black hen with the black chickens. Do you see the wise judge there, on that bench?—I see him, and his brother the great orator also.—Have you a good herring?—I have a herring, but it is not good.—Has not the servant my seal and my steel pen?—He has neither.

#### EXERCISE XLIII.

Is not the servant going for my seal and my pens?—She is not going for the seal, but for the red ink.—Where is this woman going after my servant?—She is going after him to our nursery.—Will you have some Dutch herring? No, thank you, but give me a piece of cheese and some white bread, if you please.—Have you to go with him to Nicolas' shop?—No, I have not.—Do the children want to take tea?—They want to take coffee.—What kind of hat has he bought at that shop?—He bought a black silk hat. Were you at the English church?—I have not been at church, but at (na) the horse-market.—What did you see at the horse-market?—I saw an excellent young horse. To whom is this nurse speaking?—She is speaking to her mistress's child.—Would you like some beer?—No, I do not drink beer; give me a glass of wine, if you please.—Do you want a cup of tea or coffee?—No, I take neither tea nor coffee.—By whom was this steel key given to you?—It was given to me by my faithful servant.—With whom is your brother Andrew going?—He is going with your sister.—Were are they going?—They are going to that magnificent church.—How many millstones are there in

this mill?—There are four millstones in this mill.—Whose is this rick?—This is the poor widow's rick.—In whose yard is there plenty of snow?—In our neighbour's yard. Is the wood in the nursery burning well?—The wood in the nursery burns well, but in the dining-room the coals are burning badly.—Who was singing in the church to-day? My sister sang there, and many children sang also.—With whom sang your sister?—She sang alone, but the children sang with their teacher and with the priest.—Will they sing also to-morrow?—They will sing to-morrow at the king's castle.

TWENTY-THIRD LESSON.—Два́дцать трети́й Уро́къ.

Whose,	Чья, fem.
Nobody's, }	Ничья́, fem.
No one's, }	

Obs. 1.—Чья and ничья́ follow the same inflexions as мо́й, viz., genitive, dative and prepositional, чьей; accusative, чью; instrumental, чьею (or чьей).

Whose is this glove?	Чья́ эта перчатка?
It is my sister's.	Она́ моёй сестры́.
Whose mother did you see yesterday?	Чью́ мать вы ви́дѣли вчера́?
Whose sister is this girl?	Чья́ сестра́ эта́ дѣвица́?
No one's, this girl has neither brothers nor sisters.	Ничья́, у́ этой дѣвицы́ нѣтъ ни брать- евъ ни сестеръ.

It, (she),                      Она́.

Obs. 2.—*It*, when referring to feminine nouns, is rendered by the third personal pronoun она́, 'she,' as:

Have you the glove?	У васъ ли перчатка?
I have it.	Она́ у меня.

To whom did you give the candle ?  
 I gave it to the servant.  
 Did you speak of the glove ?  
 I spoke of it.

Кому вы дали свѣчу ?  
 Я далъ её слугѣ.  
 Говорили ли вы о перчаткѣ ?  
 Я говорилъ о ней.

Her (*poss. pronoun*),

Ея, pronounce её.

Her (*own*),

Своя.

Our, ours, *fem.*

Наша, своя.

Your, yours, *fem.*

Ваша, своя.

Obs. 3.—The third feminine possessive pronoun ея, 'her,' and its plural ихъ, 'their,' have no declension of their own, and they do not take an н when used with a preposition, as :

At her house.

Въ ея домѣ.

I am going to her mother.

Я идѣ къ ея матери.

In their room.

Въ ихъ комнатѣ.

I spoke of their daughters.

Я говорилъ объ ихъ дочеряхъ.

Obs. 4.—Cardinal numerals ending in ь follow the same mode of inflexion as feminine nouns in ь, and when used in the nominative they govern the genitive plural, but in all the other cases they agree in case with the substantive, as :

Five tables.

Пять столовъ.

Six sisters.

Шесть сестёръ.

To the seven brothers.

Къ семи братьямъ.

With six children.

Съ шестью дѣтьми.

In ten houses.

Въ десяти домахъ.

We spoke of twelve towns.

Мы говорили о двѣнадцати городѣхъ.

To be able, (*can*),

Мочь.

One can,

Можно, } impersonal verbs.

One cannot,

Нельзя, }

*Personal Form.*

*Impersonal Form.*

Я могу,

I can.

Мнѣ можно.

Ты можешь,

Thou canst.

Тебѣ можно.



<i>Personal Form.</i>		<i>Impersonal Form.</i>
Онъ, она можетъ,	He, she can.	Емѹ, ей можно.
Мы можемъ,	We can.	Намъ можно.
Вы можете,	You can.	Вамъ можно.
Онѣ, онѣ могутъ,	They can.	Имъ можно.
Я могъ,	I could.	Мнѣ можно было.
Я могла, }		
Я могъ,		
Мы могли,	We could.	Намъ можно было.

I cannot,      { Я не могу.  
                         { Мнѣ нельзя.

<i>Personal Form.</i>		<i>Impersonal Form.</i>
Я не могу,	I cannot.	Мнѣ нельзя.
Ты не можешь,	Thou canst not.	Тебѣ нельзя.
Онъ не можетъ,	He cannot.	Емѹ нельзя.
Мы не можемъ,	We cannot.	Намъ нельзя.
Вы не можете,	You cannot.	Вамъ нельзя.
Онѣ, онѣ не могутъ,	They cannot.	Имъ нельзя.
Я не могъ,	I could not.	Мнѣ нельзя было.
Мы не могли.	We could not.	Намъ нельзя было.

Obs. 5.—The impersonal verbs можно and нельзя require the subject to be in the dative, as :

Сестрѣ можно а матери нельзя.      The sister can, but the mother cannot.

The same,      Тотъ-же, та-же, то-же.  
The same thing,      То-же.  
So,      Такъ,

Obs. 6.—Adjectives following the word такъ, 'so,' must be apocopated, as :

Онъ такъ добръ.      He is so kind.  
Это такъ хорошѣ.      This is so good.

The same (kind)—as,

{ Такой-же—какъ п.  
Такъ-же—какъ п.

He gave her the same book.  
He gave her the same kind of  
book as I gave.

Онъ далъ ей ту же книгу.  
Онъ далъ ей такую же книгу какъ я  
далъ.

A girl,	дѣвица.
A cousin,	двоюродная сестра.
A coach,	карёта.
A coach-house,	карётникъ.
A stable,	конюшня.
A youth,	юноша.
A singer (fem.),	пѣвица.
A room,	комната.
A road,	дорога.
A dog,	собака.
A kitchen,	кухня.
A drop,	капля.
To say,	сказать.
To sow,	сѣять.

Cold,	холодный.
Warm,	тёплый.
Amiable,	любезный.
Well built,	стройный.
Dark,	тёмный.
Tidy, neat,	опрятный.
Clean, pure,	чистый.
Bold,	отважный.
Wax, <i>adj.</i> ,	восковый.
Tallow, <i>adj.</i> ,	сальный.
Dirty,	грязный.
A cook, (fem.),	кухарка.
To read,	читать.
To write,	писать.
To answer,	отвѣчать.

What did he say to her mother?  
He said to her that his sister could  
not go to church to-day.  
To whom are you writing?  
I am writing to her sister.  
What did you answer him?  
I answered him that I have to write  
to my mother.

Что сказалъ онъ ей матери?  
Онъ сказалъ ей что его сестрѣ нельзя  
было идти сегодня въ церковь.  
Кому пишете вы?  
Я пишу ей сестрѣ.  
Что вы отвѣчали ему?  
Я отвѣчалъ ему, что я долженъ пи-  
сать моей матери.

Not a,

I have not a single friend.  
I do not see a single fly.  
He has not a copper in (his) pocket.

Ни—не, (for numerals).

У меня ни одного друга нѣтъ.  
Я ни одной мухи не вижу.  
У него нѣтъ ни копейки въ карманѣ.

To need, to want, }  
To be in need of, }

Нуждаться въ, (with the pre-  
positional case).

*Personal Form.*

*Impersonal Form.*

Я нуждаюсь, I need.  
Ты нуждаешься. Thou needest.

Мнѣ нужно.  
Тебѣ нужно.

*Personal Form.*

Онъ нуждается, He needs.  
 Мы нуждаемся, We need.  
 Вы нуждаетесь, You need.  
 Они нуждаются, They need.

*Impersonal Form.*

Ему нужно.  
 Намъ нужно.  
 Вамъ нужно.  
 Имъ нужно.

I am in need of *daily* bread.

We are in want of clothes.

She is in need of money.

This rich banker is in need of a  
servant.

Я нуждаюсь въ насущномъ хлѣбѣ.

{ Мы нуждаемся въ платьѣ.

{ Намъ нужно платье.

{ Она нуждается въ деньгахъ.

{ Ей нужны деньги.

Этому богатому банкиру нуженъ слуга.

OBS. 7.—The accented termination *ею* of the instrumental case, when preceded by *ж, ч, ш, or щ*, must have the sound of *ою*, and in the language of the present day it is usually written *ою* instead of *ею*, as:

Душѣю, 'with the soul,' instead of душѣю.

Свѣчѣю, 'with the candle,' instead of свѣчѣю.

## EXERCISE XLIV.

Whose wife did she see?—She saw the rich banker's young wife.—Where did she see her?—She saw her at (въ) church.—Has she a coach?—She has a very good new coach.—Where did you see this new coach?—In the old wooden coach-house, which is in the clean yard of this fine building.—Are there many foals in that stable?—There are no foals in that stable, there are horses only.—With whom do you want to go to the rich merchant's stable? With the well-built youth.—With which youth?—With the one of whom I spoke to you yesterday.—Who has my pens, my ink and seal?—I have not got them, your servant has got all these things.—What is the cook going to the

kitchen for?—She is going to the kitchen for some fresh water.—Is she not going there also for something else? She is going there for the roast chickens also.—What sort of candle has that girl?—She has a wax candle.—Has she not also a tallow candle?—She has not a single tallow candle.—Whose ring has the girl?—She has her own. How many pups has this dog?—It has four pups.—Has she that woman's hat.—She has her own, and not that woman's hat.—How many pails of water has she?—She has five pails of fresh water.

#### EXERCISE XLV.

Can you give this wax candle to that amiable girl?—No, I cannot give her the wax candle.—Why?—Because I have not got a wax candle.—Does this girl want to eat and drink?—Yes, she wants to eat and drink.—Would she like some bread and butter?—Yes, she would; and give her, please, also some cheese and a glass of beer or wine.—You have to give me five roubles.—That (this) is too much, I cannot give you so much, I can give you only two roubles. What does he want to go to (на) the field for?—He wants to sow corn (plural).—What sort of corn?—Oats, barley and other kind of corn.—In whose field will he sow them? In his own.—Does any one want to write to the modest Englishman?—No, but the Russian wants to buy some ink and write a letter to his mother, and not to the Englishman.—The rich owners of the ships are in need of sails and anchors.—Can one buy in the market bills of exchange? One could yesterday, but one cannot to-day.—This nobleman's wife wants to go to the merchant's shop?—Why?

She wants to buy at the merchant's shop some coffee, tea, sugar, cheese and some pepper.—With whom is she going to that shop?—With her servant.

### EXERCISE XLVI.

Good day, madam! how do you do?—Thank you, I am quite well.—Your cousin (fem.) told me that you were ill. Yes, I was ill yesterday and the day before, but now I am well.—Where were you yesterday?—I was on (at) the estate of Mr. N.—Has he as laborious and honest labourers as you have?—No, his labourers are very lazy.—In which street is your house?—It is in the same street as (where) yours.—Is your house as dark as mine?—Yes, it is as dark as yours.—Do you want to eat?—Give me a piece of boiled salmon.—Do not you want some boiled crawfish (plur.)? No, thank you.—Which wine would you like?—Give me a glass of red wine.—What times have we now?—We have now very bad times, every thing is very dear.—Which is dearer, pewter or silver?—Silver, but gold is still dearer. How many eggs did you give to your cook?—I gave her three eggs.—Of what colour is the sky?—The sky is blue and the clouds in it are grey.—What is that man's trade? He is by trade a boot and shoe maker.—Good bye, my good friend, I have to go to my sisters.—The banisters of this wooden staircase are (made of) iron.

---

# TWENTY-FOURTH LESSON.

## Двадцать Четвёртый Урокъ.

Obs. 1.—Nouns ending in а, preceded by ж, ч, ш, щ, г, к, or х, form their nominative plural in и instead of ы, as :

Туча, 'a cloud ;'	plural, тучи,	genitive, тучь.
Соха, 'a plough ;'	plural, сохи,	genitive, сохъ.

Nouns ending in жа, ча, ша, ща, when preceded by another consonant, form their genitive plural in ей instead of ѣ, as :

Вожжа, 'a rein ;'	plural, вожжи,	genitive, вожжей.
Парча, 'a brocade ;'	plural, парчи,	genitive, парчей.

Obs. 2.—The vowel я, after the consonants ж, ч, ш, щ, is replaced in the plural by а, in the dative, instrumental and prepositional case, as :

Ночь, 'a night ;' dat. plur. ночамъ, instr. ночами, prep. ночахъ.

The word цѣрковь, 'a church,' also changes its soft inflexions into hard ones in dative, instrumental and prepositional plurals, as :

Dative, церквамъ ; instrumental, церквами ; prepositional, церквахъ.

# THIRD DECLENSION.

## DECLENSION OF FEMINE SUBSTANTIVES AND ADJECTIVES.

Таблица Склонений.

*Plural.* — Множественное Число.

Cases. Падений.	<i>Substantives.</i> Имя Существительное.		<i>Adjectives.</i> —Имя Прилагательное.			
			<i>Full terminations.</i>		<i>Appocopated terminations.</i>	
	Hard Inflex.	Soft Inflex.	Hard Declension.	Soft Declension.	Hard Declension.	Soft Declension.
Nom.	ы.	и.	бя,	ія.	ы.	и.
Gen.	ъ.	ь, (й, сй).	ыхъ.	ихъ.	ыхъ.	ихъ.
Dat.	ахъ.	ямъ.	ымъ.	имъ.	ымъ.	имъ.
Like the Nominative or the Genitive.						
Acc.						
Inst.	амъ.	ямъ.	ымъ.	имъ.	ымъ.	имъ.
Prep.	ахъ.	яхъ.	ыхъ.	ихъ.	ыхъ.	ихъ.

Obs. 3.—The following nouns, having two or more consonants before the final vowel, take the euphonic e in the genitive plural:

Сва́дьба,	'a wedding ;'	gen. plur. сва́дебъ.
Судьба́,	'fate ;'	gen. plur. судѣбъ.
Тя́жба,	'a law-suit ;'	gen. plur. тя́жебъ.
Ца́ревна,	'a princess (Royal) ;'	gen. plur. ца́ревенъ.
Кня́жна,	'a princess (unmarried) ;'	gen. plur. кня́женъ.
Копна́,	'a rick ;'	gen. plur. ко́пенъ.
Сосна́,	'a fir ;'	gen. plur. со́сенъ.
Овца́,	'a sheep ;'	gen. plur. ове́ць.
Крѣ́пость,	'a small fortress ;'	gen. plur. крѣ́постей.
Сере́га,	'an ear-ring ;'	gen. plur. сере́гъ.
Ложка́,	'a spoon ;'	gen. plur. ло́жекъ.
Ру́чка,	'a handle ;'	gen. plur. ру́чекъ.
Ко́шка,	'a she-cat ;'	gen. plur. ко́шекъ.
Лю́лька,	'a cradle ;'	gen. plur. лю́лекъ.
Пайка́,	'a band, (troop) ;'	gen. plur. шаекъ.

And also other substantives ending in йка, ъка, жка, чка, шка.

If, however, the first of the two consonants be one of the gutturals г, к, or х, the genitive plural takes о instead of е, as:

Игла́,	'a needle ;'	gen. plur. и́голъ, иглъ.
Ку́кла,	'a doll ;'	gen. plur. ку́колъ.
Игра́,	'a game ;'	gen. plur. и́горъ, игръ.
Пкра́,	'roe ;'	gen. plur. и́коръ, пкръ.

Obs. 4.—All nouns ending in ка, preceded by any consonant, except ж, ч, or ш, take the euphonic о in the genitive plural as:

Тру́бка,	'a pipe ;'	gen. plur. тру́бокъ.
Дѣ́вка,	'a girl ;'	gen. plur. дѣ́вокъ.
Палка́,	'a stick ;'	gen. plur. палокъ.
Куропатка́,	'a partridge ;'	gen. plur. куропа́токъ, etc.



Obs. 5.—The following feminine nouns: рѣчь, 'a speech;' кость, 'a bone;' and страсть, 'passion;' end in the instr. plural either in ями or ѣми; as, рѣчѣми, страстѣми, костѣми, or рѣчѣми, страстѣми, костѣми.

Obs. 6.—Nouns ending in я, preceded by two consonants, take an e in the genitive plural, as:

Дерѣвня,	'a village;'	gen. plur. деревѣнь.
Хлѣбня,	'a bakehouse;'	gen. plur. хлѣбѣнь.
Рудокѣня,	'a mine;'	gen. plur. рудокѣнѣнь.
Каменоломня,	'a quarry;'	gen. plur. каменоломѣнь.
Земля,	'a land;'	gen. plur. земѣль.
Капля,	'a drop;'	gen. plur. капѣль.

NOTE.—The words ноздрѣ, 'a nostril,' and дѣдѣ, 'uncle,' have for the genitive plural ноздрѣй and дѣдѣй.

Obs. 7.—The following nouns ending in ня, preceded by another consonant, or by the semivowel ь or ѣ, form their genitive plural in ѣ instead of ѣ, as:

Кухня,	'a kitchen;'	gen. plur. кухнѣ.
Спальня,	'a bed-room;'	gen. plur. спальнѣ.
Обѣдня,	'a mess;'	gen. plur. обѣдѣнѣ.
Басня,	'a fable;'	gen. plur. басенѣ.
Бойня,	'a slaughter-house;'	gen. plur. боенѣ.
Тамѣжня,	'a custom-house;'	gen. plur. тамѣженѣ.
Башня,	'a tower;'	gen. plur. башенѣ.

And other nouns ending in шня.

NOTE.—The word сажень (Russian measure, equal to seven feet), when preceded by a cardinal numeral from five and upwards, forms its genitive plural in ѣ instead of еѣ; as, пять сажень, instead of пять саженѣй.

Obs. 8.—The inflexion ями of the instrumental case in

the words дочь, 'a daughter;' дверь, 'a door;' лошадь, 'a horse;' and плеть, 'a whip;' is abridged into *ьми*, as :

Instrumental plural, дочерьмѣ,	instead of дочерямъ.
Instrumental plural, дверьмѣ,	instead of дверямъ.
Instrumental plural, лошадемѣ,	instead of лошадямъ.
Instrumental plural, плетямѣ,	instead of плетямъ.

ОBS. 9.—Nouns ending in *я* preceded by *и* or *ья* unaccented form the genitive plural in *ѣ*, as :

Лінія,	'a line;'	gen. plur. ліній.
Кѣлья,	'a cell;'	gen. plur. кѣлій.
Армія,	'an army;'	gen. plur. армій.

ОBS. 10.—If the two last consonants are *зд* or *ст*, no euphonic vowel is inserted in the genitive plural, as :

Звѣзда,	'a star;'	gen. plur. звѣздъ.
Невѣста,	'a bride;'	gen. plur. невѣстъ.

The following words, although having two or more consonants before the final vowel, do not take any euphonic vowel in the genitive plural.

Бѣздна,	an abyss.	Яства,	food, (plural).
Верба,	a willow.	Бомба,	a bombshell.
Вражда,	enmity.	Волна,	a wave.
Искра,	a spark.	Изба,	a hut.
Карта,	a card.	Казарма,	barracks.
Пальма,	a palm-tree.	Лампа,	a lamp.
Просьба,	a petition.	Нужда,	necessity.
Арта,	a harp.	Правда,	truth.
Польза,	advantage.	Сѣрна,	a chamois.
Убийца,	an assassin.	Укоризна,	a reproach.
Лихва,	usury.	Яхта,	a yacht.

Before, in front of,

About,

They, (fem. plur.)

Предъ, governs the instr.

Около, governs the genitive.

Онѣ, declined like онѣ.

Alone, (fem. plur.)	Однѣ, genitive однѣхъ, dative однѣмъ, etc.
Two, (fem. plur.)	Двѣ, declined like два, i.e. genitive двухъ, etc.
Both, (fem. plur.)	Обѣ, genitive обѣихъ, dative обѣимъ, etc.

Obs. 11.—Двѣ and обѣ, when used in the nominative, govern the genitive singular.

Who sees me?	Кто меня видитъ ?
Both sisters see thee.	Обѣ сестры тебя видятъ.
I see two stars.	Я вижу двѣ звѣзды.
Did you speak with his daughters ?	Говорили ли вы съ его дочерями ?
I spoke with both his daughters.	Я говорилъ съ обѣими его дочерьми.
He gave my two daughters two books.	Онъ далъ моимъ двумъ сестрамъ двѣ книги.

Some, others, (fem. plur.)	Однѣ, другія.
Some read and others write.	Одни читаютъ а другіе пишутъ.
What do those women say ?	Что тѣ женщины говорятъ ?
Some say one thing and some another.	Однѣ говорятъ одно, а другіе другое.

Both,	Обѣ.
The one and the other, }	Та и другая, plural тѣ и
Both, (fem.) }	другія.

Have you seen my sister and his wife ?	Видѣли ли вы мою сестру и его жену ?
I saw them both.	{ Я видѣлъ обѣихъ,
	{ Я видѣлъ и ту и другую.
His two daughters were in the room alone.	Его двѣ дочери были однѣ въ комнатѣ.

Sight, зрѣніе.  
Little girl, дѣвочка.

A fair, ярмарка.  
A violin, скрипка.

To play (an instrument),  
To present with, }  
To give, }

Bright, яркій.  
Better, лучше (governs the  
genitive).

Of this place, здѣшній.  
A piano, фортепіано.

Играть на (with the prepositional).  
Подарить (governs the accusative  
and the dative).

What did you present this boy with?  
I presented him with an Italian  
violin.

But he plays on the piano.

Yes, but he wants to play the violin  
also.

Что вы подарили этому мальчику?  
Я подарилъ ему итальянскую скрип-  
ку.

Но онъ играетъ на фортепіано.\*

Да, но онъ хочетъ играть тоже и на  
скрипкѣ.

To rule, графить.  
To catch, поймать.  
To light, зажечь.  
I lighted, я зажгѣлъ.  
She lighted, она зажгла.  
It lighted, оно зажгло.

Astrachan, Астрахань, f.  
Moscow, Москва.  
England, Англія.  
We lighted, мы зажгли.  
You lighted, вы зажгли.  
They lighted, они зажгли.

Of this place,  
Of that place,

† Здѣшній.  
† Тамашній.

### EXERCISE XLVII.

How many sisters and brothers has this little girl?—She has two sisters and as many brothers.—Have those assassins any sisters?—They have five sisters.—Do you see the stars in the sky?—I see only two large bright stars. Why do you not see the others also?—Because I have very weak sight.—Do your daughters play the piano?—Yes, both my daughters play the piano.—Did your brother play

\* The word фортепіано, 'a piano,' is indeclinable.

the violin yesterday?—Yes, he played the violin yesterday. Has this girl's uncle many coaches?—He has two coaches only, but they are very good ones.—What do the sisters of those girls want to buy?—they want to buy a few dolls. What did your aunt present her servant with?—She presented her with a pair of gold ear-rings and a few silver spoons.—At which church were you yesterday, the French or the Russian?—We were at both churches.—Have these two princesses (unmarried) plenty of money?—Yes, they are very rich.—How many sheep has this young shepherd? He has twenty-five sheep.—Have you seen the villages in which there are mines and quarries?—I saw neither the villages, nor the mines, nor the quarries.—How many barracks are there in your town?—There are no barracks at all in our town.—Has he many lands?—He has as many lands as his mean neighbour.—Has your good king faithful and brave subjects?—Good kings always have plenty of faithful subjects and brave soldiers.

#### EXERCISE XLVIII.

Are there many firs and willows in your forest?—There are plenty of firs in our forest, but there is not a single willow.—Has your master (lord) only one forest?—He has three large forests, with many trees, stags and hares.—Are there not any partridges in those forests?—There are no partridges at all.—What sort of rooms have the princess's daughters?—They have large and warm rooms, but our neighbours, the poor clerks, have only one small and cold room.—Do you want to buy a few apples?—No, we have plenty of apples in our garden.—What good things have they?—They have many good bake-houses, five tidy

kitchens, three cellars with red and white wines, six good slaughter-houses, two custom-houses, enough rye, barley and flax, and twenty-five new wooden huts.—The pretty little girl says that her father wants to take the firewood, which is in the yard of that hut.—You may give it to her: this girl's father is a poor beggar.—I want to go home. Why?—I have to speak to my father about my business. Have you bought many books at the fair?—I bought a great many (of them) there.—Why do you want (is it necessary to you) so many books?—I want to present them to my sister's master.—Were the waves high?—Yes, they were very high.—How much firewood did you buy in the market?—I bought very little of it.—Which horses are better, English or Russian?—English horses are much better than Russian.—Have you lighted the candle already? Yes, I have lit it.—Why did you do it?—I lit it, because I wanted to write.—Where did you eat better roe, than that of this place?—I have eaten much better roe in Astrachan, than that of this place.—Give her the ruler, she wants to rule.—Both her daughters play the harp.—Did your cook buy much fish?—She bought three salmons, five carps, two pikes and a few herrings.—What do you see before you?—I see in front of me an abyss.

TWENTY-FIFTH LESSON.—Двадцать Пятый Урокъ.

Obs. 1.—The following, used only in the plural, are of feminine gender.

Money,	дѣньги.	Cannae,	Канпы.
Yeast,	дрожжи.	A pair of scissors,	ножицы.
A rake,	грабли.	A sheath,	ножны.
A bosom,	грудь.	A litter,	носилки.
A funeral,	похороны.	A music-book,	ноты.
A gallery,	хоры.	Fetters,	оковы.
A rosary,	чѣтки.	Pranks,	проказы.
Trousers,	шаравары.	Rouge,	румяны.
Pincers,	клѣщи.	Cream,	сливки.
Relics,	мощи.	Tittle-tattle,	сплетни.
Guard-room bed,	нары.	Twilight,	сумерки.
A peasant's sledge,	дровни.	A day (24 hours),	сутки.
Darkness,	потѣмки.	A vestibule,	сѣни.
Dreams,	брѣдни.	A sledge,	сани, санки.
Droshky (a carriage),	дрожки.	Sweatmeats,	сласти.
Footboard (behind a carriage),	запятки.	A carrier's sledge,	розвальни.
Devices,	затѣи.	Ties,	узы.
A dulcimer,	гусли.	Tapestry,	шпалеры.
False pearls,	бусы.	A manger,	ясли.
Prayers for the dead.	поминаки.	Combings,	вычески.
Diamond (in playing cards),	бубны.	Dregs,	выкидки.
Spade,	пики.	Trouble,	хлопоты.
Athens,	Аѳины.	Cabbage-soup,	щи.
		Hearts } (in play- Clubs } ing cards),	чѣрвы.
		Thebes,	трѣфы.
		Jassy,	ѳивы.
			Яссы.

The names of some Russian towns are also wanting in the singular, as :

Алѣшки.	Печѳры.
Бендѳры.	Пружаны.
Боровичи.	Россиѳны.

Врошницы.  
Вѣлки.  
Валѣнки.  
Велікіе луги.

Холмогоры.  
Чебоксары.  
Крестцы.  
Вѣзники.

Obs. 2.—Some nouns of this class are used also in the singular, but with a different meaning, as :

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
Прокáза,	leprosy.	Прокáзы,	pranks.
Рóзвальи,	a loiterer.	Рóзвальи,	a peasant's sledge.
Деньгá,	half a copeck.	Дѣньги,	money.
Часъ,	an hour.	Часы́,	a watch, clock.

Two,	Двѣ, два.
Three,	Трѣ, три.

Obs. 3.—The numerals два, 'two;' три, 'three;' четы́ре, 'four;' etc., when used with a substantive in which the singular is wanting, are replaced by collective numerals, двѣ, 'two;' трѣ, 'three;' четы́веро, 'four;' etc., and the substantive must be in the genitive, as :

Two sledges,	Двѣ саней.
Three pairs of scissors,	Трѣ ножницъ.
Four days,	Четы́веро сутокъ, etc.

Obs. 4.—The English preposition *of*, when it does not denote the true genitive, is not translated, as :

The City of London.	Городъ Лондонъ.
All of us,	Всѣ мы.
Five of us,	Насъ пѣтеро.
The linen, бѣльѣ.	A bottle, бутылка.
A fork, ви́лка.	A hen, { ку́рица (plur. ку́-
A cork, пробка.	ры, gen. ку́ръ, etc.
A laundress, пра́чка.	A hayloft, сѣ́нникъ.
A sword, шпа́га.	A sabre, са́бля.



Half a score,	десятокъ.	A dozen,	дюжина.
A hundred,	сотня.	Half a hundred,	полсотни.
Old (worn out),	худой.	Lively ( <i>adj.</i> )	живой.
Dirty (for linen),	чёрный.	Clean,	чистый.
Dirty linen,	чёрное бельё.	Fat,	жирный.
A fish,	рыба.	Awkward,	неловкий.

Obs. 5.—Рыба, 'a fish,' in a collective sense as in English, is used in the singular instead of the plural, as :

Я купилъ эту рыбу.	I bought this fish.
Тамъ нѣтъ рыбы.	There is no fish

Obs. 6.—Nouns ending in я, preceded by a vowel, form their genitive plural in й, as :

Струй,	'a current ;'	gen. plur. струй.
Змѣй,	'a serpent ;'	gen. plur. змѣй.
Швей,	'a sempstress ;'	gen. plur. швей.

Those ending in ѣя form their genitive plural in ей, as :

Скамьи,	'a bench ;'	gen. plur. скамей.
Семьи,	'a family ;'	gen. plur. скамей.

If the termination ѣя be an abridged termination of ия, the genitive plural is in ий instead of ей, as :

Игуменья, (игумен <sup>и</sup> я),	'an abbess ;'	gen. plur. игуменій.
Келья, (келл <sup>и</sup> я),	'a cell ;'	gen. plur. келлій.

This, that, it,      Это, to (neuter).

Obs. 7.—*This, that* and *it*, when not referring to a noun, are translated это, as :

I read this already.	Я уже читалъ это.
Have you told it to me ?	Сказали ли вы мнѣ это ?
I have told it to you.	Я вамъ сказалъ это.
Who is it ?	Кто это ?
It is my brother.	Это мой братъ.
What is it ?	Что это ?

But, then,            же.

Obs. 8.—Но, 'but,' may sometimes be replaced by же, which however must be placed after the word to which it refers, as :

I was there, but he was not.	{ Я былъ тамъ, но онъ не былъ,
Where is he then ?	{ Я былъ тамъ, онъ же не былъ.
To whom did he give it then ?	Гдѣ же онъ ?
	Кому же онъ далъ это ?

To wash,	Мыть.*
To wash (linen),	Стирать I. 1.

D'd your maid-servant wash the floor ?	Мыла ли ваша служанка полъ ?
--	------------------------------

No, she was washing the linen.	Нѣтъ, она стирала белье.
To harness,	Запрячь.
To be diligent, }	Стараться.
To endeavour, }	
To gain,	Выиграть.
To lose,	Проиграть.

I wash,	я мою,	стираю.	I fry,	я жарю.
Thou wastest,	ты моешь,	стираешь.	Thou fryest,	ты жаряшь.
He washes,	онъ моетъ,	стираетъ.	He fries,	онъ жаритъ.
We wash,	мы моемъ,	стираемъ.	We fry,	мы жаримъ.
You wash,	вы моете,	стираете.	You fry,	вы жарите.
They wash,	они моютъ,	стираютъ.	They fry,	они жарятъ.

Somebody, something,      Кто нибудь, что нибудь.

Obs. 9.—The word нибудь, when forming a part of the words кто нибудь or что нибудь, is often omitted, as :

Have you not seen some one ?	Не видѣли ли вы кого (нибудъ) ?
Has he something ?	Есть-ли у него что ?

### EXERCISE XLIX.

Who is this woman ?—She is my laundress.—Of what did your mother speak with this laundress ?—She spoke

with her of the linen.—Did she not speak with her of something else also?—No, she spoke with her of linen only, which she gave her the day before yesterday.—Do you give this laundress your linen to wash?—No, she washes badly; we give our linen to another laundress, who washes well. Did you see that grand funeral?—We did not see it.—How many pairs of scissors have these sempstresses?—They have only three pairs of steel scissors, but they are very good.—The maid-servant gave the cook (fem.) too much yeast.—Has the cook enough wood in the kitchen?—He has not enough of it.—Is the hay in the manger?—No, it is in a rick.—Who is going for my tea, and for the cream? The maid-servant is going for one, and the servant for the other.—What have these two monks got in their hands? They have two rosaries.—Are there any relics in this church?—No, there are no relics in this church.—What sort of corn have these peasants on the large sledges, which we see on that road?—They have on the sledges not corn, but fish.—Where is the laundress going?—She is going to (B) the wash-house, to wash the linen.—Has the laundress to wash the maid-servant's linen also?—No, she has not to wash it.—The cook (fem.) is in the kitchen already.—What has she to cook and fry for your dinner?—Nothing, I will not be at home, I am dining at a friend's.—Where are the silver spoons and forks?—The first ones are on the table, and the last ones are in the cupboard.—Do not you see the laundress with my linen?—I see her and her two daughters.—Have your horses some bran?—They have only a little bran, but plenty of oats and enough hay and fresh water from (H3L) the new well, which you see in that garden under the high fir-tree.—What has the maid-servant got, whom you see on that peasant's sledge?—She has got three

rakes and four pitchforks.—How many pairs of breeches has your neighbour got?—He has three pairs of cloth breeches, but these poor little Jews have neither breeches, nor boots, nor coats; they have only got bad stockings, old shoes and dirty linen.—Whose are these silk gloves? These gloves are mine, but they are leathern and not silk. With whom are you speaking?—With no one.—How many soldiers are there in this village?—Two hundred and seventy-five men.—Where is my music?—It is on the piano.

#### EXERCISE L.

Are you not in need of something?—Yes, I am in need of money.—Where is then your money?—I lost it at cards. Did you lose much money at cards?—Yes, I have lost very much.—Where did your sisters pass (провели) their time yesterday?—They passed the whole day in the village. What did she cook for dinner?—She made an excellent cabbage-soup.—Are these bottles with corks?—No, they are without corks.—What sort of hens are these?—They are Dutch hens.—Can your daughters go to-day to my aunt's? No, they cannot go to her to-day, they have no time, but they can to-morrow.—Are your pupils diligent?—Yes, they are very diligent.—We endeavoured to do this, but could not. How many lessons did you give them?—I gave them forty-three lessons.—This crawfish has got large claws.—Can one see live fish in the market?—No, there are no live fish in the market.—How many horses did you order the coachman to harness?—I ordered him to harness six for the king, four for the prince, three for the courier, and a pair for me. How many apples did you buy?—I bought one hundred of apples and half a hundred of pears.—What are these little

girls thinking of?—They are thinking of their dolls.—How many roubles did you receive from your advocate?—I received from him twenty-four roubles and fifty copecks. How many workmen (подмастерье) has this boot-maker got?—He has six (of them).—What sort of sheath is this? This is a leathern sheath.—But where is the sword?—It is in the sheath.

---

## TWENTY-SIXTH LESSON.—Двадцать Шестой Урокъ.

### AUGMENTATIVES AND DIMINUTIVES.

Augmentatives and Diminutives are derivative substantives, which by some change in the termination of the primitive express the object as larger or smaller.

#### I. AUGMENTATIVES.—Увеличительныя.

##### *Formation of Augmentatives.*

a. Masculine augmentatives are formed by changing the terminations *ъ, ь* or *й* into *ище* or *ина* :

Домъ,	a house ;	{ домѣище,	a large house,
Конь,	a horse ;	{ домѣина,	a large, ugly house.
Сараѣй,	a shed ;	конѣище,	a big horse.
		сарѣище,	a large shed.

b. Neuter nouns form augmentatives in *ище* :

Окно,	a window ;	окнѣище,	a large window.
Лицѣ,	a face ;	лицѣище,	a large face.

c. Feminine nouns form augmentatives by changing the terminations *а, я*, or *ь*, into *ища* :

Лапа,	a paw ;	лапѣища,	a large paw.
Грудь,	a breast ;	грудѣища,	a large breast.

d. Substantives which are only used in the plural form their augmentatives in *ищи* :

Часы́,	a watch ;	augmentative, часы́щи.
Сани́,	a sledge ;	augmentative, сани́щи.

Obs. 1.—If the last consonant of the primitive be one of the gutturals *р, к, or х*, it must be changed into its corresponding consonant *ж, ч, or ш*, as :

Сапо́гъ,	a boot ;	augmentative, сапо́жище.
Рука́,	a hand ;	augmentative, ручи́ща.
Брю́хо,	a belly ;	augmentative, брю́шище.

## II. DIMINUTIVES.—УМЕНЬШИТЕЛЬНЫЯ.

Obs. 2.—Diminutive substantives, which represent the objects diminished in size, are generally of the same gender as their primitives.

The diminutive terminations are :

In the masculine,	икъ, окъ, екъ, ещъ.		
In the neuter,	ко, цо, (це).		
And in the feminine,	ка, ца.		
Сто́ликъ,	a little table.	Ушко́,	a little ear.
До́микъ,	a little house.	Сло́вцо́,	a little word.
Горо́докъ,	a little town.	Зерка́льце,	a little mirror.
Конё́къ,	a little horse.	Жё́няка,	a little wife.
Руче́йкъ,	a little brook.	Посте́лька,	a little bed.
Заво́дцеъ,	a little manufactory.	Рощи́ца.	a little grove.

Obs. 3.—From the above diminutives other secondary or intensified diminutives are formed, ending in *чекъ, чка, чко*, plural *чкѣ*, which represent the object as being still smaller. These secondary diminutive terminations take before them the euphonic *o, or e*, according to the termination of the first diminutives, as :

Сто́ликъ,	a little table ;	сто́личекъ,	a very small table.
Тру́бка,	a little pipe ;	тру́бочка,	a very small pipe.

Лапка,	a little paw ;	лапочка,	a very small paw.
Окѣнцо,	a little window ;	окѣшечко,	a very small window.
Сани,	a little sledge ;	саночки,	a very small sledge.

ОBS. 4.—All nouns are not susceptible of both diminutive forms, and there are even some which take only the secondary diminutive, as :

Платѣкъ,	a handkerchief ;	diminutive, платѣчекъ.
Лента,	a ribbon ;	diminutive, ленточка.
Звѣзда,	a star ;	diminutive, звѣздочка.

### FORMATION OF DIMINUTIVES.

A. Masculine diminutives are formed in the following manner :

a. The termination **икъ** (**чикъ**), and its second diminutive termination **ичекъ**, take names of animate beings ; also nouns ending in **ль**, preceded by a consonant ; and those in **ъ**, preceded by **ж**, **ч**, **ш**, **щ**, or **т** :

Козѣль,	a goat ;	diminutive, козѣликъ, козѣлчекъ.
Купецъ,	a merchant ;	diminutive, купчикъ.
Дворянинъ,	a nobleman ;	diminutive, дворянчикъ.
Корабль,	a ship ;	diminutive, корабликъ.
Ножъ,	a knife ;	diminutive, ножикъ, ножичекъ.
Мячъ,	a ball ;	diminutive, мячикъ.
Карандашъ,	a lead pencil ;	diminutive, карандашикъ.
Плащъ,	a mantle ;	diminutive, плащикъ.

ОBS. 5.—The following are exceptions to this rule :

Быкъ,	an ox ;	diminutive, бычѣкъ, бычѣчекъ.
Баранъ,	a ram ;	diminutive, барашекъ.
Конь,	a horse ;	diminutive, конѣкъ, конѣчекъ.
Человѣкъ,	a man ;	diminutive, человѣчекъ.
Бархатъ,	velvet ;	diminutive, бархатчикъ.
Барышъ,	profit ;	diminutive, барышѣкъ.
Цветъ,	a flower ;	diminutive, цветѣкъ, цветѣчекъ.

NOTE.—The diminutive termination *икъ* is never accented, and therefore is easily distinguished from the radical accented termination *икъ*, as in *старикъ*, ‘an old man;’ *парикъ*, ‘a wig,’ etc.

*б.* The terminations *окъ*, *очекъ*, are added to nouns ending in *бъ*, *въ*, *мъ*, *нъ*, *пъ*, *съ*, and also to those in *бъ*, *дъ*, and *тъ* :

<i>Погребъ</i> ,	a cellar ;	diminutive, <i>погребѣкъ</i> , <i>погребѣчекъ</i> .
<i>Хлѣвъ</i> ,	a sty ;	diminutive, <i>хлѣвѣкъ</i> , <i>хлѣвѣчекъ</i> .
<i>Умъ</i> ,	intellect ;	diminutive, <i>умѣкъ</i> , <i>умѣчекъ</i> .
<i>Голубъ</i> ,	a pigeon,	diminutive, <i>голубѣкъ</i> , <i>голубѣчекъ</i> .
<i>Грузъ</i> ,	a brown mushroom ;	diminutive, <i>грузѣкъ</i> , <i>грузѣчекъ</i> .
<i>Ноготь</i> ,	a finger-nail ;	diminutive, <i>ноготѣкъ</i> , <i>ноготѣчекъ</i> .

OBS. 6.—The following are exceptions :

<i>Хлѣбъ</i> ,	bread ;	diminutive, <i>хлѣбикъ</i> and <i>хлѣбецъ</i> .
<i>Ровъ</i> ,	a ditch ;	diminutive, <i>ровикъ</i> .
<i>Гвоздь</i> ,	a nail ;	diminutive, <i>гвоздикъ</i> and <i>гвоздѣкъ</i> .
<i>Рукавъ</i> ,	a sleeve ;	diminutive, <i>рукавѣкъ</i> and <i>рукавчикъ</i> .

*с.* Nouns ending in *й* or *ь*, as also those ending in *гъ*, *къ* or *хъ*, form their diminutives in *екъ* (*окъ*), *ечекъ*, changing the gutturals into their corresponding consonants :

<i>Рай</i> ,	a paradise ;	diminutive, <i>раѣкъ</i> , <i>раѣчекъ</i> .
<i>Пузырь</i> ,	a bladder ;	diminutive, <i>пузырѣкъ</i> , <i>пузырѣчекъ</i> .
<i>Пирогъ</i> ,	a pie ;	diminutive, <i>пирожѣкъ</i> , <i>пирожѣчекъ</i> .
<i>Сукъ</i> ,	a knot (of a tree) ;	diminutive, <i>сучѣкъ</i> , <i>сучѣчекъ</i> .
<i>Порохъ</i> .	a powder ;	diminutive, <i>порошѣкъ</i> , <i>порошѣчекъ</i> .

OBS. 7.—The following form their diminutives irregularly :

<i>Сарай</i> ,	a shed ;	diminutive, <i>сарѣецъ</i> and <i>сарѣйчикъ</i> .
<i>Покѣй</i> ,	a room ;	diminutive, <i>покѣецъ</i> and <i>покѣйчикъ</i> .
<i>Камень</i> ,	a stone ;	diminutive, <i>камышекъ</i> .
<i>Кремень</i> ,	a flint ;	diminutive, <i>кремешѣкъ</i> .
<i>Ремѣнь</i> ,	a strap ;	diminutive, <i>ремешѣкъ</i> and <i>ремешикъ</i> .



d. Nouns ending in нъ, дъ, лъ or зъ, having the accent on the first syllable, change the final vowel into ецъ, чикъ:

Кафтáнъ,	a coat ;	dim., кафтáнецъ, and кафтáнчикъ.
Завóдъ,	a manufactory ;	dim., заводéцъ.
Камзóмъ,	under waistcoat ;	dim., камзóмецъ, and камзóмчикъ.
Образъ,	an image ;	dim., образéцъ, and образчикъ.

Obs. 8.—Some monosyllabic words deviate from the above rule :

Бли́нъ,	a pancake ;	dim., бли́нóкъ, бли́нóчекъ.
Кли́нъ,	a stake ;	dim., кли́нóкъ, кли́нóчекъ.
Сто́лъ,	a table ;	dim., сто́ликъ, сто́лчикъ.
Глазъ,	the eye ;	dim., глазóкъ, глазóчекъ, гла́зникъ.
Са́дъ,	a garden ;	dim., са́дникъ, са́дóчекъ, са́до́къ.

e. The secondary diminutive termination of words in енокъ is еночекъ :

Мышь,	a mouse ;	dim., мышёнокъ, мышёночекъ.
Козёлъ,	a goat ;	dim., козлёнокъ, козлёночекъ.

† Червь, 'a worm,' forms an irregular diminutive, червёкъ, червячекъ.

## B. NEUTER DIMINUTIVES ARE FORMED :

a. By changing the final o, or e, into цо, or це, ечко :

Дёрево,	a tree ;	dim., деревцо́.
Слово,	a word ;	dim., словцо́, словéчко.

Obs. 9.—The following form their diminutive irregularly :

Брёвнó,	a beam ;	dim., брёвёшко.
Зернó,	grain ;	dim., зёрнышко.
Пятнó,	a spot ;	dim., пятнышко.
Судно́,	a vessel ;	dim., суднышко.
Дно́,	a bottom ;	dim., дёнышко.

b. The terminations *цо* and *це* are also added to nouns ending in *ie* or *ье* :

Ружьё,	a gun ;	dim., ружьёцѣ.
Имѣнье,	an estate ;	dim., имѣньце.

c. By changing the termination *ю*, into *льце* :

Дѣло,	an affair ;	dim., дѣльце.
Зеркало,	a mirror ;	dim., зеркальце.

† Лицѣ, 'a face ;' and плечѣ, 'a shoulder ;' take *ко* instead of *цо* ; as, diminutive личико, плечико.

d. Nouns ending in *о* preceded by *г*, *к*, or *х*, form their diminutives in *чко*, *шко*, *чечко* :

Око,	the eye ;	dim., очко.
Ухо,	the ear ;	dim., ушко.
Яйцо,	an egg ;	dim., личко.

e. Nouns ending in *ро*, take *печо* :

Серебро,	silver ;	dim., серебрецѣ.
----------	----------	------------------

Obs. 10.—The following, in *ро* and *ю*, form their diminutives irregularly :

Ведро,	a pail ;	dim., ведерцѣ, and ведёрко.
Рёбро,	a rib ;	dim., рёбрышко.
Перѣ,	a pen ;	dim., пёрышко.
Крыло,	a wing ;	dim., крылышко.
Стекло,	glass ;	dim., стёклышко.
Масло,	oil ;	dim., маслице.

Obs. 11.—Nouns in *мя*, form their diminutives in *мечко* :

Время,	time ;	dim., времечко.
Сѣмя,	seed ;	dim., сѣмечко.

Obs. 12.—Diminutives of nouns having two or more consonants before the final vowel take the euphonic *е*, or *о* :

Сердце,	the heart ;	dim., сердётко.
Сѣдло,	a saddle ;	dim., сѣдѣльце.
Стекло,	glass ;	dim., стекѣлье.

## C. FEMININE DIMINUTIVES ARE FORMED AS FOLLOWS :

a. Nouns in a or ь, preceded by a consonant, except ж or ш, take ка, очка.

Голова́,	a head ;	dim., голо́вка, голово́чка.
Же́на,	a wife ;	dim., же́нка, же́ночка.
Ша́пка,	a hat ;	dim., ша́пка, ша́почка.

Obs. 13.—The following are exceptions :

Вода́,	water ;	dim., води́ца, води́чка.
Пы́ль,	dust ;	dim., пы́льца and пы́линка.
Вѣ́твь,	a branch ;	dim., вѣ́тка, вѣ́точка.

b. Nouns in a, preceded by г, к, х, form their diminutives in жка, чка, шка, жечка, чечка, шечка ; the last ц of the primitive changes into ч :

Кни́га,	a book ;	dim., кни́жка, кни́жечка.
Рука́,	a hand ;	dim., ру́чка, ру́чечка.
Руба́ха,	a shirt ;	dim., руба́шка, руба́шечка.
Пти́ца,	a bird ;	dim., пти́чка, пти́чечка.

c. Nouns in я, preceded by a consonant or a vowel, form their diminutive in ька or йка ; those ending in ья, take ейка, all having for their secondary diminutives ечка :

Гиря́,	a weight ;	dim., ги́рька, ги́речка.
Зме́я,	a serpent ;	dim., зме́йка, зме́ечка.
Скамья́,	a bench ;	dim., скаме́йка, скаме́ечка.

Obs. 14.—Diminutives of feminine nouns ending in a, or ь, preceded by two consonants, take the euphonic e, or o :

Метла́,	a besom ;	dim., метё́лка, метё́лочка.
Игла́,	a needle ;	dim., игло́лка, игло́чка.
Палка́,	a stick ;	dim., па́лочка.
Трость,	a cane ;	dim., тросточка.

d. Nouns in a or ѣ, preceded by ж, or ш, form their diminutives in пца, пчка :

Кожа,	a skin ;	dim., ко́жпца, ко́жпчка.
Роща,	a grove ;	dim., ро́щпца, ро́щпчка.
Вещь,	a thing ;	dim., ве́щпца, ве́щпчка.

Obs. 15.—Diminutive terminations are sometimes added to words, which by their nature cannot be diminished in size, as :

День,	a day ;	dim., де́некъ, де́нечекъ.
Вода,	water ;	dim., во́дпца, во́дпчка.
Солнце,	the sun ;	dim., со́лнышко.

To plough,

Паха́ть, I. 2.

To sow,

Сѣ́ять, I. 2.

For, to (in order to),

Что́бы, что́бъ.

Who is ploughing ?

Кто па́шетъ ?

The peasants are ploughing.

Крестья́не па́шутъ.

Where did they plough yesterday ?

Гдѣ о́ни вчера па́хали ?

They were not yesterday ploughing,  
but sowing.

Вчера о́ни сѣ́яли, а не па́хали.

What does he want the seed for ?

Для чего́ ему́ ну́жно сѣ́мя ?

He wants it for sowing (to sow).

Ему́ оно́ ну́жно что́бы сѣ́ять.

Why art thou not ploughing ?

Почему́ ты не па́шешь ?

I am not ploughing, because I am  
sowing.

Я не па́шѹ, потому́ что сѣ́ю.

I sow, я сѣ́ю.

I plough, я па́шѹ.

Thou sowest, ты сѣ́ешь.

Thou plougest, ты па́шешь.

He sows, онъ сѣ́етъ.

He ploughs, онъ па́шетъ.

We sow, мы сѣ́емъ.

We plough, мы па́шемъ.

You sow, вы сѣ́ете.

You plough, вы па́шете.

They sow, о́ни сѣ́ютъ.

They plough, о́ни па́шутъ.

I was sowing, я сѣ́ялъ, etc.

I ploughed, я па́халъ, etc.

I will sow, я бу́ду сѣ́ять, etc.

I will plough, я бу́ду па́хать.

To gallop,

To trot.

Does your horse gallop well ?

Yes, but he trots still better.

I gallop, etc., я скачѹ, ты скачешь,  
онъ скачетъ.

I was galloping, я скакалъ.

I will gallop, я буду скакать.

An apple-tree, яблонь, f.

A trot, рысь, f.

A trotter, рысакъ.

A maker, мастеръ.

A lucifer-match, спичка.

A segar, сигара.

To light (a pipe), закурить.

Dear, дорогой, любезный.

My dear child,

My dear Mr. N.,

My dear Mrs. N.,

His sister is a very charming girl.

If,

I like, I am fond of,

Is your brother fond of horses ?

Yes, he is very fond of them.

Do you like to play at cards ?

We are not fond of cards.

Скакать. I. 2.

{ Идти, } рысью.  
{ Бѣжать, }

Хорошо ли ваша лошадь скачетъ ?

Да, но она ещё лучше бѣжить рысью.

We gallop, etc., мы скачемъ, вы ска-  
чете, они скачутъ.

We were galloping, мы скакали.

We will gallop, мы будемъ скакать.

A lamb, ягнёнокъ.

Quarrelsome, сварливый.

Beloved, возлюбленный.

Pale, блѣдный.

Respectable, почтенный.

To smoke, курить.

Charming, nice, милый.

Very charming, прелестный.

Моё дорожке дитя.

† Любезный Гнъ. Н.

Любезная госпожа (Гжа.) Н.

Его сестра прелестная дѣвушка.

Если.

† Я охотникъ до.

Охотникъ ли вашъ братъ до лошадей ?

Да, онъ до нихъ большій охотникъ.

{ Любите ли играть въ карты ?

{ Охотникъ ли вы до картъ ?

Мы не охотники до картъ.

## EXERCISE LI.

With whom is he speaking in the *little* meadow, under the *little* tree ?—He is speaking with four gay youths, and two *little* girls.—He sees his *little* wife in the *little* garden, with two children, who have *little* leathern balls.—This

*little* man has a restive *little* horse.—Her father bought for his *little* son a pretty *little* saddle.—This *little* knife is on that *little* bench, which you see there in that *little* corner. These *little* birds have a few white *little* feathers on their black *little* wings.—Who has neither *little* book nor *little* pencils?—The *little* pupils have neither.—The *little* old woman gave to the *little* pigeons a few *little* grains.—I saw our prince's *little* garden and *little* grove.—We see the *little* windows of this low *little* house, and also we see the *little* nuts and fresh *little* branches of those *little* apple-trees in the rich neighbour's *little* garden.—From whose shoemaker did this *little* girl buy these *little* silk shoes?—From yours.—I saw on the *little* table two *little* pens and five *little* penknives. The *little* cook boiled three *little* eggs.—Whose *little* forest is this?—It is my *little* forest.—This *little* man has bought in the market a *little* hare, two *little* pigeons and a *little* goose. The *little* maid-servant wants to give some fresh hay to the *little* goat, the *little* lamb and to the *young* calf.—What money have you?—I have roubles and some shillings.—What cards have you in your hand?—I have only diamonds and spades, but this *little* man has only hearts and clubs.—Have you already paid for your *little* room?—Yes, I have already paid for it.—Does your sister's *little* horse gallop well?—Yes, he does gallop well, but he trots still better.—Do you want to buy this *little* house?—I wanted to buy it, but now I do not.

## EXERCISE LII.

Who wants to buy this *little* cock?—This kind *little* old man wants to buy it.—What for?—He wants to give it to this *little* girl.—Have these *little* peasants many *little* horses? They have only three *little* horses.—Have you been in that

*little* village?—I have not been, but my *little* wife was there.—What did this *little* old woman buy at (the) that *little* shop?—She bought two *little* handkerchiefs and five *little* ribbons.—Whose *little* ram is this?—It is the *little* shepherd's *little* ram.—This *little* cat has pretty *little* paws. This young *little* tree has no *little* knots.—Did the *little* soldier buy the *little* gun from the *little* merchant?—No, but he bought from him a *little* sabre and a few *little* straps. The gardener gave some *little* grass to the *little* goat and the *little* calf.—This *little* girl has pretty *little* hands and *little* white shoulders.—This charming *little* child has got two *little* needles and three *little* pencils.—The *little* servant has got three *little* pails and five *little* besoms.—This boy's *little* horse gallops well.—Did the peasants sow corn already? No, they did not sow it yet; they did not yet plough. Will your *little* peasants sow and plough?—Yes, they will both sow and plough if they (will) have seed and two or three *little* ploughs.—Where is the *little* child?—It is on the *little* bench in the *little* garden.—Our *little* horses trot very well.—It is the *little* merchant's *little* trotter.—Did he buy this *little* trotter in the *little* market?—No, he bought it at the fair from the *little* gentleman.—The *little* merchant has some *little* business in the *little* town.

---

## TWENTY-SEVENTH LESSON.

Двадцать Седьмой Урокъ.

*Diminutives—continued.*

OBS. 1.—To express some tender feeling toward a person Russians have other terminations, quite different from the

before mentioned physical diminutives. These terminations are—in the masculine, *ушка*, *юшка*, and *енька* ; in the neuter, *ушко* ; and in the feminine, *ушка*, *енька*, as :

Дѣдушка, dear grandfather.	Бабушка, dear grandmother.
Батюшка, dear father.	Папенька, dear papa.
Дядюшка, dear uncle.	Маменька, dear mamma.
Тётушка, dear aunt.	Нянюшка, dear nurse.

Obs. 2.—These terms of endearment are often added to nouns of favourite animals, and even to inanimate objects, as :

Лошадюшка, dear little horse.	Сердечушко, dear little heart.
Волюшка, dear liberty.	Рученька, dear little hand.
Травушка, dear little grass.	Душенька, dear little soul.

Obs. 3.—The following form their diminutives or endearment irregularly :

Братъ, brother ;	diminutive, братецъ.
Сестра, sister ;	diminutive, сестрица.
Дитя, a child ;	diminutive, дитятко.
Кумъ, a Godfather ;	diminutive, куманёкъ.
Мужъ, a husband ;	diminutive, муженёкъ.
Дѣва, a girl ;	diminutive, дѣвица.

† Голубъ, 'a pigeon,' forms its diminutives of endearment—*голубчикъ*, feminine *голубушка*—which express, 'my dear,' 'dearest,' as :

Голубчикъ Андрей,	My dear Andrew.
Голубушка Марья,	Dearest Mary.

Obs. 4.—Diminutive terminations which express contempt, or denote the object as an insignificant one, or unworthy of notice, are—in the masculine, *ишко*, *ишка* ; in the neuter, *ишко* ; and in the feminine, *ишка*, *енька*.

Человѣчишко,	A miserable little man.
Домишко,	A miserable little house.



Зѣркалѣшко,	A miserable little mirror.
Землішка,	A miserable little land.
Личішко,	A miserable little face.
Лавчѣнка,	A miserable little shop.
Собачѣнка,	A miserable little dog.

Besides the above terminations, there is also another, expressive of contempt, *енцо*, which is used in all genders, as :

Старикъ, an old man ;	diminutive, стариченцо.
Баба, a woman ;	diminutive, бабенцо.
Пиво, beer ;	diminutive, пивенцо.

OBS. 5.—Christian names form also diminutives, both of endearment and contempt, or disrespect, as :

	<i>Diminutive of Endearment.</i>	<i>Diminutive of Contempt.</i>
Андрей, Andrew,	{ Андрюша Андрюшенька ;	Андрюшка.
Николай, Nicolas,	{ Коля ; Коленька ;	{ Коляка. Николка.
Иванъ, John,	{ Ваня ; Ванничка ; Ванюша ;	Ванька.
Марія, Mary,	{ Маша ; Машинька ;	Машка.

As the diminutives of Christian names are formed not only by an addition to the termination of the primitive, but are also often shortened, or even changed altogether, no definite rule as to their formation can be given, and therefore they can be learnt only by practice. A list of most useful diminutives of Christian names will be given further on.

OBS. 6.—Nouns used only in the plural form their dimi-

natives in *ки, пы, or на*, having for the secondary diminutive *очки, ечки, or пчки* :

a. Сани, a sledge ;	diminutive, саники, саночки.
Весы, a pair of scales ;	diminutive, вески, весочки.
b. Коньки, skates ;	diminutive, конечки.
Пяльцы, an embroidery frame ;	diminutive, палочки.
c. Ножницы, a pair of scissors ;	diminutive, ножнички.
Щипцы, pincers ;	diminutive, щиплочки.
d. Перила, banisters ;	diminutive, перилы, перилочки.
Ворота, a yard gate ;	diminutive, воротца, вороточки.

Obs. 7.—Diminutives formed of nouns having two consonants before the final vowel take the euphonic *е* :

Козлы, a coach-box ; козельцы.  
 Бубны, diamonds ; бубенцы.  
 Ясли, a manger ; ясельцы.

Obs. 8.—Diminutives of contempt in nouns used only in the plural end in *шки* or *енки*, as :

Часы, a watch ; часишки.  
 Сани, a sledge ; санишки.  
 Сливки, cream ; сливчѣнки.

Augmentatives and diminutive terms of endearment or contempt are seldom used, and then only in familiar discourse ; but the diminutives proper, implying smallness merely, are employed extensively in Russian, even in formal styles of speaking and writing.

To go (on foot),	{	Идти, (идѣшкомъ).
	{	Ходить,
To go (in a vehicle), }		Ѣхать, ѣздить,
To ride, }		
To eat,		Ѣсть.

Obs. 9.—‘To go,’ in the sense of being carried in a

vehicle, must be translated *ѣхать*, as *идти* and *ходить* are used for 'to go on foot.'

Obs. 10.—*ѣхать* and *ѣздить*, like *идти* and *ходить*, denote—the first, an action taking place at some given moment; and the second, an action without reference to any particular time.

Where is he going?

He is going to Paris.

Do you go often to London and St. Petersburg?

Yes, I go often to both these towns.

Is he going with you on foot, or is he going to ride with him?

He is going with me in my new coach.

His dear grandfather never goes on foot.

He always rides in a carriage.

What are you eating?

I am eating pears, but these children are eating apples.

I ride, я ѣду, ѣзжу.

Thou ridest, ты ѣдешь, ѣдишь.

He rides, онъ ѣдетъ, ѣздитъ.

We ride, мы ѣдемъ, ѣдимъ.

You ride, вы ѣдете, ѣздите.

They ride, они ѣдутъ, ѣздятъ.

I rode, я ѣхалъ, ѣздили.

We rode, мы ѣхали, ѣздили.

I will ride, я буду ѣхать, я буду ѣздить, etc.

Куда онъ ѣдетъ?

Онъ ѣдетъ въ Парижъ.

Часто ли вы ѣздите въ Лондонъ и Петербургъ?

Да, я часто ѣзжу въ эти оба города.

Идетъ ли онъ съ вами или ѣдетъ съ нимъ?

Онъ ѣдетъ со мною въ моей новой каретѣ.

Его дѣдушка никогда не ходитъ пешкомъ.

Онъ всегда ѣздитъ въ каретѣ.

Что вы ѣдите?

Я ѣмъ груши, а эти дѣти ѣдятъ яблоки.

I eat, я ѣмъ.

Thou eatest, ты ѣшь.

He eats, онъ ѣстъ.

We eat, мы ѣдимъ.

You eat, вы ѣдите.

They eat, они ѣдятъ.

I was eating, я ѣлъ.

We were eating, мы ѣли.

I will eat, я буду ѣсть, etc.

He is going with his sister.

She is going with her brother.

They are going with their brother.

† Онъ идетъ съ своею сестрою.

† Она идетъ съ своимъ братомъ.

† Они идутъ со своимъ братомъ.

Obs. 11.—The possessive pronouns in Russian agree in

gender, number and case with the substantive to which they belong, and not, as in English, with the possessor.

He gave me his book.

She gave me her pen.

They are going into their garden.

Онъ далъ мнѣ свою книгу.

Она́ дала́ мнѣ свое́ перо́.

Онѣ́ идѹтъ въ свой садъ.

When,

Just (now),

I have just dined.

He has just said that she cannot go to church.

The cook has just boiled the ham.

Variegated, пестрый.

A ploughman, пахарь.

To till,

To work,

The peasant and his son were ploughing, but the gardener and our workman were tilling in the garden.

My brother and sister were in town yesterday.

Когда.

Только что.

Я только что обедалъ.

Онъ только что сказалъ что она́ не можетъ идти́ въ церковь.

Поваръ только что сварилъ ветчину́.

Awkward, неуклюжий.

Agile, проворный.

Ора́ть, I. 2.

Рабо́тать, I. 1. (like знать).

† Кресті́нникъ и его́ сынъ паха́ли, а садовникъ и нашъ работникъ ора́ли въ саду́.

† Братъ и сестра́ мои́ были́ вчера́ въ го́родѣ́.

Obs. 12.—An adjective or a pronoun, referring to more than one substantive, must be in the plural; the verb is, in the same manner, in the plural when referring to more than one subject.

The book and the pencil are mine.

The boy and the girl are reading.

This table and that chair are thine.

Whose are this paper and this little penknife?

They are ours.

The kind brother and sister gave the beggar some money.

Кни́га и каранда́шъ мои́.

Ма́льчикъ и дѣвочка чита́ютъ.

Этотъ столъ и тотъ стулъ твой.

Чьи́ эта бума́га и этотъ перочинный но́жичекъ?

Онѣ́ наши́.

Добры́е братъ и сестра́ дали́ нище́му де́негъ.

I till, etc., я орó, ты орéшь, онъ  
орéтъ.

I tilled, я орáлъ, etc.

I will till, я бóду орáть, etc.

We till, etc., мы орéмъ, вы орéте,  
онѣ орéтъ.

We tilled, мы орáли, etc.

We will till, мы бóдемъ орáть, etc.

### EXERCISE LIII.

Did your dear mother receive the large eel that (корó-  
рыш) the fisherman sent her?—She has received it; it  
was a fine eel.—Is the paper in this *little* room good?—The  
paper in this *little* room is very good.—How many *little*  
handkerchiefs did you buy?—I bought two dozens and a  
half (with a half) of them.—Where are your *dear* brother  
and your *dear* sister going?—They are going to the *little*  
grove, but our *dear* mother is going to the little church.  
Whose *big* houses with *big* windows do you see there on  
that little bank?—We see the great sovereign's castles.  
Do you not see our *beloved* aunt with her *dear* sister?—I  
see neither the one nor the other.—Whom do you see, my  
*dear* little heart?—I see here the *dear* grandfather, and  
there under the little tree, on the *tiny little* bench, a *miserable*  
*little* old man with his *miserable little* dog.—What sort of  
mirror has your *dear* brother got?—He has not got a very  
good one, he has got only a *miserable little* mirror.—Has  
this *big* peasant got a sledge?—He has got one big  
sledge, two *miserable little* sledges and three *wretched little*  
horses.—Have you enough cream, sir?—I have got only a  
*miserable* cream, and not enough of it.—They see in that  
*little* room a poor little girl, who has neither *dear* father,  
*dear* mother, *dear* brother, nor *dear* sister; she has not got  
even a single little friend—Do you see that *miserable little*  
merchant in that *miserable little* shop?—I saw him in the  
*little* market, where he had to buy some honey, wax, pepper,

vinegar, tea, sugar and tobacco.—Have you been a long time in England?—Yes, I have been in England a very long time.—Have you received your *little* sledge from the maker?—Yes, I received it yesterday.—What has this monk got in his hands?—He has got a *little* rosary.—Did he buy it?—No, his friend the priest gave (подарить) it to him.—This poor man has got a great deal of trouble and very little money.—Where is his money?—The usurer has got it.—Who is there in the vestibule?—There is no one in the vestibule.—Is your friend hungry?—No, he has just dined.

#### EXERCISE LIV.

When were your *dear* brother and *dear* sister at her grandmother's?—They were at her *little house* the day before yesterday.—Do they ride (in a vehicle) to her house often? They do not ride, but go to her always on foot; they have neither coach nor sledge.—With whom does your *dear* sister go (in a carriage) so often?—She goes (in a carriage) at one time with her mamma and at another with her papa. Where are your *dear* father and your *dear* mother going? They are going to Paris.—Do you like boiled ham?—No, I never eat ham.—What are these boys eating?—They are eating *little* pies with *little* apples.—Do you want to know the news?—No, I know it already.—Give me a match, if you please, I want to light my pipe.—Do you not want a *little* cigar?—I have excellent ones here, on that *little* table, which you see in that *little* corner.—No, thank you, I prefer a pipe to a cigar.—Have you received a *little* letter from your *dear* sister?—Yes, I received from her two *little* letters the day before yesterday.—I see *little* stones on the *little*

bank of this *little* stream.—With whom is your *dear* uncle riding?—He is riding with his charming daughter.—Dear Mr. N., will you take some of this *little* white wine?—No, thank you, I do not drink wine, I drink only English beer. Give me a cup of tea with cream and two or three little biscuits, I want to breakfast.—To whom did you say that her *dear* sister is going to the village?—I said this only to my *dear* aunt.—Who gave you this *little* gold watch, my *dear* child?—Our *dear* aunt gave it to me.—Has the little girl a pair of *little* scissors?—Yes, she has two pairs of *little* scissors and four *little* penknives.—When will your peasants plough, till and sow?—In the month of March they will plough and till, and in April they will sow.—Do you see on that *little* hillock a *little* white house with a *little* garden? No, I see neither.—When did he buy that *miserable little* house?—He has just bought it.

## TWENTY-EIGHTH LESSON.

### Два́дцать восьмо́й Уро́къ.

Nouns signifying natives of different countries, towns etc., such as 'Englishman,' 'German,' 'Parisian,' etc., are formed by adding to the names of countries or places the terminations *ецъ*, *анинъ* (*янинъ*) or *итанинъ*.

I. The termination *ецъ*, take—

a. Names of places ending in *ъ*, *ь*, (*ль*), *й*: Берли́нъ, 'Berlin'; Берли́нецъ, 'a native of Berlin.'

Алжи́ръ, Algiers; алжи́рецъ.  
Кита́й, China; кита́ецъ.

Бресла́вль, Breslau; бресла́вецъ.  
Ревель, Reval; ре́велецъ.

### б. Names of places ending in *ia*, *a*, or *ia* :

Австрія, Austria ; австріецъ.  
 Баварія, Bavaria ; баварецъ.  
 Голландія, Holland ; голландецъ.  
 Ирландія, Ireland ; ирландецъ.  
 Генуя, Genoa ; генузецъ.  
 Ямайка, Jamaica ; ямаецъ.  
 Абиссинія, Abyssinia ; абиссинецъ.  
 Испанія, Spain ; испанецъ.

Норвегія, Norway ; норвежецъ.  
 Черногорія, Montenegro ; черногорецъ.  
 Гавана, Havannah ; гаванецъ.  
 Корей, Corea ; кореецъ.  
 Женѣва, Geneva ; женевецъ.  
 Швейцарія, Switzerland ; швейцарецъ.

### Obs. 1.—Some names in *a*, or *ia*, take *анецъ* or *янецъ* :

Африка, Africa ; африканецъ.  
 Америка, America ; американецъ.  
 Италія, Italy ; италианецъ.

Спарта, Sparta ; спартанецъ.  
 Мексика, Mexico ; мексиканецъ.  
 Кастилія, Castile ; кастиліанецъ.

### II. The following names of places in *a*, *ъ*, *ia*, take *аппяъ* or *янинъ*, instead of *ецъ* :

Калуга, Kaluga ; калужанинъ.  
 Рига, Riga ; рижанинъ.  
 Смоленскъ, Smolensk ; смолянинъ.  
 Римъ, Rome ; римлянинъ.  
 Англія, England ; англичанинъ.

Армѣнія, Armenia ; армянинъ.  
 Парижъ, Paris ; парижанинъ.  
 Кіевъ, Kief ; киевлянинъ.  
 Египетъ, Egypt ; египтянинъ.  
 Даниа, Denmark ; датчанинъ.

### III. Some take *итянинъ*, as—

Аравія, Arabia ; аравитянинъ.

### Obs. 2.—The following Russian towns take, in the singular *итинъ*, and in the plural *итянинъ* :

Москва, Moscow ; москвитинъ, plural москвитяне.  
 Псковъ, Pscov ; псковитинъ, plural псковитяне.  
 Тверь, Tver ; тверитинъ, plural тверитяне.  
 Костромá, Kostroma ; костромитинъ, plural костромитяне.



The following names of natives are formed irregularly :

Азія, Asia ; азіятець.

Сибірѣ, Siberia ; сибирякъ.

Германія, Germany ; нѣмецъ.

Польша, Poland ; полякъ.

Татарія, Tartary ; татаринъ.

Гречія, Greece ; грекъ.

Франція, France ; французъ.

Турція, Turkey ; туракъ.

Европа, Europe ; европеець.

Пруссія, Prussia ; пруссакъ.

Bohémia, Bohemia ; чехъ, богемець.

Time, season,

It is time,

Порá.

Порá (есть), impersonal verb,  
governs the dative.

Is it already time for you to go ?

No, it is not yet time for me, but  
for him it is already time to go.

Порá ли вамъ уже идти ?

Нѣтъ, мнѣ ещё не порá, но ему уже  
порá идти.

Since that time, }

Since then, }

Till now, to this time,

Till then, to that time.

Съ тѣхъ поръ.

До сихъ поръ.

До тѣхъ поръ.

Where have you been till now ?

I was abroad.

Гдѣ вы были до сихъ поръ ?

Я былъ за границею.

Since what time ? }

Since when ? }

Since (the time when),

Съ которыхъ поръ ?

Съ тѣхъ поръ какъ.

How long is it since you have seen  
him ?

Not since he went abroad.

+ Съ которыхъ поръ вы не видѣли  
его ?

Съ тѣхъ поръ какъ онъ уѣхалъ за-  
границу.

Since I saw you (since I did not see  
you) I have been in many towns  
abroad.

+ Съ тѣхъ поръ какъ я васъ не ви-  
дѣлъ я былъ во многихъ горо-  
дахъ за границею.

OBS. 3.—Russians express such sentences in a contrary sense to the English, *i.e.* they mean the time that has elapsed since the moment in question, and therefore they use the negative form instead of the affirmative.

## THE ASPECTS OF VERBS.

The Russian verb, by a change in its termination, or by prefixing a preposition, acquires a new signification as the duration or accomplishment of action. These modifications, these variations in the meaning of the original verb, are called *Aspects*, Видъ.

There are three principal aspects of Russian verbs :

1. The 'imperfect aspect,' неокончательный видъ, which denotes the action indeterminately with respect to its completion ; that is, without intimating whether the action is being, has been, or will be begun or finished, as :

Я читаю,	I am reading.
Я читалъ,	I was reading.
Я буду читать,	I shall read.

2. The 'perfect aspect,' совершенный видъ, which denotes that the action has been or will be accomplished thoroughly, as :

Я прочиталъ,	I have read
Я прочтѣ,	I shall read

3. The 'iterative aspect,' многократный видъ, indicates that the action has been frequently repeated long ago, and at some indefinite time, as :

Я читывалъ,	I used (in my life) to read.
-------------	------------------------------

Obs. 4.—If the repeated action, although long passed, took place at a time which can be defined, the past tense of the imperfect aspect is used, instead of the iterative aspect, as :

Я читалъ неоднократно,	I have read more than once.
------------------------	-----------------------------

To read,	Читáть.
To count, to consider,	Считáть.

Obs. 5.—All verbs to which a preposition is prefixed do not become verbs of perfect aspect; there are some which change only their meaning, remaining as before verbs of imperfect aspect, as :

Ходить, to walk ;	находить, to find.
Играть, to play ;	выиграть, to gain.
Быть, to be ;	прибыть, to arrive, etc.

Obs. 6.—Concerning the verbs of imperfect aspect which have both the definite and the indefinite form, the following rule is to be observed : The prepositional verbs formed of the definite ones become verbs of perfect aspect, while those formed of the indefinite remain of imperfect aspect, as :

Идти, 'to go;' def. imperf. ;	уйти, 'to go away,' perf. aspect.
Ходить, 'to walk ;' indef. imperf. ;	уходить, 'to go away,' imperf. aspect.

Obs. 7.—There are only a few verbs, such as идти, ходить, 'to go;' вести, водить, 'to lead,' etc., with a distinct form for the definite and indefinite imperfect aspect ; all other Russian verbs are of the indefinite imperfect aspect, expressing the definite meaning without undergoing any change, as :

Онъ читáетъ теперь.	He is reading now.
Онъ читáетъ всѣхія книги и хорошія и дурныя.	He reads all kinds of books, good and bad.

дѣлать, to do ; perfect aspect, сдѣлать.
Читáть, to read ; perfect aspect, прочитáть.
Рѣшать, to decide ; perfect aspect, рѣшить.
Повторять, to repeat ; perfect aspect, повторить.

Obs. 8.—Verbs of perfect aspect have no present tense; their past tense has the same inflexions as that of verbs of

imperfect aspect, *i.e.* я, яа, яо, plural яа; but the future tense is like the present, without the aid of the auxiliary:

*Imperfect Aspect.*

Я дѣлалъ, I was doing.  
 Я читалъ, I was reading.  
 Я рѣшалъ, I was deciding.  
 Я повторялъ, I was repeating.  
 Я буду дѣлать, I shall be doing.  
 Я буду читать, I shall be reading.  
 Я буду рѣшать, I shall be deciding.  
 Я буду повторять, I shall be repeating.

*Perfect Aspect.*

Я сдѣлалъ, I have done.  
 Я прочиталъ, I have read.  
 Я рѣшилъ, I have decided.  
 Я повторилъ, I have repeated.  
 Я сдѣлаю, I shall do.  
 Я прочитаю, I shall read.  
 Я рѣшу, I shall decide.  
 Я повторю, I shall repeat.

Obs. 9.—Verbs with a prefix are called ‘prepositional verbs,’ предложный глаголъ.

To lead, to take to,

{ Вести, I. 7. (definite).  
 { Водить, II. 10. (indefinite)

Where is he taking his little son ?  
 He is taking him to school.  
 Does he take him there often ?  
 He takes him to school twice a week.

Куда ведётъ онъ своего сына ?  
 Онъ его ведётъ въ школу.  
 Часто ли онъ его туда водить.  
 Онъ его водить въ школу два раза въ недѣлю.

Where does the coachman lead the horse ?

Куда кучеръ ведётъ лошадь ?

He leads him to the field.

Онъ её ведётъ на поле.

*Definite.*

Я веду, I lead ;  
 Ты ведёшь, Thou leadest ;  
 Онъ ведётъ, He leads ;  
 Мы ведёмъ, We lead ;  
 Вы ведёте, You lead ;  
 Они ведутъ, They lead ;  
 Я велъ, I was leading ;  
 Я буду вести, I will lead ;

*Indefinite.*

Я вожу.  
 Ты водишь.  
 Онъ водить.  
 Мы водимъ.  
 Вы водите.  
 Они водятъ.  
 Я водилъ.  
 Я буду водить.

OBS. 10.—In the same manner are conjugated :

Провести́, проводи́ть, To lead through, to pass (time).  
 Привести́, приводи́ть, To lead up to, to take to.  
 Увести́, уводи́ть, To lead away, to take away.  
 Отвести́, отводи́ть, To lead away from.

In (on, movement about),	По, governs the dative.
He is walking <i>in</i> the street.	Онъ идётъ по улицѣ.
He leads his horse (to and fro) <i>in</i> the yard.	Онъ водитъ лошадь по двору.
I travelled <i>in</i> Italy, France and Russia.	Я путешествовалъ по Италиі, Франціи и Россіи.
They were riding <i>in</i> the fields and meadows.	Они ѣздили по полямъ и лугамъ.

Behind,	За, governs the instr.
For,	За, governs the accusative.
Abroad,	{ Заграницу.
	{ Заграницею.
From abroad,	Изъ заграницы.

OBS. 11.—‘Abroad,’ when denoting movement, is translated *заграницу*, and when rest *заграницею*.

Where is your brother now?	Гдѣ вашъ братъ теперь?
He is now abroad.	Онъ теперь заграницею.
Where is your wife (spouse) going?	Куда ѣдетъ ваша супруга?
She is going abroad.	Она ѣдетъ заграницу.
Did you live abroad long?	Долго ли вы жили заграницею?
I lived abroad two years.	Я жилъ заграницею два года.
Where did she come from?	Откуда она пріѣхала?
She came from abroad.	Она пріѣхала изъ заграницы.
To travel, путешествовать.	We travel, мы путешествуемъ.
I travel, я путешествую.	You travel, вы путешествуете.
Thou travellest, ты путешествуешь.	They travel, они путешествуютъ.
He travels, онъ путешествуетъ.	I travelled, я путешествовалъ.

We travelled, мы путешествовали.

Where did you travel this year?

Гдѣ вы путешествовали въ нынѣш-  
немъ году?

I travelled abroad.

Я путешествовалъ заграницею.

To return, возвратиться.

A limit, frontier, граница.

My late father, мой покойный отецъ.

Tolerably well, порядочно.

His late mother, ея покойная мать.

Order, порядокъ.

A benefactor, благодѣтель.

Disorder, безпорядокъ.

### EXERCISE LV.

Are you not going to the Austrian for the silk handkerchiefs?—I am not going for them to the Austrian, but to the Bavarian or Belgian.—Whom did you see last week at the rich Pole's?—I saw at his house three Frenchmen, two Englishmen and one German.—Did you see there any Asiatics also?—Yes, I saw one Chinaman, one Armenian and two Persians.—May Europeans have as many wives as Asiatics?—No, Europeans may not have as many wives as Asiatics; Europeans have better laws than Asiatics.—With whom are the rich Parisians speaking?—They are speaking with the Swiss, who has such pretty daughters.—From whom did you buy these excellent linens and those iron goods?—I bought the first from Irishmen, and the latter from their rich neighbours, the English.—Is it already time for this Scotchman to go (in a vehicle) to the Dane?—It is already time for him to go.—Is it time for the children to dine?—No, it is not yet time for them to dine, they have only just breakfasted.—What sort of goods have these Turks and Greeks?—The Turks have good furs, and the Greeks have nuts and olive-oil.—In whose coach are these Italians going?—They are going in the coach of their friend, the Spaniard.—What do you think of the Spaniards and their neighbours the Portuguese?—I think (that) they

are very proud.—But I do not think so (this).—Whom do the Montenegrins and the Bulgarians dislike?—They do not like the Austrians and the Turks.—Whose horse is the servant of this Milanese leading?—He leads his master's horse.—Who takes this little girl to school?—Nobody takes her to school, she goes there by herself (camá).—Have you been long abroad?—I was there two months.—Has your wife been abroad also?—No, she has not been yet, she is going abroad to-morrow.—Since we saw him we have received from him three letters.

#### EXERCISE LVI.

How have you passed your time since I saw you?—I travelled abroad.—Where did you travel?—I travelled in France, Russia and Sweden.—When did you return from thence?—I returned last week.—How do you pass your time now?—Thank you, tolerably well.—Have the peasants abroad as good little stone houses as we have?—No, the peasants abroad have little wooden houses, with warm rooms and light cellars.—Who is there walking in the street?—It is our benefactor.—Have you read already the book (which) I gave you the day before yesterday?—No, I have not read it yet.—In that case (такъ) read it, it is a very good book. Where are the children?—They are walking in the garden. Who took them away?—The old maid-servant took them away.—Where did he take the horse from?—He led him away from the well.—Is it time for the children to go to church?—No, it is not yet time for them, but for the singer it is already time to go there.—Whose calf is this butcher leading?—He is leading his own calf.—Where is he leading it?—He is leading it to the shed.—Where is the olive-

oil, which you bought of the Greek?—It is now in the little lamp, which you see there, in the little corner before the Holy Image.—What have you on your finger?—It is a ring of my late uncle's.—How many stars and little stars are there in the sky?—I do not know, I did not count (считать) them and nobody can count (сосчитать) them.—What is this little town by that river.—It is not a town, it is a village.—What is in this bottle?—There is wine in it.

## TWENTY-NINTH LESSON.

### Двадцать девятый Урокъ.

Masculine nouns designating animate beings form their feminine according to the following rules:

#### I. The termination *ница* is added to:

##### a. Nouns ending in *никъ*:

Полковникъ, a colonel; полковница, a colonel's wife;

Родственникъ, a relative; грѣшникъ, a sinner.

*Exceptions.*—Старикъ, 'an old man,' and мельникъ, 'a miller,' form their feminine irregularly: старуха, 'an old woman;' мельничиха, 'a miller's wife.'

##### b. Nouns ending in *ецъ*:

Старецъ, a monk; старица, a nun;

Вдовецъ, a widower; вдовица (соч. вдова), a widow;

Самодержецъ, an autocrat; fem. самодержица.

*Exception.*—Швецъ, a sewer; швей, a sempstress.

#### 2. Some names of animals:

Левъ, a lion; Львица, a lioness.

Волкъ, a wolf; волчица.

Осёлъ, an ass; ослица.

Орёлъ, an eagle; орлица.

Голубъ, a pigeon; голубица.



d. And also the following:

Императоръ, an Emperor ; императрица.  
 Царь, the czar ; царица.  
 Мастеръ, a master ; мастерица.  
 Діаконъ, a deacon ; діаконица.  
 Карликъ, a dwarf ; карлица.  
 Пѣвецъ, a singer ; пѣвица.

OBS. 1.—Nouns ending in тель, take ница :

Учитель, a schoolmaster ; учительница, a schoolmistress.	
Пріятель, a friend.	Читатель, a reader.
Правитель, a ruler.	Зритель, a spectator.

II. The termination ка is added to :

a. Nouns designating natives of towns or countries, and also some other words ending in ецъ, инъ :

Итали́нецъ, an Italian ; итали́нка, an Italian woman.	
Европе́ецъ, an European ; европе́йка.	Англича́нинъ, an Englishman ; англича́нка.
Кита́ецъ, a Chinese ; кита́нка.	Парижа́нинъ, a Parisian ; парижанка.
Торго́вецъ, a dealer ; торго́вка.	Хозя́инъ, a master ; хозя́йка,
Знако́мецъ, an acquaintance ; знако́мка.	Гражда́нинъ, a citizen ; гражда́нка.
Саме́цъ, a male ; самка.	Дворя́нинъ, a nobleman ; дворя́нка.

b. Nouns of natives of towns or countries, and also some other words, with various endings :

Шве́дъ, a Swede ; шведка.	Ту́рокъ, a Turk ; турча́нка.
Ара́бъ, a Negro ; ара́пка.	Черке́съ, a Circassian ; черкешенка.
Поля́къ, a Pole ; поля́нка.	Гре́къ, a Greek ; греча́нка.
Калмы́къ, a Kalmoos ; калмы́чка.	Сосѣ́дъ, a neighbour ; сосѣ́дка.
Цыга́нъ, a Gipsy ; цыга́нка.	Злодѣ́й, a villain ; злодѣ́йка.

Пастухъ, a shepherd ; пасту́шка, a shepherdess.

OBS. 2.—Monosyllabic nouns have the syllable ов inserted before the termination ка :

Жи́дъ, a Jew ; жи́довка, a Jewess.	
Мотъ, a spendthrift ; мото́вка.	Воръ, a thief ; воро́вка.

*Exceptions :* Котъ, a cat ; feminine, кошка.

Другъ, a friend ; feminine, подруга.

### III. The following take the termination **ЫНЯ** or **ИНЯ** :

Князь, a prince ; княгиня.

Государь, a monarch ; государыня.

Герцогъ, a duke ; герцогиня.

Рабъ, a slave ; рабуня and раба.

Гусь, a goose ; гусыня and гуска.

Герой, a hero : героиня.

Монахъ, a monk ; монахиня.

Сударь, sir ; сударыня.

Баринъ, a lord ; барыня.

### IV. The termination **ЬЯ** is added to :

#### a. Nouns in **УНЬ** :

Болтунь, a chatterer ; болтуныя.

Крикунъ, a bawler ; крикунья.

Лгунь, a liar ; лгунья.

Пѣвунъ, a singer ; пѣвунья.

#### b. And the following :

Пгумень, an abbot ; пгуменя, an abbess.

Гость, a guest ; гостья, a female guest.

### V. The termination **НХА** is added to :

a. Nouns designating the wife of a professional man, artisan, trader, and such like :

Ткачъ, a weaver ; ткачиха.

Купецъ, a merchant ; купчиха.

Поваръ, a cook ; повариха.

Мельникъ, a miller ; мельничиха.

Староста, a bailiff ; старостиха.

Сапожникъ, a bootmaker ; сапожничиха.

#### b. The following also take **НХА** :

Трусъ, a coward ; трусиха.

Шутъ, a jester ; шутиха.

Щеголь, a fop ; щеголиха.

Слонъ, an elephant ; слониха.

Obs. 3.—By means of different terminations the Russian language makes a distinction between the wife of a professional man and a woman who herself exercises a profession, as :

Учитель, a schoolmaster ; { учительша, a schoolmaster's wife.  
учительница, a schoolmistress.

Лѣкаръ, a doctor ;	{ лѣкарша, a doctor's wife. лѣкарка, a woman who practices medicine.
Дворникъ, a door-porter ;	{ двѣрничиха, a door-porter's wife. двѣрница, a female door-porter.
Инспекторъ, an inspector ;	{ инспекторша, an inspector's wife. инспектриса, an inspectress.
Директоръ, a director ;	{ директриса, a director's wife. директриса, a directress.

VI. Nouns designating a person exercising some civil or military employment form their feminine in ша :

Секретарь, a secretary ; секретарьша, a secretary's wife.	
Офицеръ, an officer ; офицерша.	Генералъ, a general ; генеральша.
Опекунъ, a guardian ; опекунша.	Судья, a judge ; судейша

The following form their feminine irregularly :

Господинъ, master ;	госпожа, mistress.
Дуракъ, a fool ;	дура, a foolish woman.
Король, a king ;	королева, a queen.
Царевичъ, a czar's son ;	царевна, a czar's daughter.
Пасынокъ, a stepson ;	падчерица, a stepdaughter.
Зять, a brother-in-law ;	золовка, a sister-in-law.
Зять, a son-in-law.	невѣстка, a daughter-in-law.
Свѣкоръ, a father-in-law ;	свекровь, a mother-in-law.
Слуга, a servant ;	служанка, a maid-servant.
Козёлъ, a goat ;	коза, a she-goat.
Павлинъ, a peacock ;	пава, a pea-hen.
Баронъ, a baron ;	баронесса, a baroness.
Принцъ, a prince ;	принцесса, a princess.

To throw out,

Выкидать, выкинуть.

The workmen threw out of the garden all the stones.	Работники выкидали изъ саду всѣ камни.
He threw out of the window a pot of flowers.	Онъ выкинулъ изъ окна горшокъ цвѣтовъ.

Obs. 4.—The perfect aspect of verbs is subdivided into :

a. Perfect aspect of duration (длительный), which in-

dicates that the action has been or will be performed in many movements, or that it will require a certain time for its thorough accomplishment, as :

I came to church in two hours.  
I can get to the church in two minutes.

Я дошёл до церкви въ два часа.  
Я могу дойти до церкви въ две минуты.

I sang the song over twice.  
Can you sing this song over again ?

Я пропѣлъ пѣсню два раза.  
Можете ли вы пропѣть эту пѣсню ещё разъ ?

b. Perfect aspect of unity (однократный), which indicates that the action has been or will be thoroughly accomplished in one movement, or suddenly, as :

He threw the stone very high.  
He touched (once) the spring.  
He looked at him (he glanced at him).

Онъ кинулъ камень очень высоко.  
Онъ тронулъ пружину.  
Онъ взглянулъ на него.

OBS. 5.—The infinitive of verbs of the perfect aspect of unity ends in нуть.

It is true,

† Правда.

Is it true that his house has been burnt ?

Правда-ли что его домъ сгорѣлъ ?

No, it is not true.

Нѣтъ, неправда.

It is true.

Правда.

Is it not true ?

Не правда ли ?

You are right.

† Ваша правда.

Self,

Самъ, самый.

Selves,

Сами, самыя, самыя.

Myself, я самъ.

Ourselves, мы сами.

Thyself, ты самъ.

Yourselves, вы сами.

Himself, онъ самъ.

Themselves, они, онъ сами.

Herself, она самá.

Oneself, { самого себя.  
          { plur. самихъ себя.

Itself, оно само.

OBS. 6.—The pronoun самъ is used with the personal

pronouns and names of animate objects, and the pronoun *самый* with the demonstrative pronouns and names of inanimate or abstract objects.

He himself has told me of it.

Онъ самъ мнѣ сказа́лъ объ́ этомъ.

She herself has told it to me.

Она́ сама́ сказа́ла мнѣ́ это́.

He is satisfied with himself.

Онъ дово́ленъ са́мимъ со́бою.

He praises himself.

Онъ хва́литъ са́мago се́бя.

It is the very same man, whom we saw here last year.

Это́ тотъ са́мый че́ловѣкъ, ко́торого мы́ ви́дѣли́ здѣсь въ́ про́шломъ го́ду.

Death itself would not frighten him.

Са́мая сме́рть не́ устра́шила́ бы́ его́.

OBS. 7.—The determinative pronouns *самъ* and *самый* have the same meaning, and are declined in all the genders like adjectives.

NOTE.—*Самъ*, and neuter *самó*, in the instrumental singular, and in all the cases in the plural, take *и* instead of *ы*, as :

Instrumental, *самимъ* ; plural, *самн* ; genitive, *самихъ*, etc.

What is his age ?

{ + Ско́лько ему́ лѣтъ ?  
{ + Ка́кихъ онъ лѣтъ ?

He is five years old.

{ + Ему́ пять лѣтъ.  
{ + Онъ́ пяти́ лѣтъ.

OBS. 8.—From the above examples it will be seen that the Russian language has two different ways to express such sentences ; one with the subject in the dative, and another with the subject in the nominative.

He is two years old.

{ + Ему́ два́ го́да.  
{ + Онъ́ двухъ лѣтъ.

He is ten years of age.

{ + Ему́ де́сять лѣтъ.  
{ + Онъ́ десяти́ лѣтъ.

OBS. 9.—The numeral is in the nominative when the subject is in the dative, and in the genitive when the subject is in the nominative.

Years,                      Гóды, лѣтъ.

OBS. 10.—Годъ, 'a year,' when used to denote age, period, etc., has for the plural лѣтъ, genitive plural of лѣто, 'summer;' in its proper sense, however, it has also its regular plural, гóды, годóвъ, etc., as :

Years passed rapidly.

All years are not alike.

The years 1856 and 1857 were  
unlucky for us.

Быстро гóды проходили.

Не всѣ гóды одинаковы

1856 и 1857 гóды были для насъ  
несчастливы.

To see off, to accompany,

In the time of, during,

In good time,

For a time,

From time to time,

During (in time of) harvest.

Did he come in time ?

No, he came, but not in good time  
(inopportunately).

{ Провожать, imp. asp.  
{ Проводить, perf. asp.

Во время.

Вó время.

На время.

Отъ времени до времени.

Во время жатвы.

† Во время ли онъ пришёлъ.

† Нѣтъ, онъ пришёлъ не во время.

A work (literary), сочинёніе.

A shopkeeper, лавочникъ.

An author, писатель.

An amateur, любитель.

Ferocious, { свирѣпый.  
                  { лютый.

A clergyman, попъ.

Elm-tree, вязъ.

Fir-tree, ель.

Birch, берёза.

To receive, получать, imp. asp.

I will receive, я буду получать.

A composer, сочинитель.

A market-woman, торговка.

An authoress, писательница.

Talkative, болтливый.

Happy, lucky, счастливый.

Unhappy, unlucky, несчастливый.

A clergyman's wife, попадьѣ.

Pine-tree, сосна.

Oak-tree, дубъ.

A pear-tree, груша.

To receive, получить, perf. asp.

I will receive, я получу.

To take care of somebody  
or something,

Беречь, I. 7, governs the  
accusative.

To take care of oneself,	Берёчься, governs the gen.
To keep on one's guard against some one or something,	Остерегаться кого или чего, governs the genitive.
I keep on my guard, etc., я остерега- юсь, ты остерегаешься, онъ остере- гается.	We keep on our guard, etc., мы остерегаемся, вы остерегаетесь, они остерегаются.
Keep on your guard, against that man.	Остерегайтесь этого человека.
There is no need for me to keep on my guard against him.	+Мнѣ нечего его остерегаться.
I take care, etc., я берегу, ты бере- жешь, онъ бережётъ.	We take care, etc., мы бережёмъ, вы бережёте, они берегутъ.
I took care, я берёгъ.	We took care, мы берегли.
She took care, она берегла.	I will take care, я буду беречь.
It took care, оно берегло.	Take care, береги, plural, берегите.

## EXERCISE LVII.

Did you see at the rich princess's ball the wife of colonel N., and her relative Mrs. D. ?—No, I saw neither the wife of colonel N. nor her relative Mrs. D.—Who is this girl ? It is my sister's faithful friend.—Did your acquaintance Mrs. T. receive a new silk hat from her milliner ?—She has not yet received it.—When will she receive it ?—She will receive it the day after to-morrow.—With whom is the pale nun speaking ?—She is speaking with the proud countess.—To whom did the young princess present the new gold ring ?—She presented it to her friend (acquaintance), the captain's pretty wife.—Where is the baker's wife going with her children ?—She is going with them to her neighbour, the tailoress.—From whom did you buy these knives and forks ?—I bought them from the old market-woman (торговка).—Did not you buy from the shopkeeper (female)

also something else?—I bought of her a pair of sharp scissors, a pair of gold spectacles, and other goods of iron, steel and glass.—Where did you see the black she-bear with her two cubs?—I saw them in the gipsy's shed.—This lioness is as ferocious as that lion.—Can you tell me where his excellent dog is?—Yes, I see him there, in the forest, on the grass under the high pine-tree.—It is an oak, and not a pine. What is this boy's age?—It is not a boy, it is a dwarf, who is twenty-seven years old.—How old are these two little girls?—They are not little girls, but female dwarfs, and one of them is forty-five and the other fifty-three years of age. And I thought they were little girls.—No, as you see, they are already old women.—Where have your nieces been yesterday.—They were at their schoolmistress's yesterday. With whom are the young lady pupils going?—They are going with the daughters of the shoemaker's wife.—To whom is the mistress of this house going?—She is going to the clergyman's young wife.—With whom is the general's wife going?—She is going (in a vehicle) with the countess's daughters.—Can you tell me where they are going?—Yes, they are going to the rich merchant's wife's ball.

#### EXERCISE LVIII.

Where are these rich Englishwomen going with their French lady friends?—They are going abroad.—Did you see yesterday at the theatre the pretty Swedish women, of whom I spoke to you?—Yes, I saw them there with one German, one Polish and two Italian women.—To whom does the widow want to write?—To the kind abbess.—Is it true that this pretty Englishwoman is an excellent authoress?—There are many who say that she writes well,



but I myself have never read her works.—What does this Frenchman want to describe?—He wants to describe the life of the peasants in Turkey.—Does the handsome Greek woman go often to her neighbour, the talkative female friend?—Yes, very often.—Where has this Frenchwoman been?—She was at the house of the rich American woman, who has just come from abroad.—Has the extravagant old woman still her rings and her new gold watch?—She has them no longer.—Where are these things now?—I think the cunning old Jewess has got them now.—What sort of shoes have the Chinese women?—They have very small shoes.—Where are the peasant women with the shepherdesses going?—The peasant women are going to the forest, and the shepherdesses are going to the field to their flocks. Did the maid-servant give some bread to the children of the female slave?—Yes, but they do not want to eat the bread, they ask for some butter and cheese.—To whom did this burgher's wife give away (отдать) her grey cat?—She did not give her cat away, but lent her only for a time to her neighbour, the miller's wife.—Who told you that the pretty Circassian woman is very hospitable?—All her acquaintances say so (this).—To whose room is the princess going?—She is going to the empress's room.—Is she going with the queen or with the grand-duchess?—She is going with both, and her friend the countess is also going with them.

#### EXERCISE LIX.

Whose funeral is it?—It is the funeral of the rich Jew, the first banker in our town.—Who has bought the rouge? The maid-servant of the celebrated lady singer bought it. Is the gallery of this church high?—Yes, it is very high

Who has lost this little needle?—The poor sempstress lost it.—For whom did you buy this little saddle?—I bought it for my *little* son's *little* horse.—How old is your little son? He will be eight years old soon.—Have you been long in Russia?—I was there three years, six years.—Do you want to go into the garden?—No, I do not want to go into the garden now, I like to go there after dinner or after tea. Have you received already Mrs. B's. new work?—No, I have not yet.—When will you receive it?—I do not know. Who paid for your dinner?—I paid for it myself.—Have you ever been in Egypt or in Algiers?—No, I have not been yet in Africa, but I have been already in Asia and America. Who has bought of the Persian the handsome Turkish shawl?—The rich merchant's wife bought it from him. Have you already seen your sister-in-law off to Paris? No, I have not yet seen her off, and she is not going to Paris, but to Berlin.—With whom is she going abroad? She is going with her friend, the rich major's wife.—Have they caught the deserter already?—No, they did not catch the deserter, but they caught the female thief.—How is your wife's health?—Thank you, she is quite well.—Whom do you see there in the green meadow?—I see a young shepherdess.—With whom is she there?—There is no one with her there.—Take care of your money.—I do take care of it, but your brother takes very bad care of it.—You are right, he does not take any care of it at all.—Keep on your guard against this gambler.—There is no necessity for me to keep on my guard, I never play at cards.

---

## THIRTIETH LESSON.—Тридцáтый Урѡкъ.

Whose garden is this ?	Чей ѓто садъ ?
It is the grandfather's garden.	Ѓто дѣдовъ садъ.
Whose book is this ?	Чья ѓто книга ?
It is the sister's book.	Ѓто сѣстрина книга.
It is the uncle's book.	Ѓто дѣдина книга.

Obs. 1.—The possessive case of nouns in English is rendered by an adjective termination added to the nominative, as :

John's garden,	{ Садъ Пвана, or Пвановъ садъ.
----------------	-----------------------------------

These are termed in Russian *Possessive Adjectives*, “при-  
тяжательныя,” and are divided, according to their termina-  
tion, into :

I. *Personal* (личныя), formed from proper and common names of persons, and inanimate objects treated as animated beings, ending in овъ, евъ, ннъ, цынъ ; (feminine a, neuter o).

a. Possessive adjectives in овъ are formed from names ending in ѣ, o :

Пѣтръ, Peter ;	Петровъ, Peter's.
Мáрко, Mark ;	Мáрковъ, Mark's.

b. Adjectives in евъ are formed from nouns in й, ъ, е :

Андрѣй, Andrew ;	Андрѣевъ, Andrew's.
Учѣтель, a schoolmaster ;	учѣтельевъ, schoolmaster's.
Царь, the czar ;	царевъ, czar's.
Солнце, sun ;	солнцевъ, sun's.

Obs. 2.—Possessive adjectives in ъ, жъ, чъ, are met with only in the church Slavonic and old Russian, as :

Господь, Lord, God ;	Господевъ, Lord's.
----------------------	--------------------

c. Adjectives ending in *инъ* are formed from nouns in *а*, *я* ; those in *цынъ* from nouns in *ца* :

Лука, Luke ; *Лукинъ*, Luke's.

Дядя, uncle ; *дядинъ*, uncle's.

Кормилица, a nurse ; *кормилицынъ*, nurse's.

Peter's house,

*Петровъ домъ*.

Andrew's sister,

*Андреева сестра*.

The uncle's field,

*Дядино поле*.

The brothers Petrov,

*Братья Петровы*.

The uncle's fields,

*Дядины поля*.

Obs. 3.—Personal possessive adjectives, like all other adjectives, agree in number, gender and case with the substantive to which they refer, and are declined according to the following table.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.	For all genders.
Nom.	ъ.	а.	о.	ы.
Gen.	а .	ой.	а.	ыхъ.
Dat.	у.	ой.	у.	имъ.
Acc.	Like the nom. or the gen.	у.	like the nom.	like the nom. or the gen.
Instr.	имъ.	ою.	имъ.	ими.
Prep.	омъ.	ой.	омъ.	ыхъ.

I see the uncle's daughter with the  
master's son in the neighbour's  
garden.

Я вижу дѣдину дочь съ сыномъ учи-  
телевымъ въ сосѣдовомъ саду.

Have you the sister's gloves?

У васъ ли сестрины перчатки?

I have not the sister's gloves.

У меня нѣтъ сестринныхъ перчатокъ.

OBS. 4.—Family names, as also names of towns or places in овъ, евъ, and инъ (ынъ), are declined in the same way as personal possessive adjectives, except the prepositional case, which takes in the masculine and neuter ѣ instead of омъ.

I was speaking with George Petrov  
and Miss Ivanov about Mr.  
Orlov.

Я говорилъ съ Егѳромъ Петровымъ  
и дѣвицей Ивановой о Гнѣ. Ор-  
ловѣ.

I have not been in the village of  
Maxina, but I have been in  
Kiev and Pskov.

Я не былъ въ деревнѣ Максимной, но  
былъ въ Кіевѣ и Псковѣ.

OBS. 5.—In official documents, and sometimes in com-  
mon discourse, the words дочь, 'daughter,' and сынъ, 'son,'  
are used with the patronymic, as :

Peter son of John Orlov,  
Mary daughter of John Romanov,

Пѣтръ Пѣановъ сынъ Орловъ.  
Марья Пѣанова дочь Романова.

But in the language of the present day, in patronymic  
names, the terminations овъ, евъ, ова, ева are replaced by  
овичъ, евичъ (ичъ), овна, евна, and the terminations инъ,  
ина, by ичъ, инишна (ишна), as :

Peter son of John Orlov,  
Mary daughter of John Romanov,  
Sergius son of Elie Petrov,  
Sophia daughter of Elie Petrov,

Пѣтръ Пѣановичъ Орловъ.  
Марья Пѣановна Романова  
Сергій Ильичъ Петровъ.  
Сѳья Ильинишна Петрова.

OBS. 6.—Friends and acquaintances are familiarly ad-  
dressed by their Christian and patronymic instead of by  
their family names.

II. Generic adjectives (родовыя), formed chiefly from names of animals ending in *iū*, *ovii*, *evii*.

a. Adjectives in *iū* are formed from masculine and feminine nouns in *ъ*, *ь*, *а*, and from neuter nouns in *до*, *ята*.

Баранъ, a ram ; бараний рогъ, ram's horn.

Соболь, a sable ; соболій мѣхъ, sable-fur.

Коза, a goat ; козій сыръ, goat-cheese.

Телята, calves ; телячій хвостъ, calf's-tail.

Obs. 7.—In the formation of these adjectives the radical consonants *д*, *т*, *ц*, *г*, *к*, *х*, before *iū*, change into *ж*, *ч*, *ш*, as :

Медвѣдь, a bear ; медвѣжій, bear's.

Овца, a sheep ; овечій, sheep's.

Ребѣта, children ; ребячій, child's, etc.

б. The terminations *ovii* and *evii* are added to monosyllabic nouns in *онъ*, *онъ*, *олъ*, *онъ*, as :

Клобъ, a bug ; клобовій.

Слонъ, an elephant ; слоновій.

Конь, a horse ; коневій.

Волъ, an ox ; воловій.

Obs. 8.—Generic adjectives in *iū* are also formed from some nouns signifying a human being in his physical attributes, different stations of life, sex, age, etc., as :

Человѣкъ, man ; человѣчій глазъ, man's eye.

Пастухъ, a shepherd ; пастушій.

Баба, a woman ; бабій.

Вдова, a widow ; вдовій.

Дѣвица, a girl ; дѣвичій, etc.

And also from the following :

Богъ, God ; божій.

Врагъ, enemy ; вражій.

Obs. 9.—English compound words and nouns in apposition are rendered in Russian after the above manner, thus :

A horse-shoe,

A tea-tray,

A brick-house,

A water-spout,

Лошадіная подкова,

Чайный подносъ.

Кирпичный домъ.

Дождевой желобъ.

OBS. 10.—The following adjectives are formed irregularly :

Братъ, brother ; брѣтнинъ.  
Мужъ, husband ; муженикъ.  
Яковъ, Jacob ; яковлевъ.

Зять, brother-in-law ; зятиниъ.  
Мать, mother ; материнъ.  
Дочь, daughter ; дочеринъ.

To hope, to expect,  
To rely, to depend upon.

Надѣяться.  
Надѣяться на (with the acc.)

I hope, я надѣюсь.  
Thou hopest, ты надѣешься.  
He hopes, онъ надѣется.  
I hoped, я надѣлся, лась, etc.  
Hope, надѣйся, (imperative); plural, надѣйтесь.

We hope, мы надѣемся.  
You hope, вы надѣетесь.  
They hope, они надѣются.  
We hoped, мы надѣлись.

Does he hope to receive a letter  
to-day ?  
Do you expect to find her at home ?  
I do not expect it.  
Could one rely upon him ?  
You may rely upon him.  
She relies upon him.  
He depends upon it.  
To find at home.

Надѣется ли онъ получить письмо  
сегодня ?  
Надѣетесь ли вы застать её дома ?  
Я не надѣюсь.  
Можно ли на него надѣяться ?  
Вы можете надѣяться на него.  
Она надѣется на него.  
Онъ надѣется на это.  
† Застать дома.

To laugh,

Смѣяться, conjugated like  
надѣяться.

He laughs, онъ смѣется.

We laugh, мы смѣемся.

OBS. 11.—The *e* accented in the terminations of the present indicative is always pronounced *ë* (*yo*).

Beef, говѣдина.  
Ox flesh, говѣжье мѣсо.  
Mutton, баранина.  
Sheep's flesh, баранье мѣсо.  
Ox fat, бычачій жиръ.  
Cow's fat, коровій жиръ.  
Isinglass, рыбій клей.  
Roast veal, телѣчья жаркое.  
Wolf's den, волчья яма.

Sheep-skin, овечья шкура.  
Hare-skin, заячья шкура.  
Sable collar, соболій воротникъ.  
A comb-maker, гребенщикъ.  
A knife-maker, ножовщикъ.  
Help, assistance, помощь.  
Fur coat, шуба.  
Bear-skin, медвѣжья шкура.  
A fox, лисица, лиса.

A coat lined with bear-skin.

{ Шуба на медвѣжьемъ мѣху.  
{ Медвѣжья шуба.

A coat lined with sable.

{ Шуба на собольемъ мѣху.  
{ Соболья шуба.

A coat lined with fox-skin.

Лисья шуба.

Obs. 12.—Generic adjectives follow the same declension as qualifying adjectives, taking however in all the cases *ь* before the termination; as *рыбій*, 'of fish;' genitive *рыбьяго*, dative *рыбьему*, etc.

The brother's book.

Братинна книга.

My brother's book.

Книга моего брата.

Obs. 13.—Possessive adjectives are not used after possessive pronouns.

To teach,

Учить, gov. the acc. and dat.

To learn (by heart),

Учить, gov. the acc.

To learn, to study,

Учиться, gov. the dat.

What do you teach him?

Чему вы его учите?

I teach him the grammar.

Я учу его грамматикѣ.

He is learning his lesson.

Онъ учитъ свой урокъ.

He was learning the French and English languages.

Онъ учился французскому и английскому языкамъ.

To learn to read and write.

† Учиться грамотѣ.

He can read and write. }

† Онъ грамотный. }

He is a learned man. }

To praise, хвалить (like любить).

To play tricks, } шалить (like лю-  
To joke, } бить).

I teach, я учу.

We teach, мы учимъ.

Thou teachest, ты учишь.

You teach, вы учите.

He teaches, онъ учитъ.

They teach, они учатъ.

I taught, я училъ, а, о.

We taught, мы учили.

Do teach, учи; plural учите.

## EXERCISE LX.

What kind of fur is this?—It is the fur of a beaver.



From whom did Peter's son buy it?—He bought it from Constantine's brother.—Who was at the uncle's house? The neighbour's daughter, with the sister's maid-servant, were there.—Where are the master's children?—They are in the brother's room.—What are they doing there?—They are learning their lessons.—Do you like bear's flesh?—No, I do not like bear's flesh, but I like veal and mutton. Whom do you see on that stone bridge, and whom under those trees?—I see the husband's sister and the sister's son.—What do you expect to receive from Peter's niece? I expect to receive a letter from her.—Do not rely upon him, because one could not rely upon him.—Where is the wife's friend (fem.) going?—She is going to the brother's room, for the father's hat.—Do you know the Lord's Prayer? Yes, I do, and I hope (that) all Christians know and read the Lord's Prayer.—Have you not the master's ink?—I have not, I have the uncle's red ink.—Are the Sparrow-hills high?—Yes, one could see from the Sparrow-hills all (весь) Moscow.—What are these Chinese eating?—They are eating swallows' nests.—To whom are you going?—I am going to Peter, son of John Souvarov.—Have you read Krylov's fables?—No, I have not read the fables of John, son of Andrew Krylov, but I have read Solovyev's and Karamzin's History of Russia.—Where were you on Sunday morning?—I was at Saint Michael's Church.—Where were John's sons?—They were in Saint Nicholas's Church, and saw there the miracle-working (чудотворный) image of this saint.—With whom is Mary, daughter of Peter, going in a coach?—She is going with her friend the Countess Alexandra, daughter of Nicholas.—Are sheep-skins dear?—Yes, but not so dear as ox-skins.—Were you speaking with Elizabeth, daughter of John, and her cousin Andrew, son of

Nicholas?—I spoke neither with the one nor the other, but with Alexandra, daughter of Nicholas.—What did the uncle's maid-servant give to the cat?—She gave to the cat some fish bones, and the dog a few beef bones.

### EXERCISE LXI.

Whose coach do you see?—I see the brother's coach.—Is this my sister's umbrella?—No, it is not the sister's, but the master's umbrella.—Who is laughing so loudly?—It is we who laugh.—You must not laugh so, it is unbecoming. We are laughing because what you say is very funny.—It is not true, you are laughing because you like to joke (play tricks).—You are mistaken, sir, we never joke.—Where were you last year?—I was in Siberia, where a Siberian gave me a few excellent reindeers' horns.—Upon whom and what do you rely?—I rely upon God and God's help only.—Does Jacob's master teach your children well?—He teaches them well, and my children do not learn badly. What have you in your hands?—It is a bird's nest.—What are these combmakers doing?—They are making combs. What are they making them from?—From ox horns. What did you buy in the market the day before yesterday? I bought two pood of sheep's fat and five poods of cow's fat.—Of what do the knifemakers make knife handles? They make them of reindeers' horns.—Do you prefer roast beef to roast veal?—Yes, I prefer the former to the latter. Which people prefer horse flesh to any (всякій) other? Calmuks and some other Asiatics.—Have you many male relations?—I have many male, and still more female relatives.—Have you seen in Russian forests lions and lionesses?—One can see these wild beasts in Asia and Africa

only, but not in Europe; and therefore I have not seen in Russia either lions or lionesses.—Where did you pass last winter?—I passed it in a village.—And I thought you were in Italy.—No, my parents could not give me any money this year, and therefore I could not go (поѣхать).—What kind of fur-coat did he buy at the fair?—He bought a coat lined with beaver, with a sable collar.

### THIRTY-FIRST LESSON.—Тридцать первый Урокъ.

Is the master kind?  
The master is kind.  
Is the pupil diligent?  
The pupil is diligent.

Добръ ли учитель?  
Учитель добръ.  
Прилеженъ ли ученикъ?  
Ученикъ прилеженъ.

OBS. 1.—An adjective when used as a predicate changes its full termination into an apocopated one. The apocope is made by changing the masculine terminations *ый, ий*, into *ъ, ъ*, and in the feminine and neuter by cutting off the final vowel, as:

Добрый, good; apocopated, добръ, добра, добро.  
Синій, blue; apocopated, синь, синя, синё.  
Долгий, long; apocopated, долго, долга, долго.  
Горькій, bitter; apocopated, горекъ, горька, горько.  
Спокойный, tranquil; apocopated, спокоенъ, спокойно, спокойно.

OBS. 2.—Apocopated adjectives in *ъ*, preceded by two or more consonants, take the euphonic *o* or *e*.

The vowel *o* is inserted:

а. Before *къ*, preceded by *б, в, п, м, н, л, р, д, т, з, с, г*, as:

Ловкій, clever; ловко.  
Робкій, timid; робко.  
Крѣпкій, strong; крѣпоко.

Громкій, loud; громоко.  
Тѣнкій, thin; тѣноко.  
Сладкій, sweet; сладко, etc.

*Exception.*—Adjectives in *нѣ*, preceded by *ж*, take *е*, instead of *о*, as :

Тяжкѣй, heavy ; тяжекъ.

б. And in the following :

Рѣзвый, playful ; рѣзовъ.

Злой, wicked ; злѣ.

Полный, full ; полноу.

Долгий, long ; долгоу.

The vowel *е* is inserted :

а. In adjectives ending in *нѣ*, preceded by any consonant except *л*, as :

Красный, red ; красенъ.

Честный, honest ; честенъ.

Вѣрный, true ; вѣренъ.

Свободный, free ; свободенъ.

б. In those in *нѣ*, which are preceded by *л* soft (лъ), as :

Сильный, strong ; силёнъ.

Обильный, abundant ; обилёнъ.

с. In the following :

Тёплый, warm ; тёпелъ.

Светлый, bright ; свѣтелъ.

Острый, sharp ; остёръ.

Хитрый, cunning, хитёръ.

Кислый, sour ; киселъ.

д. And in those which have *ь* or *ѣ* before the termination, as :

Горькій, bitter ; горекъ.

Бойкій, bold ; боекъ.

Вольный, free ; воленъ.

Спокойный, quiet ; спокоенъ.

*Exception.*—Достойный, worthy ; достоинъ.

OBS. 3. All other apocopated adjectives, although having two or more consonants before the termination, do not take any euphonic vowel.

Толстый, thick ; толстъ.

Вѣтхій, old ; вѣтъ.

Гордый, proud ; гордъ.

Добрый, kind ; добръ.

Мёртвый, dead ; мёртъ.

Твёрдый, hard ; твёрдъ.

OBS. 4.—Apocopated adjectives when joined to a substantive by means of the auxiliary verb *быть*, 'to be,' have

all the genders and both numbers, but one case only—the nominative, as :

Я добръ, добра, добрѣ.	I am kind.
Я былъ добръ, добра, добрѣ.	I was kind.
Я буду добръ, добра, добрѣ.	I will be kind.
Мы добры.	We are kind, etc.

OBS. 5.—When, however, an apocopated adjective is used in place of a qualifying adjective, it is declinable, as :

Свѣтлѣ мѣсяцѣ, bright moon ; genitive, свѣтла мѣсяца, etc.  
Бѣлы руки, white hands ; genitive, бѣлыхъ рукъ, etc.

OBS. 6.—Qualifying adjectives in apocopated form are used in poetry only, and are distinguished from *indeclinable* ones by the tonic accent, which in the latter is generally changed, as :

Бѣлы рѹки, white hands.  
Рѹки бѣлы, the hands are white.

OBS. 7.—Compound words formed of two substantives, or of a substantive and an apocopated adjective, although written together, have a distinct declension for each word ; as Царьградъ, 'Constantinople,' genitive Царьграда, dative Царьграду, etc. ; Новгородъ, 'Novgorod,' genitive Новгорода, dative Новугороду, etc.

Я diligent.	Я прилеженъ.
Are you diligent ?	Прилежны ли вы ?
She is modest.	Она скромна.
He is not poor.	Онъ не бѣденъ.
Is he proud ?	Гордъ ли онъ ?
Who is happy ?	Кто счастливъ ?
We are happy.	Мы счастливы.

OBS. 8.—The present tense of the auxiliary verb быть, 'to be,' is always omitted, although understood.

Lofty, высокій.	Exacting, требовательный.
Frank, откровенный.	Domestic, домашний.

Healthy, здоровый.  
 Severe, strict, строгий.  
 Kind, кроткий.  
 Content, довольный.  
 Air, воздухъ.  
 To sell, продавать (imperf. asp.).  
 To jump, прыгать.  
 To dance, танцовать.  
 To ride, ѣхать верхомъ (definite).

I could,

We could, мы могли.

I shall be able.

We shall be able.

Is it far to ?

From here,

From there,

What kind, what sort ?

What sort of a horse is yours ?

He is very good.

What sort of friend have you ?

He is an excellent man.

How is your linen ?

Our linen is very durable.

What sort of new teacher have  
 you got ?

To dare,

I dare, etc., я смѣю, ты смѣешь,  
 онъ смѣетъ.

I dare not.

Who dares ?

I dare say.

I dared, я смѣлъ, смѣла, смѣло.

Strong,

The ox is strong.

The horse is strong.

Fertile, плодородный.

Nutritious, питательный

Clever, искусный.

Liberal, щедрый.

Sonorous, звучный.

To sell, продать (perf. asp.).

To run, бѣгать.

To know, знать.

To ride, ѣздить верхомъ (indef.).

Я могъ, могла, могло.

They could, они могли.

† Я буду въ состояніи.

Мы будемъ въ состояніи.

Далеко ли до ?

Отсюда.

Оттуда.

Какое, (какой) ?

Какова ваша лошадь ?

Она очень хороша.

Каковъ вашъ пріятель ?

Онъ отличный человекъ.

† Каковы ваши полотна ?

Наши полотна очень прочны.

Каковъ вашъ новый учитель ?

Смѣть. I. 1.

We dare, etc., мы смѣемъ, вы смѣете,  
 онъ смѣетъ.

Я не смѣю.

Кто смѣетъ.

Смѣю сказать.

We dared, мы смѣли.

Сильный, крѣпкій.

Быкъ силенъ.

Лошадь сильна.

Ice is strong.

This tobacco is strong.

Лёдъ крѣпокъ.

Этотъ табакъ крѣпокъ.

Obs. 9.—‘Strong,’ implying physical strength, is rendered by сильный, and in other cases by крѣпкій.

To bloom,

Цвѣсти, цвѣсть.\*

I bloom, etc., я цвѣту, ты цвѣтѣшь,  
онъ цвѣтѣтъ.

I bloomed, я цвѣлъ, цвѣла, цвѣлю.

I shall bloom, я буду цвѣсти.

We bloom, мы цвѣтѣмъ. вы цвѣте-  
те, они цвѣтутъ.

We bloomed, мы цвѣли.

We shall bloom, мы будемъ цвѣсти.

What flowers bloom in your garden ?

Какіе цвѣты цвѣтутъ въ вашемъ  
садѣ ?

Various flowers bloom in our garden.

Разные цвѣты цвѣтутъ въ нашемъ  
садѣ.

To be in flower.

Быть въ цвѣтѣ.

All the trees are in flower.

Всѣ деревья въ цвѣтѣ.

A rose, роза.

A forget-me-not, незабудка.

A violet, фиалка.

A lily, лилія.

A tulip, тюльпанъ.

A clove, гвоздика.

To carry, to take to,

{ Нести, definite.

{ Носить, indefinite.

What are you carrying ?

Что вы несете ?

I carry now the flowers.

Я несу теперь цвѣты.

Do you carry them often ?

Часто ли вы ихъ носите ?

I carry them to him twice a day.

Я пошу ихъ ему два раза въ день.

To wear clothes.

† Носить платье.

To wear out clothes.

† Износить платье.

*Defin. Imperf. Asp.**Indefin. Imperf. Asp.*

я несу, I carry ;  
ты несешь, Thou carriest ;  
онъ весѣтъ, He carries ;  
мы несѣмъ, We carry ;  
вы несете, You carry ;  
они несутъ, They carry ;

я пишу, I write ;  
ты пишешь, Thou writest ;  
онъ пишетъ, He writes ;  
мы пишемъ, We write ;  
вы пишете, You write ;  
они пишутъ, They write ;

Я вѣсъ, неслѣ, неслѣ, I carried ;	я носилъ, носила, носило.
Я буду нести, I shall carry ;	я буду носить.
Неси, несите, carry ;	носи, носите.

Obs. 10.—In the same manner are conjugated the following prepositional verbs formed from нести and носить.

To bring, принести, понести, приносить.
To carry away, унести, увосить.
To carry out, вынести, выносить.
To carry from, отнести, относить.

Obs. 11.—The prefix при with verbs of motion generally indicates ‘towards,’ and по, ‘from,’ with reference to the place of the speaker.

I came hither.	Я пришёлъ сюда.
I went thither,	Я пошёлъ туда.
I brought,	Я привёсъ.
I took to,	Я понёсъ.

## EXERCISE LXII.

Have your sons a kind master (teacher)?—The master of my sons is very kind, but he is not strict enough, and therefore my sons are inattentive and lazy.—What animals are useful to man?—All domestic animals are useful to man.—Do you want to buy that house with the garden?—No, I do not, because although the house is fine and lofty, yet (но) the rooms in it are small and low.—Is the garden large?—No, the garden also is not large.—Is it far from here to uncle’s fields?—No, it is near to them from here.—Do you want to ride to the village of the countess B.?—No, I do not want to ride, because it is too far from here to the countess’s village.—How are these wines?—These wines have a very good flavour (вкусный) but they are also very expensive.—Is the princess happy? She is very happy ; her husband is kind and amiable, and



her children are charming and obedient.—Is the school-mistress's friend sincere?—Yes, she is sincere, faithful and kind, and both her daughters are intelligent and amiable. Is the bread new at your old baker's?—His bread is not as new as his neighbour's, and the rye bread he has is too stale and too black.—What kind of sugar has your new merchant?—It is white and cheap, but not sweet enough. What does the teacher say?—He says that learning is bitter, but its fruits are sweet.—Are your rooms warm? One is warm and the other cold, but the air in both is fresh and pure.—Is your brother still ill?—No, he is well, but my sister is very ill.—Does this little girl want to work, to read and to write?—No, she wants only to run, to jump and to dance.—What sort of oats have these peasants? Their oats are large (крупный) and cheap, but their hay is bad and not fresh.—Is your new clerk experienced?—Yes, he is experienced and diligent, but he is very poor.—Whose horse is weak and lazy?—Ours.—Is the winter in Italy warm?—Yes, but this year the winter there was very cold.—Are men immortal?—No, all men are mortal.

#### EXERCISE LXIII.

Is this painter clever?—He is very clever and very modest.—Is your coffee sweet?—No, it is bitter.—Is the water in that pot warm?—No, the water of which you speak is not warm; it is still cold.—How is the edge of your penknife?—It is sharp, but the edge of my other knife is blunt.—Is the knife sharp?—Not very.—What sort of a master is your new one?—He is kind and liberal, but my new mistress is wicked and mean.—Art thou faithful to thy new masters?—Yes, but they are too severe and

too exacting.—Are your scissors sharp?—They are blunt, but the tailoress's scissors are sharp.—What is the gardener carrying?—He is carrying the rake and the pitchfork. Where does he carry them to?—He is carrying them into the garden.—Are not your candlesticks new?—No, they are already old.—Are they of silver or of pewter?—They are of English pewter.—Give me a sharp fork, this one is too blunt.—I have no sharp forks, all my forks are blunt. Do you know this gentleman?—Yes, I know him; he is very insolent and sly, and therefore no one likes him. What did you want to say?—I wanted to say, that I shall not be able to give you any flowers.—Are the flowers in your garden blooming already?—No, not yet, but they will be blooming soon.—What colours do you prefer?—I prefer the blue and green colours to all others.—Have you many flowers in your garden?—No, not many, we have only roses, forget-me-nots, violets, lilies, cloves and a few other flowers.—Which trees in Northern Russia are green even in winter?—Firs and pines only are green in winter. Where does the cook take the firewood to?—He takes it to the kitchen.—Does he take it often thither?—He carries it only when his master orders him.—Waiter, bring me a glass of wine.—Yes, sir.—Can you go (in a vehicle) with us to-day to the play?—No, I cannot go with you, I have to be at home to-day.

---

## THIRTY-SECOND LESSON.—Тридцать второй Урокъ.

## OF THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

## О неопредѣленномъ наклонѣнїи.

In order to conjugate Russian verbs it is essential to know beforehand their two fundamental forms, viz. the infinitive and the third person plural of the present indicative; and in verbs wanting the present tense, the third person plural of the future.

There are in Russian two conjugations only, which embrace all the regular verbs, with all their so-called aspects (видѣ). These conjugations are distinguished by the inflexions of the second person singular and the third person plural of the present.

a. The first conjugation comprises the verbs having the second person singular ending in *ешь* and the third person plural in *утъ* or *ютъ*, as :

Идѣшь, thou goest ; идутъ, they go.

Читаешь, thou readest ; читаютъ, they read.

b. The second conjugation comprises the verbs having the second person singular in *ишь* and third person plural in *атъ* or *ятъ*, as :

Лежишь, thou liest down ; лежатъ, they lie down.

Говоришь, thou speakest ; говорятъ, they speak.

All regular verbs, according to the termination of the infinitive, and the inflexion of its first person singular of the present indicative, are subdivided into ten classes ; of which the first eight belong to the first, and the two last (the ninth and tenth) to the second conjugation.

CLASS 1 has the infinitive in *тъ*, and the first person in *ю*, preceded by a vowel, which is preserved in conjugation.

*Дѣла-тъ*, to do ; *дѣла-ю*, I do.

*Мѣня-тъ*, to change ; *мѣня-ю*, I change.

*Имѣ-тъ*, to have ; *имѣ-ю*, I have.

*Гни-тъ*, to rot ; *гни-ю* I rot.

*Ду-тъ*, to blow ; *ду-ю*, I blow.

CLASS 2 has the infinitive in *ать* preceded by a consonant, and in *ать* after a vowel, having the first person in *ю*, as :

*Ора-ть*, to plough ; *ору*, I plough.

*Сѣ-ть*, to sow ; *сею*, I sow.

To shake,

To slumber, to doze,

To drip,

*Колебѣ-ть*.

*Дремѣ-ть*.

*Капѣ-ть*.

} I. 2.

I shake, etc., я колеблю, ты колеблешь, онъ колеблеть.

I shook, я колебалъ.

I will shake, я буду колебѣть.

We shake, etc., мы колеблемъ, вы колеблете, онѣ колеблѣютъ.

We shook, мы колебали.

We will shake, мы будемъ колебѣть.

OBS. 1.—Verbs of the second class in *ать*, preceded by *б*, *п*, or *м*, take in the first person an *л* before *ю*.

It drips, каплетъ.

It dripped, капало.

It rains, дождь падѣтъ.

It was raining, шёлъ дождь.

Rain, дождь.

Hail, градъ.

Thunder, громъ.

Thunderstorm, гроза.

It lightens (the lightning flashes),

We shall have rain.

It has left off raining.

It drizzles, вранлетъ.

It drizzled, вранало.

It snows, снѣгъ падѣтъ.

It was snowing, шёлъ снѣгъ.

Snow, снѣгъ.

It hails, градъ падѣтъ.

It thunders, громъ гремитъ.

Lightning, молнія.

Молнія сверкаетъ.

Будетъ дождь.

Дождь прошёлъ.

To swallow,

To gnaw,

*Глотѣ-ть*. I. 1.

*Глодѣ-ть*. I. 2.

I gnaw, я гложу, ты глѣжешь, онъ глѣжетъ.

I gnawed, я глодалъ.

We gnaw, мы гложемъ, вы глѣжете, онѣ глѣжутъ.

We gnawed, мы глодали.

Obs. 2.—The consonants *д, т, з, с, г, к, х*, in verbs of the second class, change into *ж, ч*, or *ш*.

To wave, to brandish,	Мах <sup>а</sup> тъ.	} I. 2.
To breathe,	Дыш <sup>а</sup> тъ.	
To cut,	Рѣз <sup>а</sup> тъ.	
To write,	Пис <sup>а</sup> тъ.	

I breathe, я дыш<sup>у</sup>, etc.

I breathed, я дыш<sup>а</sup>лъ.

I shall breathe, я буду дыш<sup>а</sup>тъ.

Breathe, дыши, дышите.

I wave, я маш<sup>у</sup>, etc.

I waved, я мах<sup>а</sup>лъ.

I will wave, я буду мах<sup>а</sup>тъ.

Wave, маши, машите.

Both,

{ Какъ—такъ и.

{ И—и.

And,

И.

Both (the one and the other), И тотъ, и другой.

Obs. 3.—Two or more subjects in the singular, connected by either of the above copulative conjunctions, require the verb or the attribute in the plural.

John and Nicholas are ill.

The Apostles Peter and Paul.

Both Mary and Laura are my pupils.

Иванъ и Николай больны.

Апостолы Пётръ и Павелъ.

Какъ Марія такъ и Лаура мои ученицы.

Both Moscow and London are cities.

Both are immortal.

Either one or the other will be at our house.

Neither one nor the other will be here.

И Москва и Лондонъ города.

И тотъ и другой безсмертны.

† Либо тотъ, либо другой будетъ у насъ.

† И тотъ, ни другой не будетъ въздсь.

Obs. 4.—The predicate is put in the singular when two or more subjects in the singular, and of the same gender, are connected by a conjunction, denoting an exclusive

action attributed either to one of the two subjects, or to each alternatively. The following conjunctions are of this class:

Either,—or,	Лѣбо,—лѣбо.
Neither,—nor,	Ни,—ни.
Not only,—but,	Не тольکو,—но и.
First one,—then,	То,—то.

Either one or the other will be recompensed.	Лѣбо тотъ, лѣбо другой будетъ награжденъ.
Neither cold nor heat acts upon him.	Ни холодъ, ни жаръ не дѣйствуетъ на него.
Not only you, but I also was not there.	Не тольکو вы, но и я не былъ тамъ.
First one and then another was asking about you.	То одинъ, то другой спрашивалъ о васъ.

OBS. 5.—When, however, the subjects connected by alternative conjunctions are of different gender, and have for their predicate an adjective or a verb in the past tense, the predicate is put in the plural.

Heat or cold is injurious.	Жаръ или стужа вредны.
Neither he nor she was there.	Ни онъ, ни она не были тамъ.
Either the brother or the sister will be recompensed.	Лѣбо братъ, лѣбо сестра будутъ награждены.

OBS. 6.—An adjective referring to two nouns of different gender agrees in gender with the masculine, and is put in the plural.

The kind king and queen.	Добрые король и королева.
The industrious father and mother are poor.	Трудолюбивые отецъ и мать бѣдны.

OBS. 7.—A common noun, referring to two or more proper names, or to adjectives, must be in the plural.

The rivers Dnieper and Volga are navigable.	Рѣки Днѣпръ и Волга судоходны.
---	--------------------------------

Nicholas and Andrew are brothers.  
The Black and Caspian Seas abound  
in fish.

Recompensed, награждённый.  
Conscience, совесть, f.  
A table-napkin, салфетка.  
A table-cloth, скатерть.

Николай и Андрей братья.  
Моря Чёрное и Каспійское изоби-  
луютъ рыбой.

To act, дѣйствовать.  
Sealing-wax, сургучъ.  
A wafer, облатка.  
To seal, печатать.

Out,

How is it out of doors?  
It is very dark out.  
A heavy storm.

† На дворѣ.

Каковъ на дворѣ?  
На дворѣ очень темно.  
Сильная гроза.

#### EXERCISE LXIV.

Does your brother or sister know where our school-mistress is now?—No, neither my brother nor my sister knows where she is now.—Are the plate and the dish clean?—No, neither the plate nor the dish is clean.—Is this good?—Neither this nor that is good.—Who told her that the kind father and mother are ill?—Either Nicholas or his brother said so.—Is there not some one ill in this house?—Either the father or the son is ill.—Are the brother and sister well?—Neither the brother nor the sister is well.—Had you many brothers?—I had (было) two brothers and one sister.—Is the city of Moscow pretty?—Yes, the city of Moscow is large and fine. Has your niece been in the fine city of Moscow?—No, but she was in the city of Athens.—Where are this monk and that clergyman going?—They are going into the temple.—What are you cutting?—I am cutting bread. What are this tailor and that bootmaker cutting?—The tailor is cutting red and blue cloth, and the bootmaker is cutting yellow and black leather.—Will they both be

recompensed?—Either he or his son will be recompensed. Will the brother or sister be recompensed also?—Neither the brother nor the sister will be recompensed.—Is Athens now rich?—I can say that the ancient (древній) city of Athens was great and rich, but modern (новый) Athens is small and poor.—Does he or his brother see on that little table the new works of the celebrated authoress?—Neither he nor his brother see on that little table any books.—Where have the boy and the little girl been with their poor sick little dog?—They were in their parents' warm little room. Who wanted to give you a new linen napkin?—The faithful servant of my good friend Alexander, son of Peter. Who has been reading this book?—The master and his lady pupil were reading it.—Did your servant bring a tumbler and a wine-glass?—Yes, she did, but neither were clean.—Who is there dozing in the uncle's easy-chair? The old nurse is dozing.—Could she come to you yesterday?—She could, but she would not.—Do you see the table and all that is on it?—I see the table, but I see nothing on it.

#### EXERCISE LXV.

Was it raining or snowing yesterday?—No, there was no rain or snow yesterday, but the day before yesterday and on Wednesday last week the weather was very bad. Has it left off raining?—No, it has not yet left off raining, and therefore we cannot go for a walk.—Does the countess like to ride on horseback?—Yes, she does very much. Who likes to read and to write?—The diligent lady pupil. Does she write well already?—No, she does not write well yet.—Had this servant something new?—She had a new dress and a handkerchief, which her kind mistress gave



(похвѣсть) her.—Has our old laundress brought the linen already?—No, she will bring it to-morrow.—Who carried away from here the table-cloth, which the servant brought? No one carried it away, it is here on the table.—Where is that dragoon galloping to?—He is not galloping, but is going at a trot.—Where did the maid-servant carry away my yellow dress to?—She has taken it to the bed-room. Happy is one whose conscience is pure.—Who took my steel pens?—Either the master or his pupil took them. Has the servant brought the new tumblers and wine-glasses already?—Not yet, but there he is coming himself, and is carrying not only the new tumblers and wine-glasses, but also a table-cloth and a few knives, forks, spoons and table-napkins.—To whom are you writing this letter?—I am writing to my daughter.—Do you not want some wafers?—No, I do not want any wafers, I always seal my letters with red or black sealing-wax; but light this wax candle, if you please, for me.—There it is, I have lit it.—I thank you then very much, I want nothing more.—Where did the maid-servant go?—She went into the garden for the children, because it is already time for them to take tea.—Go to the garden and bring (привести) the children here, because it thunders and lightens.—But they are not afraid of thunder or lightning.—I know that, but the governess says that in such weather they should be in the room and not out.—Is the storm outside heavy? The storm is not very heavy.—Is the sky clear?—No, there are still thick clouds passing (ходить), so that I think we shall have a thunderstorm.

---

# THIRTY-THIRD LESSON.

Тридцать трѣтій Урокъ.

*Of the Infinitive (continued).*

CLASS 3 has the infinitive in *отъ*, preceded by *о*, *оп*, first person in *ю* :

Колѣть, to prick ; колѣю, I prick.

OBS. 1.—There are but five verbs with this ending.

CLASS 4 has the infinitive in *вать*, preceded by *е*, *о*, first person in *ю*, before which *е* is changed into *ю* (*же*, *че*, *ше* are changed into *жу*, *чу*, *шу*), and *о* into *у*.

Горе-вать, to grieve ; гор-ю-ю, I grieve.

Же-вать, to chew ; ж-у-ю, I chew.

Совето-вать, to advise ; совет-у-ю, I advise.

I was writing, я писалъ.

I was ploughing, я пахалъ.

I was drinking, я пилъ.

I was working, я работалъ.

I led, я вёлъ.

I did, я дѣлалъ.

I grieved, я горевалъ.

I advised, я советовалъ.

I read, я читалъ.

I rode, я ѣхалъ.

OBS. 2.—Russian verbs have one past tense only; thus, "I was working," "I did work," "I worked," etc., are rendered Я работалъ.

Where have you been ?

I was at Calais.

Гдѣ вы были ?

Я былъ въ Калѣ.

OBS. 3.—Foreign nouns ending in *о*, *е*, *у*, *и* are indeclinable.

The weather.

How is the weather ?

It is fine weather.

It is bad weather.

Погода.

Каковѣ погода ?

Прекрасная погода.

Дурная погода.

Obs. 4.—‘It is,’ being the present tense of the impersonal verb *есть*, is not translated:

It is cold.	Холодно.
It is warm.	Тепло.

Obs. 5.—‘It is,’ *есть*, when referring to an indefinite adjective, is not translated, and the adjective is put in the neuter.

These indefinite adjectives in the neuter, used with the impersonal verb *есть*, ‘it is,’ form compound impersonal verbs, which govern the dative:

I am cold.	Мнѣ (есть) холодно.
I was cold.	Мнѣ было холодно.
I shall be cold.	Мнѣ будетъ холодно.
Who will be pleased?	Кому́ будетъ приятно?
He will be pleased.	Ему́ будетъ приятно.
It will be cold.	Будетъ холодно.
Were you warm?	Было ли вамъ тепло?
I was very hot.	Было очень жарко.
Who feels very hot?	Кому́ очень жарко?

#### Out (of doors),

How is it out of doors?  
It is very damp out.  
It is foggy.  
It is dry.

Dull, пасмурный.  
Dry, сухой.  
Hot, жаркий.  
The weather, погода.

#### На дворѣ.

Каково на дворѣ?  
На дворѣ сыро.  
Туманно.  
Сухо.

Damp, wet, сырой.  
Clear, bright, ясный.  
Dark, темный.  
Bad weather, непогода.

Obs. 6.—When the subject consists of a proper and common noun the predicate agrees in gender with the latter:

The city of Riga is rich.	Городъ Рѣга богатъ.
The river Dnieper is deep.	Рѣка Днѣпръ глубока.

OBS. 7.—Two or more adjectives in the singular, when used in the genitive, dative, instrumental, or prepositional cases, require the noun to which they refer to be put in the plural:

I do not like white and black (colours).	Я не люблю чёрнаго и бѣлаго цвѣтовъ.
In the high and low houses the rooms are small.	Въ высокомъ и низкомъ домахъ комнаты малыя.

OBS. 8.—In the nominative case, however, after a few adjectives in the singular, the substantive is put in the singular and not in the plural.

The red and white houses are high.	Красный и бѣлый домъ высокъ.
White and black colours are opposites.	Бѣлый и чёрный цвѣтъ противоположны.
The first and second hours are spent.	Первый и второй часъ проведенъ.

### To feel,

### Чувствовать, I. 4.

I feel, я чувствую.	We feel, мы чувствуемъ.
Thou feelest, ты чувствуешь.	You feel, вы чувствуете.
He feels, онъ чувствуетъ.	They feel, они чувствуютъ.
I felt, я чувствовалъ, а, о.	We felt, мы чувствовали.
I shall feel, я буду чувствовать.	We shall feel, мы будемъ чувствовать.

Feel, чувствуй; plural, чувствуйте.

How do you feel?

† Какъ вы себя чувствуете?

Less, fewer,

Мѣнѣе.

Less, fewer—than,

Мѣнѣе—нѣжели.

He has fewer horses than I.

У него мѣнѣе лошадей нѣжели у меня.

He has less cloth than you.

У него мѣнѣе сукна нѣжели у васъ.

OBS. 9.—‘Less’ and ‘fewer’ are rendered by мѣнѣе, which governs the genitive.

Much,	Горáздо.
Much better.	Горáздо лúче.
Much worse.	Горáздо хúже.
Much stronger.	Горáздо сильнѣе.
Much weaker.	Горáздо слабѣе.

Obs. 10.—‘Much,’ before a comparative, is translated горáздо.

Do you drink wine ?	† Рáзвѣ вы пьёте вино ?
Does he not speak ?	† Рáзвѣ онъ не говоритъ ?
Was then the house his ?	† Рáзвѣ домъ былъ его ?
Yes, it was his.	Да, ёто былъ его домъ.

Obs. 11.—English interrogative sentences expressing doubt, or in which ‘do’ is used with a certain emphasis, are rendered by рáзвѣ.

To draw,	Рисовáть.
To fret,	Тосковáть.
To fret after,	Тосковáть по (with the prepositional).

To draw a picture.	Нарисовáть картинý.
To draw a picture (likeness).	Нарисовáть портрётъ.
He drew a picture.	Онъ нарисовалъ картинý.
He was drawing.	Онъ рисовáлъ.

It hails, Градъ идётъ.

It freezes, Морóзить (impersonal verb).

To-day the weather is fine, but the day before yesterday we had rain. Сегодня прекрасная погóда, но третьяго дня шёлъ дождь.

It was damp yesterday, but to-morrow it will be dry. Вчера было сыро, но зáвтра бóдетъ сýхо.

It rains fast. Идётъ сильный дождь.

We shall have rain. Бóдетъ дождь.

The thunderstorm has ceased. Грозá прошлá.

Storm, буря. Frost, морóзъ.

Sleet, гололёдка. Nail, градъ.

Warmth, тепло. The cold, холоди.

## EXERCISE LXVI.

What are you doing there?—I am drawing.—What are you drawing?—I am drawing a little horse for my sister. Does this officer's sister dance well?—She dances excellently.—With whom did your niece dance at the countess's ball?—She did not dance with anybody, she never dances. Whom is this little girl kissing?—She kisses her kind nurse.—After whom is this unfortunate widow fretting? She is fretting after her son.—Where is her son?—He is abroad.—Who has fewer friends than we?—We have fewer friends than you.—Has the German as much of your money as of his own?—He has less of his own than of ours.—What have you seen in Riga?—I saw there many lofty houses and many broad streets, but few large gardens, and not a single park.—Have I taken your gloves, or my own?—You have taken your own, and my sister took mine.—What kind of weather had you yesterday in the village?—It was very cold there the day before yesterday, but yesterday it was warm.—Which dresses did she bring?—She brought the white and yellow dresses.—*Did not* she bring the red also?—No, she did not bring it.—How is the road?—The road is very bad.—Has their neighbour as many dogs as horses?—He has fewer of the latter than of the former. Has the merchant as many ships as we?—He has fewer ships than we, and we have less corn than he.—Is it hot out?—No, it is raining.—Were the peasants sowing barley yesterday?—No, the whole of yesterday it was snowing and hailing.—It has left off snowing now, and therefore go and tell the peasants that they may sow the corn.—How are your meadows?—They are already green.—Why did you not come to us yesterday?—I did not come to you

because the weather was too bad.—Does this Italian draw well?—Yes, but that Frenchman draws still better.—Did the German describe France well?—He described it much better than the Italian.—Which pen had you and which had he?—I had the pen you see here, and he had my sister's pen.—Does your sister write as well as you?—She writes much better than I.—Did the laundress wash your linen? What kind of wreath had the charming bride on her head? She had a wreath of real flowers.

#### EXERCISE LXVII.

Is her dress as pretty as mine?—Her dress is much prettier than yours.—How is the weather to-day out?—The weather to-day is much better than yesterday.—Is it raining?—No, it has left off raining, only it is a little dull. You are pale to-day, are you ill then?—No, I am not ill, but I do not feel quite well.—How did you feel (yourself) yesterday?—I felt much better than to-day.—Is the cold great to-day?—No, it is not cold to-day, one may even say that it is warm, but the weather is disagreeable.—Has the cook brought the boiled eggs?—Yes, she has brought them already.—Are you going on foot to the railway?—No, I do not like to go on foot, I am going in a carriage, and I have already sent my servant for one.—Did she cook to-day?—Yes, she made a soup with greens, and roasted a fat turkey, which I will eat at my dinner with some salad. How many times have you been this year to the French plays?—Only three times; only five times.—How many horses have you got?—I have a pair only, but they gallop excellently.—Who is this woman?—It is the woman who washes our linen.—Does she wash also the floors?—She

does not wash any floors, she washes linen only.—Whose is that charming child that plays at ball in the garden yonder?—It is the rich banker's little son.—Where did you bring these fruits from?—I brought them from the garden. Are they ripe?—They are riper than those which our kind aunt brought for us yesterday.

### THIRTY-FOURTH LESSON.

Тридцать четвёртый Урокъ.

*Of the Infinitive (continued).*

CLASS 5 has the infinitive in **ать** preceded by a consonant, first person in **у** :

**РВ-ать**, to tear ; **РВ-у**, I tear.

**ЖД-ать**, to wait ; **ЖД-у**, I wait.

CLASS 6 the infinitive in **ть** preceded by a vowel, first person in **у**, **му**, **ну** :

**ЖИ-ть**, to live ; **ЖИ-у́**, I live.

**Плы-ть**, to swim ; **Плы-у́**, I swim.

OBS. 1.—Of the twelve verbs belonging to this class, six only preserve the vowel in the indicative ; the other six have the vowel before **м**, **н**, either changed or left out, as :

**ЖАть**, to squeeze ; **ЖМУ**, I squeeze.

**Ять**, to take ; **ИМУ́**, I take.

CLASS 7 has the infinitive in **ть** or **ти**, first person in **у** after consonants **б**, **д**, **т**, **з**, **с**, **р**, **г**, **к** :

**Вес-ти́**, to lead ; **ве-ду́**, I lead.

**Грес-ти́**, to row ; **гре-бу́**, I row.



CLASS 8 has the infinitive in нуть, first person in ну preceded generally by a consonant:

Зѣб-нуть, to feel cold ; зѣб-ну, I feel cold.

Лѣп-нуть, to adhere ; лѣп-ну, I adhere.

To take,	Брать,	} I. 5.
To call,	Звать,	

Obs. 2.—Some monosyllabic verbs of the fifth class take the euphonic e or o :

I take, etc., я беру́, ты берёшь, онъ берётъ.

We take, etc., мы берёмъ, вы берёте, онѣ берутъ.

I call, etc., я зову́, ты зовёшь, онъ зовётъ.

We call, etc., мы зовёмъ, вы зовёте, онѣ зовутъ.

I called, я звалъ, звали́а, звалó.

We called, мы звали́.

I will call, я буду́ звать.

We will call, мы будемъ звать.

Call, зови́, зовите́.

To take,	{ Брать, imperfect aspect.
	{ Взять, perfect aspect.

I took, я брать.

We took, мы бра́ли.

I will take, я буду́ брать, etc.

We will take, мы будемъ брать, etc.

I have taken, я взя́лъ.

Take, бери́, берите́.

We have taken, мы взя́ли,

I will take, etc., я возьму́, ты возьмёшь, онъ возьмётъ.

We will take, etc., мы возьмёмъ, вы возьмёте, онѣ возьмутъ.

Take, возьми́, возьмите́.

Not long ago, lately,

The other day, lately,

He was at home not long ago.

We saw him the other day.

In summer, лѣтомъ.

In spring, весной.

In the morning, утромъ.

Давеча.

Намѣдни.

Онъ давеча былъ дома.

Мы видѣли его намѣдни.

In autumn, осенью.

In winter, зимою.

At night, ночью.

Obs. 3.—Times of the day or seasons, in answer to the question ‘when?’ ‘at what time?’ when standing alone, are put in the instrumental case; but when they are in conjunction with some determinative word they are put in the accusative, with the preposition *въ*.

It is warm in summer, but cold in autumn and winter.

This winter is extremely cold.

Last summer we had very little fruit.

Last night he came to us.

He came at night.

I am a man and she is a woman.

Лѣтомъ жарко, но осенью и зимою холодно.

Нынешняя зима чрезвычайно холодна.

Въ прошлое лѣто у насъ было очень мало плодовъ.

Въ прошлую ночь онъ пришёлъ къ намъ.

Онъ пришёлъ ночью.

† Я мужчи́на а она́ же́нщина.

Obs. 4.—A substantive predicate is put in the nominative when connected with the subject of the proposition by the present tense of the verb ‘to be,’ *быть*.

A man is a sensible being.

London and Moscow are cities.

Both the horse and the ass are domestic animals.

Both Andrew and Nicholas were uncle’s children.

Adam was the first husbandman.

Человѣкъ есть существо разумное.

Лондонъ и Москва суть города.

И лошадь и осёлъ суть домашнія животныя.

Андрей и Николай были дядины дѣти.

† Адамъ былъ первымъ земледѣльцемъ.

Obs. 5.—A substantive predicate connected with the subject by the past tense of the verb *быть*, ‘*былъ*,’ is put in the nominative when it denotes some natural state of the subject, and in the instrumental when it denotes some state dependent on some act of the subject; in the latter case the verb *былъ* becomes a predicate, and the substantive its complement.

Cain was Adam’s son.

Кайнъ былъ сынъ Адама.

Cain was the murderer of his brother Abel.

He was my brother.

He was a diligent boy, but now he is lazy.

Intolerable, нестерпимый.

Suffocating, душной.

Dusty, пыльный.

Windy, ветряный.

Witty, остроумный.

To write, написать, perf. asp.

A criminal, преступникъ.

Каннъ былъ убійцею брата своего Авеля.

Онъ былъ мой братъ.

Онъ былъ прилежнымъ мальчикомъ, а теперь лѣнливъ.

Heat, жаръ, жаръ.

Sultriness, зной.

Temperate, умеренный.

Overwhelmed, сокрушённый.

Still, calm, тихій.

To finish ploughing, всахать.

An evil-doer, злодѣй.

Rough sea, бурное море.

Pleased, glad,

Радъ, а, о, (gov. the dat.).

Obs. 6.—The adjective радъ has the apocopated form only.

Who is glad to see you?

I am glad.

Is she glad?

He is glad you came.

I am glad of it.

Good morning.

I wish you good health.

Кто радъ видѣть васъ?

Я радъ.

Рѣда ли она?

Онъ радъ что вы пришли.

Я этому радъ.

Здравствуйте.

† Добраго здоровья (желаю вамъ).

Obs. 7.—Желаю вамъ, 'I wish you,' is usually omitted.

Other (the rest),

Прочій.

Peter and John had some tobacco, but all the others had none.

Only this river is navigable, all others are not.

Summer, *adjective*, лѣтний.

Winter, *adjective*, зимній.

The learning, study, ученье.

Abraham, Авраамъ.

Abel, Авель.

У Петра и у Сергія былъ табакъ, но у всѣхъ прочихъ не было.

Только эта рѣка судоходна, всѣ прочія не судоходны.

Spring, *adjective*, весенній.

Autumn, *adjective*, осенній.

Morning, *adjective*, утренній.

Adam, Адамъ.

Eve, Ева.

Et cætera, и прочее.

## EXERCISE LXVIII.

Who were the first people?—Adam and Eve were the first people.—Has your friend always been a master?—No, he was formerly a military man.—Who was the murderer of Abel?—His brother Cain.—Were you at the grand duchess's ball?—Yes, but only a few guests danced at that ball, all the others played at cards.—Was your school-mistress with you at the theatre?—She was not there, but her husband was there with me; he felt cold, but I felt warm.—Did you go to the village on horseback or in a carriage?—The road was very dusty, and therefore I went on horseback, and not in a carriage.—We had a fine, light coach and four excellent horses.—How was the road in spring?—Extremely muddy.—And the weather?—It was frightfully cold, and our fur-coats were not warm enough. How is the climate in Russia?—It is very hot and dusty there in summer, in winter very cold and dry, in spring it is temperate, but muddy, and in autumn, although not cold, yet very damp.—With whom are you going home in the evening?—With Captain Petrof.—How many sisters had your neighbour, the tailoress?—She had five sisters. Had not she three little girls and two boys?—No, all her children were girls.—Are the horse and the ass useful animals? Both the horse and the ass are useful animals.—How is the country in which you passed all last summer?—It is a charming one.—You see there large forests, with old high pines, fertile fields, luxuriant green meadows; you see there healthy people only, men and women, old men and children, and not a single pale or unhealthy face.—Did the young Frenchmen that were with you on the steamer eat much?—They ate little, but they drank much.—Did the

pretty Frenchwomen drink much also?—They did not eat, did not drink, and did not talk with anybody.—Was the sea calm?—During the day it was calm, but in the evening, at night, and early in the morning it was very stormy. How are the summer days in Siberia?—The summer days in that country are tolerably warm, but the long winter nights are very cold.

#### EXERCISE LXIX.

Who is calling you?—The gardener is calling me.—Did the gardener's wife call you also?—No, she did not call me.—Do you take your son with you to the theatre?—No, I never take him with me, because he is still too young. Whom are they calling?—They call nobody.—What are you taking there?—I take the book which you have ordered me to take.—Call your brother and tell him that it is time to dine, and that all in the dining-room are already dining.—I called him twice, but he says that he cannot come, because he has to learn his lessons.—Have you seen in the prison the obstinate criminal, who has fetters on his hands and feet?—I saw him, but he is not obstinate now, but overwhelmed with grief and misfortune; he is now no longer an evildoer, but an unfortunate man. Why do you tear this velvet?—I do not tear it, but cut it.—Where do you live in winter?—We live in winter and autumn in town, and in summer and spring in the village. Do you feel cold in winter?—I feel cold when out, but I do not feel cold in the room.—Have you taken a cigar already?—No, I have not yet, but I will take one.—When was your brother at the banker's?—He was at the banker's the other day.—Is it windy out of doors?—The weather is fine to-day, but it was very windy yesterday.—To whom

were you speaking this morning?—I spoke to a friend of mine, an Englishman; but do you not know him?—No, I have not the honour.—Have you written the letter? No, I have not written it yet, but I will write it.—When will you write it?—To-morrow morning or after dinner, when I shall have time for it.—Are your peasants ploughing already?—They have already finished ploughing and are now sowing wheat, oats and barley.—Good morning, my dear Basil, son of Peter, I am very glad to see you and (all) yours in good health.—Where are you leading your little daughter?—I am leading her to the school.—Do you take her there often?—I take her there every day.—Did not the seamstress lose something?—Yes, she lost a little needle.—Is your sister pleased that we take her with us this evening to the theatre?—Yes, she is very pleased.

### THIRTY-FIFTH LESSON.—Тридцать пятый Урокъ.

#### *Of the Infinitive (continued).*

#### SECOND CONJUGATION.

CLASS 9 has the infinitive in *ѣть*, preceded by the radical consonants б, п, м, н, л, р, д, т, с; the first person is like that of the second class, *i.e.* ю, (жу, чу, шу, шу).

СКОРБѣТЬ, to sorrow; скорб-л-ю, I sorrow.

ВелѣТЬ, to order; вел-ю, I order.

СидѣТЬ, to sit; сид-ж-у, I sit.

OBS. 1.—The euphonic л is inserted after б, м, п, and д, т, с are changed into their corresponding consonants ж, ч, ш in the first person *only*.

ТерпѣТЬ, to endure; терп-лю, терпишь, etc.

ВидѣТЬ, to see; вид-жу, видишь, etc.

To this class must be added :

a. Verbs in ятъ, preceded by a radical vowel, as :

Сто-а́тъ, to stand ; сто-ю́, I stand.

b. And those verbs in атъ, preceded by ж, ч, ш, in which ѣ before these consonants is changed into а for euphony, as :

Лежа́тъ, to lie down ; лежѹ́, I lie down.

CLASS 10 has the infinitive in нтъ, first person in ю, (жу, чу, шу, шу).

Стро́-нтъ, to build ; стрó-ю, I build.

Цѣн-и́тъ, to value ; цѣн-ю́, I value.

Люб-и́тъ, to love ; люб-л-ю́, I love.

Ход-и́тъ, to walk ; хо-жѹ́, I walk.

OBS. 2.—The insertion of an л after б, п, м, as also the change of consonants for euphony, is made in the first person only.

NOTE.—Verbs of the first eight classes belonging to the first conjugation have the second person singular of the present indicative in ешь; and the last two classes belonging to the second conjugation, have the second person of the present indicative in ишь.

To endure, to bear,  
To be hanging,  
To make a noise, to bluster,

Терпѣ́тъ.	} II. 9.
Висѣ́тъ.	
Шумѣ́тъ.	

I endure, etc., я терплю́, ты терпи́шь, онъ терпи́тъ.

We endure, etc., мы терпимъ, вы терпите, они терпятъ.

I endured, я терпѣ́лъ.

Endure, терпи́, терпи́те.

I am hanging, etc., я виси́ю, ты виси́шь, онъ виси́тъ.

We are hanging, etc., мы виси́мъ, вы виси́те, они виси́тъ.

I was hanging, я висѣ́лъ.

Be hanging, виси́, виси́те,

To fly,                      Летѣть, definite II. 9.  
To fly,                      Летать, indefinite I. 1.

*Defin. Imp. Asp.*                      *Indefin. Imp. Asp.*

Летѣть, to fly ;	летать.
Я летѣю, I fly ;	я летаю.
Ты летѣшь, thou flyest ;	ты летаешь.
Онъ летѣтъ, he flies ;	онъ летаетъ.
Мы летѣмъ, we fly ;	мы летаемъ.
Вы летѣте, you fly ;	вы летаете.
Онѣ летѣтъ, they fly ;	онѣ летаютъ.
Я летѣлъ, I was flying ;	я леталъ.
Летѣи, летѣйте, fly ;	летай, летайте.

To hear,                      Слышать, II. 9.  
To listen to,                      Слушать, I. 1.  
To obey,                      Слушаться, I. 1.

Obs. 3.—Слушать governs the accusative, and слушаться, the genitive.

Do you hear the singing of the nightingale ?	Слышите ли вы пѣніе соловья ?
Yes, I do.	Да, слышу.
Whom are you listening to ?	Кого вы слушаете ?
I am listening to the master.	Я слушаю учителя.
She is listening, but does not hear.	Она слушаетъ, но не слышитъ.
Do you obey your master ?	Слушаетесь ли вы своего учителя ?
Yes, I do obey him.	Да, я его всегда слушаюсь.

Or (otherwise), or (if not),	А то, не то.
Do not make a noise, or you will wake the sick mother.	Не шумите, а то разбудите больную мать.
Give this beggar some money, or he will die of hunger.	Дайте этому нищему денегъ, не то онъ умрётъ съ голоду.

#### DEGREES OF COMPARISON.

#### Степени Сравненія.

The adjective in Russian, as in English, possesses three



degrees of comparison, the positive, the comparative and the superlative.

Adjectives denoting quality or quantity, as also adverbs derived from adjectives, form the comparative by a change in the termination of the positive, as :

Добрый, kind ; добрыйшій, добрѣе, kinder.

Сильный, strong ; сильнѣйшій, сильнѣе, stronger.

There are two different forms of the comparative : one declinable, ending in *ѣйшій*, *аіішій*, *шій*, formed of adjectives with full termination, and another indeclinable, ending in *ѣе*, *е*, formed of apocopated adjectives.

Добрѣйшая жѣнщина. Kinder woman.

Добрѣйшіе люди. Kinder people.

Obs. 4.—The declinable comparatives have all the genders and both numbers, and are generally placed before a noun, while the indeclinable ones, like the apocopated adjectives they are derived from, are invariable, and are put after a noun, as :

Человѣкъ добрѣе, The man is kinder.

Жена добрѣе, The wife is kinder.

Люди добрѣе, People are kinder.

The termination *ѣйшій*, is placed before the radical consonants *в*, *б*, *п*, *м*, *н*, *л*, *р*, *д*, *т*, as :

Дешёвый, cheap ; дешёвѣйшій, cheaper.

Слабый, weak ; слабѣйшій, weaker.

Exceptions: Молодой, young ; младшій, younger.

Худой, bad ; худшій, worse.

Obs. 5.—Adjectives in *зый*, *сый*, *жій*, *шій*, have no declinable comparative.

Adjectives in *гій*, *кій*, *хій*, form the comparative in *жайшій*, *чайшій*, *шайшій*, as :

Строгий, severe ; строжайшій, more severe.

Крѣпкій, strong ; крѣпчаішій, stronger.

Вѣхій, old ; вѣтшаішій, older.

OBS. 6.—Most adjectives in *ий*, *кій*, *хій*, have no declinable comparative.

OBS. 7.—The following entirely alter their form in the comparative.

Бѣліій, great; бѣльшіій, greater.

Хорошіій, good; лучшіій, better.

Малыій, small; меньшіій, smaller.

OBS. 8.—The following adjectives in *ій*, preceded by a consonant, and in *окій*, form their comparatives in various ways, dropping at the same time *к*, *ок*.

Крѣткій, } short; кратчайшіій, shorter.  
Короткій, }

Близкій, near; близайшіій, nearer.

Низкій, low, vile; низайшіій, lower.

Широкій, broad; ширшіій, broader.

Высокій, high; высшіій, higher.

Глубокій, deep; глубочайшіій, deeper.

Тонкій, thin; тончайшіій, thinner.

Долгий, long; должайшіій, longer.

Далёкій, distant; дальнѣйшіій, more distant.

OBS. 9.—Adjectives wanting either of the above comparatives express the comparative by adding *болѣе*, 'more,' as:

Болѣе узкій, More narrow.

Болѣе радъ, More glad.

OBS. 10.—The declinable comparative is used instead of the superlative when *изъ всѣхъ*, 'of all,' (than any) is understood, as:

Легчайшіій (изъ всѣхъ) lighter than any, lightest.

Лучшіій (изъ всѣхъ), better than any, best.

The same result is obtained by adding the prefix *наи*, as:

Наилучшіій, The best.

Наихудшіій, The worst.

The superlative is formed by adding *самый*, 'most,' to the positive.

*Самый прекрасный,*  
*Самый лёгкий,*  
*Самый добрый,*

Most beautiful.  
Lightest.  
Kindest.

To respect, to revere,  
To peck,

*Уважа́ть, почита́ть*  
*Клевáть.*

Harmful, вредный.  
Polite, учт́ивый.  
Precious, драгоценный.  
Envy, зависть, f.  
Gambling, игра́.  
Raspberry, мали́на.  
Strawberry, клубника́.

Famous, сла́вный.  
Good tempered, благона́вный.  
Obedient, послу́шный.  
Conscience, со́весть, f.  
A favourite, любímeцъ.  
Gooseberry, крыжовни́къ.  
Currant, сморо́дина.

A blessing,  
Your obedient servant.  
Your most obedient servant.  
A bird of prey.  
Younger brother.  
Eldest son.

Бла́го.  
Вашъ покорный слуга́.  
Вашъ покорнѣйшій слуга́.  
Хищная пти́ца.  
Мла́дшій братъ.  
Ста́ршій сынъ.

### EXERCISE LXX.

What are these stone-masons building?—They are building a house for the richest and most liberal merchant in the town.—Has he a good garden?—His garden is the finest in the town.—Which is the prettiest animal? The horse is the prettiest and most useful of our domestic animals.—Where is your friend?—She is sitting on the bench in the garden.—What are you sitting upon?—I am sitting on a chair and the little dog is lying at my feet.—Which is the most harmful passion? Gambling is the most harmful passion, and envy is the vilest.—Where are you going?—I am going to the cleverest and most experienced doctor in the town, because

health is man's most precious treasure.—Yes, my friend, health and a tranquil conscience are the greatest blessings. Do you see that youth, whom all his friends respect? Yes; he is the politest and most diligent of all the pupils. The hare is the most timid animal.—What is that hanging on the nail?—A beautiful picture is hanging on the nail.—Which is the pleasantest season of the year?—Spring is the pleasantest, and summer is the warmest season.—The eagle is the largest and strongest of all birds of prey.—The highest mountains are in Switzerland, and the largest rivers in America.—Can all birds fly?—Most birds fly, but there are birds which cannot fly.—Can the ostrich fly?—No, the ostrich is a bird which cannot fly, but only walk.—Whither are these pigeons flying?—They are flying to their nests. Who is our best friend?—A good book is our best, truest and most sincere friend, and also our pleasantest companion. Do you hear what they say?—I am listening, but I do not hear, because I am sitting too far from them.—The most faithful friend is not as true as the Bible, and the cleverest companions are not as witty and wise as the fables of the famous fabulist Æsop.—The Volga is the largest river in Russia.—The longest day and the shortest night is on the twenty-first of June; the shortest day and the longest night is on the twenty-first of December.

#### EXERCISE LXXI.

Will all the lady pupils go with us to the theatre to-day? No, we take with us the most diligent only.—What does this woman trade in?—She trades in fruit.—What fruit has she?—She has most excellent raspberries, large (крупные) plums, pears, apples, and fresh gooseberries.—Is it

true that the elephant is the most sagacious animal?—Yes, it is true.—Did you bring some gold?—I only brought some silver.—I advise you to bring some gold, or it will be impossible to buy that expensive horse.—Did the cook buy some fruit and some wine?—He bought some of the best wine, and some most excellent fruit.—Are you standing or sitting?—I am sitting, and not standing.—Are they sitting also?—No, they are not sitting, but standing.—The cleverest people are not always the richest or happiest, and the richest people are not always the most liberal.—Where did you spend the last spring and winter?—We spent the most agreeable season in Italy, and the coldest in Egypt. To whom did you give those French books?—I gave them to your eldest brother.—Did you also give something to my youngest brother?—No, I gave nothing to your youngest brother.—What does he advise you (to do)?—He advises me to take lessons.—Have your brothers many sparrows? They have pigeons only, they have no sparrows.—Who pecks the cherries in the garden?—The sparrows peck them, and I advise you to send the gardener there, or you will not have any cherries at all.—Of what do boys build their little houses?—They build them of cards.—Whom do you now rely upon?—I do not rely now upon any body, but formerly I relied upon my friends.—What does the merchant advise his clerk to do?—He does not advise him, he orders (him). What does he order him to do?—He orders him to take the money to the richest banker in the town.—Did he take it to him?—Yes he has taken it already.—What does the nurse advise the children to do?—She advises them not to eat unripe fruit.—Do your children obey their nurse? They always obey her; my children are very obedient.

## THIRTY-SIXTH LESSON.—Тридцать шестой Урокъ.

## FORMATION OF THE INDECLINABLE COMPARATIVES.

He is stronger.	Онъ сильнѣе.
The father is kinder.	Отецъ добрѣе.
The sister is richer.	Сестра богаче.
The wine is cheaper.	Вино дешевле.
The houses are higher.	Дома выше.

The indeclinable or apocopated comparative is formed from the positive by changing the terminations of the latter into *ѣе* or *е*, as :

Слабый, weak ; слабѣе, weaker.
Твёрдый, hard ; твёрже, harder.
Умный, clever ; умнѣе, cleverer.
Частый, frequent ; чаще, more frequent.

Adjectives having the declinable comparative in *ѣйшій*, take *ѣе*, as :

<i>Declinable.</i>	<i>Indeclinable.</i>
Добрѣйшій, kinder ;	добрѣе.
Слабѣйшій, weaker ;	слабѣе.
Сильнѣйшій, stronger ;	сильнѣе, etc.

Obs. 1.—The following are exceptions to the above rule :

<i>Declinable.</i>	<i>Indeclinable.</i>
Дешевѣйшій, cheaper ;	дешевле.
Твердѣйшій, harder ;	твёрже.
Богатѣйшій, richer ;	богаче.
Густѣйшій, thicker ;	гуще.
Крутѣйшій, steeper ;	круче.

Adjectives in *зый*, *сый*, *жій* and *чій*, have the indeclinable comparative only :

Лысый, bald ; лысѣе, balder.
Свѣжій, fresh ; свѣжѣе, fresher.
Сѣзый, (dark) blue ; сѣзѣе, bluer.
Горячій, warm ; горячѣе, warmer.

Adjectives in *rii*, *kiï*, *xiï* form their indeclinable comparative in *e*, changing at the same time *г, к, х* into *ж, ч, ш*.

*Крѣпкій*, strong ; comparative *крѣпче*.

*Строгий*, severe ; comparative *строже*.

*Вѣтхій*, old ; comparative *вѣще*.

Obs. 2.—The following in *kiï* take *чѣ* instead of *че* ; some take both *ѣ* and *e*, as :

*Дикій*, wild ; comparative *дикѣ*.

*Бойкій*, bold ; comparative *бойчѣ*.

*Жалкій*, miserable ; comparative *жалчѣ* and *жалче*.

*Звонкій*, sonorous ; comparative *звончѣ* and *звонче*.

*Ловкій*, clever ; comparative *ловчѣ* and *ловче*.

The following form their indeclinable comparative in various ways :

*Короткій*, short ; comparative *короче*.

*Крѣпкій*, kind ; . . . *крѣче*.

*Близкій*, near ; . . . *ближе*.

*Низкій*, low ; . . . *ниже*.

*Узкій*, narrow ; . . . *уже*.

*Широкий*, broad ; . . . *шире*.

*Высокій*, high ; . . . *выше*.

*Глубокий*, deep ; . . . *глубже*.

*Слабкій*, slack ; . . . *слабже*.

*Тонкій*, thin ; . . . *тоньше*.

*Долгий*, long ; . . . *дольше*.

*Далёкій*, distant ; . . . *дальше*.

Obs. 3.—*Горькій*, 'bitter,' according to its meaning, has a double comparative in each form : *горчайшій* or *горпшій* and *горче* or *горше*.

Wormwood is more bitter than mustard. *Полюнь горче горчицы.*

The poor man's life was still sadder than before. *Жизнь бѣдняка была ещё горьше чѣмъ прежде.*

In the following *д* is changed into *ж*, and *ст* into *ш* :

*Молодой*, young ; comparative *молodge*.

*Худой*, bad ; comparative *хуже*.

Толстый, thick ; comparative толще.  
 Простой, simple ; comparative проще.

Obs. 4.—The following indeclinable comparatives in *e* are formed from the declinable comparatives, and not from the positive degree.

Великій, great ; comparative	{ declinable большій. indeclinable больше.
Малый, small ; comparative	{ declinable меньшій. indeclinable меньше.
Хорошій, good ; comparative	{ declinable лучший. indeclinable лучше.
† Красный, fair ; comparative	красне.

Obs. 5.—From the comparatives большій and меньшій, are derived the adjectives

Большой, 'large,' and меньшой, 'small.'

Большой is used also instead of великій, when it denotes a size, as : большой домъ, 'a large house,' instead of великій домъ.

The comparative of the following adjectives and adverbs must not be confounded :

<i>Adjectives.</i>	<i>Adverbs.</i>
Longer, дольше.	Longer (time), долѣе.
More distant, дальше.	Farther, далѣе.
Thinner, тоньше.	Thinner, тонѣе.
Larger, больше.	More, больше.
Smaller, меньше.	Less, меньше.

Obs. 6.—The comparative of all other adverbs is exactly the same as that of the indeclinable adjectives they are derived from.

I was here longer than you.

This war was longer than that one.

We went farther.

Я былъ здѣсь долѣе нежели вы.

Эта война была дольше той.

Мы пошли далѣе.



That forest is more distant from  
here than that river.

I have more books than he.

This book is larger than that.

I have less money than he.

These tables are smaller than those.

The ice is thinner than it was last  
year.

My paper is thinner than yours.

Тотъ лѣсъ дальше отсюда нежели та  
рѣка.

У меня болѣе книгъ чѣмъ у него.

Эта книга больше той.

У меня меньше денегъ чѣмъ у него.

Эти столы меньше тѣхъ.

Ледъ тонѣе чѣмъ въ прошломъ году.

Моя бумага тонѣе вашей.

A little larger,

Побольше.

A little smaller,

Поменьше.

OBS. 7.—The preposition *no* is added to the indeclinable comparative when the object compared is not mentioned, as :

A larger house is taken.

Нанять домъ побольше

But when the object of comparison is mentioned, the comparative must be without the preposition *no*, as :

Your house is larger and more  
roomy than ours.

Вашъ домъ больше и просторѣе  
нашего.

OBS. 8.—The preposition *no*, if used when the object of comparison is mentioned, modifies the comparative and signifies 'a little,' as :

Your book is a little better than  
ours.

Ваша книга лучше нашей.

This horse is a little stronger than  
that one.

Эта лошадь сильнѣе той.

As—as,

Такъ—какъ.

OBS. 9.—In the comparative of equality *такъ* is usually left out in affirmative sentences.

He is as rich as Croesus.

Онъ (такъ) богатъ какъ Крезъ.

Stronger,

Сильнѣе, сильнѣй.

OBS. 10.—The comparative termination *ѣ* can be shortened in all adjectives into *ѣ*.

The—the, ЧѢМЪ—ТѢМЪ.

OBS. 11.—‘The,’—‘the’ before a comparative are rendered ЧѢМЪ ТѢМЪ.

The larger a horse is, the stronger it is. ЧѢМЪ БОЛЬШЕ ЛОШАДЬ, ТѢМЪ ОНА СЛЫНѢЕ.

OBS. 12.—There are qualifying adjectives which do not admit of any comparison. To this class belong adjectives denoting a quality of which a larger or smaller measure is impossible, as :

Square, квадратный.

Married, женатый.

Childless, бездѣтный.

Homeless, бездомный.

Armless, безрукий.

Footless, безногий.

Barefoot, босой.

Pedestrian, пѣшій, etc.

OBS. 13.—The object of comparison once mentioned need not be repeated.

What cloth is better than German (cloth) ?

Какое сукно лучше нѣмецкаго ?

English cloth is better than German.

Англійское сукно лучше нѣмецкаго.

As (like),

Какъ.

Do it as you are told and not in your own way.

Дѣлайте это какъ вамъ приказываютъ, а не по своему.

OBS. 14.—There are in the Russian language only four adjectives having the superlative with declinable terminations; these are :

Largest, величайшій.

Highest, высочайшій.

Smallest, малѣйшій.

Lowest, нижайшій.

Best of all,

Лучше всѣхъ.

OBS. 15.—The superlative is also formed by adding *всѣхъ*, 'of all,' to the indeclinable comparative.

He is the kindest of all.  
She is the prettiest of all.

Онъ добрѣе всѣхъ.  
Она красивѣе всѣхъ.

For,

{ Пбо (rarely used).  
{ Потому что.

Read the Bible, for it is the best book.

Читайте Библию, ибо это самая лучшая книга.

By (on),

По (governs the dative).

By which road do you wish to go?  
I will go by the nearest road.

По которой дорогѣ вы желаете идти?  
Я пойду по ближайшей дорогѣ.

#### EXERCISE LXXII.

Is it agreeable to live in town in the summer?—It is very agreeable, but to live in a village in the summer is still more agreeable and healthier than in town.—Is it as warm to-day as it was yesterday?—To-day is much warmer than yesterday.—Whose daughter is more diligent and more amiable than all the other pupils?—Our neighbour's daughter is the most diligent and most amiable of all.—Are all girls as charming and amiable as his sister?—His sister is kind and amiable, but her friend is kinder and more amiable, and their schoolmistress is the most amiable and charming of all.—Whose house is the finest of all?—The uncle's house, which you see on the other side of the river, is the finest of all.—Our neighbour's dog is very pretty. That is true, but my dog is prettier than that of the neighbour.—Which horses are the dearest?—Arabian horses are the dearest.—Where were you yesterday?—We were in the new theatre, which is much more luxurious and more roomy than the old one.—Are these merchant-ships as large and

strong as those war-ships?—No, war-ships are always larger and stronger than merchant-ships.—Which horse is the larger, yours or that of the Englishman?—My horse is larger, but that of the Englishman is prettier and more expensive than mine.—The nearer to the North, the longer are the days in summer, and the shorter the nights.—Which is the most expensive stone of all?—The diamond is dearer than all other precious stones.—What country is more mountainous than France?—Switzerland is more mountainous than France, but France is larger and richer than Switzerland. Is the stag as swift as the horse?—The stag is much swifter than the horse.—Which street is the broader, this or that?—That is the broader, but this is the brighter, for the houses are lower.—We have bought all this a little cheaper than before.—Is Moscow rich?—Yes, Moscow is one of the richest cities of Russia.—Who came here later than you?—Everybody came earlier than I.—These trees are higher and greener than those.—These houses are a little higher, but those are a little more roomy.—In spring the sky is clearer and the air is purer, more agreeable and warmer, than in autumn.—Man can live anywhere, both in the warmest and the coldest countries.

#### EXERCISE LXXIII.

Is the river Dnieper deep?—It is not everywhere equally deep, some places are deep and others are deeper or more shallow.—Which wine is the cheaper, the red or the white?—The white is the cheaper, but the red is the better.—Have you in England coal and iron?—There is more coal and iron in England than in France.—Who is the more diligent, your eldest or your youngest son?—My youngest son is much more diligent and more obedient than my eldest.

Where does he want to go?—To the field and into the forest.—Why not into the garden?—The forest is the nearest. Old men are generally more experienced than young men. Is the cupola of this church as high as the tower of that strong castle?—The cupola of this church is not only higher than that tower, but it is also higher than all the other cupolas and towers in the city.—Which do you like the best, summer or spring?—I like summer better (more) than spring, because it is warmer in summer.—France is larger and more populous than Holland, but Russia is not only larger than France, but it is also the most populous country in Europe.—Is your woollen cloth as thin as mine?—My cloth is thicker and cheaper than yours.—A mean rich man is much poorer than a beggar.—Do you want to eat now or later?—I do not want to eat now, because I have just breakfasted.—Bring a little more firewood, for it is very cold in the room.—Is your fur coat, lined with bear-skin, light? No, it is very heavy.—Is it warm?—It is warmer than all my other fur coats.—Did you live long in Italy?—I lived there longer than my brother.—Is the autumn day as long as the winter day?—The autumn day is longer than the winter one.—Who wears sable furs?—Only wives and daughters of rich men wear sable furs.—Are sheep-skins and hare-skins cheap?—They are cheaper than all other furs. Who was always the more liberal, the rich foreigner or his poor neighbour?—The first was by far the more liberal. Has he much money?—He has less money than you, but your house is smaller than his.—Whose waistcoat is the older, yours or mine?—My waistcoat is older than yours. Is he younger than his brother?—He is older than his brother.—Is his horse cheaper than yours?—His horse is cheaper, but also older and worse than mine.



than usual is formed by adding *оватый*, *еватый* to the declinable, or *оватъ*, *еватъ* to the indeclinable adjectives.

<i>Бѣлый</i> ,	} white ;	<i>бѣловатый</i> ,	} whitish, rather white.
<i>бѣтъ</i> ,		<i>бѣловатъ</i> ,	
<i>Синій</i> ,	} blue ;	<i>синеватый</i> ,	} rather blue.
<i>синь</i> ,		<i>синеватъ</i> ,	

C. The diminutive terminations *енькой*, *онькой*, incorporated *енекъ*, *онекъ* are made use of to soften or modify the original signification of the adjective. These terminations are generally used before the substantives in the diminutive form, as :

<i>Бѣленькая собачка</i> ,	A little white dog.
<i>Синенькой платочекъ</i> ,	A little blue handkerchief.

Every qualifying adjective cannot have all the above mentioned degrees of signification ; therefore the following rules must be observed :

1. The diminutive terminations *оватый*, *еватый* are added only to those qualifying adjectives that denote colour, sense, measure, form, weight and physical or moral deficiency, as :

<i>Чёрный</i> , black ;	diminutive ;	<i>черноватый</i> .
<i>Тёплый</i> , warm ;	...	<i>теповатый</i> .
<i>Сладкий</i> , sweet ;	...	<i>сладковатый</i> .
<i>Малый</i> , small ;	...	<i>маловатый</i> .
<i>Круглый</i> , round ;	...	<i>кругловатый</i> .
<i>Лёгкий</i> , light ;	...	<i>легковатый</i> .
<i>Бѣдный</i> , poor ;	...	<i>бѣдноватый</i> .
<i>Скупой</i> , mean ;	...	<i>скуповатый</i> .

2. On the other hand the above terminations cannot be added to qualifying adjectives denoting a physical or moral perfection, such as : 'kind,' *добрый* ; 'intelligent,' *умный* ; 'rich,' *богатый*, etc.

Obs. 2.—The diminutive terminations *оватый, еватый* must not be confounded with the similar terminations of the positive degree of derivative adjectives, such as :

Угловатый,	Angular.
Поздраватый,	Porous.
Впноватый,	In fault, wrong.

3. The terminations *енькой, онькой* cannot be added to adjectives ending in *кий*, preceded by a consonant and denoting a property in an inanimate object, such as : ‘fragile,’ *ломкий* ; ‘sonorous,’ *звонкий* ; ‘slippery,’ *скользкий*, etc.

4. The augmentative terminations *ехонекъ, ешенекъ* cannot be added to derivative adjectives denoting appurtenance to an object of some parts or properties and ending in *авый, атый, астый, оватый, пвый, итый, истый, овитый, ный, кий*, etc., such as :

Моложавый,	Young-looking.
Лѣвый,	Lazy.
Сердитый,	Angry.
Крылатый,	Winged, etc.

Obs. 3.—All such adjectives however can take the prefix *пре*, both in the declinable and indeclinable form.

Премоложавый, премоложать,	Looking very young.
Прелѣпный, прелѣпнѣть,	Very lazy.
Пресердитый, пресердить,	Very angry.

Obs. 4.—Both the augmentative and the diminutive adjectives are used affirmatively only ; therefore the negative particle *не* cannot be prefixed to them.

Obs. 5.—Augmentative and diminutive adjectives have no degrees of comparison.

In forming the augmentative and the diminutive degrees the following euphonic changes must be observed :



1. The e in the termination енекъ, ехонекъ, preceded by г, к, х is changed into о:

Долгій, long; diminutive долгоуькій, долгоухонекъ.  
 Высокій, high; . . . высокоуькій, высокоухонекъ.  
 Сухой, dry; . . . сухоуькій, сухоухонекъ.

2. The terminations ешенекъ, ошенекъ cannot be added to adjectives having з, с, ж, ч or ш before the termination, thus:

Свѣжій, fresh; augmentative свѣжѣхонекъ and not свѣжешенекъ.

Obs. 6.—All other adjectives can take both the terminations ехонекъ, охонекъ and ешенекъ, ошенекъ.

Бѣлый, white; augmentative бѣлѣхонекъ and бѣлѣшенекъ.  
 Сухой, dry; augmentative сухохонекъ and сухошенекъ.

3. Adjectives in кій, preceded by the radical consonants н, д, т, з, с, г, form their augmentative or diminutive degree by adding еньюкой, оньюкой, енекъ, онекъ, ехонекъ, охонекъ to the radical consonant; the consonant к, therefore in the termination of the positive degree is left out, as:

Тонкій, thin; diminutive тоненькой, тонѣнекъ; augmentative тонѣхонекъ.  
 Лёгкій, light; diminutive лёгонькій, лёгонекъ; augmentative лёгѣхонекъ.

4. In the adjective мѣгкій, 'soft,' the consonant г is changed into к:

Мѣгкій, diminutive мѣконькій, мѣконекъ; augmentative мѣкѣхонекъ.

5. The following in кій preserve the к:

Шибкій, swift; diminutive шибкѣнекъ; augmentative шибкѣхонекъ.  
 Жалкій, pitiable; . . . жалкѣнекъ; . . . жалкѣхонекъ.  
 Горькій, bitter; . . . горькѣнекъ; . . . горькѣхонекъ.  
 Плоскій, flat; . . . плоскѣнекъ; . . . плоскѣхонекъ.

† Крѣпкій, strong ; dim. крѣпильной and крѣпильной ; арос. крѣпонецъ and крѣпонецъ ; augm. крѣпѣхонецъ.

† Мелкій, shallow, small ; dim. мелководной and мелководной ; арос. мелковецъ and мелковецъ ; augm. мелковхонецъ and мелковхонецъ.

To marry (to get married),  
neuter verb. { Жениться на (with the prepositional case).  
Выходить замужъ за (with the accusative).

Married to, { Женатъ на (with the prep.).  
Замужемъ за (with the instr.).

Obs. 7.—The verb выходить замужъ, 'to marry,' is made use of when speaking of women, having for the perfect aspect выйти замужъ, and the verb жениться when speaking of men.

NOTE.—The present and the future of the verb жениться are alike, *i.e.* женюсь, женишься, etc.

Who is going to get married ?

Кто женится ?

He is going to get married.

Онъ женится.

Whom is he going to marry ?

На комъ онъ женится ?

He is going to marry my sister.

На моей сестрѣ онъ женится.

Is it long since he has married her ?

Давно ли онъ на ней женатъ ?

He has been married to her two years.

Онъ женатъ на ней два года.

Whom is she going to marry ?

За кого выходить она замужъ ?

She is going to marry him.

Она выходить за него замужъ.

She was married to him last year.

Она вышла за него замужъ въ прошломъ году.

Has she been long married to him ?

Давно ли она за нимъ замужемъ ?

It is not long since she was married.

Она недавно замужемъ.

To marry (to perform the ceremony of marriage),

Вѣнчать, I. l. perfect asp. обвѣнчать.

Who has married them ?

Кто ихъ вѣнчалъ ?

The clergyman married them.

Священникъ вѣнчалъ ихъ.

A single man, a bachelor,	Холостой человекъ.
A married man,	Женатый человекъ.
A married woman,	Замужняя женщина.
A marriage,	Бракъ, женитьба.
A wedding,	Свадьба.
To marry for love,	Жениться по любви.
A money match,	† Бракъ по расчёту.

To marry to, act. v.

{ Вѣдать замужъ за.  
Женить на, pers. asp. оже-  
нить.

He has married his daughter to an officer.

Онъ вѣдалъ свою дочь замужъ за офицера.

He married his son to an officer's daughter.

Онъ женилъ своего сына на дочери офицера.

#### EXERCISE LXXIV.

What has this pretty little girl got in her hands?—She has got a little red handkerchief.—What kind of little gown has this little girl got?—She has got a clean, white little gown and a pair of new little shoes.—How is the water of this lake?—It was coldish yesterday, but it is rather warm to-day.—How are the clothes which your tailor brought you the day before yesterday?—They are rather wide, and the sleeves are narrowish and rather short.—The rooms of the kind little old woman are rather small and cold.—Is your servant intelligent and diligent?—He is very diligent, but rather stupid.—How is your new horse (which) you bought at the fair yesterday?—It is *very* lazy, but much stronger than my other one.—This knife is quite blunt; give me another a little sharper, if you please.—Speak to him a little louder, because he is rather deaf.—How is the bread at your baker's?—It is rather stale, sourish and rather bitter.—Can you give me a hundred roubles?—I do not

know; I think that will be rather difficult, but if you like, I can give you fifty roubles now, and the other fifty roubles afterwards.—What kind of a little house has your neighbour got?—His new little house is small, but clean.—Is the weather fine?—No, it is rather damp out.—Are the streets clean? The streets are rather dirty.—How was the beer (which) you drank at the Hotel yesterday?—The beer (which) we drank there was rather thick, but not bad.

#### EXERCISE LXXV.

When did your eldest brother get married?—He was married last year.—Are both your brothers married?—My eldest brother is married, but the youngest one is not yet married.—Whom did your eldest brother marry?—He married the daughter of the clergyman who married them at St. Nicholas' church.—Give this little boy a pair of boots, because the rain is pouring and it is very cold out.—Is this boy then barefoot?—No, he is not barefoot, but his boots are in holes.—Where were you going yesterday morning with your daughter?—We were going to the wedding of my niece, who has married my clerk.—Is it true that your other niece is also going to marry the rich banker?—No, it is not true; my second niece was long ago married to Captain Petrof.—Is your mistress kind, and is her husband liberal?—We have a very kind mistress and her husband is a very liberal man.—Is this river deep?—It is rather deep, but it is not broad enough for large ships. Is your coffee sweet.—My coffee is quite bitter and thoroughly cold.—To whom did you give the pens and the red ink?—I gave them to my youngest brother.—Do you see those little red flowers on that little table?—I do not see the red, but I see the little bluish flowers.—When were

you at the countess's house?—I have been there quite recently.—Was she at home?—No, she was not at home, she was at the wedding at the princess's house.—To whom did the princess marry her daughter?—She married her to a rich banker.—Is the countess's family large?—Yes, she has five sons and four daughters.—I thought that her family was less than mine.—No, you see her family is larger than yours.—Have you spoken to that married woman who has got married against her parent's will?—No, I spoke only with that single man.

#### EXERCISE LXXVI.

Where is this busy little bee flying to?—It is flying to gather the sweet honey from the flowers.—Are your rooms clean?—Our rooms are quite clean, but the floors in the vestibule are quite dirty.—Did not your servant then wash the floors to-day?—No, our servant is very lazy.—What does this young-looking peasant say?—He says that "one who is not lazy to plough will soon be rich." To whom is this peasant going to marry his young son?—He is going to marry him to a young and pretty peasant-girl. Did you go anywhere yesterday?—I went to the theatre and to the ball yesterday.—Are they going anywhere? They are going to the field, which is quite green.—Is your handkerchief clean?—My handkerchief is quite clean, there is not a single dirty spot on it.—Whom is your niece married to?—She has married our neighbour.—Is it true that the rich banker, at whose wedding we danced, has married a poor widow?—He did not marry a widow, but a girl, the daughter of the richest banker in our town.—Who married them?—A French priest married them.

---

## THIRTY-EIGHTH LESSON.

## Тридцать восьмой Урокъ.

## RELATIVE ADJECTIVES.—Прилагательное Относительное.

What journal is this ?	Какой это журналъ ?
It is a monthly journal.	Это мѣсячный журналъ.
What tobacco have you ?	Какой у васъ табакъ ?
I have Turkish tobacco.	У меня турецкій табакъ.
What kind of egg is this ?	Какое это яйцо ?
It is a fowl's egg.	Это куриное яйцо,

Adjectives which denote a relation of an object to ourselves or others, or distinguish a thing in relation to its kind are termed in Russian прилагательныя относительныя, 'relative adjectives,' and are formed from substantives and some adverbs as follows :

a. Adjectives ending in скій, ской, цкій, овскій, евскій are formed from names of animate beings, spiritual objects, names of places and professions :

Богъ, God ;	Божескій, God's, God like.
Человѣкъ, man ;	человѣческій, human.
Звѣрь, beast ;	звѣрскій, bestial.
Отецъ, father ;	отѣческій, paternal.
Село, village ;	сѣльскій, rural.
Англія, England ;	англійскій, English.
Нѣмецъ, a German ;	нѣмецкій, German.
Купецъ, a merchant ;	купеческій, mercantile.

b. Adjectives formed from names of months take the termination скій, овскій, as :

Генварь, January ;	генварьскій, of January.
Февраль, February ;	февральскій, of February.

The termination овскій is added to the months of March, Мартъ and 'August,' Августъ, as :

Мартовскій, Августовскій,	of March, of August.
---------------------------	----------------------

ОBS. 1.—The English terminations *ic, ical*, when used for names of different sciences are rendered in Russian by *ическій*, as: ‘dramatic,’ драматическій; ‘historical,’ историческій; ‘lyric,’ лирический, etc.

c. Relative adjectives in *инный*, are formed mostly from names of animals, as :

Сóколъ, falcon ; соколі́ный.  
Утка, a duck ; ути́ный.  
Орёлъ, an eagle ; орли́ный.  
Пчелá, a bee ; пче́линный.  
Козёлъ, a goat ; козли́ный.  
Левъ, a lion ; льви́ный.  
Лошадь, a horse ; лошади́ный.

ОBS. 2.—The following names of animals take *овый, евый* :

Бобръ, beaver ; бобровый.	Ежъ, hedgehog ; ежовый.
Валъ, vale ; валовый.	Кротъ, tor ; кротовый.
Осетръ, sturgeon ; осетровый.	Моржъ, seal ; морже́вый.

ОBS. 3.—Adjectives in *овой, евой, овный, евный, енный, ный, ной*, are formed from names of inanimate and abstract objects having various significations, as :

Паръ, steam ;	{ паровой котёлъ, a steam boiler.
	{ парное молоко, new milk.
Душá, soul ;	{ душевный, hearty, sincere.
	{ душный, suffocating, close.
Духъ, spirit, ghost ;	{ духовой инструментъ, a wind-instrument.
	{ духовный, spiritual.

d. Adjectives formed from names of trees terminate generally in *овый, евый*, as :

Груша, pear ; груше́вый.	{ Дубъ, oak ; дубо́вый.
Берёза, birch ; берёзовы́й.	{ Сосна, pine ; сосно́вый.

e. Adjectives in *яный, яной, янный*, denote the material of which a thing is made, as :

Дерево, wood ; деревя́нный, wooden.  
Кожа, leather ; ко́жаный, leathern.

Масло, oil ; масляный.  
Железо, iron ; железный.

Волось, hair ; волосной.  
Вода, water ; водяной.

Obs. 4.—Adjectives ending in *жій, чій, шій* are mostly used in the sense of substantives, as :

Прохожій, a foot-traveller.  
Приѣзжій, a visitor.

Копчій, a helmsman.  
Пѣшій, a pedestrian.

f. Adjectives formed from nouns and adverbs signifying time or place end in *ній, шній, енный*, as :

Лѣто, summer ; лѣтній.  
Весна, spring ; весенній.

Теперь, now ; теперешній.  
Всегда, always ; всегдашній.

What column is this ?  
It is Alexander's column.

Какая это колонна ?  
Это Александровская колонна.

Obs. 5.—Relative adjectives answer the question: 'what kind?' They are therefore easily distinguished from possessive adjectives answering the question 'whose?'

Whose book is this ?

Чья эта книга ?

It is Alexander's book.

{ Это Александрова книга.  
{ Это книга Александра.

Obs. 6.—Possessive adjectives in Russian, as has been already explained, may be just as well rendered by the genitive of the nouns they are derived from. The same, however, cannot be done with the relative adjectives, although they are often rendered by the genitive of other languages, as :

Eagle's nest,  
A merchant's son,  
A gentleman's son,  
A travelling bag,  
Travelling notes,  
An able man,  
River-water,

Орлиное гнѣздо.  
Купеческій сынъ.  
Дворянскій сынъ.  
Дорожная сумка.  
Путевыя записки.  
Путный человекъ.  
Рѣчная вода.



Domestic expenses,  
Pig's head,  
A house-door,  
The town-wall,  
An air pump,

Домашнія издержки.  
Свинная голова.  
Домовая дверь.  
Городская стѣна.  
Воздушный насосъ.

Most (the greater part),

{ Большая часть.  
{ Больше число.

Who has most?

У кого больше число?

I have most.

У меня больше число.

Most of this field is already green.

Большая часть этого поля уже зелена.

Most people buy this.

Больше число людей покупаютъ это.

Several,

Нѣсколько.

Have you more horses than one?

У васъ больше одной лошади?

Yes, sir, I have several.

Да, сударь, у насъ нѣсколько.

Several kinds, or sorts,

Разные.

Several,

Многіе.

What pencils has he?

Какіе карандаши у него?

He has several kinds of pencils.

У него разные карандаши.

Are all the houses burnt?

Всѣ ли дома сгорѣли?

Several are burnt.

Многіе дома сгорѣли.

Usually, generally,

Обыкновенно, вообще.

Where do you usually dine?

Гдѣ вы обыкновенно обѣдаете?

I usually dine at home.

Я обыкновенно дома обѣдаю.

To call, (to awake),

Будить, perf. asp. разбудить.

At what time does he call his master?

Въ какомъ часу онъ будить своего господина?

He usually calls him at nine, but I call him always at seven o'clock.

Онъ обыкновенно будить его въ девять, а я буду его всегда въ семь часовъ.

Caste, class, сословіе.

Foreign, заграничный.

Clergy, духовенство.

A table-spoon, столовая ложка.

Nobility, дворянство.

A dessert-spoon, десертная ложка.

Education, образованіе.

A tea-spoon, чайная ложка.

Educated, образованный.

Maternal, материнскій.

Of one's native country,	Отечественный.
A horse's mane,	Лошадина грива.
Water communication,	Водяное сообщёние.
A colony, колонія.	Unimportant, маловажный.
A meal of fish, Рыбное кушанье.	To rise, to get up, вставать.
A meal of meat, Мясное кушанье.	To rise, perf. asp. встать.

## EXERCISE LXXVII.

Which houses are better than those of the village?—Town houses are much better and larger than village houses, but rural life in summer is much more agreeable than town life. Is French tobacco as good as American?—No, the latter, although dearer, is much better than the former.—What book are you reading?—I am reading a German book about the rural life of the Russian people.—What love is stronger than all others?—Maternal love.—What cold is more severe than that of February and March.—Usually the January cold is more severe than all others.—Are duck and goose eggs expensive?—In our market they are more expensive than fowls' eggs.—Where did they see those two black eaglets? In the eagle's nest.—Have you been in the Indian colonies? Yes, I spent (провелъ) the five hottest months there.—Are March days long there?—They are much longer there than those of July and August.—What goods has this merchant? He has several kinds of goods; he has iron, copper and pewter goods.—What houses are warmer than those built of stone? Wooden houses are much warmer than stone ones.—Where did you buy these pine and birch tables?—I bought them from the merchant's son in the market.—Did you bring me my new leather travelling bag?—No, but I will bring it you after dinner.—Had you for dinner to-day a meal of fish or meat?—No, we had neither, we had only milk soup.—Which class in Russia is the best (most) educated?—The children of noblemen

in Russia are usually much better educated than those of merchants.—How is the fish trade in this town generally? It is unimportant, because we have no water communication either with the German Sea or with any navigable rivers. Are the river steamers large?—The river steamers are generally smaller than the sea steamers.—Did not his brother eat more than I?—He ate much more than you, because he was very hungry.—Which boy can read (reads) better than all others.—The most diligent boy not only reads, but also writes better than all others.—What is the age of this boy?—He is thirteen years of age.

#### EXERCISE LXXVIII.

Have you spoken to these sailors?—I spoke with several of them.—About what did you speak to him?—I spoke to him of soldiers' and seamen's dress.—Have you many tea and table spoons?—We have only a few.—Of what metal are they made?—All our spoons are made of silver.—Are the nobility of your town rich?—They (it) are much richer than the clergy.—At what time (at what o'clock) did your servant call you this morning?—He called me very late; much later than yesterday.—Do you then rise early?—I usually rise very early, earlier than any one in the house.—Is the horse's mane long?—It is generally shorter than the horse's tail. What kind of bag has this foot traveller, a linen or leathern one?—He has got a woollen bag.—Are there many visitors in town?—There are not very many here now, but there are usually many here in summer.—What does the captain of this merchant vessel order his helmsman to do?—He orders him to go to (на, with the accus.) the ship.—Who has most apples? He has most, but most of his apples are much worse than mine.—In whose house were they living in winter?—They

were living in their father's house.—What history did Macaulay write?—He wrote the history of his native country.—Are the wines in this shop cheap?—The country wines are cheap, but foreign ones are very expensive.—What did the German master say to him yesterday?—He said to him that historical works are much more useful than lyric or dramatic ones.—Where do you generally pass your evenings?—I generally pass them at the theatre or at the club. What kind of books have you there on that table?—I have several kinds of books there.—I have there French, English, German, Dutch, Russian, Italian, Spanish and even a few Turkish and Persian books.

### THIRTY-NINTH LESSON.

#### Тридцать девятый Урокъ.

To remain, to stay, (to be left,) { Оставаться.  
Остаться, \* perf. asp.

Do you remain?

I remain.

We often remained alone in the house.

Where were the children left.

#### *Imperfect Aspect.*

Я оставался, I remained.

Мы оставались, We remained,

я буду оставаться, I shall remain, etc.

Оставайся, оставайтесь, remain.

Остаётесь ли вы?

Я остаюсь.

Мы часто оставались сами въ домѣ.

Гдѣ остались дѣти.

#### *Perfect Aspect.*

Я остался.

Мы остались.

Я останусь, ты останешься, etc.

Останься, останьтесь.

To leave,

{ Оставить.  
{ Оставить, perf. asp.

Where did you leave your children this morning?

\* I left them where I always do.

Гдѣ вы оставили своихъ дѣтей сего-дня утромъ?

Я ихъ оставилъ тамъ, гдѣ всегда ихъ оставляю.

It remains,  
It remained,  
It will remain,

Остаётся, impers. verb } gov.  
Оставалось, осталось } the  
{ Будеть оставаться } dat.  
Останется

It remains for me to say.  
It remained for you to decide.

Мнѣ остаётся сказать.  
Вамъ оставалось рѣшить.

Left, (remaining),  
Is there anything left ?  
There is nothing left.  
He has some left.  
I shall have a few left.

Остальной, (остаётся).  
Осталось ли что ?  
Ничего не осталось.  
У него немного осталось.  
У меня останется несколько.

Every now and then,  
He comes to us every now and then.

Отъ времени до времени.  
Онъ приходилъ къ намъ отъ времени  
до времени.

Nay,

{ Нѣтъ, даже.  
{ Сверхъ того.

Nay, if he said that to you, you must  
not doubt it.

Нѣтъ, если бы онъ вамъ сказалъ,  
то вы не должны сомнѣваться  
въ томъ.

Had he promised to see you ?  
Nay, he had even promised to come  
here himself.

Объщалъ ли онъ видѣть васъ ?  
Онъ даже общалъ самъ прийти  
сюда.

Ever,

Когда либо.

Do you ever see our friend, the  
painter ?  
I see him now and then.

Видите ли вы когда либо нашего  
пріятеля, живописца ?  
Я вижу его изрѣдка.

Now and then,

Изрѣдка.

The following adjectives govern the genitive :

Worthy, достойный. | Devoid, чуждый.  
Full (of), полный.

This is worth reward.  
A prince worthy of his subjects' affection.  
He is devoid of this vice.  
The room is full of people.

Это достойно награды  
Князь достойный любви своих подданныхъ.  
Онъ чуждъ этого порока.  
Комната полна людей.

The following adjectives govern the dative :

Faithful, вѣрный.  
Amiable, любезный.  
Dear to, { милый.  
              { дорогой.  
Agreeable, пріятный.  
Useful, полезный.  
Submissive, покорный.  
Glad, радъ.

Suitable, agreeable, угодный.  
Known to, известный.  
An acquaintance, знакомый.  
In accordance with, relative, соответственный.  
Decent, becoming, пристойный.  
Obedient, послушный.

Natural to,  
Proportionate, in proportion,  
Becoming, decorous,  
Alike (to be like),  
Devoted,

Свойственный.  
Соразмѣрный.  
Приличный.  
Подобный.  
Преданный.

Ovs. 1.—Обрадованный, 'delighted,' derived from радъ, governs the instrumental and not the dative :

Delighted with this.

The dog is faithful to his master.  
This news was not agreeable to him.  
She is dear to him.  
Honour is dearer to him than gold.  
This is not agreeable to him.  
The book is useful to us.  
A people submissive to their king.  
She is glad of it.  
The dress did not suit her.  
A work known to the whole world.  
The children are obedient to their master.

I know this.  
Did you know?  
We shall know.

Обрадованный этимъ.

Собака вѣрна своему господину.  
Эта новость не была ему пріятна.  
Она ему мила.  
Честь ему дороже золота.  
Ему это непріятно.  
Книга намъ полезна.  
Народъ, покорный своему королю.  
Она рада тому.  
Платье ей не было угодно.  
Сочинѣніе, известное всему свѣту.  
Дѣти послушны своему учителю.

Это мнѣ известно.  
Было ли вамъ известно?  
Намъ будетъ известно.

Nor I,

Nor I either,

} И я также не.

I shall not go to the theatre this evening; will you?

No, I shall not go either.

I never read novels either.

Nor do I ever see her.

Я не идѣ сегодня вечеромъ въ театрѣ, пойдёте ли вы?

Нѣтъ, и я также (огъ тоже) не пойду.

Я тоже никогда не читаю романовъ.

Я тоже никогда её не вижу.

As far as,

To come up to,

До.

Доходить, дойти.

As far as the garden.

I went with her as far as their mother's.

When you have read the book as far as this, (then) you may go for a walk.

До саду.

Я дошёлъ съ нею до дому ихъ матери.

Когда вы прочтёте книгу до сихъ поръ, то можете идти гулять.

To be a judge of,

Быть знатокѣмъ, (цѣнители-лемъ) въ (with the prep. case).

Are you a judge of wine?

He is a good judge of it.

A judge (a connoisseur).

He is no judge of this.

Знатокъ ли вы въ винѣ?

Онъ въ нёмъ большой знатокъ.

Знатокъ.

+ Онъ этого не понимаетъ.

To order,

To get, to have something done or made,

Велѣть.

Велѣть.

I ordered him to write.

Get these books taken away from here.

Have a fowl roasted for me.

Я велѣлъ ему писать.

Велите унести отсюда эти книги.

Велите зажарить мнѣ курицу.

To punish,

{ Наказывать.

{ Наказывать, perf. asp.

To behave,

Вести себя.

He behaves well.

She behaved well.

Онъ хорошо себя ведётъ.

Она велá себя хорошо.

Behaviour, поведѣніе.

Praise, похвала.

Hackney carriage, извозчикъ.

Devotion, преданность.

Theft, кража.

Punishment, наказаніе.

Contempt, презрѣніе.

Rewarded, награжденный.

The deed, act, дѣло, поступокъ.

## EXERCISE LXXIX.

Where did you leave your portmanteau?—We left it on the steamer.—Why did you not take it with you?—I did not take my portmanteau with me, because it is too heavy, and there was not a single hackney carriage on the shore. Is the hotel far from the sea then?—Yes, the hotel is rather far from here, and it is not in the valley, but on the hill. Do you know that the gentleman to whom we spoke is the proprietor of that hotel?—No, I did not know that.—Will he be glad to see you?—I think (that) he will.—How do your nephews behave themselves?—Their behaviour is worthy of the highest praise.—What books do you leave them? I only leave them books useful to young men.—Were the officers and soldiers faithful to their commander?—No, and their punishment was proportionate to their treason.—Have you left the key in the door (in the lock) or has Andrew? Neither I nor Andrew has left it.—Had these young men a becoming dress (on)?—Their dress did not become such rich merchants, their coats were rather old, gloves rather dirty and their boots *all over* mud.—Was there much black tea left?—There were two pounds of tea left.—Did you give him all your money?—No, I had a few roubles left. How many horses will there be left?—There will be a few horses left.—Will you leave this book here?—I will leave it here.—Do you often go to him?—I go to him now and then.—Does he give you permission to go to the play?



Nay, he even comes with us himself.—Do you ever take children with you to the theatre?—We take them now and then.

#### EXERCISE LXXX.

Have you read the history of Russia?—I have not, nor has my brother either.—We do not know them.—Nor do we either.—Is your relative a judge of tea?—No, he is no judge of tea, nor is he a judge of wine either.—Why do you not give French books to your nieces?—Because these books are not useful to them.—Get the floors washed.—I ordered the maid-servant to wash the floors, and also to wash the linen.—When shall you be obliged to take the letters to the Post Office?—I must take them there at six (o'clock). How was he rewarded?—His reward was in accordance with his deeds.—Is it cold to-day?—It is much colder to-day than it was yesterday.—Is money useful to poor men? Money is useful to both rich and poor.—Are the soldiers faithful to their brave general?—They are faithful, obedient and devoted to him.—Does the master often punish this lazy pupil?—He punished him yesterday.—For what did he punish him?—He punished him because he did not know his Spanish lesson.—Are all these children yours? Yes, and I have three more at school.—Did your niece live in town when you lived in the country?—When I lived in the country my niece lived in town.—Has not my son written this letter very well?—Yes, he writes much better than my eldest son.—Do you want as much silk as wool? I want more silk than wool.—Will the young ladies stay here any longer?—They will not be able to stay here much longer.—What day of the month was it yesterday?—It was the sixth.—What day of the month will it be to-morrow?—It will be the twelfth to-morrow.

## FORTIETH LESSON.—Сороковѣй Урокъ.

## OF THE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE.

## О Причастіи Дѣйствительномъ.

Active participles are adjectives derived from active and neuter verbs and denote the action of the subject, as :

The loving mother.	Любящая мать.
The running horse.	Бѣгущій конь.

The active participle as a part of the verb has two tenses, the present and past, and it always combines the meaning of the relative pronoun *который*, 'who,' 'which,' or *что*, 'that,' with the verb from which it is derived.

a. The present participle is formed from the third person plural of the present indicative by changing the termination *тъ* into *щій*, (feminine *щая*, neuter *щее*) :

Читаю-тъ, they read ; читаю-щій, reading, he who reads.
Иду-тъ, they go ; иду-щій, going, he who goes.
Надѣю-тся, they hope ; надѣю-щійся, hoping, he who hopes.

b. The past participle is formed from the past tense by changing the termination *лъ*, into *вшій* or *шій*, (feminine *вшая*, neuter *вшее*) :

Читалъ, I have read ; читалъ-вшій, reading, he who has read.
Шелъ, I was going ; шелъ-шій, going, he who was going.
Надѣялся, I hoped ; надѣя-вшійся, hoping, he who was hoping.

The termination *вшій* is added to the participles formed from the past tense having a vowel before *лъ*, as :

Я игралъ, I played ; игралъ-вшій, playing.
Она говорила, she spoke ; говорила-вшая, speaking.

OBS. 1.—If there be no *л* in the masculine termination of the past tense, the participle is formed by adding *шій* (and not *вший*) to the root of the verb, as :

Я грѣбъ, I rowed ; part. past, грѣб-шій.  
Я могъ, I could ; part. past, мог-шій.

To lead, leading,	Весті.
I was leading,	Вёлъ.
Leading,	Ведшій.

OBS. 2.—The radical consonants *л* and *т*, omitted in the infinitive mood and in the past tense, are replaced in the past participle active, as :

Цвѣсти, to bloom ; past tense цвѣлъ, ('root,' цвѣтъ) partic. past цвѣт-шій.

*Exceptions:* Класть, to put (root клад) ; partic. past кла-в-шій and not кладшій.

Красть, to steal (root крад) ; partic. past кра-в-шій and not крадшій.

A crying child.	Плачущее дитя.
The following number.	Слѣдующій нумеръ.
A practising physician.	Практикующій докторъ.

OBS. 3.—Active participles standing before a substantive are, as in English, used as qualifying adjectives, but these participles in Russian cannot take the form of an indeclinable adjective, *i.e.* they cannot be apocopated or used in place of the predicate.

Thus English participles used with the verb 'to be' are rendered in Russian either by the indicative or by an adjective, as :

The child is crying.	Дитя плачетъ.
The book is interesting.	Книга занимательна.

Obs. 4.—Participles are declined like adjectives, agreeing with the substantive to which they refer in gender, number and case.

I spoke to the woman who sells flowers.

People that have money easily acquire friends.

They gave alms to the beggar-woman, standing at the church-door.

Do you see the man carrying (who carries) the sack ?

The boy reading (who reads) with attention is my brother.

Я говорю съ женщиною, продающею цветы.

Люди, имѣющие деньги, легко приобретаютъ друзей,

Онѣ подали милостыню нищей, стоявшей у церковныхъ дверей.

Видите ли человека, несущаго (который несётъ) мѣшокъ.

{ Мальчикъ, читающій (который читаетъ) со вниманіемъ, мой братъ.  
Читающій со вниманіемъ мальчикъ, мой братъ.

Obs. 5.—The participle is always separated from its antecedent by a comma, as :

The man sleeping.

The woman who was speaking.

Человѣкъ, спящій.

Женщина, говорившая.

Obs. 6.—English participles preceded by a possessive pronoun or any preposition cannot be rendered in Russian by a participle, but must be expressed either by a substantive, or by a verb in the infinitive or indicative mood :

I do not believe in his coming.

He saved himself by swimming across the river.

He has decided upon writing it.

I am quite tired of talking.

Since my writing to him.

Besides his being poor.

{ Я не вѣрю его приходу.

{ Я не вѣрю тому что онъ придѣтъ.

Онъ спасся тѣмъ что переплылъ рѣку.

Онъ рѣшился написать это.

Я утомился говорить.

Съ тѣхъ поръ какъ я написалъ ему.

{ Кромѣ его бѣдности.

{ Кромѣ того что онъ бѣденъ.

They punished him for not going  
there.

Do you like walking?

I like riding.

Его наказали за то что онъ не по-  
шёлъ туда.

{ Любите ли гулянье?  
Любите гулять?

{ Я люблю ѣздить верхомъ.  
Я люблю ѣзду верхомъ.

The termination *ся* in the active participle of reflective  
verbs is never abridged into *сь*:

People returning from the field.  
The wheel turning round its axle.

Люди, возвращающіеся съ поля.  
Колесо, обращающееся вокругъ своей  
оси.

Rather,

She said she would rather not speak  
to her.

We would rather stay here.

Лучше, охотнѣе.

Она сказала что лучше желала бы  
не говорить съ ней.

Мы лучше (ог охотнѣе) бы остались  
здѣсь.

To ache; }  
To be ill, }  
It pains,

Болѣть.

Боли́тъ.

Obs. 7.—‘I have,’ followed by a noun expressing that the  
part of the body signified by it is affected by pain or illness,  
is rendered in Russian by *у меня*, and not by *я имѣю*:

I have a head-ache.

My head aches.

I have a tooth-ache.

My tooth aches.

I have a pain in my chest.

My heart aches.

I have a pain in my side.

She is often ill.

My feet ache.

My arms were aching.

У меня головная боль.

У меня голова боли́тъ.

У меня зубная боль.

У меня зубъ боли́тъ.

{ У меня грудь боли́тъ.

{ У меня боль въ груди́.

У меня сердце боли́тъ.

У меня бокъ боли́тъ.

Она часто болѣетъ.

У меня ноги боли́тъ.

У меня руки боли́ли.

## Sore,

## Больной, (болѣть).

I have a sore throat.

{ У меня болѣе горло.

He has a sore foot.

{ У меня горло болитъ.

I have sore eyes.

У него больная нога.

My eyes ache.

У меня больные глаза.

У меня глаза болятъ.

The pain, боль, f.

Disease, } болѣзнь, f.

Complaint, }

Indisposition, нездоровье.

He is much better.

She is much worse.

The headache, головная боль.

The earache, ушная боль.

Unwell, poorly, нездоровый.

The toothache, зубная боль.

Ему гораздо лучше.

Ей гораздо хуже.

He is richer than I by far.

Онъ богаче меня многимъ.

Obs. 8.—The word 'by' when used in English after a comparative to denote how much a thing exceeds another is expressed in Russian by the instrumental case :

My sister is taller than I by the whole head.

Моя сестра выше меня цѣлой головой.

I am older than you by two years.

Я старѣе васъ двумя годами.

I am taller than you by two inches.

Я выше васъ двумя дюймами.

## Pale (in the face),

## Блѣденъ лицомъ.

Any particular quality, quantity, measure, etc., possessed by an object is rendered in Russian by a noun in the instrumental case.

Strongly built.

Крѣпокъ сложеніемъ.

He is kind hearted.

Онъ добръ душою.

Rich in remembrances.

Богатъ воспоминаніями.

A house ten yards high.

Домъ вышиною въ десять ярдовъ.

A plank an inch thick.

Доска толщиною въ дюймъ.

He is as tall as I.	}	Онъ рѣстомъ съ менѣ.
He is of my height.		
Good-looking.		Хорошъ собѣю.
Bad-looking, ugly.		Дуренъ собѣю.

To run out, to flow out, вытекать.	To belong, принадлежать.
To run into, to flow into, впадать.	To dress, одѣвать.
To stand, стоять.	To dress oneself, одѣваться.
To be reflected, отражаться ; perf. asp. отразиться.	
I am shorter than he.	Я ниже его ростомъ.
He is taller than I.	Онъ выше меня ростомъ.

## EXERCISE LXXXI.

Who are these young ladies ?—These young ladies walking in the garden are the sisters of that young man going into the field.—Is the horse standing there under the tree a good one ?—It is much better than the one standing by (y) the well.—Who has gone in the country ?—The young officers who came here yesterday from abroad.—Which Russian Czar always liberally rewarded his servants ?—Peter the Great always liberally rewarded men that served him faithfully.—Which pupil did the master punish ?—He only punished the pupil that did not know his lesson.—Is it true that the Volga, which flows into the Caspian Sea, runs out of a lake and not from the hills ?—The river Volga, which runs out of the lake Ciliger (Селенга), flows into the Caspian Sea.—Which is the most important river in the south of Russia ?—The rivers Dnieper and Bug are the most important.—Give this crying child a little milk and (with) sugar.—Does everybody prefer glory to money ?—There are people that prefer money to glory.—Do you want to go with me to the theatre ?—No, we would rather go for a walk.—The rays of the rising sun are reflected in the clear waters of the lake as in a looking glass.—Which clerk did

you order to write the letters?—I ordered the clerk who lives in my brother's house.—Tell the children who are dressing in the nursery that it is time for them to go to school.—Where does the laundress live that brought us the linen?—She lives in the house belonging to my nephew. Who is going abroad to-morrow?—The rich officer who married the sister of our neighbour Mrs. B.—Will the countess's niece who is going to marry the brave colonel be with you to-morrow?—Only her aunt, the countess who last year married the rich prince, will be with us to-morrow.

#### EXERCISE LXXXII.

Has she decided upon going with you in the country? Yes, she is going with us, but abroad and not in the country.—Do you believe in his being the most diligent pupil in the school?—No, I do not believe it.—Did you tell the children walking in the garden with their master, that it is time for them to come into the room?—Yes, I told them.—Walking in the fields is pleasanter than walking in the streets.—Do you like reading?—Yes, I like reading and drawing.—What is the matter with this child? It has sore eyes.—What is the matter with you?—I have a pain in the back.—Have you the toothache?—Yes, I have the toothache.—Why did you not come to us yesterday? Because I had a headache.—Why do you walk so slowly? Because I have pains in my feet; I was walking about the town the whole of yesterday.—How old is your friend? He is older than I by five or six years.—How many years is your brother younger than you?—He is three years younger than I, he is the youngest in our family.—Is your sister writing?—No, she is not.—Why does she not write?



Because she has a sore hand.—Why does not your nephew go out?—Because he has sore feet.—What is the matter with your aunt?—She has a pain in her cheek.—Is your house as high as that one?—My house is higher than that one by a great deal.—You are very pale (in the face) to-day, Countess, are you unwell?—I am worse to-day; I have a sore throat and a pain in my side.—How is your niece? Thank you, she is better.—Is your brother taller or shorter than you?—He is much shorter than I.—Is the colonel's wife good-looking?—She was good-looking when she was a little younger.—Who may hope to receive reward?—The pupils learning diligently and obeying their masters will be rewarded.—Tell the boy dressing in the nursery that his master wishes to see him.—The master who wished to speak to the boy, has gone away long ago.—Which banker has bought these large forests?—The banker who married the Baroness's daughter two years ago.

#### FORTY-FIRST LESSON.—Сорокъ пёрвый Урёкъ.

##### OF THE PASSIVE PARTICIPLE.

##### О Причáстїи Страдательномъ.

Passive participles are formed from active verbs only. As verbal adjectives they have both the declinable and indeclinable forms, the latter being used with the auxiliary verb *быть*, 'to be,' to form passive verbs.

The passive participle combines the meaning of the relative pronoun *который*, 'who,' 'which' or *что*, 'which,' 'that,' and the verb it is derived from, as :

The book (which is) read by me  
(which I read).

Children (who are) loved by their  
parents.

{ Кнѣга, читáемая мною.

{ Кнѣга, которóую я читáю.

Дѣти, любѣмые своѣими родѣтелями.

Obs. 1.—The subject in a passive sentence is put in the instrumental case.

The passive participle as part of the verb has two tenses, the present and past.

A. The declinable present participle passive denotes a duration of the action, and is formed from the first person plural of the present indicative by changing the termination *мъ* into *мый*, feminine *мая*, neuter *мое*:

Чита́емъ, we read ; чита́емый, read, which is being read.

Дѣла́емъ, we do ; дѣла́емый, done (usually), which is being done.

The indeclinable present participle ends in *мъ*, feminine *ма*, neuter *мо* :

The book is read.

Кни́га чита́ема.

The child was loved.

Дети́ были́ любимо́.

The mother was loved.

Ма́ть была́ любима́.

They were loved.

Они́ были́ любими́.

The book will be read.

Кни́га бу́детъ чита́ема.

The houses will be built.

Дома́ бу́дутъ стро́имы.

Passive participles ending in *емый* (indeclinable *емъ*) are formed from verbs of the first four classes, as :

Чита́ю, I read ; чита́емый, read.

Пи́шу, I write ; пи́емый, written.

Participles in *омый*, are formed from verbs of the fifth, sixth, seventh and eighth classes, having the first person singular in *у*, preceded by a radical consonant or by *н* :

Зову́, I call ; зово́мый, called.

Веду́, I lead ; ведо́мый, lead.

Жну́, I mow ; жно́мый, mown.

Тяну́, I draw ; тяно́мый, drawn.

Participles in *имый*, are formed from verbs of the second conjugation, *i.e.* from the ninth and tenth classes :

Люблѣ, I love ; любимый, loved.

Вѣжу, I see ; вѣдимый, seen.

Passive participles are declined like adjectives, and agree with their antecedent in gender, number, and case :

Letters received by us always contain pleasant news.

Письма, получаемыя нами всегда содержатъ въ себѣ пріятныя извѣстія.

We have already answered the letters received by us from our parents.

Мы уже отвѣтили на письма, полученные нами отъ нашихъ родителей.

The past passive participle denotes an accomplished action, and is formed from the past tense by changing *лъ*, into *ный*, *тый* (indeclinable *нъ*, *тъ*) :

Читалъ, I have read ; читанный, read, which has been read.

Я теръ, I rubbed ; тертый, rubbed.

Obs. 2.—Participles in *тый*, *тъ*, are formed from verbs of the third, sixth and eighth classes, and from some monosyllabic verbs of the first class :

Колѣлъ, I pricked ; колотый, pricked.

Жалъ, I squeezed ; жатый, squeezed.

Тянулъ, I drew ; тянутый, drawn.

Мылъ, I washed ; мытый, washed.

Билъ, to beat ; битый, beaten.

Obs. 3.—In forming the past participle from dissyllabic and polysyllabic verbs the tonic accent must be replaced, as :

Читалъ, I read ; чита<sup>а</sup>нъ, read.

Писалъ, I wrote ; писа<sup>а</sup>нъ, written.

Тянулъ, I drew ; тяну<sup>а</sup>тъ, drawn.

In forming the past participle from the infinitive the following rules are to be observed:

Participles in **тый, ть**, are formed from verbs having for their final letter of the root either one of the liquids **л, н, р**, or the vowels **я, и, ѣ, у, ы**:

Кол-ѣть, to prick;	past partic. колѣ-ть.
Прин-ѣть, to receive;	. . . приня-ть.
Бѣ-ть, to beat;	. . . бѣ-ть.
Мы-ть, to wash;	. . . мы-ть.
Пѣ-ть, to sing;	. . . пѣ-ть.

And also from all verbs ending in **нѣть**:

Гнѣть, to bend;	past partic. гнѣть.
Двѣнѣть, to move;	. . . двѣнѣть.

All other verbs form their past participle in **ный, нъ**:

Звать, to call;	past partic. званъ.
Сѣять, to sow;	. . . сѣянъ.
Везти, to carry;	. . . везенъ.

Some few verbs of the first and eighth classes have a double termination in the past participle, *i.e.* **ть** and **нъ**, the latter not being used in ordinary conversation:

Бѣть, to beat;	past partic. бѣть and бѣнъ.
Дѣуть, to blow;	. . . дѣуть and дѣуновѣть.

Past participles in **нъ**, when changed into the declinable form take an additional **н**, before the termination, as:

Чѣтанъ, read;	decl. form. чѣтанный.
Сѣянъ, sown;	. . . сѣянный.
Сказанъ, told;	. . . сказанный.

Obs. 4.—Verbs of the seventh and eighth classes follow the above rule in compound verbs only, as:

Вѣдѣть, lead; вѣденый—привѣденный.

Стрижень, shorn ; стриженный—стриженный.

Цѣненъ, valued ; цѣненный—оцѣненный.

Любленъ, loved ; любленный—возлюбленный.

Each, every,                      Каждый, distributive.

Every (sort),                    Всякій, collective.

Obs. 5.—Каждый answers the question 'who?' 'what?'  
and всякій the question 'what kind, or sort?'

Each one must think of him self.

Why do you not give a book to each  
of them?

Because each of them has one.

Каждый долженъ заботиться о себѣ.

Отчего вы не даёте по книгѣ каждо-  
му изъ нихъ?

Потому что у каждого есть книга.

Else,

Nobody else, no one else.

Something else.

Никой, другой.

{ Никто никакой.

{ Никто другой.

{ Чтонибудь иное.

{ Чтонибудь другое.

In,

In a week.

In two days.

Черезъ (with the acc.).

Черезъ недѣлю.

Черезъ два дня.

He who—that,

She who—that,

Тотъ, который.

Та, которая.

Did you write to the same man that  
I did?

I wrote to him whom you ordered  
me to write to.

Написали вы тому, которому я на-  
писалъ?

Я написалъ тому, которому вы при-  
казали мнѣ написать.

Back,

. To come back,

Назадъ.

{ Возвращаться.

{ Возвратиться, perf. asp.

Do you come back?

I come back.

I will give it to him who will come  
back.

Возвращаетесь вы?

Я возвращаюсь.

Я дамъ это тому, который возвра-  
тится.

To count, to calculate,

Считать, gov. the acc. perf.

аср. сосчитать.

To consider (to think),

Считать, gov. the instr.

They are counting the trees in the garden.

Они считаютъ деревья въ саду.

We consider him an honest man.

Мы считаемъ его честнымъ человекомъ.

Whole, entire (perfect),

Цѣлый, весь.

All our tumblers are perfect.

Всѣ наши стаканы цѣлы.

We saw at his house a whole bottle of wine.

Мы видѣли у него цѣлую бутылку вина.

In the whole town you will not find such wines as we have.

Въ цѣломъ городѣ не сыщите такихъ винъ, какъ у насъ.

A broken glass.

Разбитое стекло.

Soon, quickly, fast,

Скоро.

The spring will come soon.

Скоро наступитъ весна.

He was walking so fast that we could not follow him.

Онъ шёлъ такъ скоро, что мы не могли слѣдовать за нимъ.

To leave, оставлять ;

perf. asp. оставить.

To invite, приглашать ;

. . . пригласить.

To touch, трогать ;

. . . тронуть.

To print, печатать ;

. . . напечатать.

To ornament, украшать ;

. . . украсить.

To build, строить ;

. . . построить.

To arm, вооружать ;

. . . вооружить.

To cast, выливать ;

. . . вылить.

To call, to name, называть ;

. . . назвать.

To sell, продавать ;

. . . продать.

To erect, воздвигать ;

. . . воздвигнуть.

To reward, награждать ; governs the acc. and the instr.

### EXERCISE LXXXIII.

To whom were presented the books, bought by your brother?—They were given to the most diligent pupil.

Who gave you this figure of a dog cast in (нзѣ) bronze. This figure of a dog cast in bronze was given to me by a rich foreigner.—By whom was it sold to him?—I do not know.—Did they bring (привести) already the horses bought yesterday at the horse-mart?—The horses of which you speak are not yet brought, but the horse bought of the rich peasant is already brought.—What books did they buy? They bought a few books ornamented with drawings.—Is the drink prepared from rye sweet?—No, it is sour, but it is a very wholesome drink.—When did you receive the letters sent by me yesterday?—I received them to-day early in the morning.—Have you seen Alexander's column? Yes, I have, on the top of this column, erected in honour of the Emperor Alexander the First, stands an angel cast in bronze.—Are you acquainted with the foreigners invited by me to dinner?—I do not know the foreigners invited by you.—Where were the stolen goods found?—They were found in the locksmith's house.—Where were these books printed?—At B. D's., at St. Petersburg.—By whom are the diligently learning children loved and rewarded?—The children learning diligently are loved and rewarded by the kind master.—Was this lady-pupil rewarded last year? Yes, she was rewarded for good behaviour.—What did they reward her with?—They rewarded her with a book.

#### EXERCISE LXXXIV.

Have the letters been received by them?—They were received long ago.—By whom were they sent?—They were sent by my nephew.—Were the letters printed or written? They were written by the clerk of my nephew, who sent them.—By whom were you received?—We were received

by the amiable hostess.—Did they give each of these soldiers some money?—Some money was given to all the soldiers. By whom was the money given?—By the brave colonel. Will your brother return from the country soon?—He will be back to-morrow.—He who writes (will write) an exercise without any fault shall be rewarded.—Have you ever seen the emperor?—We never saw him.—What were you doing the whole morning?—I was reading the whole morning. Are the panes of the window in your room unbroken? Only one pane is broken, all the others are perfect.—When will your family return from abroad?—They (it) will be back in a fortnight.—By whom is this likeness drawn? It is drawn by a celebrated painter.—What was broken? The tumbler and the wine-glass were broken.—Was there anything else broken?—There was nothing else broken. Which fortresses were built by our kind king?—No fortress as yet has been built by him.—Are brick houses as warm as wooden ones?—Houses built of wood are much warmer than those built of brick.—Was the bride dressed well? She was in a dress made of white satin, all her lady-companions (friends) were also beautifully dressed.—What a tall man that is!—Yes, he is very tall.—Which of these two sisters do you think the prettier?—She who is more like her mother, the elder.

---

#### FORTY-SECOND LESSON.—Сорокъ второй Урокъ.

##### OF THE GERUND.—О дѣпричастіи.

Besides the participles, or verbal adjectives, there are also the gerunds, or verbal adverbs, formed from verbs. These



express the circumstances accompanying the action, and for this reason are classed among the adverbs:

When did you meet him ?	Когда вы встрѣтили его?
I met him going to the garden.	Идучи въ садъ, я встрѣтилъ его.
How was he reading ? (in what position.)	Какъ (въ какомъ положеніи) читалъ онъ ?
He was reading sitting.	Онъ читалъ сѣдя.
Were you also reading sitting ?	Читали ли вы тоже сѣдя ?
No, I was reading at one time standing and at another lying down.	Нѣтъ, я читалъ то стоя, то лёжа.

Gerunds, like participles, are active or passive, and generally combine the meaning of the action expressed by the verb and that of the conjunction: когда, 'when;' пока, 'while;' между тѣмъ какъ, 'whilst;' послѣ того какъ, 'after,' and such like; thus, the verb сѣдѣлъ, 'I was sitting,' in the following phrases,

Я читалъ когда сѣдѣлъ.	Whilst I was seated I was reading.
Я говорилъ въ то время какъ стоялъ.	I spoke at the time I was standing.

may be just as well rendered by the gerund сѣдя, 'sitting,' as:

Сѣдя, я читалъ.	I was reading sitting.
Стоя, я говорилъ.	I spoke standing.

A. Active gerunds have no gender or number, but only inflexions to mark the present or past tense.

The present gerund expresses an action that is commenced and still continues, and is formed from the third person plural of the present indicative by changing the termination into *я* or *ючи* (ючи), as:

Дѣлають, they do ; дѣлая, дѣляючи, doing (whilst they do).  
Говорятъ, they say ; говоря, saying (when they say).

Gerunds in я are formed by changing the termination ють, ять into я, as :

Читають, they are reading ; чита́я, reading (when they read).  
Лю́бятъ, they love ; любя́, loving (when they love).

Obs. 1.—The termination я, when preceded by ж, ч, ш or щ, is changed into а, as :

Держать, they hold ; держ-а́, holding.  
Плачу́тъ, they cry ; плач-а́, crying.  
Спѣшатъ, they hurry ; спѣш-а́, hurrying.

The terminations ючи, учи, of gerunds are derived from ють, уть by changing ть into чи, as :

Дѣлають, they do ; дѣлаючи, doing.  
Пишутъ, they write ; пишучи, writing.

Obs. 2.—The gerunds of verbs ending in нуть want the termination я, and have only the form in учи, as :

Зѣбнуть, to feel cold ; зѣбучи, feeling cold.  
Сохнуть, to be drying ; сохнучи, drying.  
Тонуть, to sink ; тонучи, sinking.  
Тянуть, to draw ; тянучи, drawing.

On the other hand the gerunds of verbs having the third person plural in ять, ать, have not the form in ючи, учи, but in я (а) only, as :

Велѣтъ, they order ; велѣ́я, ordering.  
Цѣнятъ, they value ; цѣня́я, valuing.  
Лю́бятъ, they love ; любя́я, loving.

NOTE.—The termination я, in gerunds of verbs of perf. asp. denotes an accomplished action, as :

Уви́дя, after having seen. | Покло́нѣя, having bowed.

The past gerund denotes that the action was just completed when another began, and is formed from the past participle active by changing *шій*, into *ъ*, as :

Говорившій, { speaking ; } говоривъ, after having spoken.  
 { he who spoke ; }  
 Читавшій, { reading ; } читавъ, having read.  
 { he who read ; }

Obs. 3.—The termination *ъ*, used chiefly in literature, in ordinary conversation is superseded by the termination *ши*, as :

Говоривши, having spoken ; instead of говоривъ.  
 Любивши, having loved ; . . . любивъ.

After having written the letter I sealed it (I sealed the letter when I had written it).

Написавъ письмо, я запечаталъ его (я запечаталъ письмо когда написалъ его).

Wishing to sell his horse, he took it to the market ; but finding no buyer, he brought it back.

Желая продать свою лошадь, онъ повёлъ её на рынокъ, но не найдши ни одного покупателя, привёлъ её обратно.

Having sent the letters to the post, they went out.

Отправивши (отправивъ) письма на почту, они вышли со двора.

The past gerund of reflexive verbs takes the termination *вши* and not *въ* before *сь* (*ся*), as :

Having become, дѣлавшись, not дѣлавсь.  
 Having learnt, учившись, not учивсь.

B. The passive gerund has a compound form, being formed by adding the participle passive to the gerunds *бѣдучи*, 'being,' and *бывъ* (*бывши*) 'having been,' of the auxiliary verb *быть*, 'to be,' as :

Present, Бѣдучи, { читаемъ, } being read.  
 { читаютъ, }

Past, Бывъ читанъ, having been read.

Obs. 4.—The passive gerunds are little used in the Russian language of the present day.

Each other,	}	Другъ друга.
One another,		

Obs. 5.—The pronouns *each other* and *one another* are expressed by другъ друга, другъ другу, etc. The first of these two words is always in the nominative; hence, if there be any preposition in English, it must be put between them in Russian.

They love each other.

Онѣ любятъ другъ друга.

They treated each other politely.

Онѣ обходились другъ съ другомъ  
вѣжливо.

They spoke evil of each other.

Онѣ говорили дурно другъ о другѣ.

To try (to attempt),

Пытаться, попытаться.

To try (to test),

Пробовать, попробовать.

More than once I tried to get permission.

Не разъ ужъ я пытался получить  
позволеніе.

He attempted to speak to her.

Онъ пытался говорить съ нею.

We tried the new wine, but it was not to our taste.

Мы пробовали новое вино, но оно  
намъ не по вкусу.

I cannot possibly,

Мнѣ невозможно.

Possibly,

Возможно.

Could you come to me to-morrow?

Возможно ли вамъ прійти ко мнѣ  
завтра?

I cannot possibly.

Мнѣ невозможно.

To knock against, at,

Стучать, стучаться въ (with  
the acc.).

To knock at the door.

Стучаться въ дверь.

He knocked at the window.

Онъ постучался въ окно.

Against,	О, объ.
I knocked my elbow against the corner of the table.	Я ушибъ себѣ локоть объ уголѣ стола.
He stumbled against the door-step.	Онъ споткнулся о порогъ.
To ascend,	Восходить на, with the acc. perf. asp. взойти.
They ascended this hill twice.	Онѣ восходили на эту гору два раза.
Have they already ascended the hill?	Взошли ли онѣ уже на гору?
No, they are at the foot of the hill.	Нѣтъ, онѣ у подошвы горы.
To weep, плакать.	To sob, рыдать.
Lamentation, плачь.	The sobbing, sob, рыданіе.
To take leave of.	Прощаться съ (with the inst.).
To speak ill of.	Говорить дурно о.
To go to war.	Уходить на войну.
On a visit.	Съ визитомъ.
Departure, отъѣздъ.	Arrival, пріѣздъ.
To learn, узнавать; perf. asp. узнать.	
To see (to have an interview with).	Видаться съ, повидаться съ (with the instrumental).

## EXERCISE LXXXV.

Where is her pretty little sister?—She is in the garden, sitting on a little bench, and is reading the little book given her by our kind master.—Why are you not with her? After having learnt my lessons, and having asked the permission of the master, I will also go to the garden.—Will you come back soon?—After reading a few fables and walking a little we will come back.—When will you return me my book?—After having read it, I will return it to you immediately.—Whom is he seeking?—His master, but, not seeing him, he is coming back.—Are all the clerks in

his office writing sitting?—No, some write standing.—May we go into the garden?—No, you cannot go there, because there was pouring rain the whole of the morning, and now it is very dirty in the garden.—Did they go for a walk knowing that I did not give them permission?—No, they went thinking that you would allow them to do so.—Do you expect the same tailor that I do?—Yes, I expect him whom you expect.—Did the mother speak to her son who was going to the war?—No, she only embraced and kissed him, weeping and sobbing bitterly.—Was the sister of the young soldier going to the war joyful?—No, taking leave of him, she also wept bitterly.—Who is there, knocking at the door?—It is the servant whom you sent for the wine. Does he know that whilst speaking ill of his acquaintances he also speaks ill of himself.—No, not knowing this he spoke ill of his acquaintances.—Which of you has most pencils?—He has most, he has three more than I.

#### EXERCISE LXXXVI.

Did you see (have you had an interview with) the Count and the Countess B?—Yes, having learnt of their arrival I went to them on a visit, but had to come back without seeing or (and) speaking to them.—Did your brother send the wine back to the merchant?—Yes, my brother after trying the wine found that it was bad, and, calling the servant, ordered him to take it back to the merchant. What did you forget to say?—In ordering him to write these letters I forgot to tell him that they must be sent to the Post-Office immediately.—Wishing to make a present to my brother, but not knowing the place of his abode he wrote to me, asking me to tell him where my brother

lived.—Is your tea strong?—After trying it I will tell you.—Did he buy a horse?—Yes, after selling his best cow, he bought a grey horse.—After punishing her son the mother wept herself.—Is the merchant honest?—One could not call him dishonest, but, in selling his goods, he never forgets his interests.—Is the view from the hill fine? After ascending the hill you will see the town surrounded by flourishing meadows and gardens.—Are they often at each other's houses?—They often go to one another.—Did you laugh at each other?—No, on the contrary, we were very polite to one another.—Why did you not come to us the day before yesterday?—I had a severe head-ache, and I could not possibly come.

---

#### FORTY-THIRD LESSON.—Сорокъ трѣтій Урокъ.

All persons of the present indicative are formed from the third person plural present in the following way :

A. Verbs, having the third person plural in *ютъ* or *утъ*, form the first person singular by cutting off *тъ* :

*Зна́-ютъ*, they know ; *зна́-ю*, I know.

*Бер-у́тъ*, they take ; *бер-у́*, I take.

The second and third singular, and the first and second persons plural are formed by changing *ютъ* or *утъ* into *ешь*, *еть*, *емъ*, *ете* :

*Зна́-ютъ*, they know ; *зна́ешь*, thou knowest ; *зна́еть*, etc.

*Бер-у́тъ*, they take ; *бер-ёшь*, thou takest ; *бер-ётъ*, etc.

B. Verbs, having the third person plural in *ятъ* or *атъ*,

form the first person singular by changing *ятъ* into *ю*, and *атъ* into *у* :

Стрѣ-ятъ, they build ; стрѣ-ю, I build.

Крич-атъ, they cry ; крич-у, I cry.

The second and third person, and the first and second person plural, are formed by changing *ятъ* or *атъ* into *ишь*, *итъ*, *имъ*, *ите* :

Вел-ишь, they order ; вел-ишь, thou orderest ; вел-ишь, etc.

Крич-ишь, they cry ; крич-ишь, thou cryest ; кричишь, etc.

OBS. 1.—The past tense preceded by *if* or *whether* is rendered in Russian by the present with the particle *ли*, as :

They wanted to know if we were going there. Онѣ хотѣли знать идѣмъ ли мы туда.

We doubted whether he really often invited him. Мы сомнѣвались, дѣйствительно ли онъ часто приглашаетъ его.

#### OF THE POTENTIAL AND SUBJUNCTIVE.

The potential and subjunctive moods of other languages are rendered in Russian by adding the particle *бы* to the past tense indicative :

I would (or should) have.

Я имѣлъ бы.

Would she have ?

Имѣла ли бы она ?

I should have written if I had any paper.

Я написалъ бы, если бы была у меня бумага.

The particle *бы* gives emphasis to the word it follows, as :

He would write to you if he were allowed. Онъ бы написалъ вамъ, если бы ему позволили.

He would write to you, but to me he would not. Онъ вамъ бы написалъ, но мнѣ бы не написалъ.

He would have written to you a letter, but not have sent any money. Письмо бы онъ написалъ, но денегъ не послалъ бы.

He would have written to you if he could. Онъ написалъ бы вамъ если бы могъ.



That, to, Чтóбы.

Obs. 2.—The potential is expressed in Russian also by the particle чтóбы, (Slavonic дабы), added to the past tense of the indicative :

I wish that you would go with us.	Я желаю чтóбы вы пошлѣи съ нами.
He sent his son money that he might buy a horse.	Онъ послалъ своему сыну денегъ, чтóбы онъ купилъ себѣ лошадь.
He wanted her to write.	Онъ желалъ чтóбы она писала.

Obs. 3.—The past tense in subjunctive form expresses often the present and future tenses, as :

I should like now to have a talk with you.	Я теперь желалъ бы (pres.) поговорить съ вами.
Oh, would that the day came at last.	Ахъ, если бы скорѣе день насталъ (fut.).

The particle бы can be added to the past tense of each of the aspects, as :

<i>Imperfect Aspect</i> . . .	Я кидалъ бы, I would be throwing.
<i>Perfect Aspect</i> . . .	Я выкидалъ бы, I would have thrown out.
<i>Iterative Aspect</i> . . .	Я кидалъ бы, I would throw (repeatedly).
<i>Perf. Asp. of Unity</i> . .	Я кинулъ бы, I would throw (once), etc.

Obs. 4.—The subjunctive form of the verb is often superseded in Russian by the imperative, which in such case does not agree in person with the subject, as :

Were I now in the country I should not be now under treatment.	Будь я (если бы я былъ) теперь въ деревнѣ, лечиться мнѣ не пришлось бы.
Had he spoken always the truth he would be trusted now.	Говори онъ (если бы онъ говорилъ) всегда правду, ему повѣрили бы теперь.

Obs. 5.—*Should, would* and other auxiliaries of the

potential mood are rendered by *бы*, in conjunction with the verb :

He would go out if the weather were fine.

I should purchase that picture if I had enough money.

Had we known it.

Had they seen me.

Had I riches I should be happy.

Онъ вышелъ бы изъ дому еслибы погода была хорошая.

Я купилъ бы ту картину если бы у меня было довольно денегъ.

{ Знали бы мы это ?

{ Если бы мы знали это.

Видели бы они меня ?

Будь я (если бы я былъ) богатъ, то былъ бы счастливъ.

Ought, should,

{ Долженъ.

{ Следует, impersonal verb  
(with the dative).

I ought to write, but I have no paper.

Я долженъ бы былъ (мнѣ следовало бы) писать, да нѣтъ у меня бумаги.

He ought to have written.

Ему следовало бы написать.

I May (perhaps),

Можетъ быть.

Obs. 6.—*May* and *might*, implying eventuality, are rendered by *можетъ быть*.

I may go if he come.

Я можетъ быть пойду если онъ придѣтъ.

I might go if he came.

{ Я пошелъ бы, если бы онъ пришелъ.  
{ Я можетъ быть пошелъ бы, если бы онъ пришелъ.

Then, To (тогда).

Obs. 7.—The word *then*, to, in a principal preceded by a conditional clause is more frequently expressed in Russian than in English, as :

If he had known him, *then* he would have spoken to him.

Если бы онъ былъ знакомъ съ нимъ, то поговорилъ бы съ нимъ.

Had she pleased him he would have  
married her.

Shall we find him at home?

We shall if we come in time.

He would not come even if you  
called him.

Alone, by one's self,

Has she been there alone all day?

She was quite alone.

He is by himself.

For the first time,

For the last time,

Really, indeed,

He is indeed very kind.

Itself,

The linen itself is good, but very  
dear.

The same,

He speaks always to the same man.

The very same,

To remember,

To recollect, to think of,

To recall to mind,

Grateful people remember good  
done to them.

We often think of your kindnesses.

He suddenly remembered he had  
to go out, and left off working.

Если бы она ему поправилась, то  
онъ женился бы на ней.

Застанемъ ли мы его дома?

Да, если прийдёмъ во время.

Онъ не пришёлъ бы, если бы дажъ  
вы его позвали.

Одѣнь.

Была ли она тамъ цѣлый день одна?

Она была совершенно одна.

Онъ одѣнь.

Въ первый разъ.

Въ послѣдній разъ.

Въ самомъ дѣлѣ.

Онъ въ самомъ дѣлѣ очень добръ.

Самъ по себѣ.

Полотно само по себѣ хорошее, да  
очень дорого.

Одѣнь и тотъ же.

Онъ всегда говоритъ съ однимъ и  
тѣмъ же человекомъ.

Совершенно—точно—тотъ  
самый.

Помнить.

Вспоминать.

Вспомнить, perf. asp.

Благодарные люди помнятъ сдѣ-  
ланное имъ добро.

Мы часто вспоминаемъ о вашихъ ми-  
лостяхъ.

Онъ вдругъ вспомнилъ, что ему нуж-  
но выйти и перестать работать.

To understand, { Понимать.  
Понять, perfect aspect.

*Imperfect Aspect.*

Я понимаю, I understood ;  
Мы понимали, we understood ;  
Я буду, ты будешь, etc. понимать,  
I will understand ;  
Мы будемъ понимать, we will under-  
stand, etc. ;  
Понимай, понимайте, understand ;

*Perfect Aspect.*

Я понял.  
Мы поняли.  
Я пойму, ты поймёшь, etc.  
Мы поймёмъ, вы поймёте, etc.  
Пойми, поймите.

To lend, Ссужать, perf. asp. ссудить  
(with the instr. c.).

He lent him some money.  
He always lends us money.

Онъ ссудилъ его деньгами.  
Онъ всегда ссужаетъ насъ деньгами.

To perish, { Гибнуть,  
Погибнуть, perfect aspect.  
For, against, На (govern the accusative).

Obs. 8.—In answer to the question “for how long,” *for* is translated на :

We have bought bread for the whole week.

Мы купили хлѣба на цѣлую недѣлю.

They prepared firewood against the winter.

Онѣ приготовили дровъ на зиму.

To feed, кормить.

To provide, заготовить.

Not to fail, не преминуть.

Without fail, непременно.

Profitable, доходный.

To refuse, { отказывать,  
отказать, p. a.

To trouble, to disturb, беспокоить.

Subjected, подверженный.

Cattle, скотъ.

Columbus, Колумбъ.

Compass, компасъ.

To discover, { открывать,  
открыть, p. a.

## EXERCISE LXXXVII.

Would you buy this profitable estate?—Had I money enough, I would buy it.—Would you read it?—I should not read it.—Should we find him at home now?—You would not find him.—Would there be any doctors and chemists if men were always well?—If men were not subjects to complaints there would be no doctors or chemists. Is your friend going with you into the country?—He ought to go with me, for he is not quite well, and the country air would do him good.—Could cattle live in cold countries without sheds and stables?—Cattle would perish in winter from cold and hunger, had not man built for them good sheds and stables, and provided hay and oats against the winter.—Would your sister invite mine if she could?—If she could she would certainly ask her.—Can not you lend me a few pounds?—I would do it if you had returned me the money I lent you last week.—Had I known that you would refuse my request, I should not have troubled you, but have asked somebody else.—Would you come to me if you knew that he was with me?—If I knew that, I would without fail.—Would not your brother go with us into the country?—He would not.

## EXERCISE LXXXVIII.

Why has God given us two ears and one tongue only? In order that we should listen more and speak less. Ought not the servant to call the children?—It is not necessary.—You should ask him for some books.—If I knew he would not refuse, I would ask.—Were you at the English plays yesterday?—Yes, but had he not come in

good time we should not have been able to go out.—For whom does this swallow catch flies (мóшка)?—For her little ones (прóшка).—Do you know that your little son has caught two sparrows?—Yes, but I do not allow him to catch them.—Would he catch little birds were he allowed to do so?—Yes, he' would.—What would you do if you were allowed to speak?—Were I allowed to speak I would tell all I know of him.—Who discovered America?—Columbus, but he would not have discovered it if he had not known the use of the compass.—For how long did you come here?—We came for a month.—Would he understand it were I to tell it to him?—I recollect your explaining to him the same thing before more than once, but he never could understand it.—You are sad, my friend, what is the matter with you?—I should be merry were I but satisfied.—Would you remain to dine with him if you knew that there would be a good dinner?—No, even then I would not.—Do you not wish he were now with us?—I never wish for what is impossible, for I know he is now abroad.

---

Y

## FORTY-FOURTH LESSON.

С́орокъ четвёртый Уро́къ.

OF THE BRANCHES OF THE VERB.

Отрасли Глаго́ла.

Among the inflexions of the verb, there are three to which all others are subordinate, and which are the bases or roots of three so-called branches.

The first branch has for its root the first person present indicative, from which all the other persons of the present indicative and imperative moods, as also present gerund and participles, are formed.

The root of the second branch is the past tense of the imperfect or perfect aspect, from which are formed the past gerund, the participles and the infinitive mood.

The root of the third branch is the past tense of the iterative aspect.

In the following table are given four verbs exemplifying the foregoing.

THE BRANCHES OF THE VERB.									
FIRST BRANCH.			SECOND BRANCH.				THIRD BRANCH.		
PRESENT AND FUTURE.		PRESENT.		PAST TENSE OF THE IMPERFECT AND PERFECT ASPECT.			ITERATIVE ASPECT.		
Indicative.	Imperat.	Gerund.	Participle.		Verb.	Gerund.	Infinit. Mood.	Passive Partic.	Verb.
			Active.	Passive.					
Читаю, читаешь, etc.	Читай, читайте.	Читая, or читавши.	Читающий, <i>чит. щий,</i> <i>чит. щее.</i>	Читаемый.	Читая, <i>чит. я,</i> <i>чит. я.</i>	Читаю, or читавши.	Читать.	Читая.	читываю.
Веду, ведешь, etc.	Веди, ведите.	Ведя, or ведучи.	Ведущий.	Ведомый.	Веду, веди, ведо.	Веду.	Вести, (вести).	Ведущий.	Важиваю.
Велю, веляшь, etc.	Веди, ведите.	Ведя, or ведучи.	Ведущий.	Ведомый.	Веду, веди, ведо.	Веду.	Вести, (вести).	Ведущий.	Важиваю.
Цѣлю, цѣлишь, etc.	Цѣли, цѣлите.	Цѣля, or цѣлячи.	Цѣлящий.	Цѣлимый.	Цѣлю, цѣли, цѣлю.	Цѣлю.	Цѣлить.	Цѣлящий.	Цѣляю.
Цѣлю, цѣлишь, etc.	Цѣли, цѣлите.	Цѣля, or цѣлячи.	Цѣлящий.	Цѣлимый.	Цѣлю, цѣли, цѣлю.	Цѣлю.	Цѣлить.	Цѣлящий.	Цѣляю.

First Conjugation.

Second Conjugation.



*Of the Future.*—Будущее время.

The future tense of Russian verbs is either compound or simple.

a. The compound future is formed by adding the future of the auxiliary verbs *быть* and *стать* to the infinitive of the verb of imperfect aspect, as :

Я буду пѣть.	I will sing.
Ты будешь пѣть, etc.	Thou wilt sing, etc.
Я стану пѣть.	I will begin singing.
Ты станешь пѣть, etc.	Thou wilt begin singing, etc.

Obs. 1.—The compound future, formed by the help of *стану*, is used to form the future of inchoative verbs, which are of perfect aspect.

b. The simple future has the form of the present, and it follows the same rules as those laid down for the present tense, as :

Сказать, to tell ; скажу, скажешь, etc., I will tell, etc.
Удивить, to astonish ; удивлю, удивишь, etc., I will astonish, etc.
Рѣшить, to decide ; рѣшу, рѣшишь, etc., I will decide, etc.
Пойти, to go ; пойду, пойдёшь, etc., I shall go, etc.

Obs. 2.—Only the verbs of perfect aspect have this future.

I saw a herdsman with fifty calves, ninety oxen and a hundred rams.	Я видѣлъ табунщика съ пятьюде- сятью телѣтами, девяноста бы- ками и ста баранами.
He ordered his forty dragoons to go with those forty uhlans.	Онъ велѣлъ своимъ сорока драгунамъ пойти съ теми сто сорока уланами.

In the compound cardinal numerals *пятьдесятъ*, 'fifty,' *шестьдесятъ*, 'sixty,' *сѣмьдесятъ*, 'seventy,' and *восемьдесятъ* 'eighty,' each part is declined separately, as :

Gen., dat. and prep. *пятидесяти, шестидесяти, etc.*  
Instrumental *пятьюдесятью, шестьюдесятью, etc.*

The numerals девяно́сто, 'ninety,' and сто, 'hundred,' are declined in the singular like substantives in о, viz. genitive, девяно́ста, ста, dative, девяно́сту, сту, etc. The numeral девяно́сто has no plural, and сто has no nominative case in the plural, having in the gen. сотъ, dat. стамъ, etc.

Obs. 3.—The numerals со́рокъ, девяно́сто, and сто, when standing before a substantive, take the inflexion of а in the gen., dat., instr. and prep. cases, as :

Nominative, со́рокъ челове́къ, девяно́сто рублёй, сто кни́гъ.  
 Genitive, сорока́ челове́къ, девяно́ста рублёй, ста кни́гъ.  
 Dative, сорока́ челове́камъ, девяно́ста рублѣмъ, ста кни́гамъ.  
 Instrumental, сорока́ челове́ками, девяно́ста рублѣми, ста кни́гами.  
 Prepositional, сорока́ челове́кахъ, девяно́ста рублѣхъ, ста кни́гахъ.

About,                      Около, gov. the gen.

I had about a hundred roubles.

{ У меня́ было́ около́ ста рублѣй.  
 { У меня́ было́ рублѣй сто.

Obs. 4.—'About' before a numeral is rendered by placing the numeral after the noun :

I have two roubles.

У меня́ два рубля́.

I have about two roubles.

У меня́ есть рублѣ́ два.

Two hundred, двѣ́сти.

Six hundred, шестьсо́тъ.

Three hundred, три́ста.

Seven hundred, семьсо́тъ.

Four hundred, четы́реста.

Eight hundred, восемьсо́тъ.

Five hundred, пятьсо́тъ.

Nine hundred, девятьсо́тъ.

Obs. 5.—In the above compound numerals each part follows its own declension :

Nominative, двѣ́сти, три́ста, etc.

Genitive, двухсо́тъ, трехсо́тъ, etc.

Dative, двумста́мъ, тремста́мъ, etc.

Instrumental, двумя́стами, тремя́стами, etc.

Prepositional, двухста́хъ, трехста́хъ, etc.

Without, } Безъ, gov. the genitive.  
 Save, all but, }

They went without him.

Онѣ пошли безъ него.

There are in this book forty leaves  
all but three.

Въ этой книгѣ сорокъ листовъ безъ  
трёхъ.

It wants, { Недостаётъ, impersonal verb,  
 governs the genitive.  
 Безъ.

It wants three roubles to make up  
ten.

Не достаётъ трёхъ рублей чтобы  
составить десять.

It wants a quarter to three o'clock.

Три часа безъ четверти.

It wants five minutes to five.

Пять часовъ безъ пяти минутъ.

At (of the time), Въ, gov. the acc. and prepos.

At two o'clock.

Въ два часа.

After two o'clock.

Въ третьемъ часу.

Obs. 6.—For the hours the preposition въ governs the accusative case, before the cardinal, and the prepositional before the ordinal numerals.

What time is it ?

Который часъ ?

It is two o'clock.

Два часа.

At what o'clock ?

Въ какомъ часу ?

At two o'clock.

Въ два часа.

After six (in the seventh hour).

Въ седьмомъ часу.

Half-past one.

Половина второго.

Past one o'clock.

Второй часъ.

Five minutes past one.

Пять минутъ второго.

Obs. 7.—The word 'past' before the hour is rendered in Russian by the ordinal numeral of the hour which follows :

At a quarter past two.

Въ четверть третьего.

At twenty minutes past twelve.

Въ двадцать минутъ первого.

To (of the time), Безъ.

Five minutes to two.

Два часа безъ пяти минутъ.

At a quarter to three.

{ Въ три безъ четверти.  
Въ три четверти третьяго.

It wants twenty minutes to ten.

{ Въ десять безъ двадцати минутъ.  
Въ срокъ минутъ десятого.

To strike (of hours),  
It strikes,

Бить, perf. asp. пробить.  
Бьётъ, impers. v. (past било,  
future будетъ бить.

The clock is striking.

Часы бьютъ.

Did the clock strike?

Били ли часы?

It struck five.

Било пять часовъ.

It is going to strike two.

Пробьётъ два часа.

It is but nine at most.

Теперь много что девять часовъ.

At three o'clock precisely.

Ровно въ три часа.

The hour, o'clock,

Часъ.

In how many hours did he get to  
the village?

Во сколько часовъ дошёлъ онъ до  
деревни?

In five hours.

Въ пять часовъ.

At what o'clock did he go out of  
town?

Въ какомъ часу вышелъ онъ изъ  
города?

At five o'clock.

Въ пять часовъ.

By,

За, gov. the instrumental.

One by one,

Одинъ за другимъ.

Hand him the things down one by  
one.

Надавай ему вещи одну за другой.

They went one by one.

Они шли одинъ за другимъ.

To come by,

Приобрѣтать, приобретать.

How did he come by such a large  
fortune?

Какъ приобрѣлъ онъ такое огромное  
состояніе?

He is supposed (they say) to have  
inherited half a million from  
his grandfather.

Говорятъ, что онъ получилъ пол-  
милліона въ наследство отъ сво-  
его дѣда.

To come to, by,	Достигать, достигнуть.
How did he come by this honour?	Какъ достигъ онъ этой чести?
How does he come to be invited?	Какъ достигается онъ приглашенія?

To have occasion,	Нужно, gov. the dative.
Will there be any occasion for him to?	Нужно ли будетъ ему?
There will be no occasion.	Не будетъ нужно.
Was there any occasion for him to write?	Нужно ли было ему писать?

To come to know, }	Узнавать, perf. asp. узнать.
To find out, }	
If he should come to know of it.	Если бы онъ узналъ объ этомъ.
How did you find out where he lives?	Какъ вы узнали гдѣ онъ живётъ?
He was found out.	Его узнали (онъ былъ узнанъ).

At once,	Вдругъ.
Only once, but once,	Только одинъ разъ.
Once again,	Ещё разъ.
We shall go to him only once more.	Мы пойдёмъ къ нему только ещё одинъ разъ.

Single, only, единственный.	Cause, причина.
Capacity, } способность.	Governor, начальникъ.
Artitude, }	To give out, раздавать.
Talent, даръ, талантъ.	To make up, составить.
Gift, даръ.	Old age, старость.
Gifted, одарённый.	Full age, совершеннолѣтіе.

## EXERCISE LXXXIX.

Were there many guests at your neighbour's ball?—There were about thirty persons.—To how many soldiers was the wine given that was sent?—The wine sent by the governor was given to one hundred and forty-five men.

Did all the soldiers like that wine?—No, out of the one hundred and forty-five men, ninety did not like it.—How many men (soldiers) had the colonel who came here with his regiment last week?—The officer who came to our town is not a colonel, but only a captain, and he came here with ninety-five grenadiers and forty dragoons.—How many pieces of red velvet have I to hand you down?—Hand me down about twenty, but one by one.—How many inhabitants are there in Moscow?—There are in Moscow from three to four hundred thousand souls.—How many men are now wanting in your regiment?—There are wanting now three hundred only, but before there were wanting seven hundred.—Will there be any occasion for me to buy a piano?—No, there will be no occasion, your son will learn to play on mine.—Do you think my son will ever be able to play the piano as well as your eldest daughter?—I think he will, because he has an aptitude for it, and is also very diligent.—Were the swords given out to all the seven hundred hussars?—No, of those seven hundred hussars a few only wanted swords.—With how many companions shall you go from school to the forest?—All of us will go to the forest; our four masters with three hundred and sixty-three pupils, and three schoolmistresses with two hundred and forty-three lady pupils.—How many German miles are there from Berlin to St. Petersburg?—About two hundred German miles.

#### EXERCISE XC.

At what o'clock do you go out usually?—I go out usually at nine o'clock in the morning.—What o'clock is it now? I do not know for certain, but I think it must be now already half-past one, or perhaps a quarter to two.—It is

not yet a quarter past two?—Yes, it is almost a quarter. Take this book to him this afternoon at a quarter to two or at ten or even five minutes to two, but I beg that it be not later than two o'clock.—Did you order your coachman to come here to fetch you?—I have no coachman to order, but had I one, I would order him to come at twenty minutes past ten.—Did you stay long at his grandmother's? About two months.—Why did you not stay a little longer? Because the country life in winter is not very pleasant. Was there no other cause?—No, that was the only cause. Did he remain long there?—Till ten minutes past twelve; till half-past twelve.—Will there be any occasion for me to wait?—There will be no occasion for you to wait, as we shall be quite ready at a quarter to four.—Is this little girl his only child?—No, besides her he has also five sons and four daughters.

---

#### FORTY-FIFTH LESSON.—СѢРОКЪ ПЯТЫЙ УРОКЪ.

##### OF THE IMPERATIVE.—ПОВЕЛІТЕЛЬНОЕ НАКЛОНѢНІЕ.

The imperative mood has distinct inflexions only for the second person singular and plural, and is formed from the first person singular present indicative by changing the termination *y* or *ю* into *и*, *и*, *й* or *ь*, as :

ИДУ, I am going ; иди, go.

СѢХУ, I dry ; сѣхи, dry.

ДѢЛАЮ, I do ; дѣлай, do.

ВѢРЮ, I believe ; вѣрь, believe.

To form the second person plural *re* is added to the imperative singular, as :

Иди́, go ;	plural, идите́.
Сохни́, dry ;	. . . моли́те.
Дѣлай, do ;	. . . дѣлайте.
Вѣрь, believe ;	. . . вѣрьте.

a. The imperative in *и́* is formed from verbs having the first person singular in *ы́, ю́* accented and preceded by a consonant :

Пишѹ́, I write ;	пиши́, write.
Велю́, I order ;	вели́, order.

Obs. 1.—Verbs of the tenth class take in the imperative an *и́* accented even after a vowel, as :

Таю́, I conceal ;	таи́, conceal.
-------------------	----------------

б. The imperative in *и* unaccented is formed from verbs having the first person in *ы* or *ю* unaccented and preceded by two consonants, both of which remain in the imperative :

Сохну́, I am drying ;	imperative, сохни́.
Зидѹ́, I build ;	. . . зиди́.
Молю́, I speak ;	. . . моли́.

в. The imperative in *и́* is formed from verbs having the first person in *ы, ю* preceded by a vowel :

Знаю́, I know ;	imperative, знаи́.
Смѣю́, I dare ;	. . . смѣи́.
Пою́, I sing ;	. . . пой.

Obs. 2.—Verbs of the tenth class have the imperative in *и́*, when the tonic accent falls on the radical syllable, as :

Строю́, I build ;	imperative, строи́.
Порю́, I procure rest ;	. . . порой.

г. The imperative in *и́* is formed from verbs having the



first person in *у, ю* unaccented, and preceded by one consonant or by *б, в, п, м* followed by the euphonic *я*, which is omitted in the imperative :

Вѣрю, I believe ;	imperative, вѣрь.
Готовлю, I prepare ;	. . . . . готовь.
Сыплю, I sift ;	. . . . . сыпь.

OBS. 3.—The termination *ю*, of the first person is changed into *ей*, as :

Пью, I drink ;	imperative, пей.
Бью, I beat ;	. . . . . бей,
Лью, I pour ;	. . . . . лей.

OBS. 4.—The imperative of the verbs *ѣхать*, 'to ride,' and *ѣсть*, 'to eat,' is formed irregularly : *поѣзжай*, *ѣшь*.

The imperative of verbs of perfect aspect wanting the present tense, is formed from the simple future according to the foregoing rules, as :

Пойду́, I shall go ;	imperative, поиди́.
Напишу́, I shall write ;	. . . . . напиши́.
Сделаю́, I will do ;	. . . . . сдѣлай.
Брошу́, I will throw ;	. . . . . брось.

OBS. 5.—The radical consonant of the first person, changed into its corresponding consonant for the sake of euphony, is restored in the imperative, but the euphonic *я* when inserted in the first person only is left out, as :

Вожу́ (води́ть), I lead ;	imperative, води́.
Носу́ (носи́ть), I carry ;	. . . . . носи́.
Сажу́ (сидѣ́ть), I seat ;	. . . . . сиди́.
Куплю́ (купи́ть), I buy ;	. . . . . купи́.
Люблю́ (любѣ́ть), I love ;	. . . . . люби́.

The other persons of the imperative are :

a. The third person, formed by adding the conjunction

пусть, (Slavonic да), 'let' to the third person present singular or plural :

Пусть читаетъ, } let him read ; пусть читають, } let them read.  
 да читаетъ, } да читають ;  
 Пусть говоритъ, let him speak ; пусть говорятъ, let them speak.

b. The first person plural, which is identical with the first person of the future, and to which in familiar discourse the syllable *те* is usually added, as :

Скажемъ or скажете, let us say.  
 Поидёмъ or пойдёте, let us go.  
 Возьмёмъ or возьмёте, let us take.  
 Будёмъ (or станёмъ) учиться, let us study.  
 Будёмъ (or станёмъ) говорить, let us speak.

Had I done, Сдѣлай я.  
 Had we done, Сдѣлай мы.

Obs. 6.—The second person singular of the imperative is used also with other personal pronouns, but in such case it expresses the optative or subjective mood, as :

Had I done this, I should not now have to regret. Сдѣлай я это, мнѣ не пришлось бы теперь сожалѣть.  
 Had they informed us of it yesterday, we should not have committed such a gross error. Дай онѣ намъ знать о томъ вчера, мы не сдѣлали бы такой грубой ошибки.

Obs. 7.—The imperative singular, not agreeing in form with the subject, is sometimes used also to express reproach or astonishment :

Overburdened with work as I am, having to write, to draw and to read, yet I am expected to look after the household ! Да я завалѣнъ трудами, я и пиши, и рисуй и читай и занимайся ещё хозяйствомъ !  
 He cajoled them, and so they, of course, told him all they knew about me ! Онъ ихъ приласкалъ, и онѣ конечно расскажи ему всё что знали обо мнѣ !

Do go,            Пойди-ка.

In familiar discourse, to mollify the apparent harshness of the imperative form, *ка* is often added.

<i>Do come to us.</i>	Приходите-ка къ намъ.
<i>Do sing a song.</i>	Спойте-ка пѣсню.

Let, may,    Да.

All hail the King !	Да здравствуетъ Король.
Be they allowed.	Да будетъ имъ позволено.
Thy will be done.	Да будетъ воля твоя.
Thy Kingdom come.	Да придетъ царство твоё.

Obs. 8.—The old Russian form of the third person, the imperative with *да*, as: *да читаетъ*, 'let him read,' *да читають*, 'let them read,' is only met with in sacred books, and some ejaculatory phrases.

Obs. 9.—An elliptical form of the imperative is not unfrequently supplied by the infinitive, as: *позвать его*, 'call him,' but in such instances some idea of necessity or obligation is implied:

Do not make a noise, children (you must not make a noise).	Не шумѣть, дѣти! (вы не должны шумѣть).
Be quiet and know your place !	Молчать ! и знайте своё мѣсто !
No talking !	Не говорить !

Another peculiarity of the Russian language is, that the imperative is sometimes expressed by the past tense, as :

Go away, *пошёлъ* прочь instead of *пойди* прочь.  
Coachman, drive away, *пзвощикъ, пошёлъ* !

To leave, to abandon, to let, { Оставитьъ.  
  { Остáвить, perfect aspect.

Leave me your books.	Остáвьте мнѣ ваши книги.
Let that be there.	Остáвьте это тамъ.
The post leaves.	† Почта отхóдитъ.

To let alone,  
Do let me alone.  
Let it be.

Оста́вить въ поко́бъ.  
Оста́вьте меня́ въ поко́бъ.  
Оста́вьте это́ въ поко́бъ.

To let (to permit),

{ Позво́лѣть, perf. asp. позво́-  
лѣть, gov. the dat. of the  
pers. and the acc. of the  
thing.

Did you let the children go out ?  
Not I, but the mistress let them.

Это вы позво́лили дѣтямъ вѣйти ?  
Не я, а хозяйка нмъ позво́лила.

To let (on hire),

{ Ота́вывать, } въ наймы́,  
{ Ота́вать, } въ наёмъ.

To whom have you let your house ?  
I have let it to a (certain) rich  
officer of dragons.

Кому́ вы ота́дали въ наймы́ свой домъ ?  
Я ота́далъ его́ въ наймы́ одному́ бога́-  
тому́ драгу́нскому офи́церу.

To be let,  
Is this house to be let.  
All the houses here are to let.

Ота́дется въ наймы́.  
Ота́дется ли́ этотъ домъ въ наймы́.  
Все́ дома́ здѣсь ота́дятся въ наймы́.

Nearly,

Чуть не, чуть чуть не, чуть  
бы́ло не.

The sack is very heavy, I can hardly  
carry it, and I nearly fell down.  
I nearly said it.

Мѣшокъ́ очень́ тяжё́лъ, едва́ могу́  
его́ нести́, и я чуть не упа́лъ.  
Я чуть бы́ло не сказа́лъ.

At,

По, with the dative.

Did he do this at your bidding ?

Сдѣ́лалъ ли́ онъ́ это́ по ва́шему при-  
каза́нію ?

He did it at my bidding.

Онъ́ сдѣ́лалъ это́ по моему́ прика-  
за́нію.

To sketch, рисо́вать, нарисова́ть.  
To contradict, противорѣ́чить.  
To fall, па́дать, упа́сть.  
For lack, за недоста́ткомъ.  
Otherwise, въ противно́мъ случа́ѣ.

The Holy Scripture, свяще́нное пи-  
са́ніе.  
To let know, дава́ть знать.  
To pour out, налива́ть, нали́ть.  
To pour out of, вылива́ть, вы́лить.

To trouble one's self.  
 To enter (in the book).  
 To call (on a person).  
 The post comes.  
 The post leaves.  
 The orders are (usually) obeyed.  
 The orders are obeyed.

Безпоко́баться.  
 Записа́ть занести́ (въ кни́гу).  
 Заходи́ть, за́ехать.  
 По́чта приходи́ть.  
 По́чта отходи́ть.  
 Приказа́нія исполня́ются.  
 Приказа́нія исполнены́.

### EXERCISE XCI.

Order the head clerk to write the letters to our bankers and tell him that they must be posted (sent to the post) to-day, and do not forget also to tell him to ask the Post-master at what o'clock the last post leaves.—The last post, sir, leaves at a quarter to eight.—After giving the orders, come to my room at ten minutes past two and bring with you the letters which you began this morning.—Am I to bring also the bills of exchange, sent to us by the commission agent.—If they are not yet entered in the books (then) bring them, otherwise do not trouble yourself.—Dress yourself and go (по́ѣзжай, те) to town; on arriving there go to my lawyer and ask him whether the papers which he expects from the minister are already received.—Now you may go (срѣна́йте); but no, wait, tell him also that I must see him.—Your orders shall be obeyed, sir.—Ask your sister, if you please, whether she can lend me for a short time the book which she received a few days ago from Paris.—Go to her to-morrow and ask her yourself.—Why did you not let them remain longer in the fresh air? Because it was too cold out of doors.—When will you call on me?—I will call on you, if possible, on my return journey. Do not beat that little dog, but give it rather something to eat.—I am not beating it.—Silence! do not contradict your elders! go to your room and remain there till I call

you.—Do sketch me a rose and a tulip, and after finishing them show them to me.—I cannot draw, and if I could I should not be able to do it for lack of pencils and paper.

### EXERCISE XCII.

Do give me this picture.—It is my brother's picture, but were it mine, or if I knew that my brother would not be angry, I would certainly give it to you.—Is it said in the Holy Scripture that we should love even our enemies? These (слова) are the words of the Holy Scripture, 'Love your enemies and do good to those who hate you.'—Do let us go for a walk!—No, let us rather take a book and learn our lessons, for John says that our master will come at a quarter-past twelve.—Do not believe all that John says, our master comes always at five-and-twenty minutes past four and not at a quarter-past twelve.—Can I believe you? Rely upon my word and you shall have no occasion to repent.—Hail to the Queen! May our dear country flourish! Come here, I want you.—What do you wish?—Is it true that yesterday, in the evening, after six o'clock, walking along the shore, you stumbled against a stone and nearly fell into the water?—No, it is not true; at that time I was at home.—Is he aware that we cannot see him next week? No he is not aware of it.—To whom did your brother let his house?—He let it to a Berliner.—What sort of man is he?—He is a goldsmith by trade.—Is it far from here to that house?—I usually go there in one hour and a quarter. Did you find out where Mr. N. lives now?—No, I did not.—Find out then and let me know.—Was it you who upset the glass of wine?—Yes, I wanted to pour out a glass of wine and nearly upset the bottle as well.—Did

your brother hurt himself much when he fell from the tree? He did hurt himself much and nearly broke his leg.—At whose bidding was this done?—At my mother's bidding. I should like to speak to your nephew.—Let him alone, he has to learn his lessons.

# FORTY-SIXTH LESSON.—Сорокъ шестой Урокъ.

Whoever, whosoever,	Кто бы ни, кто ни.
Whatever, whatsoever,	Что бы ни, что ни.
Whichever,	Который бы ни.
However,	Какъ бы ни.
Whenever,	Когда бы ни.
Wherever,	Гдѣ бы ни, куда бы ни.

The particle *ни* is used in conjunction with the verb, when an idea of indefiniteness and universality accompanies the above pronouns and adverbs, as :

Whoever may ask you for money, do not give it.	Кто бы ни попросилъ у васъ денегъ, не давайте.
Whatever be your lot, never desert him.	Что бы ни выпало на вашу долю, не покидайте его.
Let him come in, whoever he is.	Впустите его, кто бы онъ ни былъ.
The virtuous man is respected wherever he goes.	Добродѣтельнаго человека уважаютъ куда бы онъ ни пошелъ.

OBS. 1.—In these cases *ни* may be Anglicised by *no matter*, as :

However mighty (no matter how mighty) he is, I fear him not.	Какъ бы силенъ онъ ни былъ, я не боюсь его.
No matter what you do.	Что ни дѣлайте.
Do whatever you may.	Что бы вы ни дѣляли.
Cost what it may.	Что бы то ни стоило.
No matter what it costs.	

On the other hand, it must be remembered that, where a definite and particular circumstance is implied, the forms тотъ кто, то что, etc., are necessary, as :

Whoever (he who) spares the wicked does harm to the good.

Whenever you enter church always remove your hat.

Which book shall I give you ?

Whichever you like.

Though ever so,

Ever so much,

Though your knowledge be ever so great.

Give him ever so much, he is never satisfied.

Give him ever so little he is thankful for it.

Woody,

Stony,

(Тотъ) кто щадѣтъ злыхъ, вредѣтъ добрымъ.

Когда входѣшь въ цѣрковь, снимай шляпу.

Какую книгу долженъ я вамъ дать ?  
Какую хотѣте.

Какъ бы ни.

Сколько бы ни.

Какъ бы ни были велики познания ваши.

Сколько ему ни давайте, онъ всегда не доволенъ.

Какъ бы мало ни далъ ему, онъ доволенъ.

Лѣсистый.

Каменѣстый.

Obs. 2.—Adjectives ending in *истый*, derived from substantives denote abundance, as :

A woody country.

A stony road.

A clayey soil.

Лѣсистая страна.

Каменѣстая дорога.

Глинистая почва.

To add to,	{ Слагать съ Сложить, р. а. }	{ with the instr.
To subtract from,	{ Вычитать изъ, Вычесть, р. asp. }	{ with the gen.
To multiply by,	{ Умножать на, Умножить, р. а. }	{ with the acc.
To divide by, into,	{ Дѣлить на, Раздѣлить р. а. }	{ with the acc.

I will add, буду слагать ;

perfect aspect, сложу.



I will subtract, буду вычитатьъ;	perfect aspect, вычту.
I will multiply, буду умножать;	. . . умножу.
I will divide, буду дѣлить;	. . . раздѣлю.

Three and four make seven.

Три да четыре составятъ семь.

What will be ninety less thirty-five ?

Сколько будетъ девяносто безъ тридцати пяти ?

Ninety less thirty-five will be fifty-five.

Девяносто безъ тридцати пяти будетъ пятьдесятъ пять.

How much is twice two ?

Сколько будетъ дважды два ?

Three times three are nine.

Трижды три—девять.

Four times five are twenty.

Четырежды пять двадцать.

Five times eight are forty.

Пятью восемь сорокъ.

Addition, сложеніе.

Multiplication, умноженіе.

. Subtraction, вычитаніе.

Division, дѣленіе.

Once,

Разъ, однажды.

Twice,

Два раза, дважды.

Three times,

Три раза, трижды.

Four times,

Четыре раза, четырежды.

Five times,

Пять разъ, etc.

To multiply 9 by 3.

Умножить, помножить 9 на 3.

To divide 40 by 5.

Раздѣлить 40 на 5.

A third,

Третъ.

Two thirds,

Двѣ трети.

The half,

Половина, полъ.

Half an hour,

{	Половина часа.
	Полчасъ.

Obs. 3.—Substantives with the prefix полъ signifying 'half,' are put in the genitive, as :

Half-year, полгода.

Half a pailful, полведра.

Half a word, полслова.

Half a minute, полминуты.

Полъ takes an y in all the oblique cases, as :

*Singular.*

Nominative and accusative, полго́да, полве́дра, полми́нуты.

Genitive, полго́да, полве́дра, полми́нуты.

Dative, полго́ду, полве́дру, полми́нуты.

Instrumental, полго́домъ, полве́дромъ, полми́нутою.

Prepositional, полго́дѣ, полве́дрѣ, полми́нутѣ.

*Plural.*

Nominative and accusative, полго́ды, полве́дра, полми́нуты.

Genitive, полго́довъ, полве́деръ, полми́нутъ.

Dative, полго́дамъ, полве́драмъ, полми́нутамъ.

Instrumental, полго́дами, полве́драми, полми́нутами.

Prepositional, полго́дахъ, полве́драхъ, полми́нутахъ.

Obs. 4.—As seen from the above examples the prefix полъ has the inflexion of y even in the nominative plural, thus becoming an indeclinable part of the word, as in :

A peninsula, полуо́стровъ; genitive, полуо́строва, etc.

A semicircle, полу́кру́гъ; . . . полу́кру́га, etc.

Obs. 5.—День, 'day' and ночь, 'night,' with the prefix полъ, remain in the nominative, as :

Полдень, 'midday;' полно́чь, 'midnight;' genitive, полу́дня, полу́ночи, etc. Plural, полдни, полно́чи; genitive, полу́дней, полу́ночей, etc.

As much again,

Вдво́е (въ два ра́за) бо́льше,  
ещё сто́лько.

As far again,

Вдво́е да́льше.

Is this as long again ?

Вдво́е ли ё́то дли́ннѣе ?

It is three times as long.

Э́то втрё́е (въ три ра́за) дли́ннѣе.

Three times as much.

Втрё́е бо́льше.

Four times as strong.

Вче́тверо (въ четы́ре ра́за) си́льнѣе  
etc.

As far again as,

Вдво́е да́льше—че́мъ.

As good again as,

Вдво́е лу́чше—не́жели.

Obs. 6.—After вдвое, втрое, etc., the adjective is put in the comparative, and therefore the following word compared with it is put either in the genitive case or is preceded by чѣмъ, нежели.

This cloth is as dear again as that one.

Это сукно вдвое дороже того.

Is it not as far again from that road to the bay as from this one?

Не вдвое ли дальше отъ той дороги до залива, чѣмъ отъ этой?

It is as near again from this road as from that one.

Отъ этой дороги вдвое ближе, чѣмъ отъ той.

To be (found), }  
To be had, }

Находиться (conj. like хотѣть.)

Where is it to be found?

Гдѣ это находится?

Are any apples to be found in the market at this time of the year?

Есть ли на рынкѣ яблоки въ это время года?

He was at that time in London.

Онъ въ то время находился въ Лондонѣ.

Where is it?

Гдѣ это находится?

It is in the museum.

Это находится въ музѣй.

To call, (to name),

Называть, р. а. назвѣть.

To be called,

Называться.

What is the name of? }

Какъ называется?

What is it called? }

Какъ имя?

Obs. 7.—Называться is generally used instead of какъ имя.

What is the name of the town you stayed at last autumn?

Какъ называется городъ, въ которомъ вы провели прошлую осень?

What is his name (how do they call him)?

Какъ его зовутъ?

Nobody knows his name.

Никто не знаетъ, какъ его зовутъ.

To make a show,	{ Выставля́ть, Вы́ставить, р. а. }	на по́казъ.
To commit a fault,	Провини́ться,	perf. asp.
To apply for a situation,	Проси́ть мѣста,	должности.
To forgive, проща́ть, прости́ть.	To accomplish, соверши́ть,	р. asp.
To apply for, проси́ть.	Fault, ви́на,	просту́покъ.
The good will, уваже́ние.	A stranger, пріѣзжі́й.	
For ever, вѣчно, навсегда́.	To follow, подража́ть,	(gov. the dat.)
Familiar face, знако́мое лицó.	To take care, бере́чь.	
To commit, соверша́ть.	To beg leave, проси́ть позволе́нія.	
To do a service.	Оказа́ть услу́гу, сдѣла́ть одолже́ние.	
To murmur against.	Ропта́ть на, with the accusative.	
Thankful.	Благода́рный, призна́тельный.	

## EXERCISE XCIII.

Whoever is virtuous will be loved by all good men, in whatever country he lives.—Does she punish him when he is disobedient?—No, whatever he does, she never punishes him.—Can man live for ever?—No, no matter what care man may take of his health, yet he must die sooner or later.—Will my parents forgive me?—Whatever faults you have committed, they will forgive you.—To whom shall I give it?—To whomsoever you like.—Must we not despise this beggar?—No, though his poverty be ever so great, you must not despise him; you must despise nobody.—Does a virtuous man murmur against Divine Providence when he loses all that is dear to him?—Whatever happens to a virtuous man, he never murmurs against Divine Providence.—Had he spoken of me, would you have believed him?—Of whomsoever he speaks, I do not believe him.—Did they give you anything?—They gave us nothing whatever.—However skilful and learned we may be, let us not make a show of

our knowledge.—Does she follow the fashions?—Though fashions be ever so foolish, she always follows them.—How did you come to know about his misfortune?—I heard of it from his brother.—For whatever services he has done him he has been thankful.

#### EXERCISE XCIV.

Have you learnt the multiplication table?—I have learnt only addition and subtraction, but the multiplication table I do not know as yet.—Then you cannot divide twenty-five by five?—Oh yes, I can do that without knowing the table.—How much will seven times nine be?—To answer that we must multiply nine by seven, and to do that, one must have learnt the multiplication table.—Can we divide three by six, or three by nine?—Yes, we can, but in that case we should get one half and one third, and not whole numbers.—How many wine-glasses full were there in that half a bottle?—Seven and a half.—How many minutes are there in half-an-hour?—Thirty.—Had you come to his house half-an-hour sooner, you would have found him at home.—What is the Christian name of this peasant?—His Christian name is Peter.—Cannot you tell me what that is in Russian (но pyceкн)?—I do not know it myself, you had better ask one of the masters.—What is the name of the street in which we saw so many hackney carriages this afternoon?—I do not know its name; I am myself a stranger here.—Will you allow me, sir, to ask what your name is?—Your face is familiar to me, only I cannot recollect at all where I had the honour of seeing you?—If I am not mistaken, I had the pleasure of being introduced to you at the Prince R's. ball.—How is your nephew get-

ting on?—He is in bad circumstances at present, but it is entirely his own fault, for if he had applied for a situation half a year ago, he would have obtained it.—Is your uncle as rich as his father?—My uncle is as rich again as my father.—Is it far from here to the river?—It is as far again from here to the river as from that green hillock.—Is this satin as good as mine?—It is as good again as yours.

## FORTY-SEVENTH LESSON.

### Сорокъ седмѣй Урокъ.

Somebody said it.

Nobody said that.

He sees something good

He sees nothing good.

Нѣкто сказалъ это.

Никто не говорилъ этого.

Онъ видитъ нѣчто хорошее.

Онъ не видитъ ничего хорошаго.

How much, } скѣлько.

How many, }

When, когда.

A few, some, нѣсколько.

Not any, not at all, ни-  
скѣлько.

Once, sometime, нѣкогда.

Never, никогда.

OBS. 1.—Interrogative pronouns or adverbs with the prefix нѣ become indefinite, whilst those with ни become negative.

Some, а, нѣкоторый.

Some kind, нѣкій.

Not any, ниотобрый.

Not of any kind, никакѣй.

Who will come?

The one who is called.

Which handkerchief will you give?

The one that I bought.

Кто придетъ?

Тотъ, кто позванъ.

Котѣрый платѣкъ вы дадите?

Тотъ, котѣрый я купилъ.

OBS. 2.—The pronouns кто, 'who,' что, 'what,' 'that,'

кой, который, 'who, which,' каковой, 'what kind,' чей, 'whose,' сколько, 'how much,' when referring to an antecedent become relative, as in English.

Somebody, { Кто-нибѣдь.  
                  { Кто-то.

Something, { Что-нибѣдь.  
                  { Что-то.

Obs. 3.—Pronouns and adverbs followed by нибѣдь, which has the meaning of 'no matter what it be,' 'be it what it may,' can be easily distinguished from those followed by то, which means 'a certain, a particular.'

Did somebody (no matter who) speak to him?      Говорилъ ли кто нибѣдь съ нимъ?

I know that someone spoke, but who it was I could not say.      Я знаю, что кто-то говорилъ, но кто именно, не могу вамъ сказать.

Did they give him anything?      Дали ли онѣ ему что нибѣдь?

They gave him something.      Онѣ ему что-то дали.

Have you seen him anywhere?      Видѣли ли вы его гдѣ нибѣдь?

I have seen him somewhere abroad.      Я видѣлъ его гдѣ-то за границею.

Some—some,      Кто—кто.

Many traders were there; some with corn, some with milk, some with butter.      Много торговцовъ тамъ было; кто съ зерновымъ хлѣбомъ, кто съ молокомъ, кто съ коровьимъ масломъ.

The man whom they praise.      Человека, котораго онѣ хвалятъ.

That which we do not want.      То, чего намъ не нужно.

Obs. 4.—Relative pronouns agree in gender and number with their antecedent, and are put in the case governed by the verb or a noun of the subordinate clause.

Relative pronouns are always separated from their antecedent by a comma:

The book which we read.

Книга, которую читаемъ.

That which you are afraid of.

То, чего вы боитесь.

Obs. 5.—When the second personal pronoun is used in the plural for the sake of politeness, the relative pronoun is put in the singular, as :

You, to whom I am indebted and  
whom I respect.

Вы, коемѹ я обязанъ и котора-  
го уважаю.

How much gunpowder have  
you ?

Сколько у васъ пороху?

I have a little (of it).

У меня его мало.

I had much (of it).

У меня его было много.

Obs. 6.—The pronouns столько, 'so much;' много, 'much;' мало, 'a little;' несколько, 'a few' as also the numerals два, три, четыре, пять, etc., in answer to the question, 'how much?' are followed by the genitive and require the verb to be impersonal.

How many of you were there?  
There were a few of us.

Сколько человекъ васъ тамъ было?  
Насъ тамъ было несколько (чело-  
векъ).

There are six ships there.

Тамъ (есть) шесть кораблей.

Isaac had two sons.

У Исаака было (дѣтей) два сына.

How many roubles were received ?

Сколько рублей было получено ?

Twenty roubles were received.

Получено было двадцать рублей.

It remained a quarter of an hour.

Осталось четверть часа.

Who was riding ?

Кто ѣхалъ ?

Two men were riding.

Два человека ѣхали.

Obs. 7.—When the numerals два, три, четыре, пять, etc.



answer the question 'who? or what?' then the predicate, as also any determinative word used with these numerals, is put in the plural.

Who is speaking?

These two men are speaking.

Seven do not wait for one.

The last half an hour flew by unnoticed.

Кто говоритъ?

Эти два человека говорятъ.

Семеро одного не ждутъ.

Остальные полчаса протекли незамѣтно.

One and a half.

Two and a half.

Полтора, fem. полторы.

Полтретья, fem. полтретья.

I have a pound and a half of tobacco.

He goes to fetch a pound and a half of sugar.

У меня полтора фунта табаку.

Онъ идётъ за полутора фунтами сахара.

#### SINGULAR.

*Masculine and Neuter. Feminine.*

N. & A. Полтора, полторы.

Gen. Полутора, полуторы.

Dat. Полутору, полуторѣ.

Inst. Полуторымъ, полуторою.

Prep. Полуторѣ, полуторѣ.

#### PLURAL.

*For all Genders.*

полуторы.

полуторыхъ.

полуторымъ.

полуторыми.

полуторыхъ.

Obs. 8.—The compound numerals полтора and полтретья present the peculiarity that in the nom. and acc. sing. they govern the following noun in the gen. sing., but in all other cases they require the noun to be put in the corresponding case of the plural, as :

#### *Masculine and Neuter.*

N. & A. { Полтора рубль.  
A rouble and a half.

Gen. Полутора рублей.

Dat. Полутора рублѣмъ.

Inst. Полутора рублѣми.

Prep. Полуторѣ рублѣхъ.

{ Полтретья ведра.

{ Two and a half pails.

Полтретья ведеръ.

Полтретья ведрѣмъ.

Полтретья ведрѣми.

Полтретья ведрѣхъ.

*Feminine.*

N. & A.	{ Полторы минѹты, { A minute and a half,	{ Полтретьи мѣли. { Two and a half miles.
Gen.	Полторы минѹты,	Полтретьи мѣли.
Dat.	Полторымъ минѹтамъ,	Полтретьимъ мѣлямъ.
Inst.	Полторыми минѹтами,	Полтретьими мѣлями.
Prep.	Полторы минѹтахъ,	Полтретьи мѣляхъ.

Obs. 9.—In the dative, with a preposition, полторá and полтретьи have also the inflexions of у, ю in the masculine, and that of ѣ in the feminine, as: по полѹтору, по полѹтретью; по полѹторѣ, по полутретьѣ; and in this case masculine and neuter nouns which follow these numerals are put in the genitive plural, and the feminine in the genitive singular.

There was given to each a pound Каждому дали по полѹтору фунтовъ  
and a half of bread and two хлѣба и по полутретьѣ мѣры  
measures and a half of wine. вина.

Obs. 10.—Полтретьи, as also полчетверта, 'three and a half,' etc., are no longer used, and are met with only in ancient Russian books.

A hundred and fifty, Полтора́ста.

Obs. 11.—The compound numeral полтора́ста has in all the cases полѹтора́ста.

Have you not a hundred and fifty Нѣтъ ли у васъ полѹтора́ста рублѣй.  
roubles?

Add to these hundred and fifty Прибавьте къ этимъ полѹтора́ста  
roubles two hundred more. рублѣмъ ещё двѣсти.

And, Съ.

One and a half.

Одинъ съ половиною.

Two and a half.

Два, двѣ съ половиною etc.

In,	На, по.
In English,	На англискомъ языкѣ.
To speak different languages.	Говорить на разныхъ языкахъ.
To write English.	Писать на англискомъ языкѣ.

Obs. 12.—The verbs говорить, ‘to speak;’ изъясняться, ‘to express one’s self;’ читать, ‘to read;’ etc., when referring to a language or dialect, govern the prepositional case with the preposition на.

In Russian,	{ На русскомъ языкѣ. По русски.
In French.	{ На французскомъ языкѣ. По французски.

Obs. 13.—The second adverbial expression is more widely used.

Do you speak Russian?	Говорите ли вы по русски?
I speak Italian and German only.	Я говорю только по итальянски да по нѣмецки.
He writes in Dutch.	Онъ пишетъ по голландски.
From—into,	Съ—на.
This work is translated from English into Russian.	Это сочиненіе переведено съ англискаго языка на русскій.
To translate from one language into another.	Переводить съ одного языка на другой.
What is the Russian for?	Какъ сказать по русски?

The following adjectives denoting inclination or aptitude govern the dative with the preposition къ, ко.

Greedy, алченъ.	Inclined, apt, склоненъ.
Ready, готовъ.	Passionate, страстенъ.
Affable, привѣтливъ.	Just, справедливъ.
Respectful, почтителенъ.	Prejudiced, partial, пристрастенъ.
Indifferent, равнодушенъ.	Cold, холоденъ.
Capable, способенъ.	Cruel, жестокъ.
Fit, годенъ.	Kind, affable, ласковъ.

Adjectives denoting mental or moral capacity or deficiency govern the prepositional case with *въ*.

Skilful, *искусенъ*.  
 Skilled, versed, *свѣдущъ*.  
 Unacquainted with, *несвѣдущъ*.  
 Moderate, *умѣренъ*.  
 Immoderate, *неумѣренъ*.  
 Weak, feeble, *слабъ*.  
 New, *новъ*.

Steady, constant, *постояненъ*.  
 Experienced, *опытенъ*.  
 Hard, firm, *твёрдъ*.  
 Innocent, *невиненъ*.  
 Tidy, clean, *опрятенъ*.  
 Strong (mighty), *сильнъ*.  
 Happy, lucky, *счастливъ*.

Obs. 14.—Some adjectives denoting capacity or deficiency govern the accusative with the preposition *на*, as :

Insolent, daring, *дерзокъ*.  
 Sparing, careful, *бережливъ*.  
 Quick, *скоръ*.  
 Lavish, *расточителенъ*.

Heavy, *тяжелъ*.  
 Weak, *слабъ*.  
 Strong (durable), *крѣпокъ*.  
 Clean, pure, *чистъ*.

He is fit for service.  
 The army is ready for battle.  
 He is ready for the journey.  
 I am weak in mathematics.  
 He is prompt.  
 He is deaf.  
 She likes chattering.  
 He is a thief.  
 They are slow.  
 She is innocent of that.

Онъ *годенъ* къ службѣ.  
 Армія готова къ бою (or на бой).  
 Онъ *готовъ* въ путь.  
 Я *слабъ* въ математикѣ.  
 Онъ *лёгокъ* на ногу.  
 Онъ *крѣпокъ* на ухо.  
 Она *слаба* на языкъ.  
 Онъ не *чистъ* на руку.  
 Они *слабы* на подъѣмъ.  
 Она въ томъ *невинна*.

To make an acquaintance.  
 To make a request.  
 To make one's self understood.  
 To make progress in.  
 To be versed in.  
 To be conversant with.

Знакомиться, р. а. *познакомиться*.  
 Обращаться съ просьбой.  
 Объясняться, р. а. *объясниться*.  
 Дѣлать успѣхи въ (with the prep.)  
 Хорошо знать.  
 Быть *сильнымъ* въ (with the prep. case).

To spend.  
 To pass by.  
 A passer by.

Издѣрживать, р. а. *издержать*.  
 Проходить мимо.  
 Прохаживать.

## EXERCISE XCV.

Have you ever been at the Italian opera?—No, I have never been.—Do you not like then the singing of the Italian singers?—Yes, I like the singing, but I do not understand the Italian language at all.—Do you speak French?—Yes, I do, and I speak Spanish also.—If you speak these two languages you can learn to speak Italian in a short time.—Translate for me this little exercise from German into English.—I have no time now, and you had better do it yourself.—Is it true that his brother found a purse in the street?—I only know that he found something like (resembling) a leather purse, but whether it was a purse or something else, I cannot tell you; and therefore if you wish to know, ask him about it yourself. How many French books had he?—He had two French books.—How many daughters had he?—He had five daughters.—Where do these three peasants live?—These three peasants live in some little village on the other side of the river.—How many books were there lying on the table?—Two books, six books were lying.—Allow me to take these seven books.—Take these two books only, the other ones I want myself.—How many ounces are there in a pound and a half?—Twenty-four.—How much did your brother-in-law spend?—He spent more than one hundred and fifty pounds.—Did all the army return from abroad?—No, out of one hundred and fifty thousand men, sent abroad last year, only the last twenty thousand have returned.—Did the passers by give anything to the beggar?—Of all who (no matter who) passed by, every body gave him something; some gave a piece of bread, some a copeck, some gave even as much as a rouble.

## EXERCISE XCVI.

Is your master well versed in Spanish?—Yes, he is conversant with several languages, and he speaks Russian as well as his native tongue.—Do speak German with me. No, you had better speak German with me, as I express myself in this tongue as yet very badly.—Is this fit for anything?—This is fit for nothing.—Now there he has been learning Russian these three years, and still speaks so that one can hardly understand him.—That is because he wants practice, and were he to speak Russian more frequently, he would be able to express himself excellently, or at least so as to be understood by any Russian.—Does he express himself clearly?—No, it is difficult to understand him. Have you been learning Swedish long?—I have been learning it about three years, but although I speak Swedish tolerably well, I translate from English into Swedish very badly.—Is this young man liked by his acquaintances? Yes, because he is affable with everybody.—Is this boy strong in arithmetic?—Yes, but he is weak in drawing. Is she indifferent to him?—She is not only indifferent, but even cold with him.—Was he just to everybody?—He was partial to some and cruel to others.

## FORTY-EIGHTH LESSON.

Сорокъ восьмой Урокъ.

REFLECTIVE VERBS.—Возвратные Глаголы.

Reflective verbs, which denote an action falling upon the agent, are formed from *transitive* verbs by adding *ca* (the abridged pronoun *себя*) to the infinitive.

They are conjugated in the same way as transitive verbs, the suffix *ся* when coming after a vowel being abridged into *сь*.

To warm one's self,      Грѣться.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Present.*

I warm myself, я грѣюсь, ты грѣ- ешься, онъ грѣется.	We warm ourselves, мы грѣмся, вы грѣетесь, они грѣются.
---	--

*Past.*

I was warming myself, я грѣлся, fem. грѣлась, neut. грѣлось, etc.	We were warming ourselves, мы грѣлись, вы грѣлись, etc.
--	--

*Future.*

I will warm myself, я буду грѣться, etc.	We will warm ourselves, мы бу- демъ грѣться, etc.
---	--

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

I would warm myself, я грѣлся бы, etc.	We would warm ourselves, мы грѣ- лись бы, etc.
---	---

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Warm thyself, грѣйся.	Warm yourself, грѣйтесь.
Let him warm himself, пусть онъ грѣется.	Let them warm themselves, пусть они грѣются.

ACTIVE PARTICIPLE.

*Present.*—Who is warming himself грѣющійся.

*Past.* — Who was warming himself грѣвшійся.

PASSIVE PARTICIPLE.

*Wanting.*

GERUND.

*Present.*—(While) warming one's self, грѣясь.

*Past.* --- (After) having warmed one's self, грѣвши.

To hope,	Надѣяться,	} neut. verbs.
To laugh,	Смѣяться,	

Reflective verbs of neuter signification, termed in Russian общие глаголы, 'common verbs,' cannot be used without the suffix ся, inasmuch as they express some state of *mind* or *feeling* falling only upon the agent himself.

To rejoice, радоваться.	To be afraid, бояться.
To take pains, стараться.	To be ashamed, стыдиться.

Reflective verbs which denote the action of two or more agents upon each other, and answering the question 'with whom,' are called взаимные, 'reciprocal.'

To kiss one another.	Цѣловаться.
To fight one another.	Сражаться.
To embrace one another.	Обниматься.
The troops are fighting (with the enemy).	Войска сражаются.
The friends embrace one another.	Друзья обнимаются.
The sisters are kissing one another.	Сестры цѣлуются.

To break,	Рвать, рваться,
To knock, to knock at,	Стучать, стучаться.
To pray,	Молить, молиться.

OBS. 1.—Neuter verbs denoting some inherent force or capability take the form of reflective verbs.

The thread breaks.	Нитки рвутся.
To knock at the door	Стучаться въ дверь.
To pray God.	Молиться Богу.
The door opens.	Дверь открывается.

OBS. 2.—Reciprocal verbs not answering the question 'with whom,' become simply neuter verbs, as:

The soldiers are fighting for their country.	Войска сражаются за своё отечество.
--	-------------------------------------



Obs. 3.—On the other hand, those neuter verbs which answer the question ‘with whom,’ have the signification of reciprocal, as:

They played with children.  
We conversed with them.

Они играли съ дѣтьми.  
Мы разговаривали съ ними.

### PASSIVE VERBS.—Страдательные Глаголы.

Passive Verbs, which represent the agent as receiving or suffering an action from others, are formed, as in English, from active verbs by adding the auxiliary verb *быть*, ‘to be,’ in its different tenses to the apocopated participle passive, either present or past.

The distinction of gender in passive verbs is carried through all the moods and tenses.

To be read,	{ БЫТЬ чита́ему, f. чита́емой. БЫТЬ чита́ну, f. чита́нной.
To be wished,	{ БЫТЬ жела́ему, f. жела́емой. БЫТЬ жела́ну, f. жела́нной.
To be loved,	БЫТЬ любя́иму, f. любя́имой.
I am loved, я любя́имъ, fem. любя́има, neut. любя́имо, etc.	We are loved, мы любя́имы etc.
I was loved, я бы́лъ, а, о, любя́имъ, любя́има, о, etc.	We were loved, мы бы́ли любя́имы, etc.
I shall be loved, я бу́ду любя́имъ, любя́има, о, etc.	We shall be loved, мы бу́демъ любя́имы, etc. •
I would be loved, *я бы́лъ бы любя́имъ, а, о.	We would be loved, мы бы́ли бы любя́имы.
Be (thou) loved, бу́дь любя́имъ, а, о.	Be (you) loved, бу́дьте любя́имы.
Being loved, бу́дучи любя́имъ, а, о.	Having been loved, бы́вши любя́имъ, а, о.
This man is respected.	{ ЭТО́тъ челове́къ уважа́емъ. ЭТО́го челове́ка уважа́ютъ.
This book is read.	{ ЭТА́ кни́га чита́ема. Эту́ кни́гу чита́ютъ. ЭТА́ кни́га чита́ется.

OBS. 4.—The third person of passive verbs is seldom met with in the Russian language of the present day, and in general Russians prefer to use either the active or reflective form instead of the passive.

He is praised by all.	Онъ хва́лится всѣми.
All praise him.	Всѣ его хва́лится.
The business is done.	{ Дѣло дѣлается.
	{ Дѣло дѣлается.
The horses are sold.	{ Лошади продаются.
	{ Лошади продаются.
The letters are written.	Письма пишутся.

As the subject in the passive form is put in the instr. case, all reflective verbs used instead of passive govern also the instrumental.

I am occupied with reading.	{ Я занима́ю } чтение́мъ.
	{ Я занима́юсь }
The cloth is cut with scissors.	Сукно́ ре́жется (отъ ре́жутъ) но́жницами.
The horses were broken in by the groom.	Лошади объезжа́лись ко́шюхомъ.

OBS. 5.—In dates, the year, together with the day of the month, is put in the genitive, but the year or month by itself is put in the prepositional case with въ.

Shakespeare was born on the 23rd of April, 1546.	Шекспи́ръ роди́лся двѣдцать тре́тьяго Апри́ля, тысяча пятьсо́тъ со́рокъ шесто́го го́да.
Shakespeare was born in the year 1546.	Шекспи́ръ роди́лся въ тысяча пятьсо́тъ со́рокъ шесто́мъ году́.
He went away in April.	Онъ уѣ́халъ въ Апри́ль.

To hurry, to be in a hurry,      Торо́пится, торо́питься.

I hurry him.	Я торо́плю его́.
I am in a hurry.	Я торо́плюсь.
Were you in a hurry?	Торо́пились ли вы?

To wonder at,	{ Удивля́ться, удиви́ться, gov. the dative.
To be surprised at,	
What are they surprised at ?	Чему́ они удиви́ются ?
That is not to be wondered at.	Этому́ почему́ удиви́ться.
To gather strength,	{ Собира́ться, } съ силами́.
To happen, to chance,	
To cut,	Случа́ться, случи́ться.
I have cut my finger.	Рѣзать, обрѣзывать.
He has cut his nails.	Я обрѣзалъ себѣ палець.
I pared my nails.	Онъ обрѣзалъ себѣ ногти.
	Я постригъ себѣ ногти.
To cut hair,	Стричь волосы́.
To shear,	Стричь. *
I shear, etc., я стри́гу, ты стри- жешь, онъ стри́жётъ.	We shear, etc., мы стри́жёмъ, вы стри́жете, онъ стри́гуть.
I sheared, я стри́гъ, стри́гла, стри́г- ло, etc.	We sheared, мы стри́гли, вы стри́г- ли, etc.
<i>Imperative, стри́ги.</i>	<i>Plural, стри́гите.</i>
To see one another,	Ви́дѣться.
To see one's self,	Ви́дѣть себѣ́.
To look at one's self in the glass,	Смоти́ться въ зѣркало.
To make (from), to prepare,	Выдѣ́лывать, perf. asp. вы́- дѣ́лать.
To dress leather.	Выдѣ́лывать ко́жу.
To make parchment.	Выдѣ́лывать перга́ментъ.
To make oil.	Выдѣ́лывать (or бить) ма́сло.
From—to,	{ Съ—на, (with the acc.) Пзь—въ, (with the acc.)
From place to place.	
From town to town.	Съ мѣста на мѣсто. Пзь города́ въ городъ.

To mistake for,

Принимать по ошибкѣ за  
(with the acc.)

To mistake, to be mistaken.

Ошибаться, р. а. ошибѣться.

I mistook, я ошибался,

perfect aspect, ошибся.

I shall be mistaken, я буду ошибаться,

. . . . . ошибусь.

Be mistaken, ошиба́йся,

. . . . . ошибёшься.

To be amused at.

Забавля́ться, gov. the instr.

To wash one's self.

Мы́ться.

To wash one's face and hands.

Умы́ваться, perf. asp. умы́ться.

To be renowned.

Сла́виться.

To be occupied in writing.

Занима́ться письмо́мъ.

To jump away from.

Отска́кивать, отскочи́ть.

To sign.

Подпи́сываться, подпи́саться.

To be frightened.

Пуга́ться, испуга́ться.

To dig, копа́ть.

To require, тре́бовать.

To use, употребле́ть.

To carry, перевози́ть.

Morocco leather, сафья́нъ.

Fright, испугъ.

By rail.

По желѣзной доро́гѣ.

To use with food.

Употребля́ть въ пи́щу.

## EXERCISE XCVII.

What is your brother-in-law wondering at?—He wonders that you come here earlier than he.—There is nothing to wonder at; I went out earlier than he.—With what were your sons occupied the day before yesterday?—They were occupied in reading, writing and drawing.—Do you see each other often?—We see each other only now and then.—Do you see yourself in the looking-glass?—No, I see only you in it.—What are these children so much amused at?—They are amused at a cat looking at herself in the glass.—When was the digging of the canal begun?—It was begun on the 1st of August, 1844, and finished on the 11th of June,

1863.—Can you stay with us till the evening?—I cannot stay a single minute, I am in a hurry to get home.—Of what are the houses built?—The houses are built of stone, brick and wood.—Where is this newspaper printed?—It is printed in some small German town.—Are any French journals received here?—Yes, but they sell badly.—In what year were you born?—I was born in the year 1839.—In which month?—In March.—On what day of the month?—On the 25th.—From what seed is this oil made?—From hemp seed.—Do the English use this oil with food?—No, in England this oil is not used with food.—Are there many goods carried by rail from town to town?—Yes, now-a-days a great quantity of goods is carried by rail, not only from town to town, but also from one kingdom to another. Why is the oak-tree valued more (dearer) than the pine-tree?—Because it is harder than the pine, and is used for articles (по́дѣлка) requiring durability.

#### EXERCISE XCVIII.

By whom are these letters signed?—By our head clerk. Is the letter which he copied a few hours ago signed already?—No, it is not yet signed.—Why is it not signed?—Because it is badly written.—How many letters are written and sent by post daily in your office?—I think there are about ninety letters written daily, of which only the greater part is sent by post the same day.—My brother while dressing this morning in his bedroom looked at himself in the glass, and suddenly jumped away from it in a fright.—What was he frightened at?—He saw a few grey hairs on his head.—By whom is this man conducted?—He is conducted by me.—Is your niece

sometimes punished?—No, never; she is loved and rewarded by the masters.—Are you learning Russian?—I began learning it on the 22nd of June.—Why did not you begin last year? you would now be able to speak.—I did not begin learning sooner because I have not been able to find a good master.—Whither are you hurrying so?—I am hurrying home, where I was expected long ago.—Do not hurry in vain; I have been at your house, and am able to tell you that, were you to go home now, you would find no one there.—The hair of this little girl was badly cut; who cut it so badly?—The nurse cut her hair.—Go into your room, and after washing your face and after combing your hair, come here and learn your lessons. Is there any leather dressed in Russia?—Different sorts of leather are dressed in Russia, but morocco leather is better (more) known to Europe than any other, because it is renowned for its excellent quality.

#### FORTY-NINTH LESSON.—Сборъ девятой Урокъ.

##### IMPERSONAL VERBS.—Безличныя Глаголы.

Impersonal Verbs proper are those which cannot be used as a predicate to any definite or direct subject, and in which, in fact, the subject is altogether wanting. They are expressed in Russian by the third person singular, their past being only *neuter* as to gender, as :

It grows late, вечерѣть ;	<i>past</i>	вечерѣло.
It thaws, таетъ ;	. .	таяло.
It grows dark, темнѣть ;	. .	темнѣло.
It becomes, подобаетъ ;	. .	подобало.
It dawns, разсвѣтаетъ ;	. .	разсвѣтало.

Personal verbs used in the third person singular or plural without the pronoun—either when there is no definite agent expressed or when some such word as *it, one, they, people, some one, something*, etc., is understood in its place,—become impersonal.

It depends, зависѣть ;	<i>past</i>	зависѣло.
It is proper, приличествуетъ ;	. .	приличествовало.
They say, говорятъ ;	. .	говорили.
People think, думаютъ ;	. .	думали.
It wants, недостаётъ ;	. .	недоставало.
People do, дѣлаютъ ;	. .	дѣляли.

Obs. 1.—Impersonal verbs in the plural, are sometimes used instead of the passive, as :

The book is read.	Книгу читаютъ, instead of книга читается.
He is praised.	Его хвалятъ, instead of онъ хваляется.

Some verbs become impersonal by adding *ся* to the third person singular, without however taking the nature of reflexive verbs.

It is said, говоритъся.	It is done, дѣлается.
It is asked, спрашивается.	It is considered, считается.
It happens, случается.	It seems, кажется.
It appears, оказывается.	It is required, требуется.

Besides the above, there are also compound impersonal verbs formed by adding the auxiliaries *есть, было, будетъ* to apocopated participles passive, or to adjectives of the neuter gender, as :

It is written, написано.	It is possible, возможно.
It is said, сказано.	It is known, известно.
It is done, сдѣлано.	It is vexatious, досадно.

Obs. 2.—Impersonal verbs with peculiar terminations

are жалъ, лѣнь and лѣзя, the last being used in the negative only:

It is a pity, жалъ.

I feel sorry, мнѣ жалъ.

I feel lazy, мнѣ лѣнь.

It is impossible, нельзя.

The verb нѣтъ, formed from есть, and the particle не (не есть) has in the past не было, future не будетъ.

Есть, было, будетъ become impersonal when they refer to the pronouns кто 'who,' что 'what, that,' or the adverbs гдѣ 'where,' когда 'when,' куда 'whither,' откуда 'whence,' and such like, as:

One has something to be glad of.

You have some one to speak to.

You had some one to love.

One will have something to think of.

One has somewhere to sojourn.

There is no place to go to.

Есть чему радоваться.

Есть съ кѣмъ поговорить.

Было кого любить.

Будетъ о чемъ подумать.

Есть гдѣ остановиться.

Нѣкуда пойти.

Obs. 3.—In interrogative and negative sentences есть is omitted, but было and будетъ must be retained.

Whom has one to ask?

What is there to be done?

What has one to be busy about?

There is no one to ask.

There is nothing to be done.

There is no place to sojourn.

Whom had one to ask?

There was no one to ask.

There was no place to go to.

What was there to be done?

There was nothing to be done.

What will there be to be busy about?

There will be nothing to be busy about.

Кого спросить?

Что дѣлать?

Чѣмъ заняться?

Нѣкого спросить.

Нечего дѣлать.

Нѣгдѣ остановиться.

Кого было спросить.

Нѣкого было спросить.

Нѣкуда было пойти.

Что было дѣлать?

Нечего было дѣлать.

Чѣмъ будетъ заняться?

Нечѣмъ будетъ заняться.



The second person is also often used to express the impersonal, when in English the word *one* is understood.

You may sit here sometimes all day long and see nothing.	Сидишь здѣсь иногда цѣлый день и ничего не видишь.
You think to yourself.	Думаешь про себя.

Obs. 4.—With some impersonal verbs the subject is expressed, as :

It thunders, громъ гремѣть.	It snows, снѣгъ идѣть.
It rains, дождь идѣть.	It hails, градъ идѣть.

Compound impersonal verbs, as also those formed from active and neuter verbs, govern the dative.

I should like to go for a walk.	Мнѣ хочется пойти гулять.
He is pleased with it.	Ему это пріятно.
He has some place to go to.	Ему есть куда пойти.
We are ordered.	Намъ велѣно.
Everybody was merry.	Всѣмъ было весело.
They are sorry for you.	Имъ жаль васъ.
It is impossible for her.	Ей невозможно.

The infinitive of all verbs when used as the complement to an impersonal verb governs the dative.

Learning is useful to everybody.	Учиться всякому человеку полезно.
The work had to be finished.	Работѣ следовало быть конченной.
They ought to be ready.	Имъ должно быть готовымъ.
The greatest blessing is to enjoy good health.	Быть здорову (есть) первое благо.

Obs. 5.—Adjectives and participles in direct concord with the infinitive *быть*, governed by a personal verb, are put :—

a. In the nominative after the verbs *могу* 'I can,' and *долженъ* 'I must,' as :

I can be useful.	Я могу быть полезенъ.
The book must be read.	Книга должна быть прочитана.

## b. In the instrumental after other verbs :

I hope to be ready.

Надѣюсь быть готовымъ.

I wish to be invited.

Я желаю быть приглашённымъ.

Used to be,

Бывало, impersonal.

Бывало may be used with verbs in all tenses, as :

I used to take a walk.

Я гулялъ бывало.

When I walked I used to think to myself.

Я гуляю бывало и думаю самъ про себя.

After taking a little walk I used to lie on the grass.

Погуляю бывало немного да и лягу на траву.

Obs. 6.—Neuter and reflexive impersonal verbs which imply an idea of quantity, such as *much, several, some, few*, etc., govern the genitive.

A number of guests came.

Наѣхало гостей.

There was some increase in business

Прибавилось дѣла.

Down, downwards,

Внизъ.

Up, upwards,

Навѣрхъ, вверхъ, implying motion.

Are you coming down ?

Вы внизъ идёте ?

I am going up.

Я иду навѣрхъ.

They sailed down the river.

Они плыли внизъ по рѣкѣ.

We shall sail up the river.

Мы поплывѣмъ вверхъ по рѣкѣ.

Above, upstairs,

Наверхъ, } implying rest.

Below, downstairs,

Внизъ, }

Is he upstairs ?

На верху ли онъ ?

He is downstairs.

Онъ внизъ.

To come down stairs.

Сходить (внизъ) по лѣстницѣ.

To go up stairs.

Всходить, взойти (навѣрхъ) по лѣстницѣ.

A story, floor.

A one-storied house.

A two-storied house.

My house has three stories.

The floors of the ground-floor are made of oak.

Этажъ.

{ Домъ въ одинъ этажъ.

{ Одноэтажный домъ.

Двухъэтажный домъ.

У меня трехъэтажный домъ.

Полы въ нижнемъ этажѣ дубовые.

To be in lodgings,

To confess,

To turn one's self round,

To lose confidence in,

He has confidence in himself.

I lost all confidence in myself.

To appear,

It appears, it seems,

In ancient times,

The ancients,

To dispose, располагать.

To ascertain, узнавать.

The staircase, лестница.

Rose-water, розовая вода.

Kindness, радушіе.

The next house.

The next street.

The main staircase.

The ground floor.

The upper floor.

Sugar-cane.

Position, положеніе.

Квартировать, I. 4.

Сознаваться въ, with the prepositional case, I. 2.

{ Поворачиваться, I. 1.

{ Повернуться, р. а., I. 8.

Терять доверіе къ.

Онъ имѣетъ доверіе къ себѣ.

Я потерялъ всякое доверіе къ самому себѣ.

Казаться, I. 2.

Кажется.

{ Въ древности.

{ Въ древнія времена.

Древніе (люди).

To relieve, помогать.

To put together, сложить.

The inmate, жилецъ.

Beetroot, свѣкла.

Confidence, доверіе.

Сосѣдній домъ.

Сосѣдняя улица.

Парадная лестница.

Нижній этажъ.

Верхній этажъ.

Сахарный тростникъ.

To put, положить.

## EXERCISE XCIX.

Of what is sugar made in France, Russia, and other countries in Europe?—From beetroot.—Is not sugar made also from sugar-cane?—Yes, a great deal of sugar is made in America from the sugar-cane.—I should like to know why you want to go to him?—I want to go to him because there is no one here to ask where French books are sold, and I promised my sister to buy her one.—Did people write in ancient times on paper like that which we use now?—No, in ancient times people had no idea of the paper which we use now, but wrote on stones, bricks and shells.—Ought one not to confess one's errors?—Yes, but one is not always disposed to confess one's errors. How was the time of the day ascertained before clocks were (not) invented?—The ancients ascertained the time by (no with the dative) the position of the sun.—Can you tell me where there are any good lodgings to let?—They say (that) there are several good lodgings to let in the next street.—On which floor would you like to lodge?—I should like to live on the ground floor or second floor. From what are ropes made?—Ropes are made from coarse hemp.—Whither do the swallows fly for the winter season? It is supposed that they fly for the winter season to Central Africa.—Are there many forests in Southern Russia? No, you may ride sometimes for a whole day and not see a single tree.—From what is rose-water made?—Rose-water is made from rose-leaves.—At what o'clock can one find him at home?—He can be found at home from a quarter past four till six in the evening.—Do you like the new comedy at the French plays?—I have not seen it myself, but it seems it was not liked by the public.—If you (one)

keep a squirrel in a cage without giving it something to nibble, (then) its teeth will grow so that it will not be able to put them together.

### EXERCISE C.

Where were you told about my sister going to be married. I was told at my sister's ball yesterday.—Was there much dancing at that ball?—There could be no such a thing, as the rooms are so small that one could scarcely turn one's self round.—Is this the house where you were received with such kindness?—No, the house you speak of has three stories, and this has only two.—Is this poor woman relieved?—Yes, people relieve her.—Was your sister invited to the countess's ball?—She was invited to it, and she also hopes to be invited to the princess's ball.—By (как) what time must the dresses ordered be ready?—They must be ready by to-morrow.—Did she wish to be useful to her? Yes, but she could not be useful to her.—What are the children afraid of?—They are afraid of being left at home. Did you hear with whom he intends to go to the Paris Exhibition next year?—They say he is going with the French Ambassador.—Is there anybody upstairs?—No, everybody is downstairs.—Shall I be allowed to go upstairs?—No, you must remain downstairs.—Whither are these steamers sent?—They are sent down the river.—Will there be any steamer going up the river?—No, there will be no steamer going up the river.—Are we to believe that he went away without saying 'good-bye?' No, you must not believe that.—Whoever has told a lie yesterday, will not be believed to-morrow.

---

## FIFTIETH LESSON.—Пятидеся́тый Уро́къ.

To write, писа́ть.	Written, писа́нь.
Writing,	Писа́нiе.
To take, взять.	Taken, взять.
Taking,	Взя́тiе.

Verbal nouns are derivatives of neuter gender ending in *nie* or *tie*, formed from the past participle passive by changing *ъ* into *ie* (*ie*). They are used in place of the infinitive in cases where, in English, the participle present or the infinitive is employed.

To read is beneficial.	Чита́ть полезно.
Reading is beneficial.	Чте́нiе полезно.
Executed, исполне́нь.	Executing, execution, исполне́нiе.
Wished, жела́нь.	Wishing, wish, жела́нiе.
Saved, спасе́нь.	Saving, salvation, спасе́нiе.
To walk, ходи́ть.	Walking, walk, хождéнiе.

Verbal nouns are formed not only as stated above, but also from neuter and other verbs, without however taking the suffix *ся*.

To seat, сидѣ́ть.	Sitting, сидѣ́нiе.
To endeavour, стара́ться.	Endeavouring, стара́нiе.

Obs. 1.—In nouns having both the terminations *ie* and *se*, the former implies an act and the latter an object, as :

Granted, жа́лованъ.	{ (The act of) granting, жа́лованiе.
	{ The grant, salary, жа́лованье.
Drunk, пить.	{ Drinking, пите́.
	{ The drink, питье́.

Verbal nouns follow the changes of meaning expressed by the imperfect, perfect and iterative aspects.

Written, писа́нь, писа́нiе.
Written out, выпи́сыва́нь, выпи́сыва́нiе.
Signed, подпи́сыва́нь, подпи́сыва́нiе, (подпи́сь.)
Used to be written, пи́сыва́нь, пи́сыва́нiе.

OBS. 2.—The tonic accent, when transferred in the participle to the radical syllable, is put in verbal nouns on the syllable preceding *ie* or *ye*.

Written, *писа́нь*, *писа́нiе*.

Ordered, *вѣлѣ́нь*, *вѣлѣ́нiе*.

Fought, *воѣва́нь*, *воѣва́нiе*.

Substantives formed from participles ending in *енъ* instead of *ѣнъ*, take the characteristic vowel of the past tense or of the infinitive.

Born, *тѣрпѣ́нь*, (*тѣрпѣ́ль*, *тѣрпѣ́ль*), *тѣрпѣ́нiе*.

Turned, *верѣ́нь*, (*верѣ́ль*, *верѣ́ль*), *верѣ́нiе*.

To fear,	Боя́ться, II. 9.
To dread,	Опасáться, I. 1.
To take care of one's self,	Берѣ́ться, I. 7.
To guard one's self against,	Остерегáться, I. 7.

OBS. 3.—The above four verbs govern the genitive, and when followed by *чтобы* require the next verb to be put in the negative:

He fears that she will come.

Онъ бо́ится что́бъ она́ не пришла́.

He is afraid he will break the bottle.

Онъ бо́ится что́бъ не разбѣ́ть бутыл-  
ки.

He dreads to be seen.

Онъ опасáется что́бъ его́ не уви́дѣли.

After (when),

{ Послѣ́ тогó—когда́.

{ Послѣ́ тогó—какъ,

After he returned.

Послѣ́ тогó какъ онъ возвра́тился.

After having made his speech,  
he sat down.

Послѣ́ тогó какъ онъ произнёсъ  
свою́ рѣчь (произнёсши свою́  
рѣчь) онъ сѣ́лъ.

For, in,

На, with the accusative

I gave him money for the purchase  
of books, and he spent it in  
cakes.

Я далъ ему́ дѣнегъ на поку́пку книгъ  
а онъ ихъ истрáтилъ на при-  
ники.

We bought linen for shirts.

What picture is this ?

This picture is painted by Rembrandt.

A picture by Titian.

Мы купили полотня на рубашк.

Что это за картина ?

Эта картина написана Рембрантомъ.

Картина Тиціана.

OBS. 4.—The word *by* in cases where the participle passive is understood is expressed in Russian by the genitive of the following noun.

A picture by Rubens.

A poem by Byron.

Картина Рубенса.

Поэма Байрона.

To run,

To run about,

{ Бѣжать, \* def. imperf. asp.

{ Бѣгать, indef. imperf. asp.

Бѣгать по, with the dative.

*Definite.*

*Indefinite.*

I am running, etc., бѣгу, бѣжишь, бѣжитъ.

We are running, бѣжимъ, бѣжите, бѣгутъ.

I was running, я бѣжалъ.

We were running, мы бѣжали.

I run, etc., бѣгаю, бѣгаешь, бѣгаютъ.

We run, бѣгаемъ, бѣгаете, бѣгаютъ.

I ran, я бѣгалъ.

We ran, мы бѣгали.

*Imperative, бѣги, бѣгите, бѣгай, бѣгайте.*

To run all over,

To avoid,

To pay attention to,

Избѣгать.

{ Избѣгать, imp. asp.

{ Избѣжать, perf. asp.

Обращать (обращать) вниманіе на, with the accus.

They do not pay any attention to him.

Children ! pay attention.

Онѣ не обращаютъ на него никакого вниманія.

Дѣти ! будьте внимательны.



To take into consideration,

Брать (взять), въ соображе-  
ніе.

To make allowance for,

Обращать вниманіе.

One should make allowance for his  
illness.

Нужно взять въ соображеніе его бо-  
лѣзнь.

We must make allowance for his  
being a foreigner.

Намъ должно обратить вниманіе на  
то, что онъ иностранецъ.

Such a thing,

{ Что либо такое.  
{ Что нибудь подобное.

No such thing can be seen here

Нечего подобнаго здѣсь не увидишь.

Such,

Такой.

Such, as,

Тотъ, который.

Such books as they have read do  
not please them.

Тѣ книги, которыя они читали, имъ  
не нравятся.

Such as wish to go must say so  
now.

Тѣ, которые желаютъ пойти, должны  
это теперь сказать.

To rival,

Соперничать съ, with the  
instrumental.

To do right,

Быть правымъ.

To be proud of.  
The evening comes on.  
To send to prison.  
To perform.  
To accuse.  
Beforehand.  
Unpardonable.  
Proper (due).  
Thus, in such a way.

Гордиться, governs the instrumental.  
Вечерѣть, impersonal verb.  
Заключить, посадить въ тюрьму.  
Играть, представлять.  
Обвинить, perf. asp. обвинить.  
Заранѣе, напередъ.  
Непростительный.  
Должный.  
Такъ, такимъ образомъ.

Raphael, Рафаэль.  
Schiller, Шмиллеръ.

Rubens, Рубенсъ.  
Molière, Мольеръ.

## EXERCISE CI.

Have you seen the new picture by Doré?—I have not, but my nephew, who, as you know, is considered a great connoisseur, has seen it, and he says that it is an excellent picture.—May one say that this picture rivals the best of Raphael's or Rubens' works?—No, it seems to me that could not be said of this picture.—Why do you not drink some wine?—My doctor recommended me not to drink any.—Good wine is not an injurious beverage if one drinks it in moderation.—Would it be surprising if he were sent to prison?—Of course not, for it is an unpardonable thing to borrow money from people, knowing beforehand that one will not be able to pay his debts at the proper time.—To borrow money in such a way is considered as a theft.—The evening comes on very early to-day.—No, it only appears so to you, it is not earlier than usual.—What will this money be given for?—It will be given for the purchase of pens and pencils.—Whither are you running?—I am running into the garden to see what the children are doing there.—They are running about the garden.—What play do they give to-day at the theatre?—Some tragedy by a French writer.—Do you not know what piece was performed yesterday?—Yesterday was performed one of Molière's comedies.

## EXERCISE CII.

Was there much beer sold at the fair?—They say there was sold about 3543 casks.—Is the criminal already punished?—No, he is not, and he will not be punished, as it seems he is not guilty, but falsely accused by his enemies.—Of what is this lady so proud?—She is proud

of her pretty daughters.—Of what is his uncle proud?—He is proud of his industrious sons.—How much linen shall I need for a dozen and a half of shirts?—You will require about fifty yards.—What has he bought?—He has bought two pair of stockings, a pair of kid gloves, half a yard of cloth for his waistcoat, and a straw bonnet for his daughter.—Have you ever seen such a pocket-book?—I have seen many such.—Did she pay any attention to him? Yes, she did.—Does he pay attention to his words?—No, he does not pay any attention to what he says.—Did I not do right to tell him all the truth?—You did quite right. Where are you going?—I am going to Berlin.—Then I hope to have the pleasure of meeting you there.—I shall be very glad indeed.

---

## FIFTY-FIRST LESSON.

### Пятьдесят первый Урокъ.

#### OF THE ASPECTS IN DETAIL.

It might erroneously be assumed that the Russian verb, in having only three tenses, is not susceptible of the different variations of meaning presented in English by compound tenses, or by a dozen or so of auxiliaries combined with the infinitive or participle: the reverse is, however, the case. Besides the ordinary moods and tenses, the Russian verb has also forms to express the circumstances accompanying the action, or the manner in which the action is performed, without reference to its time. These forms, named *aspects*, **виды** (see Lesson 28), which render the Russian verb

richer in its simplicity than those of other European languages, are :

I. *The Imperfect Aspect*, indicating an action performed absolutely, *i.e.* without conditions as to its beginning or ending.

The peasants sell their goods in the market.

Some wrote with pen, some with pencil.

Who will read us this manuscript ?

Whoever can read best.

Крестьяне продають свои товары на рынкѣ.

Кто писалъ перомъ, кто карандашомъ.

Кто будетъ читать намъ эту рукопись ?

Тотъ, кто читаетъ лучше всѣхъ.

To fly,	{ Летѣть, def.
	{ Летать, indef.
To swim,	{ Плыть, def.
	{ Плавать, indef.

The imperfect aspect is subdivided into :

a. The definite, which denotes that the action takes place at some particular time.

He is swimming (now) to that ship.

Whither are these birds flying ?

How did you feel at the time when you were swimming to the boat ?

We will swim slowly.

Онъ плывётъ къ тому кораблю.

Куда эти птицы летятъ ?

Какъ вы себя чувствовали въ то время когда плыли (плыли) къ лодкѣ.

Мы будемъ плыть тихо.

b. The indefinite, which denotes the ability or faculty, as also a habit of performing an act without reference to a particular time.

Birds (can) fly and fishes swim.

He swims well.

If you take a few lessons in swimming, you will be able to swim well.

Птицы летаютъ, а рыбы плаваютъ.

Онъ плаваетъ хорошо.

Если возьмете нѣсколько уроковъ плаванія, то будете плавать хорошо.

II. *The Perfect Aspect*, which denotes a thorough accomplishment of the action, is subdivided into :

a. *Inchoative Perfect Aspect (the starting point)*, denoting an action as fully begun, without intimating that it has been or will be brought to an end.

He began to speak and everybody got silent.	Онъ заговорилъ и все замолчали.
--	---------------------------------

The musical-box began to play.	Органчикъ заигралъ.
--------------------------------	---------------------

They will begin to laugh.	Они засмѣются.
---------------------------	----------------

b. *Perfect Aspect of Duration (the goal)*, denoting that the action, although brought to a termination, required a certain time for its accomplishment.

I have read (finished reading) the book.	Я прочтѣлъ книгу.
---	-------------------

They come home.	Они пришли домой.
-----------------	-------------------

They will read (entirely) the book.	Они прочтутъ книгу.
-------------------------------------	---------------------

She will come home.	Она придетъ домой.
---------------------	--------------------

c. *Perfect Aspect of Unity (semelfactive)*, employed when the action is performed in one single, sudden effort :

He shouted (once).	Онъ крикнулъ.
--------------------	---------------

He jumped (once) over the fence.	Онъ перепрыгнулъ черезъ заборъ.
----------------------------------	---------------------------------

He gave him a glance.	Онъ взглянулъ на него.
-----------------------	------------------------

III. *The Iterative Aspect*, denoting that the action was accomplished in repeated efforts or times at some distant period.

In olden times our ancestors used to live better than we do now.	Въ старину живали дѣды лучше нашего.
---	---

We used to read good books.	Мы читывали хорошія книги.
-----------------------------	----------------------------

Obs. 1.—Each Aspect is regularly conjugated according to its own moods and tenses, thus :

a. The *Imperfect Aspect*, both definite and indefinite, has all the moods and tenses.

b. The *Perfect* has all the moods and tenses, except the present.

c. The *Iterative* wants the imperative and has only the past tense.

OBS. 2.—There are a few verbs like свистать 'to whistle,' which possess all the aspects, as for instance :

Imperfect asp.	{ Definite,	свистѣть.
	{ Indefinite,	свистать.
Perfect asp.	{ Inchoative,	засвистать.
	{ of duration,	просвистать.
	{ of unity,	свистнуть.
Iterative asp.	свистывать.	

In some verbs the perfect of unity is wanting, in others the inchoative or the iterative.

With this relation to the aspects the simple verbs, *i.e.* those which have no preposition attached to them, are :

1. *Complete*, which have all the principal aspects, as :

<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Iterative.</i>
To throw, кидать,	кинуть,	кидывать.
To touch, трогать,	трогнуть,	трогать.

2. *Incomplete*, which have two aspects: the imperfect and the iterative, as :

<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Iterative.</i>
To play, играть,	игрывать.
To sing, пѣть,	пѣвать.

3. *Double* verbs, which have both the forms of the imperfect aspect and the iterative, as :

<i>Imperfect Definite.</i>	<i>Imperfect Indefinite.</i>	<i>Iterative.</i>
To go, идти,	ходить,	хаживать.
To carry, нести,	носить,	нашивать.

4. *Defective*, which have one aspect only, the imperfect or perfect, as :

To adore, обождать,	} used only in the imperfect aspect.
To suspect, подозревать,	
To come to one's self, опомниться,	} used only in the perfect aspect.
To gush out, хлынуть,	

To refuse,

{ Отказывать въ, } with the  
{ Отказать, р. а., } prep. с.

To bequeath, to leave,

Отказывать, отказать.

What did he refuse you ?

Въ чёмъ онъ отказалъ вамъ ?

He refused me everything.

Онъ во всёмъ мнѣ отказалъ.

My grandmother bequeathed me this estate.

Бабушка отказала мнѣ это помѣстье.

He gave him a peremptory refusal.

Онъ ему начисто отказалъ.

He met with a refusal.

Онъ получилъ отказъ.

To be of use,

Быть полезнымъ.

To make one's self useful,

Приносить пользу.

To be a burden to,

Быть въ тягость.—

Am I a burden to you ?

Въ тягость ли я вамъ ?

I am a burden to myself.

Я въ тягость себѣ.

They were a burden to themselves.

Они были себѣ въ тягость.

Immaterial, all the same,

Всё равно, нужды нѣтъ, im-  
personal, with the dat.

It is immaterial to us.

Намъ всё равно.

It is all the same to me.

{ Мнѣ всё равно, мнѣ нужды нѣтъ.

It makes no difference to me.

To rid one's self of,

Освободиться, избавиться отъ,  
with the genitive.

To get rid of,

To get off one's hands, }

Сбивать, сбить съ рукъ.

We could not get rid of that disagreeable man.

Мы не могли избавиться (отдѣлаться)  
отъ того несноснаго человека.

Have you got rid of the damaged goods?

We have got that work off our hands.

To succeed,

I sometimes succeed in finding him in.

Did he succeed?

He will not succeed.

To complain of,

He complains of his severity.

To observe, to watch,

We watched the men working.

In spite of,

By accident,

On purpose,

Intentionally,

For what?

Was there any cause to punish him?

There was no cause.

By,

To pass (by),

I passed your house.

Сбыли ли вы съ рукъ испорченный товаръ?

Мы сбывли съ рукъ (огъ съ плечъ) эту работу.

Удаваться, удаться, conj. like  
дать.

Мнѣ удаётся иногда застать его дома.

Удалось ли ему?

Ему не удалось.

{ Жаловаться на, } with  
{ Пожаловаться, р. а. } the acc.

Онъ жалуется на его строгость.

Наблюдать за, with the instr.

Мы наблюдали за работающими (людьми).

Не смотри на, with the acc.

Случайно,

Нарочно,

Умышленно,

За что?

} adverbs.

Было ли за что его наказывать?

Нé за что было.

Мимо.

Проходить мимо, with the  
genitive.

Я прошёлъ мимо вашего дома.



By (according), in,  
I could not judge by the hand-  
writing.  
In my opinion.

As one can,  
Let us be as good as we can.

Weekly, *adv.*  
Monthly,  
Yearly,

I pay weekly.  
I pay quarterly.  
To ask for a loan.  
To cease.  
To make a stay.  
To become.  
To become rich.  
To enrich, to make rich.  
To knock against.  
To serve tea, dinner.  
The necessaries of life.  
A commercial house.

Property, имущество.  
A half-bottle, полбутылка.  
To keep, держать.

По, with the dative.  
Я не могъ судить по почерку.  
По моему мнѣнiю.

По возможности.  
Будемъ добры по возможности.

Еженедѣльно, понедѣльно.  
Ежемесячно, помѣсячно.  
Ежегодно, погодно.

Я плачу понедѣльно.  
Я плачу каждую четверть (года).  
Просить денегъ въ займы у.—  
Переставать, р. а. перестать.  
Пробыть, прожить.  
Ставovиться, дѣлаться.  
Обогащаться, обогатиться.  
Обогащать, обогатить.  
Стучать о, with the prep. с.  
Подавать чай, обѣдъ.  
Нужное, необходимoe.  
Торговый домъ.

Burden, тягость.  
A champagne-glass, бокалъ.  
Appropriation, присвоение.

### EXERCISE CIII.

Must I punish this lazy boy for his breaking the tumbler?—If he broke it on purpose, then punish him, but if he did it by accident then he should not be punished.—May we punish children for disobedience or misbehaviour?—We not only may, but should.—Was there any cause to reproach him?—There was no cause to reproach him.—While

passing this five-storied house I met a young man.—Who was that young man?—I do not know his name, but I remember well that he is the same whom I met more than once at your house.—It is impossible for me to guess by such a description.—How long has this little girl worn these shoes?—She has not worn them more than four weeks, and they are quite worn out already.—How does your brother-in-law pay his rent, weekly or monthly?—He pays quarterly, he pays yearly.—What wine shall I serve at dinner?—Bring two bottles of Burgundy and a bottle of Champagne.—In asking this miser for a loan, you waste your time, because he is so mean, that he refuses the necessities of life to his only son.—Is this diamond-merchant rich?—Judging by the luxury that surrounds him, he must be very rich.—Did you ask anybody for a loan?—No, I did not, I am not in need of money.—Have you got rid of your head-ache?—Yes, my head does not ache now. Has the merchant got rid of the damaged cloth?—Yes, he has succeeded in getting rid of it.—Did he buy this watch? No, his grandfather, who never refuses him anything, gave it to him.—Has he left something to his poor nephew? No, he left all his property to his eldest niece.

#### EXERCISE CIV.

Have you ever watched the working bees in their hives? Yes, I saw them once working at the Crystal Palace, where they are kept in glass hives.—Ought not everybody to endeavour to make himself useful?—Everybody ought to make himself as useful as he can, for the moment that a man, however rich he may be, ceases to make himself useful to others, he becomes a burden to himself.—Will he succeed

in getting a situation in some commercial house?—He has got a situation and gets a very good salary, but in spite of all this, he is always complaining.—Do not knock the book against the table; your mother is ill, and you make such a noise.—I have done it by accident and not on purpose. Bring me a glass of champagne.—Our champagne is sold only in bottles and half bottles.—Then bring me half a bottle.—Yes, sir.—Of what is this man accused?—He is accused of appropriating other people's money.—Is this his sole crime?—No, he is accused of another crime also.—Of which?—That he has stolen from his master a large sum of money.—By whom was this church built?—Which church?—The one built of brick, and whose cupola is seen from here better than all others.—Is England rich?—Yes, very rich; free trade has so enriched that country.

---

## FIFTY-SECOND LESSON.

### Пятьдесятъ второй Урокъ.

Whither are you carrying this child?	Куда вы несёте этого ребёнка?
I am carrying him to the hospital.	Я несёу его въ больницу.
Do you take him there often?	Часто ли вы его туда посите?
I take him there every day.	Я его туда ношю каждый день.

The double verbs, namely those having the definite and indefinite forms in the imperfect aspect, designate movement or some act having relation to hearing or sight.

The radical form of these verbs is the definite aspect, from which the indefinite is formed.

The following comprise nearly all of this class.

*Definite Imperfect Aspect.*

Брести́, I. 7, to wander,  
 Блесте́ть, II. 9, to glitter,  
 Блудить, II. 10, to wander,  
 Бежа́ть,\* to run,  
 Вали́ть, II. 10, to throw down,  
 Везу́, I. 7, to carry (in a carriage),  
 Вести́, I. 7, to lead,  
 Ве́сить, II. 10, to weigh,  
 Гна́ть,\* to drive,  
 Идти́,\* to go,  
 Катить, II. 10, to roll,  
 Кривить, II. 10, to crook,  
 Летѣ́ть, II. 9, to fly,  
 Ломить, II. 10, to break,  
 Лѣзть, I. 7, to climb,  
 Мѣрить, I. 1, to measure,  
 Нести́, I. 7, to bring, to carry,  
 Плы́ть, I. 6, to swim,  
 Ползти́, I. 7, to crawl,  
 Ронить, II. 10, to drop,  
 Слы́шать, II. 9, to hear,  
 Садить, II. 9, to plant,  
 Свисте́ть, II. 9, to whistle,  
 Тащи́ть, II. 10, to drag,  
 Ъха́ть,\* to ride,

*Indefinite Imperfect Aspect.*

Бро́дить, II. 10.  
 Блестѣ́ть, I. 1.  
 Блужда́ть, I. 1.  
 Бе́гать, I. 1.  
 Вали́ть, I. 1.  
 Вози́ть, II. 10.  
 Води́ть, II. 10.  
 Ве́шать, I. 1.  
 Гони́ть, I. 1.  
 Ходи́ть, II. 10.  
 Качѣ́ть, I. 1.  
 Кривля́ть, I. 1.  
 Летѣ́ть, I. 1.  
 Ломѣ́ть, I. 1.  
 Лѣзѣ́ть, II. 10.  
 Мѣря́ть, I. 1.  
 Носи́ть, II. 10.  
 Пла́вать, I. 1.  
 Полза́ть, I. 1.  
 Рони́ть, I. 1.  
 Слы́хъть.  
 Сажѣ́ть, I. 1.  
 Свистѣ́ть.  
 Таска́ть, I. 1.  
 Ъзди́ть, II. 10.

OBS. 1.—The iterative aspect of double verbs is formed from the indefinite, as :

To go, идти́, ходи́ть,	Iterative, хажива́ть.
To ride, ѡхъть, ѡзди́ть,	. . ѡзжива́ть.
To hear, слы́шать, слы́хъть,	. . слы́хива́ть.

OBS. 2.—All other verbs of the imperfect aspect have one form only, as :

The children are silent when he reads.      Дѣти молча́тъ когда онъ чита́етъ.

He reads well.  
What is he doing now ?  
He is singing.  
They sing well.  
Birds sing.

Онъ хорошо читаетъ.  
Что онъ теперь дѣлаетъ ?  
Онъ поётъ.  
Они хорошо поютъ.  
Птицы поютъ.

To do, to cause,

{ Причинять, I. 1.  
{ Причинить, р. а. II. 10.

The rain did harm to the fields.

Дождь причинилъ вредъ полямъ.

To laugh at, to mock,

{ Смѣяться } надъ, with  
{ Насмѣхаться } the instr.

They laughed at him.  
You should not mock him.

Они смѣялись надъ нимъ.  
Вы не должны насмѣхаться надъ  
нимъ.

To make one laugh.

Смѣшить, II. 10.

To have done with,

{ Окончить.  
{ Не нуждаться болѣе.

Have you done with this book ?

{ Окончили ли вы эту книгу ?  
{ Нужна ли вамъ ещё эта книга ?

I have not done with it yet.

{ Я её ещё не окончилъ.  
{ Она мнѣ ещё нужна.

Have you done dinner ?

{ Окончили ли вы обѣдать ?  
{ Обѣдали ли вы ?

Is this right ?

{ Справедливо ли ?  
{ Хорошо ли ?

To be right,  
To be in the right,  
To be in the wrong,

Быть справедливымъ.  
Быть правымъ.  
Быть не правымъ.

To act rightly,

{ Дѣлать хорошо.  
{ Поступать справедливо.

Is he right in calling me lazy ?

Справедливо ли онъ, называя меня  
лѣнтяемъ (лѣнивымъ).

He is wrong.

Was I right in calling you early ?

Was he in the right when he complained ?

He was entirely in the wrong.

I shall have done,

I shall have written,

{ Онъ не справедливъ.

{ Онъ не хорошо дѣлаетъ.

Хорошо ли я сдѣлалъ, разбудивъ васъ рано ?

Правъ ли онъ былъ, когда жаловался ?

Онъ былъ совершенно не правъ.

Я окончу.

Я напишѹ.

Obs. 3.—The English future perfect with *shall* or *will* expressed or understood, is rendered by the future tense in Russian, as :

When will you buy this house ?

As soon as I have got the money ?

After I have written this letter, I shall have to write one more.

Когда вы купите этотъ домъ ?

Какъ только получѹ деньги.

Когда напишѹ (напишѹ) это письмо, мнѣ нужно будетъ написать еще одно.

For (during),

He rode for five days.

For six whole weeks we had only biscuit to eat.

In passing,

When did you see him ?

I saw him as I went by.

He looked at the window as he went past.

Въ продолженіе.

Онъ ѣхалъ въ продолженіе пяти дней.

Въ продолженіе шести недѣль мы ѣли только сухари.

Мимоходомъ, *adverb.*

Когда вы видѣли его ?

Я видѣлъ его мимоходомъ.

Онъ заглянулъ въ окно мимоходомъ.

In every way,

I have done my best.

He tried this in every way.

Всѣчески, *adverb.*

Я всѣчески старался.

Онъ всѣчески пробовалъ это сдѣлать.

To persuade,

{ Уговаривать, I. 1.

{ Уговорить, р. а. II. 10.

To lose,

Терять, р. а. потерять.

To be lost,

{ Пропадѣть, I. I.  
 Пропасть,\* р. а. (future,  
 пропадѹ).

He has lost his purse.

Онъ потерялъ свой кошелекъ.

The dog was lost.

Собака пропа́ла.

This money may be regarded as lost.

Нужно считать что эти деньги про-  
пали.

We have lost sight of him.

Онъ у насъ изъ глазъ пропа́лъ.

They gave me up for lost.

Они считали меня пропащимъ чело-  
вѣкомъ.

To have an objection to,

Быть прѣотивъ, with the gen.

Have you any objection to this.

Имѣете ли что прѣотивъ этого?

I have no objection to this.

Я не прѣотивъ этого.

To knit,

{ Вязать, I. 2.  
 Связать, р. а.

To post a letter,

Отдать писемѡ на почту.

To trouble with,

{ Утруждать, } with the  
 { Утрудить, р. а. } instr.

To tell (to narrate).

Разсказывать.

To play at chess.

Играть въ шахматы.

To play at billiards.

Играть на бильярдъ.

A chess-player.

Шахматный игрокъ.

A billiard-player.

Бильярдный игрокъ.

A game of chess.

Партія въ шахматы.

To be obliged, compelled.

Быть принужденъ.

A vain effort.

Напрасный трудъ.

Drought, засуха.

Conclusion, окончаніе.

A beggar-woman, нищая.

To shine, сіять.

Visible, видный, видимый.

To fulfil, исполнить.

To cry out, кричать.

To dispose, располагать.

Effort, трудъ, усиліе.

To suppose, полагать.

## EXERCISE CV.

Who usually takes (leads) this little girl to school?—The old nurse takes her there in the morning, and I take her in the evening.—When did our neighbours go out? They went out after warming themselves.—What did you plant yesterday?—I was planting flowers the whole day. What are you carrying on those sledges?—We are carrying wheat.—Whither are you carrying it?—We are taking it to town.—Do you always take your wheat to the town market?—No, we only take it thither when we cannot sell it on the spot.—What was his eldest brother laughing at the other day?—He was laughing at the conclusion of the story which the nurse was telling to the children.—What were the children complaining of?—They were complaining of the dull and rainy weather.—What did they wish for? They wished that the sun would always shine.—Was their wish fulfilled?—Yes, for six whole weeks there was not a single cloud visible.—Did this dry weather do any harm? Yes, it did a great deal of harm to the fields, meadows and gardens.—Do you go to town in winter often?—No, we seldom go there.—Who left you the estate you now possess?—My late aunt left it to me.—Is the servant carrying the fire-wood which the peasant has brought for us this morning?—No, he has not yet begun to carry it.—Whither shall you go next year for cloth?—I shall go to England, and then, when I have bought it, I shall go to Holland. Why do you speak so loud?—The gentleman to whom I speak, although very kind and amiable, is unfortunately deaf, so I am compelled to cry out, in order to be heard.—Shall John go to the forest?—No, it is Nicholas's business to go there; therefore he, and not John, shall go.



## EXERCISE CVI.

Does your little niece learn to knit stockings?—She need not learn it, because she has already knit a few pairs of very fine stockings.—Would your nieces knit their own stockings if they could not buy any?—Even then they would not, for they know not how to knit stockings.—Do me the favour of putting those letters in the post as you go by.—They are posted already.—When will you have done copying these letters?—I shall have done by this evening. When will they have done with the books?—They will have done by to-morrow.—When will your uncle return to town?—When he has finished his business.—For how long are you going to Australia?—I am going there for three years.—Can he play at billiards?—Yes, he is a very good billiard player.—Does he play as well as this marker?—No, he does not, but that does not prevent him from considering himself the best player.—With whom were you playing at chess at the club?—I played yesterday two games at chess with a Hungarian, who is considered to be one of the strongest players.—Which of you has won?—I, of course, lost; for I am a weak player.—Did you persuade him to come to us to-morrow?—I endeavoured in every way to persuade him, but he was so obstinate that all my efforts were thrown away on him.—Well, if he likes better to sit by himself at home, we shall not trouble him any more with our invitation.—Did your lady neighbour find her little dog, which they say was lost a few days ago?—No, and the little dog was not lost, but stolen, it is supposed, by an old beggar-woman.

---

## FIFTY-THIRD LESSON.

## Пятьдесятъ третій Урокъ.

## FORMATION OF THE ITERATIVE ASPECT.

The Iterative is formed from the imperfect aspect by changing the termination of the infinitive or that of the present tense into *ывалъ, пвалъ, валъ* or *алъ*.

Dissyllabic and polysyllabic verbs in *тъ*, preceded by *а, я, о, ѣ, и* form their iterative in *ывалъ* or *пвалъ*, the tonic accent falling on the radical syllable, *i.e.* before the termination.

To read, <i>чит-ать, читаю;</i>	iterative, <i>чит-ывалъ.</i>
To measure, <i>мѣр-ять, мѣряю;</i>	. . <i>мѣр-пвалъ.</i>
To sting, <i>кол-оть, колю;</i>	. . <i>кол-ывалъ.</i>
To sit, <i>сид-ѣть, сижу;</i>	. . <i>сид-пвалъ.</i>
To love, <i>люб-ить, люблю;</i>	. . <i>люб-пвалъ.</i>

Verbs of the first conjugation ending in *ать* form the iterative in *ывалъ*, which is changed into *пвалъ* when coming only after *ж, ч, ш, г, к, х*, as :

To hold, <i>держ-ать, держу;</i>	iterative, <i>держ-пвалъ.</i>
To roll, <i>кач-ать, качаю;</i>	. . <i>кач-пвалъ.</i>
To decide, <i>рѣш-ать, рѣшаю;</i>	. . <i>рѣш-пвалъ.</i>
To move, <i>двиг-ать, двигаю;</i>	. . <i>двиг-пвалъ.</i>
To plough, <i>пах-ать, паху;</i>	. . <i>пах-пвалъ.</i>

An *л* before *пвалъ* is inserted in the iterative of verbs of the second class in *ать*, preceded by *б, п, м* :

To shake, <i>колѣб-ать, колеблю;</i>	iterative, <i>колѣблпвалъ.</i>
To drizzle, <i>крап-ать, краплю;</i>	. . <i>краплпвалъ.</i>
To slumber, <i>дрем-ать, дремлю;</i>	. . <i>дремлпвалъ.</i>

OBS. 1.—The following dissyllabic verbs of the ninth and tenth classes take **аѣ** instead of **иваѣ** :

To burn, горѣть ; iterative, горѣаѣ.  
 To boil, кипѣть ; . . . кипѣаѣ.  
 To cut, рубѣть ; . . . рубѣаѣ.

The iterative in **ваѣ** and **аѣ** is formed :

a. From all monosyllabic verbs :

To know, знать, знаю ; iterative, знаваѣ.  
 To sing, пѣть, пою ; . . . пѣваѣ.  
 To live, житъ, живу ; . . . живаѣ.  
 To nibble, грызть, грызю ; . . . грызаѣ.  
 To bake, печь, пеку ; . . . пекаѣ.  
 To row, грести, гребу ; . . . гребаѣ.  
 To burn, жечь, жгу ; . . . жигаѣ.

Except the following in **сть** :

To lay, класть, кладу ; iterative, кладоваѣ.  
 To steal, красть, краду ; . . . крадоваѣ.  
 To spin, прясть, пряду ; . . . прядоваѣ.

OBS. 2.—The termination **ваѣ** is used after vowels and **аѣ** after consonants.

To tear, рвать, рву ; iterative, рываѣ.  
 To take, брать, беру ; . . . бираѣ.

OBS. 3.—If a vowel in the imperfect aspect is wanting in the verbal root, the vowel **и** (**ы**) is inserted in the iterative :

To babble, врать, вр-у ; iterative, впр-аѣ.  
 To rub, терѣть, тр-у ; . . . тпр-аѣ.  
 To call, звать, зову ; . . . зыв-аѣ.

OBS. 4.—The termination **аѣ** of the iterative is always accented.

## b. From dissyllabic verbs in нуть, as :

To feel cold, *сѣбнуть* ; iterative, *зѣб-аѣтъ*.  
 To dry, *сѣхнуть* ; . . . *сы-хаѣтъ*.

## Except the following :

To smell, *пахнуть* ; iterative, *пахиваѣтъ*.  
 To draw, *тянуть* ; . . . *тягиваѣтъ*.

Obs. 5.—Between the indefinite imperfect aspect and the iterative there is a great similarity in meaning, and they have in common the characteristic suffix a, as :

I was in the habit of swimming.      Я *плаваѣлъ*,  
 I used to sing.      Я *пѣваѣлъ*.

but they differ in this that the first has and the second has not the present tense.

Verbs having in the infinitive the tonic accent on the last syllable, in forming the iterative change the o of the radical syllable into a, which takes also the accent.

To throw, *бросать* ; iterative, *брасываѣтъ*.  
 To look, *смотреть* ; . . . *сма́триваѣтъ*.  
 To feed, *кормить* ; . . . *кармиваѣтъ*.

Obs. 6.—If the radical o is accented in the infinitive it remains unchanged in the iterative.

To touch, *трогать* ; iterative, *тро́гиваѣтъ*.  
 To damage, *портить* ; . . . *порчи́ваѣтъ*.

## Only the following deviate from this rule :

To creep, *ползать* ;      iterative, *па́лзываѣтъ*.  
 To turn, *ворочать* ;      . . . *вора́чиваѣтъ*.  
 To build, *строить* ;      . . . *стра́иваѣтъ* (*стро́биваѣтъ*).  
 To dispose to kindness, *добрить* ; . . . *добра́иваѣтъ* (*добра́иваѣтъ*).

Obs. 7.—It has been stated that the iterative of double verbs is formed from the indefinite aspect; the following, however, are exceptions, as they form the iterative also from the definite aspect.

To climb, <i>лѣзть</i> ;	iterative, <i>лѣзѣлъ</i> .
To creep, <i>ползѣти</i> ;	<i>ползѣлъ</i> .
To turn, <i>вертѣть</i> ;	<i>верчивалъ</i> .
To roll, <i>катить</i> ;	<i>качивалъ</i> .

Most verbs derived from substantives or adjectives want the iterative; to these belong neuter verbs of the first class in *ѣть*, *жать*, *чать*, *шать*, *щать*, and verbs in *нуть* of the eighth class denoting the acquisition of some quality, as:

To grow white, <i>блѣѣть</i> .	To become dear, <i>дорожать</i> .
To grow black, <i>чернѣть</i> .	To become strong, <i>крѣпчать</i> .
To grow blue, <i>синѣть</i> .	To grow old, <i>ветшѣть</i> .
To sweat, <i>потѣть</i> .	To know how, <i>умѣть</i> .
To fade, <i>блѣкнуть</i> .	To grow deaf, <i>плѣхнуть</i> .

The participles, the gerund and the infinitive of the third branch, *i.e.* of the iterative, are formed in the same way as those of the second branch, namely, by changing *лѣ* into *въ* (*вши*) *вший*,—*тъ*,—*нъ*, as:

<i>Iterative</i> , <i>читывалъ</i> .
<i>Active Participle</i> , <i>читывавшій</i> .
<i>Passive Participle</i> , <i>читыванъ</i> .
<i>Gerund</i> , <i>читывавъ</i> .

Obs. 8.—The iterative aspect of simple verbs is seldom used in the infinitive, but a careful study of this aspect will be found very useful for the formation of prepositional verbs.

To spend,

To spend (on one's self),

Do you spend much every year?

I spend all I earn.

{ Тратить, II. 10.

{ Истратить, perf. asp.

Проживать, прожить.

Сколько вы проживаете въ годъ?

Я проживаю всё что зарабатываю.

To live upon, by,

She lives by her labour.  
 They live upon their income.  
 He has nothing to live upon.

Жить, with the instr.

Она живёт своими трудами.  
 Они живут своими доходами.  
 Ему нечемъ жить.

Upon,

He lives upon the money left to  
 him by his uncle.

На, with the accus.

Онъ живётъ на деньги, оставленные  
 ему его дядей.

By,

What do you mean by that ?

Подъ, with the instr.

Что вы разумёте (понимаете) подъ  
 этимъ.

To help,

We cannot help you.  
 They always helped him as far as  
 possible.  
 I cannot help laughing. }  
 I cannot refrain from laughing. }  
 Could one help laughing ?

{ Помогать, I. 1, with the dat.  
 { Помочь,\* р. а., (fut. помогу,  
 поможешь, etc.).

Мы не можемъ помочь вамъ.  
 Они всегда помогали ему по воз-  
 можности.

Я не могу удержаться отъ смѣха.  
 Можно ли удержаться отъ смѣха ?

To burst out laughing,  
 To be in a perplexity,

Разразиться смѣхомъ.  
 Находиться въ затрудненіи.

To call on,

{ Заѣхать къ. } with the  
 { Заходить, зайти, } dat.

Punctually,

Въ точности.

To consist,

Состоять, II. 9.

In the sight of,

Передъ, with the instr.

On, about,

О, объ.

Did they speak on this matter ?  
 They spoke about it.

Говорили ли они объ этомъ дѣлѣ ?  
 Они говорили объ этомъ.

To become saving,  
Hence,  
Thence,

I shall go hence to London and  
thence to Paris.

How did you come to know that  
he is ill?

He said that illness alone could  
prevent his coming; he did  
not come, hence I came to the  
conclusion that he was ill.

Henceforth,

Thenceforth,

A month hence,

They will go to him a few days  
hence.

To get into debt,

To favour with,

To intrust to,

To notify,

To tend, ходить за.

To lie buried, быть похоронену.

To display, оказывать.

To send away, отослать.

Ordinary, простой.

To be at work.

A toast.

A message.

Стать бережливымъ.

Отсюда, изъ сего.

Оттуда, изъ того.

Я поѣду отсюда въ Лондонъ, а отту-  
да въ Парижъ.

Какъ это вы узнали что онъ боленъ?

Онъ сказалъ, что только болѣзнь мо-  
жетъ помѣшать ему прійти;  
онъ не пришёлъ, изъ сего я и  
заклучилъ, что онъ боленъ.

Отнынѣ, вперёдъ

Съ тѣхъ поръ.

Черезъ мѣсяцъ.

Они пойдутъ къ нему черезъ нѣ-  
сколько дней.

Дѣлать долги.

Удостоить, with the instr.

Возложить на, with the acc.

Извѣстить о, объ, with the  
prepos. case.

To fulfil, исполнить.

To repay, уплатить.

Spare money, лишнія деньги.

To send for, прислать за.

Equality, равенство.

Быть за работой.

Подаренный хлебъ.

Поручение.

## EXERCISE CVII.

Why are these things not sent yet?—Because they had  
to be sent for.—Did you find the Italian at home when you

called on him yesterday morning?—No, he was not at home. He goes out early then?—Not always; he only goes out early when business requires it.—Did the clerk execute punctually the message entrusted to him?—I do not know in what this message consisted.—He was ordered to notify the arrival of the vessel.—Why did the traveller go so often to the cemetery?—Because his wife, whom he so tenderly loved, lies buried there.—Have you no money?—I am very much in want of it now.—I have no spare money now, but I will oblige you all the same as far as I can, if you promise me to repay it three months hence.—What kind of woman was the late countess?—She was a true mother to the poor and the suffering.—She used to give money liberally to the poor and often even tended them herself. Was her sister as liberal?—She displayed as much kindness to the poor as her circumstances allowed her.—Does he read much now?—He used to read formerly, but now, they say, he does not even take a book in hand.—Have you ever seen such a horse?—I have seen in my life-time all sorts of horses, but so fine a one I never saw.—When will you favour us with a (your) visit?—We hope to be in town three weeks hence, and then we will call on you. Did they notify to him the arrival of the goods?—Yes, they notified it to him by letter.—What kind of breakfast have you ordered to be served, an English or an ordinary one?—What do you mean by an English breakfast?—Tea with buttered toast, and, if you like, a mutton or veal cutlet. This is too much, I eat but little in the morning.—Give orders for a cup of coffee with cream to be brought.

#### EXERCISE CVIII.

How much does your brother spend a year on himself?



He spends not only all he earns, but even gets into debt. What does this poor widow live upon?—She lives by her labour.—Upon what money does this extravagant young man live?—He lives on money which he gets from his father.—Do you spend much?—I used to spend not a little when I was rich, but now I have become saving.—How are his affairs now?—He is in a great perplexity.—How much a week do you pay to your cook?—I pay him twelve and a half roubles per month.—Is all the money spent? No, there are a few roubles left, with (на) which we will buy for ourselves a few French and German books.—Are all men equal in France?—All men are equal in the sight of God, but you will not find true equality among men. Help me to carry this heavy box upstairs.—I am very sorry I cannot fulfil your request, but if you will wait a short time, when I return I will carry it there myself.—Is your gardener at work?—Why do you ask me about it? You know he is the most honest and industrious of my servants.—This I know, but I ask you what he is doing? He is planting trees and flowers.

---

## FIFTY-FOURTH LESSON.

### Пятьдесятъ четвёртый Урокъ.

Verbs of perfect aspect formed, not by means of a prefix, but by a change of termination, are divided into two categories :

- a. Verbs of perfect aspect of unity.
- b. Simple perfect verbs.

The Perfect Aspect of Unity is formed from verbs of imperfect aspect denoting a physical action or rather an action combined with some visible or audible sign. Verbs of this aspect are formed by changing the termination of the imperfect aspect into *ну, нуть*.

Лопать, to burst ;	perf. of unity, лопа <sup>ну</sup> ть.
Махать, to wave ;	. . . мах <sup>ну</sup> ть.
Дуть, to blow ;	. . . ду <sup>ну</sup> ть.
Лизать, to lick ;	. . . лиз <sup>ну</sup> ть.
Рубить, to chop ;	. . . руб <sup>ну</sup> ть.
Зѣвать, to yawn ;	. . . зѣв <sup>ну</sup> ть.
Прѣгать, to jump ;	. . . прѣг <sup>ну</sup> ть.
Сверкать, to flash ;	. . . сверк <sup>ну</sup> ть.

Obs. 1.—The radical consonants *г, д, к, т*, are omitted before *нуть* in the following :

Блестѣть, to shine ; блес <sup>ну</sup> ть.	Прѣдать, to bound ; прѣ <sup>ну</sup> ть.
Брызгать, to sprinkle ; брыз <sup>ну</sup> ть.	Свистѣть, to whistle ; свист <sup>ну</sup> ть.
Вертѣть, to turn ; вер <sup>ну</sup> ть.	Тискать, to squeeze ; тис <sup>ну</sup> ть.
Глядѣть, to look ; гла <sup>ну</sup> ть.	Трепетать, to tremble ; трепет <sup>ну</sup> ть.
Двѣгать, to move ; двѣ <sup>ну</sup> ть.	Трескать, to crack ; трес <sup>ну</sup> ть.
Дѣргать, to pull ; дѣр <sup>ну</sup> ть.	Трогать, to touch ; трог <sup>ну</sup> ть.
Кидать, to throw ; ки <sup>ну</sup> ть.	Хлестать, to lash ; хлест <sup>ну</sup> ть.
Плескать, to splash ; плес <sup>ну</sup> ть.	Хлѣстать, to smack ; хлѣст <sup>ну</sup> ть.
Полоскать, to rinse ; полоск <sup>ну</sup> ть.	Хрустѣть, to crunch ; хруст <sup>ну</sup> ть.
Прѣскаль, to syringe ; прѣс <sup>ну</sup> ть.	Шептать, to whisper ; шеп <sup>ну</sup> ть.

Obs. 2.—The radical consonants *г, к, х* in verbs of second conjugation, changed in the imperfect aspect into *ж, ч, ш* or *с*, are restored in the perfect of unity.

<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Root.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>
Звучать, to sound ;	звукъ,	звѣ <sup>ну</sup> ть.
Визжать, to yelp ;	визгъ,	визг <sup>ну</sup> ть.
Кричать, to scream ;	крикъ,	кри <sup>ну</sup> ть.
Воронить, to stir ;	ворохъ,	ворох <sup>ну</sup> ть.

Obs. 3.—Л before нуть becomes soft (лъ).

Колѣть, to sting ;	кольнѣть.
Шевелѣть, to stir ;	шевельнѣть.
Вплѣть, to evade ;	вплѣнѣть.

Obs. 4.—The following verbs of perfect aspect in нуть are not classed with verbs of unity, as they do not denote an action accomplished by a sudden or single effort. In these verbs the letter н belongs to the root and not to the termination :

Мнѣнѣть, to avoid ;	from мнѣнѣть.
Обманѣть, to deceive ;	.. обманѣвать.
Помнѣнѣть, to mention ;	.. помнѣнѣть.

Obs. 5.—The following, forming the perfect of unity in нуть without denoting physical action, are exceptions :

Дерзнѣть, to dare ;	from дерзѣть.
Хвастнѣть, to boast ;	.. хвастѣть.
Щегольнѣть, to flaunt ;	.. щегольѣть.

It is a long time since I waved my hand.	Я уже давно какъ махну вамъ рукою.
I will wave my hand to him once at the proper time.	Я махну ему рукою когда придетъ пора.

### THE USE OF БЫЛО.

Obs. 6.—The impersonal verb было before an infinitive in affirmative and negative sentences denotes an obligation or necessity, and is mostly used with personal pronouns in the dative, as :

Ему было прочесть.	He had to read.
Вамъ было поговорить съ нимъ.	You had to speak to him.

Obs. 7.—Было after the infinitive of perfect aspect sig-

nifies 'should have,' and is used with the first person only, as:

Прочѣсть было мнѣ эту книгу.

I should have read this book.

Поговорить было намъ съ нимъ.

We should have spoken to him.

OBS. 8.—In negative sentences было after an infinitive is used with verbs of imperfect aspect only, and denotes likewise an obligation or necessity.

Не говорить было съ нимъ.

You ought not to speak to him.

Не идти было туда.

You ought not to go there.

OBS. 9.—Было with the past tense of perfect aspect denotes either duration without completion or a failure in accomplishing an action.

Я прочёл было это.

I nearly read it through.

Я собрался было лечь, какъ въ другъ.

I was about (or just going) to lie down, when suddenly I heard a knock at the door.

Слышу стукъ въ дверь.

OBS. 10.—With the inchoative perfect aspect it denotes that an action was about to be, or on the point of being commenced, as:

Я было заговорилъ.

I was on the point of speaking.

Я сталъ было пѣть.

I was about to sing.

### THE USE OF БЫВАЮ.

It has been stated (Lesson 49), that the impersonal бываю is found with verbs in each of the three tenses. Its use may be thus illustrated:

a. With the past tense of the imperfect and iterative an action is described as one that took place repeatedly in some remote period.

Я говорилъ бываю ему.

I used to speak to him.

Я ѣздилъ бываю въ театръ.

I used to go to the theatre.

OBS. 11.—This form is often used instead of the iterative, thus:

Я говорилъ бывало, or я говаривалъ.  
Я ѣздилъ бывало, or я ѣзжалъ.

b. With the present an action that occurred in some remote period is described as still continuing, as:

Гуляю бывало по берегу и собираю ракушки. While walking along the shore I used to gather shells.

OBS. 12.—The principal clause with *бывало*, when changed into a gerund, becomes a subordinate one denoting an action long past:

Сидя бывало и ужу рыбу. } While seated I used to angle with  
сидя я удилъ рыбу. } a line.

c. With the future of the inchoative aspect an action is described as *begun*, and with that of the perfect aspect as *ended* in some remote period:

Заговорить (inchoative) бывало она о своём покойномъ мужѣ да и заплачетъ. No sooner did she begin to speak of her late husband than she used to cry.

Посмотрить (посмотрѣвъ) бывало въ глаза и тотчасъ отгадываетъ ваше желаніе. No sooner had he gazed at your eyes than he used to guess your wishes.

It is going on,

Дѣлается, *impers. v.*

What was there going on?

Что тамъ дѣлалось?

Will there be anything going on?

Будетъ ли что нибудь дѣлаться.

By so doing,

Тѣмъ.

Read aloud, by so doing you would give us a pleasure.

Читайте вслухъ, тѣмъ вы доставите намъ удовольствіе.

To fly at,

{ Бросаться на, } with the  
{ броситься, p. a. } acc.

To discharge (a gun),	{ Стрѣлѣть изъ, } with the
To become frightened,	{ Выстрѣлить, р. а. } gen.
To enjoy, to make use of,	Испугаться, р. а.
To be taken ill,	Пользоваться, gov. the instr.
	{ Заболѣвать, I. 1.
	{ Заболѣть, I. 1.
To load (a gun)	{ Заряжать, I. 1.
	{ Зарядить, II. 10.
It must be,	Должно быть, impers. v.
Some one must have said that to him.	Кто нибудь, должно быть, сказалъ это ему.
To leap upon,	{ Вспрыгивать на, } with the
	{ Вспрыгнуть, р. а. } acc.
To communicate.	Сообщать, р. а. сообщить.
To be taken ill.	Заболѣвать, р. а. заболѣть.
To cry, to weep.	Плакать, р. а. заплакать.
To fail, to be a bankrupt.	Обанкрѣтиться, р. а.
To shake, трясѣть.	To nod, кивать.
To leap, прыгать.	To turn round, обернуться.
To gallop off, ускорять, р. а.	Subordinate, подчинѣнный.
Extensive, значительный.	Rude, неприличный.
Ancestral, отеческій.	Absence, отсутствіе.
A whip, кнутъ.	A fight, бѣтва.

## EXERCISE CIX.

Is it not your brother standing there by the roadside?  
 It appears to be.—Give a whistle; perhaps he will turn  
 round and see us.—I cannot whistle; you had better run  
 up to him and tell him to come here.—Whisper to him  
 that I have to communicate something important to him.  
 The master says it is rude to whisper in company.—What

sound is that?—Some one must have discharged a gun in the next room.—Have not you heard anything?—I think some one gave a shriek.—You had better see what is going on there.—What did you see?—On entering the room I saw the husband loading his gun; he gave me a look, became frightened, and dropping (упомяну) the gun, ran out of the room into the yard; there he leapt upon a horse standing at the door and galloped off into the field. Do not smack the whip; you may frighten the horse by so doing.—The other day when my brother smacked his whip, the horse flew at the coachman and nearly killed him.—Shake that apple tree; perhaps a few apples will fall.—My eldest brother used to climb upon that thick branch and give it a shake.—Have you communicated this news to his brother-in-law?—Yes, I communicate to him all the news I receive.—Did he do it cleverly?—He did it so cleverly as not to be remarked.—How many times during the fight did that brave soldier load his gun?—He loaded it only fourteen times.—Why did he not fire as often as others?—Because he had not powder enough.—Is it not true that the performance was very good?—All did not perform equally well; some actors were very weak. Is the weather fine?—Yes, but I think it will rain.—Why do you think so?—Because a southerly wind is blowing. It seems to me you are mistaken; the wind is blowing not from (с) the south, but from the north.—You always like to contradict.

#### EXERCISE CX.

Who had to write?—We had to write.—You should not give your sons so much money; they would then be more saving.—The mother used to look (fut.) at her sick child

and cry.—Did you send word of your arrival to your brother?—I had written a letter and was just on the point of sending it to the post, when suddenly the door opened and your brother entered the room.—Where does the general live who used to review the troops?—He now lives in his ancestral castle, respected by his monarch, and loved not only by his former subordinates, but also by all his friends and acquaintances.—How did you pass the long winter evenings in your parents' house?—One of us used to read aloud (pres.) and the others listened.—Are you satisfied with your new servant?—No, I am very dissatisfied with him.—Do you know that the merchant who enjoyed so extensive a credit is now bankrupt?—Yes, and are you aware that my sister was on the verge of giving him all her money, but our uncle prevented it in time.—Whom did you give a nod to?—To an old school friend, whom I have not seen for more than five years.—You promised to let me know whether you would come for the evening; why did you not do it?—We expected you.—I was just going out, when the servant came to tell me that my sister was suddenly taken ill and wanted to see me.—This was the only reason for my absence, and I hope you will excuse me.—Why did you not send us word about your sister's illness? we would have paid her a visit.—I never hasten to send bad tidings, but now I may tell you that she is much better, and our doctor says she is out (safe) of danger. Do you read much in the evenings?—Yesterday evening I read through the first volume of the novel you brought me last week.—When you have finished reading these interesting verses, will you lend them to me?—When I have finished, I will do so with pleasure.

---



## FIFTY-FIFTH LESSON.

## Пятьдесятъ пятый Урокъ.

## PERFECT SIMPLE VERBS.

Verbs expressing a thorough accomplishment of an action without the termination *путъ* and without any prefix attached to them, are called *perfect simple* verbs.

From most of these verbs are formed corresponding verbs of imperfect aspect having the present tense in *аю*, *аю*, and the infinite in *ать*, *ять*.

*Perfect Aspect.**Imperfect Aspect.*

Благословить, to bless ;	благословлять.
Бросить, to throw ;	бросать.
Дать,* to give ;	дать.
Кончить, to finish ;	кончать.
Купить, to buy ;	покупать.
Лишить, to deprive ;	лишать.
Пастъ, to fall ;	падать.
Плѣнить, to captivate ;	плѣнить.
Простить, to pardon ;	прощать.
Пустить, to let go ;	пускать.
Родить, to beget ;	рожать and рождать.
Рѣшить, to decide ;	рѣшать.
Свободить, to deliver ;	свобождать.
Ступить, to step ;	ступать.
Хватить, to seize ;	хватать.
Явить, to show ;	являть.
Ять,* to take ;	имать.

Obs. 1.—All the verbs of imperfect aspect in the above list belong to the *first*, and those of perfect aspect to the *second* conjugation.

The forty-eight verbs given in the annexed table as examples include all the terminations subject to regular permutation of letters. There will be found among them a few verbs, such as the four verbs of Class VI., or the 26th and 28th examples of Class VII., which appear to deviate from the regular rules, but each of these verbs is given as example for many others forming their infinitive or the present tense in the same manner, thus forming separate groups of verbs with regular conjugation.

Besides the six above-named examples there are also some other verbs, which deviate from the rules either in the formation of the infinitive, or of the present, or imperative, so, in order to facilitate their study, a separate table is given in Lesson Fifty-nine.

Concerning the use of the tonic accent in the conjugation of regular verbs the following rules are to be observed :

1. The first person present the past tense and the imperative have the accent generally on the same syllable as the infinitive, except those verbs in *оуаѣ*, *еуаѣ*, in which the syllable *оу*, *еу* belong to the root and not to the termination.

2. The other persons of the present tense preserve the accent of the first person, except verbs in *нѣтъ* or *отѣ*, or verbs of the second conjugation, in which the accent is transferred to the penultimate.

## FIFTY-FIFTH LESSON.

## CONJUGATION OF REGULAR VERBS.

Classes.		Examples.		INFLEXIONS OF THE FIRST BRANCH.							
				PRESENT OR FUTURE.		Imperative Mood.	PRESENT TENSE.				
							Gerund.	Participle.			
								Active.	Passive.		
		Indicative Mood.									
		1st Person.	2nd.	2nd Person.							
I.	1	Читá, } 2 Мѣря, } ю 3 Грѣ }	ешь	читá } мѣря } и грѣ }	читá } мѣря } я грѣ }	читá } мѣря } ющій грѣ }	чит } мѣря } емый грѣ }				
	4	Ор } 5 Треп-л } ю 6 Меч }		ор } лешь } меч }				оріа } трéпля } и мечá }	брющій } трéплющій } мéч }	ор } трепл } меч }	емый отъ емый отъ емый отъ
	7 Клевещ } 8 Щц } 9 Вяж } 10 Пиш } 11 Паш } 12 Клѣч-у } 13 Сѣ-ю }	щешь } щешь } жешь } шешь } шешь } чешь } ешь }		клевещ } ищ } вяж } пиш } паш } клѣчъ } сѣи }				клевещá } ищучи } вижу } пишучи } пашучи } клѣчá } сѣя }	клевещ } ищ } вижу } пиш } пашучій } клѣчущій } сѣющій }	искóмый } вяж } пиш } паш } клѣч } сѣ }	
III.	13	Кол-ю	ешь	кол-и	кóлючи	кóлющій	кóл-емый				
IV.	14	Вою } 15 Межѹ } ю 16 Совѣту }	ешь	вою } межѹ } и совѣту }	вою } межѹ } я совѣту }	вою } межѹ } ющій совѣту }	вою } межѹ } емый совѣту }				
	V.	17		Рв } 18 Пр } 19 Сос }	ешь	рв } пр } и сос }	рвѹ } пру } сосѹ }	рв } пр } сос }	рв } пр } сос }	омый омый омый	

Пятьдесятъ пятый Урокъ.  
Спрѣженіе Правильныхъ Глаголовъ.

INFLEXIONS OF THE SECOND BRANCH.						THIRD BRANCH.
Examples.	PAST.		PAST TENSE.		Iterative Aspect.	
	Indicative Mood.	Infinitive Mood.	Gerund.	Participle Passive.		
1	Чпѣта	} лѣ	чпѣта	} въ отъ	чѣты	} валѣ
2	Мѣря		мѣря		мѣри	
3	Грѣ		грѣ		грѣ-тъ	
			вѣши			
4	Ор	} аѣ	чпѣт	} аѣ отъ вѣши	орѣ	} валѣ
5	Треп		треп		трѣпы	
6	Мет		мет		мѣты	
7	Клевѣт		клевѣт		клевѣты	
8	Иск	} аѣ	иск	} аѣ отъ вѣши	иски	} валѣ
9	Вяз		вяз		вѣзы	
10	Пис		пис		пѣсы	
11	Пах		пах		пѣхи	
12	Кли́к-а-ѣ	кли́к-а-ѣ	кли́к-а-ѣ	кли́к-а-ѣ	кли́ки-валѣ	
13	Сѣ-я-ѣ	сѣ-я-ѣ	сѣ-я-ѣ	сѣ-я-ѣ	сѣи-валѣ	
13	Кол-о-ѣ	кол-о-ѣ	кол-о-ѣ	кол-о-ѣ	камы-валѣ	
14	Вое	} валѣ	вое	} валѣ	воѣ-ванѣ	} валѣ
15	Меже		меже		межѣ-ванѣ	
16	Совѣтовалѣ		совѣтоватѣ	совѣто-валѣ	совѣто-ванѣ	
17	Рв	} аѣ	рва	} аѣ	рывѣ	
18	Пр		пр		пирѣ	
19	Сос		сос		сѣс-ывалѣ	

INFLEXIONS OF THE FIRST BRANCH.								
Classes.	Examples.	PRES. or FUTURE.		Imper. Mood.	PRESENT TENSE.			
		Indicative Mood.			Gerund.	Participle.		
		1st Person.	2nd.	2nd Per.		Active.	Passive.	
VI.	20	Плы-в-ѹ	вешь	плы-в-ѣ	плыв-я	плывущій	—	
	21	Сты-н-у	нешь	сты-нь	сты-нучи	стынущій	—	
	22	Им-ѹ	ешь	ими	—	—	—	
	23	М-ну	нешь	мни	мн-учи	жмущій	мнѹмый	
VII.	24	Грыз	ѣшь	грыз	грызѣ	грыз	грыз } бмѣи	
	25	Пас		пас	пасѣ	пас		пас
	26	Ве-д-ѹ		вед-ѣ	вед-ѣ	вед-ѹщій		вед
	27	Тр		тр-учи	тр	—		
	28	Пек-		пек-учи	пек	пек-ѹмый		
VIII.	29	Тя(г)нѹ	нешь	тяни	тянучи	тянущій	тяг-ѹмый	
	30	Зѣб } ну		зѣби	зѣбучи	зѣбуущій	—	
	31	Сѹх } ну		сѹхи	сѹхучи	сѹхуущій	—	
IX.	32	Вел-ѹ	ѣшь	вел-ѣ	велѣ	вел } ѣщій	величмый	
	33	Терп-л-ѹ	пишь	терп-ѣ	тертѣ		терп-ѣщій	терпичмый
	34	Вид-ѹ	дишь	видѣ	видѣ		вид-ѣщій	видимый
	35	Верч } ѹ	тѣшь	верт-ѣ	вертѣ	верт } ѣщій	вертимый	
	36	Вис }	висишь	виси	виси		вис-ѣщій	—
	37	Сто-ѹ	ѣшь	сто-ѣ	стоя		сто-ѣщій	—
	38	Держ-ѹ	жишь	держ-ѣ	держѣ	держ-ѣщій	держимый	
	39	Слыш-ѹ	шишь	слышь	слыша	слыш-ѣщій	слышимый	
	X.	40	Цѣн-ѹ	нишь	цѣн-ѣ	цѣнѣ	цѣн } люб } ѣщій	цѣнимый
41		Люб-л-ѹ	бишь	любѣ	любѣ	любимый		
42		Суж-ѹ	дишь	судѣ	судѣ	сужимый		
43		Круч	ѣшь	крути	крутѣ	крут } ѣщій	крут } ѣщій	
44		Свящ }		святѣ	святѣ			свят
45		Воз }		возѣ	возѣ			воз
46		Нос }		носѣ	носѣ			нос
47		Уч }		учѣ	учѣ			уч-ѣщій
48		Стрѹ-ѹ	ишь	строй	стрѹ	стрѹ-ѣщій	стрѹимый	

Examples.	INFLEXIONS OF THE SECOND BRANCH.				3d BRANCH.	
	Past.	Infinitive Mood.	Past Tense.			Iterative Aspect.
	Indicative Mood.		Gerund.	Participle Passive.		
20	Плы	плы } сты } я } мя }	плы	—	плы } сты } плм } плн }	
21	сты		сты	—	сты } плм } плн }	
22	я		я	ять	плм } плн }	
23	мя		мя	мять	плн }	
24	Грыз(л)ъ	гры-зть	грыз	грызенъ	грыз } пас }	
25	Пас(л)ъ	пас-ти	пас	пасенъ	пас }	
26	Ве(л)ъ	ве-сти	вед	веденъ	—	
27	Тер(л)ъ	тер-ѣ-ть	тёр	тер-ть	тпр } пер }	
28	Пек(л)ъ	пе-чь	пёк	печенъ	пер }	
29	Тя-пулъ	тя-нуъ	тянувши	ти-нуть	тиг-ивалъ	
30	Зябъ	зѣб } сѣх }	зѣб } сѣх }	—	зѣб } сѣх }	
31	Сохъ			—		
32	Вел } терп }	вел } терп }	вел } терп }	вел } терп }	вел } терп }	
33	Видѣлъ	вид-ѣть	вид-ѣвъ	вид-ѣнъ	вид-ивалъ	
34	Верт } впс }	верт-ѣть	верт-ѣвъ	верч-епъ	верч-ивалъ	
35	Вис } сто(и)лъ	вис-ѣть	вис-ѣвъ	—	виш-ивалъ	
36	Сто(и)лъ	сто-ѣть	сто-ѣвъ	—	сто-ивалъ	
37	Держ-алъ	держ-ать	дврж } слыш }	дёрж } слыш }	дёрж-ивалъ	
38	Слыш-алъ	слыш-ать			слых-ивалъ	
39						
40	Цѣп-илъ	цѣп-ить	цѣп-ивъ	цѣпенъ	цѣпи-валъ	
41	Люб } суд }	люб } суд }	люб } суд }	любленъ	любли } сужи }	
42	Крут } свят }	крут } свят }	крут } свят }	суженъ	сужи }	
43	Воз } нос }	воз } нос }	воз } нос }	крученъ	свищѣлъ	
44	Свят } воз }	свят } воз }	свят } воз }	свищенъ	важи }	
45	Нос } уч }	нос } уч }	нос } уч }	пошенъ	ноши }	
46	Уч } стрѣ-илъ	уч } стрѣ-ить	уч } стрѣ-ивъ	ученъ	учи }	
47	Стрѣ-илъ	стрѣ-ить	стрѣ-ивъ	стрѣ-енъ	ураивалъ	

The *л* of the past tense suppressed in the masculine must be restored in other genders, and in the plural, as, *грызъ*, fem. *грызѣа*, neut. *грызѣо*, plur. *грызѣи*.

The following perfect simple verbs of neuter voice form their corresponding imperfect aspect with the reflective termination *ся*.

<i>Perfect Aspect.</i>	<i>Imperfect Aspect.</i>
Стать,* to become ;	становѣться.
Сѣсть,* to sit ;	сидѣться.
Лечь,* to lie ;	ложѣться.

Some perfect simple verbs derived from foreign words and ending in *ю*, *овать*, form their corresponding imperfect aspect in *овываю*, *овывать*.

<i>Perfect Aspect.</i>	<i>Imperfect Aspect.</i>
Атакѣвать, to attack ;	атакѣвывать.
Конфирмѣвать, to confirm ;	конфирмѣвывать.

Obs. 2.—The termination *ю*, *овать* may be used both for perfect and imperfect aspects, as :

Я атакѣю,	{ I attack, pres. imperf. I will attack, fut. perfect.
Я атакѣвалъ,	{ I attacked. I used to attack.

The following six verbs are used both for the perfect and imperfect aspects without any change of the termination :

Велѣть, to order ;	fut. and pres. велѣю.
Женѣть, to marry ;	. . . женѣю.
Казнѣть, to decapitate ;	. . . казнѣю.
Полонѣть, to capture ;	. . . полонѣю.
Ранѣть, to wound ;	. . . ранѣю.
Рѣшѣть, to destroy ;	. . . рѣшѣю.

Obs. 3.—The verbs *велѣю* and *ранѣю* have the meaning of

the imperfect aspect only in the present and past, their future with *бѹду*, as, *бѹду вѣлѣть*, *бѹду рѣнить* not being used.

The verbs *даровѣть*, 'to give;' *вѣщать*, 'to relate;' *миновѣть*, 'to pass;' *образовѣть*, 'to form;' have the meaning of the imperfect aspect in all the inflexions of the first branch, and that of the perfect in those of the second branch, as:

## FIRST BRANCH.

*Imperfect Aspect.*

*Дарѹю*, I give;  
*Дарѹи*, give;  
*Дарѹя*, giving;  
*Дарѹющіи*, he who gives;  
*Дарѹемъ*, (which is) given;

## SECOND BRANCH.

*Perfect Aspect.*

*Я даровѣлъ*, I gave.  
*Даровѣвши*, having given.  
*Даровѣвъ*, (which was) given.  
*Даровѣвшии*, he who gave.  
*Даровѣтъ*, to give.

OBS. 4.—Instead of *образѹю* is used also *образовываю* in the imperfect aspect. *Минѹю* has the future of perfect aspect *минѹ*, *минѣшь*, etc., and in the past the double inflexions *минѹлъ* and *миновѣлъ*.

OBS. 5.—Perfect simple verbs, such as *бросить*, 'to throw;' *дать*, 'to give;' *пасть*, 'to fall;' etc., denoting a physical action performed by a single, sudden effort, have the signification of the perfect aspect of unity.

They are throwing stones into the garden.

Онѣ бросаютъ камни въ садъ.

Who has thrown this?

{ Кто бросилъ это?  
 { Кто кинулъ это?

To decide on,

{ Рѣшатся на, } with the  
 { Рѣшится, р. а. } acc.



It follows,

{ Слѣдуетъ, } impers.  
{ Значить, } verbs.

Does it follow from this that he is right ?

Слѣдуетъ ли изъ этого, что онъ правъ ?

It does not follow yet that you are right.

Это ещё не значить что вы правы.

To be reconciled,

Мириться съ, } with the  
Помириться, р. а. } instr.

To make it up,

Прѣжде, рѣше.

Before,

To educate, to bring up,

{ Воспѣтывать, I. 1.  
{ Воспитать.

To be deprived of, to lose,

{ Лишаться, } with the  
{ Лишиться, } gen.

She lost her husband last year.

Она лишилась своего мужа въ прошломъ году.

To own,

Владѣть.

To be owned,

{ Находиться во владѣніи.  
{ Принадлежать, II. 9.

By whom is this estate owned ?

{ Въ чьёмъ владѣніи это помѣстье ?

This estate was formerly owned by my uncle.

{ Кому принадлежить это помѣстье ?  
Это помѣстье принадлежало прѣжде моему дѣду.

To sew,

Шить, р. а. сшить, I. 1.

To make clothes,

Шить платье.

Whose dress are you making ?

Чье платье вы шьёте ?

I am making this dress for myself.

Я шью себѣ это платье.

Is this waistcoat made (finished) ?

Сшить ли жилетъ ?

He will make it.

Онъ его сошьётъ.

On account of,

{ По случаю, по причинѣ.  
{ По, with the dat.

To compare,	{ Сравнивать, I. 1.
	{ Сравнить, II. 10.
To be equal to,	{ Быть равнымъ, } with the
	{ Равняться, } dat.
To be compared to,	{ Сравниться съ, with instr.
To be equal to,	

He is equal to him.

Онъ ему равенъ.

That could not be equalled.

Это не могло сравниться.

By way of comparison, Сравнительно, напримѣръ.

Beyond comparison, { Несравненно, I. 1.

{ Безъ сравненія.

To collate, to compare, { Сличать, I. 1.

{ Сличить, р. а. II. 10.

They compared these two editions,  
and found no difference at all.

Они сличили эти два изданія и не  
нашли никакой разницы.

To quarrel, ссориться, II. 10.

To take pains, трудиться, II. 10.

To drop, уронить, II. 10.

Trifling, маловажный.

A garment, платье.

To attain, достигать достигнуть.

To acquire, приобретать.

To be certain, быть увѣрену.

Careful, осторожный.

To take a seat, садиться.

Insurance Company.

Страховое общество.

A nutshell.

Ореховая скорлупа.

A lawsuit.

Тяжебное дѣло.

## EXERCISE CXI.

Did the fisherman get his son married to his neighbour's daughter?—He was on the verge of doing so (repeat the verb), but he discovered that, according to our laws, one is not allowed to marry before the age of twenty-one.—When

he attains the age of twenty-one, then his father will let him marry the girl he loves.—Is this lawsuit decided? Our judge decides all important causes, but he is now out of town, and therefore it will be necessary for me to wait the decision till the judge returns.—Did you decide on anything?—No, I have not decided on anything as yet. May it be presumed that it will happen?—I am certain it will happen.—Who owns these excellent three storied houses?—The first two houses are owned by some Insurance Company; as to the rest, I cannot tell who owns them.—Do not throw the nutshells on the floor.—I did not throw them on purpose, but dropped them by accident. Are Mr. B.'s works good?—They are good, but not equal to Molière's?—Through your not allowing your daughter to visit us yesterday, you deprived not only her, but us of a great pleasure.—If I am compelled sometimes to deprive her of this pleasure, it is only because her presence is necessary at home.—Is learning acquired without pains?—Learning is not to be attained without great pains.—Did you order supper to be served?—I will order it immediately.—Have you compared the copy with the original?—Yes, I did, and found a great difference.—Have you been to see my cousin (fem.)?—I was deprived of that pleasure on account of my sister's illness.

#### EXERCISE CXII.

Does your aunt bring up her only daughter properly? No, she brings her up very badly.—Why do you think so? Because I see her every day indulging her child in all sorts of whims.—Perhaps by indulging her in some trifling whims she somewhat spoils her daughter, but it does not follow that she brings her up badly, and I think if you had

children of your own you would spoil them more than your aunt does her's.—Allow me to wait here a few minutes for my friend.—Certainly, take a seat.—Have you compared these two pictures?—I have, and I find that the first is much better than the other.—Can this be equalled? This cannot be equalled.—Forgive me, mamma, for breaking your favourite Japanese vase.—I forgive you this time, but I hope you will be more careful in future.—Embrace your brother and make it up with him.—Why do you advise me to do so?—I am not angry with him; we have not quarrelled.—Is it as useful to speak as to write?—It is more useful to speak than to write; but if you wish to learn a foreign language you should do both.—What does he want?—He wants to be equal to him.—Have you enough money to pay your tailor?—I have not enough, but I will borrow what I require from my cousin.—What clothes did you order your tailor to make?—I ordered him to make a dress-coat, a frock-coat, two pairs of trowsers and some other garments.—Have you dropped anything?—I have dropped nothing, but my brother has dropped his silk purse.—Does my picture equal that of your brother?—My brother's picture is beyond comparison.

---

## FIFTY-SIXTH LESSON.

Пятьдесятъ шестой Урокъ.

Certain prepositions are temporarily prefixed to the simple verbs, and have the effect of modifying the aspect, and sometimes changing the voice or the meaning of the verb.

The prepositions used as prefixes in the formation of compound verbs are as follows:

Вз, воз, взо, Up, denotes—

*a.* An upward movement:

Взлетѣть, to fly up.

Воспитать, to educate, to bring up.

Восходить, to ascend.

Возмужать, to attain the age of puberty.

*b.* Reciprocation or reinstatement:

Возблагодарить, to return thanks.

Возстановить, to re-establish.

Возвратить, to return.

Возраждать, to regenerate.

Вы,

Out.

*a.* An outward movement:

Выкинуть, to throw out.

Вывозить, to export.

Выгнать, to drive out.

Выслать, to send out.

*b.* Acquirement by means of exertion:

Выплакать, to obtain by entreaty.

Вынудить, to extort.

*c.* Giving a final polish or bringing into a proper shape:

Выбѣлить, to bleach.

Выкроить, to cut out to a pattern.

До,

Till, up to.

An action carried on up to a certain point:

Дойти до.

Договорить.

To go up to a certain point.

To speak up to a certain point.

За,

For.

*a.* An action extended over an object:

Заклеить, to glue over.

Заржавѣть, to be covered with rust.

б. A stoppage or arrest.

Зазимовать, to stop for the winter. | Задержать, to delay.

Изъ,

Out of, from.

а. The same as вы, *i.e.* an outward movement, but is used mostly in an elevated style.

Изгнать, to banish. | Изваять, to carve.

б. An action all over the surface or through a body in all directions.

Написать, to cover all over with writing.  
Иззябнуть, to starve with cold.

На,

On

а. An action upon a surface.

Написать, to write upon. | Наполировать, to polish.

б. An action upon a number of things.

Наговорить, to say many things. | Насажать, to plant abundantly.

О, объ, обо,

About, round about.

Оголить, to strip entirely. | Отвердеть, to harden all round.  
Осмотреть, to inspect. | Осыпать, to strew round.

Отъ,

From.

а. Movement away from the object, or separation of parts.

Отходить, to go away from. | Отдѣлать, to detach.

б. Reciprocation.

Отплатить, to repay. | Отблагодарить, to repay with thanks.  
Отговорить, to dissuade. | Отписать, to write back.

## Пере, Over.

a. A change of place, a movement across.

Перемѣнить, to change.

Переложить, to transpose.

Перевезть, to carry over.

Передать, to transmit.

b. Excess.

Перевѣсить, to overweigh.

Переварить, to over boil.

c. An action over the whole object in a certain order, and sometimes reciprocation.

Перебить,

to kill (one after another).

Передавать,

to hand over (one after another).

Переговорить,

to converse.

## По, Over.

a. Accomplishment of the action.

Поставить, р. а., to place.

Показать, р. а., to show.

b. Indefinite duration of the action.

Посидѣть,

to sit (a little, sometime, etc.).

Поговорить,

to speak.

## Подъ, Under.

a. A downward direction.

Подложить, to put under.

Подвергнуть, to subject.

b. A motion towards an object.

Подходить, to come up to.

Подносить, to bring up to.

## При,

A carrying out an action.

Приѣхать, to arrive.

Пристрѣлить, to shoot outright.

Про,

Through.

a. An action through and in one direction, and a passing by.

Пробѣжать, to run through. | Прочитать, to read straight through.

b. Duration of the action till some definite end or time.

Пропѣть пѣсню, to sing a song through.  
 Прележать день, to pass the day reclining.  
 Проговорить, to speak through.

Разъ.

a. Division.

Раздѣть, to distribute. | Разгнѣть, to lose.  
 Разобрать, to sort. | Разодрать, to tear.

b. Development or spreading of the action over the object.

Развёртывать, to unroll, to unfold. | Развеселить, to enliven.  
 Растолстѣть, to grow very stout.

Съ, со,

With.

a. Connection of parts.

Сосрѣбить, to construct. | Сложить, to put together.

b. A thorough destruction of the object.

Сгнить, to decay entirely. | Сгорѣть, to burn down.

У,

Away.

a. In verbs of movement—disappearance from sight.

Убѣжать, to run away. | Угнать, to drive out.

b. Accomplishment of the action to a certain extent.

Умѣять, to knead well. | Узнать, to recognise.

c. Completeness of the action.

Утонить, to drown (thoroughly). | Ужорить, to starve to death.



Въ,	In.
Войти, to go in.	Вносить, to bring in.
Надъ,	Above, over.
Надписывать, to superscribe.	Надзирать, to superintend.
Надстроить, to build a superstructure.	
Низъ,	Below.
Низойти, to descend.	Низпослать, to send down.
Низвергнуть, to precipitate.	
Предъ,	Before.
Предсказать, to foretell.	Предшествовать, to precede.
Противъ,	Against, contrary.
Противоречить, to contradict.	Противопоставить, to oppose.
Безъ,	Without.
Privation or deficiency.	
Честить, to honour.	Безчестить, to dishonour.
Вооружить, to arm.	Обезоружить, to disarm.

NOTE.—Of the above-named prepositions—вз (воз, возо), вы, разъ (разо), низ (низо), and пере are inseparable prefixes, *i.e.* never found by themselves.

In verbs of perf. asp. the prefix вы takes the tonic accent, but in those of imperf. asp. the tonic accent remains on the verbal root, as:

<i>Imperfect Aspect.</i>	<i>Perfect Aspect.</i>
Выходить, to go out ;	выйти.
Выигрывать, to gain ;	выиграть.

#### COMPOUND VERBS.

Compound or prepositional verbs of imperfect aspect are formed—

a. By prefixing a preposition to the simple verb of in-

definite imperfect aspect without any change of termination, as :

## IMPERFECT ASPECT.

*Simple Verbs.*

Ходить, to go ;

Летать, to fly ;

Вращать, to turn ;

*Compound Verbs.*

Выходить, to go out.

Вылетать, to fly out.

Возвращать, to return.

Obs. 1 —These compound verbs are conjugated like the simple verbs from which they are formed.

b. By adding a preposition to the iterative aspect, which thus acquires the inflexions of all moods and persons of the imperfect aspect, as :

*Iterative Aspect.*

Читывать, I used to read out ;

*Present.* Вычитываю, ешь, etc.*Past.* Вычитывалъ, ла, ло.*Future.* Буду вычитывать.*Imperat.* Вычитывай, йте.*Compound Imp. Asp.*

Вычитывать, to read out.

*Gerund.* Вычитывая, вая.*Partic. Act.* Вычитывающий, вшій.*Partic. Pass.* Вычитываемъ, вычитыванъ.

c. By prefixing a preposition to the simple verb of imperfect aspect, and inserting the syllable ва before the termination.

*Simple Imperf. Asp.*

Слабеть, to grow weak ;

Велѣть, to order ;

*Compound Imperf. Asp.*

ослабѣвать.

повелѣвать.

## OF THE INCHOATIVE.

The inchoative perfect aspect is formed—

a. By adding the auxiliary verb стать, past сталъ, future стану, ешь, etc. to the infinitive of verbs of imperfect aspect, as :

Стать играть,

Онъ сталъ играть,

Онъ станетъ играть,

to begin to play.

he began playing.

he will begin playing.



To publish,	Издава́ть, р. а. изда́ть.
Was this work published ?	Изда́ется ли это сочи́неніе ?
This work is out of print.	Это сочи́неніе уже́ болѣе не изда́ется.
To leave off, to cease,	{ Перестава́ть, I. 1.
	{ Переста́ть, р. а. I. 8.
To sleep enough,	Выспаться.
To oversleep one's self,	Просыпа́ть, р. а. проспáть.
To pass off,	Выдава́ть, вѣда́ть.
Through,	По, with the dat.
This procession passed through the street.	Шествіе прошло по у́лицѣ.
To freeze,	{ Замерза́ть, I. 1.
	{ Замёрзнуть, р. of unity, I. 8.
To ring,	{ Звенѣ́ть, II. 9.
	{ Зазвенѣ́ть, <i>inchoative</i> .
It rings in the ears.	Звенѣ́тъ въ у́шахъ.
It rang in the ears.	Звенѣ́ло въ у́шахъ.
In writing, by letter,	Пи́сьменно.
To get, to write to (for a thing),	{ Выпи́сывать.
To direct,	{ Направля́ть, I. 1.
	{ Напра́вить, р. а. II. 10.
To make a fair copy.	Пере́писывать на́бѣло.
To direct a letter.	Адресова́ть пи́сьмо.
To write a prescription.	Про́писывать реце́нтъ.
To become cheerful.	Повеселѣ́тъ, р. а.
To make a fault in writing.	Опи́сываться, опи́саться.
To make a written order.	Предпи́сывать, предпи́сать.
To take down, to write down.	Запи́сывать, запи́сать.
To add (in writing).	Припи́сывать, припи́сать.

To answer, to write back.

Nature of illness.

Symptoms of illness.

Camp fire.

Отписывать, отписать.

Характеръ болѣзни.

Признакъ болѣзни.

Бивачный огонь.

## EXERCISE CXIII.

Have you asked the doctor to write a prescription for me?—Yes, I wrote to him about it yesterday, and after having described to him the nature of your complaint, I was on the point of adding a few words on your part, but I changed my mind, remembering that you were totally unacquainted with him.—Have you already directed the letter?—Not yet, I will first make a fair copy of it. Have you come to the end of writing your letter?—I shall soon have come to the end.—Will you write some more letters?—No, I have finished writing for to-day.—Is the letter already signed?—The head clerk has signed it long ago.—Out of which book have you copied this letter?—I do not copy my letters out of books.—Your friend often copied letters and verses out of books and passed them off as (3a) his own.—Where do you get these illustrated papers from?—We used to get them formerly from Vienna, but henceforth we shall get them from Paris.—Those which you ordered are out of print.—Have you already written over a whole quire of paper?—No, I have about seven sheets left.—Be quiet, please; through your chatter I have made two mistakes in writing.—Have you transmitted to him the news of the town verbally or by letter?—In answering him, I communicated to him all that took place.—Did you take down my address?—Yes, it is already written down. The chief made a written order for his subordinates to arrive at the office earlier than usual.

## EXERCISE CXIV.

Ask this girl to sing us something.—Yes, I will ask her. The girl began to sing, and all began to listen.—I was on the point of explaining this to him in French, when I recollected his dislike to speaking a foreign language in a public place (общество).—She began to scream so loudly, that our ears began to ring.—Our grandmother, while reading to-day, fell into a slumber and dropped her book.—Do you see, dear sister, the boys have begun to run about in the yard yonder? I will go likewise and begin to run about with them.—No, my dear, do not go away from here; I want you, and besides that it is very dirty in the yard.—Will they carry the body (покойникъ) through our street?—Yes, so they say.—When will the procession pass by?—Hardly before three o'clock.—Whose wedding carriage is that passing by?—It is that of the major of artillery and his young bride from Ems.—How is it that her uncle lived so long at Ems?—In order to take the baths there.—Is that town pretty?—Yes, it lies in a narrow and picturesque valley. The camp fires began to blaze and the poor half-frozen soldiers became cheerful.—Have you salted your soup?—I have not only salted it, but over-salted it.—Did he go through his lesson without a fault?—He did nothing but make faults.—Leave off playing the flute: I did not sleep enough; I am sleepy still.—I began playing the flute on purpose to wake you, because you told me when you went to lie down you did not wish to over-sleep yourself.

---

## FIFTY-SEVENTH LESSON.

Пятьдесят седьмой Урокъ.

COMPOUND VERBS (*continued*).

## FORMATION OF PERFECT AND IMPERFECT ASPECTS.

Compound verbs of imperfect aspect, derived from the indefinite form of the double simple verb, have in the perfect aspect the termination of the corresponding definite verb.

<i>Indefinite Imperfect Aspect.</i>	<i>Definite Perfect Aspect.</i>
Про-ходить, to pass ;	Про-йти.
Пере-возить, to carry across ;	Пере-везти.
У-носить, to take away ;	У-нести.

Compound verbs of imperfect aspect, derived from the iterative, form the perfect aspect by restoring the corresponding termination of the primitive simple verb.

<i>Imperfect Aspect.</i>	<i>Perfect Aspect.</i>
С-прашивать, to interrogate ;	С-просить.
За-служивать, to deserve ;	За-служить.
За-пирать, to shut ;	За-переть.
О-станавливать, to stop ;	О-становить.

Compound verbs of imperfect aspect, having both the definite and indefinite forms, have two terminations for the perfect aspect. The same is the case with compound verbs which are susceptible of the perfect aspect of duration and that of unity.

The first of these two terminations, that of the indefinite form or of duration, is used to express an action requiring many efforts, or a certain length of time.

The second, that of the definite form, or of perfect of unity, is used to express an action requiring only a single effort, as :

## SIMPLE VERB.

<i>Imperfect Aspect.</i>		<i>Iterative.</i>
КАТИТЬ, <i>def.</i>	КАТАТЬ, <i>indef.</i>	КАТЫВАТЬ.
<i>Imperfect Aspect.</i>		<i>Iterative.</i>
КИДАТЬ.	КИНУТЬ.	КИДЫВАТЬ.

## COMPOUND VERB.

<i>Imperfect Aspect.</i>	<i>Perfect of Duration.</i>	<i>Perfect of Unity.</i>
ПРОКАТЫВАТЬ.	ПРОКАТАТЬ.	ПРОКАТИТЬ.
ВЫКИДЫВАТЬ.	ВЫКАТАТЬ.	ВЫКИНУТЬ.

The following simple derivative verbs in *ать*, *ять*—first person *аю*, *яю*—have two terminations for their perfect aspect, one in *у*, *ю*, to express an action performed in a single effort, and another, without any change, to express duration.

*Simple Imperfect Aspect.*

Ворочать, to turn.  
Вѣшать, to weigh.  
Кусать, to bite.  
Ронять, to drop.  
Хватать, to seize.  
Царапать, to scratch.  
Бросать, to throw.

*Compound Perfect Aspect**of Duration.*

сворочать.  
развѣшать.  
раскусать.  
проронять.  
выхватать.  
оцарапать.  
выбросать.

*of Unity.*

своротить.  
развѣсить.  
раскусить.  
проронить.  
выхватить.  
оцарапать.  
выбросить.

Obs. 1.—The above verbs can be used also with other prefixes, according to the meaning required.

The following verbs borrow their perfect aspect from another root when it is wanted to express an action performed in a single movement.

*Imperfect Aspect.*

Бить, to beat,  
Брать, to take,  
Класть, to put,  
Говорить, to speak,  
Ловить, to catch,

*Compound Perfect Aspect.**of Duration.*

побить,  
побрать,  
покласть,  
поговорить,  
позловить,

*of Unity.*

ударить.  
взять.  
положить.  
сказать.  
поймать.



Compound verbs of perfect aspect in *нуть* form their imperfect aspect in *ать*, as :

<i>Perfect Aspect.</i>	<i>Imperfect Aspect.</i>
Погибнуть, to perish ;	погибать.
Привыкнуть, to get accustomed ;	привыкать,
Окиснуть, to turn sour ;	окисать.

The following form their perfect aspect irregularly.

SIMPLE VERBS.	COMPOUND VERBS.	
<i>Imperfect Aspect.</i>	<i>Imperfect Aspect.</i>	<i>Perfect Aspect.</i>
Вѣщать, to tell.	извѣщать,	извѣстить.
Глотать, to swallow.	поглащать,	поглотить.
Кусать, to bite.	укусать,	укусить.
Мѣнять, to change.	перемѣнять,	перемѣнить.
Скакать, to gallop.	перескакивать,	перескочить.
Стрѣлять, to shoot.	застрѣливать,	застрѣлить.

Some compound verbs of imperfect aspect have no corresponding verbs of perfect aspect.

To these belong verbs with the prefix :

a. По, in a frequentative sense, as :

Посиживать, to be in the habit of sitting.
Почитывать, to be in the habit of reading.
Попѣвать, to be in the habit of singing, etc.

Obs. 2.—The verbs of perfect aspect *посидѣть*, *почитать*, *попѣть*, although with the same prefix *по*, must not be confounded with the above, inasmuch as they are formed from the simple verbs *сидѣть*, *читать*, *пѣть*, and the prefix *по* merely modifies the duration of action, which lasts in this case a certain time without interruption.

b. Подъ or при, in the sense of an action accompanying another, as :

Подсвистывать,	to whistle in accompaniment.
Припѣвать,	to sing in accompaniment.

c. Разъ, when denoting an action upon different objects, or extending over a surface, as :

Разговаривать,	to converse upon.
Разъезжать.	to ride about.

d. Co in the sense of reciprocal action, as :

Собесѣдовать,	to converse with.
Соучаствовать,	to participate.

Obs. 3.—The following verbs are defective, *i.e.* are wanting altogether in the perfect aspect.

*Of the First Class.*

Обладать, to possess.	Подозрѣвать, to suspect.
Обожать, to adore.	Подражать, to imitate.
Обонять, to scent.	Подразумѣвать, to understand.
Обуревать, to agitate.	Порицать, to blame.
Ожидать, to wait.	Порывать, to draw.
Опасаться, to dread.	Смышлять, to contrive.
Осязать, to touch.	Совѣщать, to deliberate.
Отсвѣчиваться, to reflect.	Сожалѣть, to regret.
Охудать, to vilify.	Созерцать, to contemplate.
Перекоряться, to altercation.	Убѣщать, to exhort.
Поблажать, to connive at.	Управлять, to govern.
Подобать, to be necessary.	Упражнять, to occupy.

*Of the Fourth Class.*

Долженствовать, to be obliged.	Преслѣдовать, to pursue.
Изобилловать, to abound.	Привѣтствовать, to welcome.
Повиноваться, to obey.	Приличествовать, to be becoming.

And many other verbs ending in ствовать.

*Of the Ninth Class.*

Предвидѣть, to foresee.	Принадлежать, to belong.
Провидѣть, to provide.	Содержать, to maintain.
Подлежать, to be subject.	Отстоять, to be distant.
Прилежать, to be adjacent.	Предстоять, to stand before.
Зависѣть, to depend.	Состоять, to consist.

*Of the Tenth Class.*

Сѣлится, to strive.

Походить, to resemble.

Стоить, to be worth.

Значить, to signify.

To consult upon,

To send a word,

To write a word,

To drop a line,

Is it not true ?

{ Совѣтоваться о, with the  
прер. с.

{ Посовѣтоваться, р. а.

{ Прислать, сказать.

{ Уведомить словцомъ.

{ Написать строчку.

Не правда ли ?

You will not give it to him, will  
you ?

Вы не дадите это ему, не правда ли ?

OBS. 4.—In sentences like the above, the interrogation  
is rendered by “не правда ли ?”You would not offend him, would  
you ?Вы не станете его обижать, не прав-  
да ли ?

He reads very well, does he not ?

Не правда ли, что онъ читаетъ хо-  
рошо ?

For the most part,

Lo !

To serve one's time,

To earn a pension,

Or,

Come a little earlier, or you will  
get nothing.

Большую частью.

Вот !

{ Выслуживать срокъ.

{ Выслужить, р. а.

Выслужить пенсію.

Иначе.

Приходите пораньше, иначе вы ни-  
чего не получите.

To ferry across,

{ Перевозить, } with the  
{ Перевезти, р. а. } асс.

To keep a promise,

{ Исполнять обѣщаніе.  
{ Исполнить, р. а.

Does he generally keep his promise ?  
He kept his promise only once.

Исполняетъ ли онъ свой обѣщанія ?  
Онъ только одинъ разъ исполнилъ  
свое обѣщаніе.

To change for,

{ Мѣнять на, } with the  
{ Переменить, р. а. } асс.

To play a trick with,

{ Подсмѣиваться надъ, } with  
{ Подсмѣяться, р. а. } the  
instr.

It is certain,

Конечно, несомнѣнно.

At a cheap rate,

За дешѣвую плату.

Consequently,

{ Слѣдовательно.  
{ Вслѣдствіе этого.

To apply for payment,

Потребовать уплаты.

To do one's duty.

Исполнять обязанности.

To turn sour.

Киснуть, р. а. прокиснуть.

To dismiss.

Выключать, р. а. выключить.

To boil.

Кипятить, р. а. вскипятить.

To evade.

Побѣгать, р. а. избѣгнуть.

To smuggle.

Провозить тайно.

To amount.

Простираться до, with the gen.

Contraband goods.

Контрабандный товаръ, контрабанда.

To manage, дѣлать.

To depart, разѣзжаться.

A strong man, силачъ.

To flee, разбѣжаться.

A duty, tax, пошлина.

A stratagem, хитрость.

A loss, утрата.

A boatman, лодочникъ.

### EXERCISE CXV.

About what are you interrogating this boatman?—I asked him whether he can ferry us across to the opposite shore.—I know that he ferries across, because he ferried

me, and at a very cheap rate too.—Are there many contraband goods smuggled across every year?—Yes, it is reckoned that the loss to (въ) the revenue amounts to 200,000 roubles yearly.—In what way do they manage to evade the payment of the duty?—For the most part by stratagem, and sometimes even by force, for the smugglers, they say, are nearly always armed.—What are these workmen throwing out of the ditch?—They are throwing earth out of it. Is there much left to be thrown out?—No, they have nearly thrown all out; there remains only one heavy stone, but, lo! that strong man has thrown it out.—Will not your aunt leave a small pension to her faithful old servant? No, she says that he does not deserve it.—Has this soldier earned his pension?—Yes, he has been receiving it for some years.—Is it true that all the thieves were caught? No, they caught only one thief, the others fled on all sides before the arrival of the police.—Must I consult him upon this?—No, I advise you never to apply to him; you had better apply to my uncle, who is able to give you good advice.—You said you would lend my sister this novel, did you not?—Yes, I said so, and I will keep my promise.—It is a pity we did not receive your letter, is it not?—It does not matter much, for I saw him soon after I wrote it.

#### EXERCISE CXVI.

What do you do (are you in the habit of doing) now in the evening?—We read and then play at billiards.—Read me a little from this book, and then you may go to play a little. Do you intend to pay that man for the wine when he applies for payment?—He sends his clerk to me for the money every day, but I shall not pay him until he changes these

bad wines for better.—Why do these guests depart so early?—Because the mistress of the house is taken suddenly ill.—Go to him at once for the papers, or you will not find him at home.—Does he always do his duty?—He only once did not perform his duty, and was consequently dismissed from the service.—When shall I be free?—When you have done your duty you will be free, but not before.—Have you found your hat?—I was searching for it everywhere for a long time, and I cannot understand even now how it came (очутиться) into this room.—Probably, you put it here on the table yourself.—No, I always put my hat on the table in the ante-room, and if I find it now on the table in this room, it is certain that some one took it from there to play a trick with me.—Will you not order some water to be boiled for me?—I will order it directly.—Do these bottles burst?—Only one has burst.—Cork the bottles properly, or the wine will turn sour.—However you may cork the bottles, this wine is sure to turn sour.

## FIFTY-EIGHTH LESSON.

### Пятьдесятъ восьмой Урокъ.

#### COMPOUND VERBS (*continued*).

Compound Verbs of perfect aspect formed from simple defective verbs, *i.e.* from verbs wanting the iterative, as also from some verbs in *ить* of the second conjugation, have in the imperfect aspect the abridged termination *ать* or *ать* instead of *ивать* or *ивать*, as :

#### SIMPLE VERBS.

*Imperfect Aspect.*  
Винить, to accuse,  
Томить, to weary,  
Решить, to decide,

#### COMPOUND VERBS.

<i>Perfect Aspect.</i>	<i>Imperfect Aspect.</i>
обвинить,	обвинять.
Утомить,	Утомлять.
разрешить,	разрешать.

OBS. 1.—The abridged termination is also used when the meaning of the primitive verb is changed in its compound as :

## SIMPLE VERBS.

## COMPOUND VERBS.

*Imperfect Aspect.*

САДИТЬ, to plant,

СВѢТИТЬ, to light,

*Perfect Aspect.*

ОСАДИТЬ, to besiege,

ПРОСВѢТИТЬ, to enlighten,

*Imperfect Aspect.*

ОСАЖДАТЬ.

ПРОСВѢЩАТЬ.

But when the compound verbs retain the signification of their primitives, they have in the imperfect aspect the full termination of the iterative, as :

## SIMPLE VERBS.

## COMPOUND VERBS.

*Imperfect Aspect.*

САДИТЬ, to plant,

СВѢТИТЬ, to light,

*Perfect Aspect.*

ПЕРЕСАДИТЬ, to replant,

ЗАСВѢТИТЬ, to light,

*Imperfect Aspect.*

ПЕРЕСАЖИВАТЬ.

ЗАСВѢЧИВАТЬ.

OBS. 2.—There are some compound verbs whose simple form is either wanting altogether or obsolete, as :

*Imperfect Aspect.*

ПОБѢЖДАТЬ, to vanquish,

ОБИЖАТЬ, to offend,

ВСТРѢЧАТЬ, to meet,

РАЗОРЯТЬ, to ruin,

*Perfect Aspect.*

ПОБѢДИТЬ.

ОБИДѢТЬ,

ВСТРѢТИТЬ.

РАЗОРИТЬ.

OBS. 3.—The aspect in such verbs is recognised by the termination, which is almost always ать or ять for the imperfect aspect.

EXCEPTION.—Two verbs of this category, оправдывать, 'to justify,' and обнародовать, 'to promulgate,' have the termination ать also for the perfect aspect—оправдать, обнародовать.

Most compound verbs formed from the old root ять, 'to

take, iterative, *имать*, take after the prefix *ан н* for the sake of euphony.

*Imperfect Aspect.*

*Внимать*, to attend to,  
*Взимать*, to take,  
*Вынимать*, to take out,  
*Допимать*, to get the remainder,  
*Занимать*, to occupy,  
*Изнимать*, } to exempt,  
*Изимать*, } *pres. изъёмлю*,  
*Нанимать*, to hire,  
*Обнимать*, to embrace,  
*Отнимать*, to take away,  
*Переимать*, to intercept,  
*Понимать*, to understand,  
*Поднимать*, to lift,  
*Предпринимать*, to undertake,  
*Принимать*, to accept,  
*Приподнимать*, to lift a little,  
*Пронимать*, to penetrate,  
*Разнимать*, to part,  
*Снимать*, to take off,  
*Унимать*, to repress,

*Perfect Aspect.*

*внять*, future, *воньмѹ*.  
*взять*, . . *возьмѹ*.  
*вынуть*, . . *выну*.  
*донять*, . . *дойму*.  
*занять*, . . *займѹ*.  
*изнять*, }  
*изъять*, } . . *изъимѹ*.  
*нанять*, . . *наймѹ*.  
*обнять*, . . *обнимѹ*.  
*отнять*, . . *отнимѹ*.  
*перенять*, . . *переймѹ*.  
*понять*, . . *поймѹ*.  
*поднять*, . . *поднимѹ*.  
*предпринять*, . . *предпримѹ*.  
*принять*, . . *примѹ*.  
*приподнять*, . . *приподнимѹ*.  
*пронять*, . . *проймѹ*.  
*разнять*, . . *разнимѹ*.  
*снять*, . . *снимѹ*.  
*унять*, . . *уймѹ*.

Obs. 4.—All the above verbs of imperfect aspect are conjugated according to the examples of the first class; those of perfect aspect follow the example *ять* given in the sixth class of the table of regular verbs (Lesson 55).

To hinder, to prevent, { *Препятствовать*, gov. the dat.  
 { *Воспрепятствовать*, p. a.

To thwart, { *Мѣшать*, } gov. the  
 { *Помѣшать*, p. a. } dat.

To understand, *Понимать, слышать.*

Я understand you.

Я понимаю васъ.

We understand you went to him.

Мы слышимъ, что вы пошли къ нему.



To enter the service,	{ Поступать на службу. Поступить, р. а.
He entered the civil service.	Онъ поступилъ въ гражданскую службу.
All of them are going to embrace military service.	Они всѣ поступаютъ въ военную службу.
To spare,	{ Одолжить, р. а. одолжить. Щадить, р. а. пощадить. Обходиться, р. а. обойтись безъ.
Can you spare any money ?	Можете ли одолжить денегъ ?
I have some to spare.	У меня есть ещё лишнія деньги.
He spared even his enemies.	Онъ щадилъ даже враговъ своихъ.
We cannot spare you.	Мы не можемъ обойтись безъ васъ.
To enjoy,	{ Наслаждаться, } gov. the { Насладиться, р. а. } inst.
To escape, to decamp,	{ Увѣртываться, отъ, } with
To get out of,	{ Увернуться, р. а, } the
To depart,	{ Увернуться, р. а, } gen.
To neglect,	{ Пренебрегать, } gov. { Пренебречь, р. а. } the inst.
To ask for leave,	{ Просить позволенія. Попросить, р. а.
To oppose,	{ Противиться, gov. the dat. Воспротивиться, р. а.
To practise,	Упражняться въ, with the прер. с.
To refuse, to reject,	Отказываться отъ, } with the
To recall, to decline,	Отказаться, р. а. } gen.
He refuses to do this.	Онъ отказывается это дѣлать.
He recalls his words.	Онъ отказывается отъ своихъ словъ.
He refused to play.	Онъ отказался играть.

To carry out,

Contrariwise,

To hold one's noise,

To exclaim.

To perceive.

To acquire (by imitation).

To prove, to be proved.

To hold reception.

To stipulate.

An official of high standing.

Late (last), послѣдній.

Mischievous, злой.

Training, воспитаніе.

A job, работа.

{ Исполнить, р. а. исполнить.

{ Выполнить, р. а. выполнить.

Наоборотъ, наоборотъ.

Униматься, р. а. уняться.

Воскликать, р. а. воскликнуть.

Замѣчать, р. а. замѣтить.

Перенимать, р. а. перенять.

Оказываться, р. а. оказаться.

Принимать у себя.

Назначать, р. а. назначить.

Знатный сапожникъ.

Late (former), прежній.

Trick, шутка, шалость.

A schoolmate, соученикъ.

Work, работа.

### EXERCISE CXVII.

What sort of building do you undertake?—I undertake all sorts of building.—Is it true that the works undertaken by you last year are not yet finished?—Yes, in undertaking a difficult job I did not calculate well beforehand how much time would be required for it, and besides that, the number of workmen hired by me proved to be insufficient.—Why did you not take off your hat yesterday before your late master?—When I meet him, I always take off my hat, and if I did not do it yesterday, it was, of course, because I did not perceive him.—Why do you take the toys away from your sister?—I took only one doll away from her, and that was because she wanted to break it. Have you accepted presents from him?—Why not? he always accepted presents from me.—Does the baroness often hold receptions at her house?—She received us last week, and asked us to visit her in future without being in-

vited.—Have you hired a large house in town for the winter?—I have no need to hire a house in town, as I have one of my own.—Do not take the things out of the trunk; as we shall not stop at this station.—I have taken them out already.—But I ordered you not to take them out.—I beg your pardon; I misunderstood you.—I cannot understand how it is you always carry out my orders contrariwise.

### EXERCISE CXVIII.

What do these unfortunate parents regret?—They regret that they did not prevent their son from entering military service.—The mother, sobbing, exclaimed: “If I had thwarted my only son’s desire to leave home, I should not now have to blame myself for his death.”—Will you come to us to-morrow at the stipulated time?—If it is possible for me to decamp from my friends, you may rely on my presence.—He wanted to get out of our invitation.—Do not depart from your own words, or we will never believe you again.—She asks for leave to go to her sister.—Tell her that she may go to her to-morrow, but that to-day we cannot spare her.—How is your brother in health?—Oh, he always enjoys excellent health.—In declining their invitation, you lost an excellent opportunity of being presented to an official of high standing, who might be useful to you in many respects.—I do not regret it at all.—You ought not, however, to neglect good acquaintances.—If I neglected this invitation, it does not mean that I neglect good acquaintances.—Are you satisfied with the training that your son gets at the town school?—No, on the contrary, I am very much dissatisfied; he has acquired there only the bad manners and mischievous tricks of his school-

mates.—In endeavouring to stop the noise of his pupils the master shouted louder than anyone, "Hold your noise, you disobedient children, or I will punish you severely."

## FIFTY-NINTH LESSON.

### ПЯТЬДЕСЯТЬ ДЕВЯТЫЙ УРОКЪ.

#### IRREGULAR VERBS.

Irregular verbs proper are those which do not follow in all moods, tenses and persons the rules of formation, deviating in some inflexions from their proper conjugation or from their proper class; as also those having some peculiar irregular inflexions or changes of radical letters not met with in other verbs.

There are in the Russian language only thirteen irregular verbs, which are :

- |                    |                    |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1. Бѣжать, to run. | Ревѣть, to roar.   |
| Хотѣть, to wish.   | Стенать, to groan. |
| Чтить, to honour.  | Гнать, to drive.   |
| Шибить (root).     | Спать, to sleep.   |
| 2. Ѣхать, to ride. | Быть, to be.       |
| Идти, to go.       | Ѣсть, to eat.      |
|                    | Дать, to give.     |

Obs. 1.—The irregularity of the first eight in the above list consists chiefly in their belonging to a mixed conjugation, or to a mixed class, and that of the remainder in changes of radical letters contrary to the rules of permutation.

TABLE No. 1. CONJUGATION OF

	INFLEXIONS OF THE FIRST BRANCH.						
	PRESENT OR FUTURE.				PRESENT TENSE.		
	Indicative Mood.			Imperat.	Gerund.	Participle.	
	1st Pers.	2nd.	3rd.	2nd Pers.		Active.	Passive
1	Бѣгу Бѣжимъ	бѣжишь бѣжите	бѣжитъ бѣгутъ	бѣги бѣгите	бѣгучи	бѣгущій	—
2	Хочу Хотимъ	хочешь хотите	хочетъ хотятъ	* хоти хотите	хотя	хотящій	хотимый
3	Чту Чтимъ	чтишь чтите	чтитъ чтятъ	чти чтите	чтя	чтящій	чтимый
4	* Шибу Шибемъ	шибеешь шибете	шибѣтъ шибутъ	шиби шибите	—	—	—
5	Реву Ревемъ	ревѣшь ревѣте	ревѣтъ ревутъ	реви ревите	ревучи	ревущій	—
6	Степю Стопнемъ	стоишь стоите	стоиетъ стопнутъ	стени стените	степя	стениящій	—
7	Гоню Гонимъ	гонишь гоните	гонитъ гонятъ	гони гоните	гоня	гонящій	гонимый
8	Сплю Спимъ	спишь спите	спитъ спятъ	спи спите	спя	спящій	—
9	Ѣду Ѣдемъ	ѣдешь ѣдете	ѣдетъ ѣдутъ	ѣжай ѣжайте	ѣдучи	ѣдущій	—
10	Иду Идемъ	идѣшь идѣте	идѣтъ идутъ	иди идите	идя идучи	идушій	—
11	Есмь Есмы Буду Будемъ	еси есте будешь будете	есть суть будетъ будутъ	будь будьте	будучи	будущій	—
12	Ѣд мѣ Ѣдимъ	ѣшь ѣдите	ѣстъ ѣдятъ	ѣшь ѣшьте	ѣдя	ѣдящій	ѣдомый
13	Дамъ, р. Далимъ	дашь дадите	дастъ дадутъ	дай дайте	—	—	—

# IRREGULAR VERBS.

	SECOND BRANCH.				3d BRANCH
	PAST TENSE OF IMPERF. AND PERF. ASP.				ITERAT. ASP.
	Verb.	Gerund.	Infinitive Mood.	Participle Passive.	The Verb.
1	Бѣжѣлъ	бѣжѣвъ бѣжѣвши	бѣжѣть	—	бѣгивалъ (from бѣгѣть)
2	Хотѣлъ	хотѣвъ хотѣвши	хотѣть	—	хачивать
3	Чтилъ	чтивѣ чтивѣвши	чтить	чтенъ	—
4	Шибѣлъ шибѣла, о	шибѣши	шибѣть	шибѣсъ	шибѣалъ (from шибѣть)
5	Ревѣлъ	ревѣвъ	ревѣть	—	рѣвывалъ
6	Стенѣлъ	стенѣвъ стенѣвши	стенѣть	—	—
7	Гналъ	гнавъ гнавши	гнать	гнасъ * гнать	ганивалъ (from гонѣть)
8	Сналъ	спавъ спавѣвши	спать	* снасъ	смиалъ
9	Ѣхалъ	ѣхавъ ѣхавѣши	ѣхать	—	ѣжѣалъ (from ѣздѣть)
10	Шѣлъ	шѣдъ шѣдѣши	идти	* идесъ	хѣживалъ (from ходѣть)
11	Былъ	бывъ бывши	быть	* бытъ	бывалъ
12	Ѣлъ	ѣвши	ѣсть	ѣдѣсъ	ѣдалъ
13	Далъ	давъ давѣши	дать	данъ	давалъ (from давѣть)

Observations on No. 1 Table of Irregular Verbs :—

*a.* Шибѣть as an active verb is generally used with the prefixes вы, за, у, as : вышибѣть, 'to knock out;' зашибѣть, 'to bruise;' ушибѣть, 'to hurt;' as a neuter verb it takes the prefix о, ошибѣться, 'to make a mistake.'

*b.* In compound verbs formed from идти, the radical д is replaced by й, as : найтѣ, прійтѣ, зайтѣ, etc.

In the imperative of пойтѣ the semivowel й is usually omitted, as : подѣ, подѣте, and in выйтѣ the imperative has two terminations : выйди, выйдѣте and выдѣ, выдѣте.

*c.* Спать, идѣть and быть, being of neuter voice, have no passive participle, but compound verbs of active voice formed from these verbs, such as проспѣть, 'to miss in sleeping;' найтѣ, 'to find;' забѣть, 'to forget;' have the passive participle with inflexions as shown in the table, *i. e.* проспѣвъ, найденъ, забѣвъ.

*d.* The participle бѣдущій as well as the verb бѣду expresses the future tense, but the gerund бѣдучи has the signification of the present tense.

*e.* The imperative of хочѣ is used with the prefixes за or вос, as : захотѣ, восхотѣ; the gerund present хотѣ is used only in the negative form, as нѣхотѣ, the particle taking the accent.

The gerund хотѣ when used without the particle не becomes a conjunction, signifying *although*.

*f.* The imperative of ѣду, both in the simple imperfect and in the compound perfect aspect, is not used, but is borrowed from the compound verb of imperfect aspect with the prefix по, as : поѣзжай, 'go.'

The same inflexion in the imperative must be used also for all other compound verbs, as : заѣзжай, 'come round ;' выезжай, 'drive out ;' etc.

NOTE.—In order to point out more clearly the irregularities of the preceding table—words printed in *italic* will mark the *second* conjugation ; those in roman characters the first conjugation, and those with an asterisk are used only with prefixes.

The iteratives printed in *italics* are formed from the indefinite form or from the imperfect aspect of the same verb.

All the inflexions omitted in this table are formed regularly.

Besides the above-named thirteen irregular verbs there are some others, which, although conjugated regularly, deviate somewhat from the rules of formation.

Their principal irregularity consists in the irregular formation of the infinitive or of the present tense.

The apparent irregularities of the infinitive, as also of the present or of the imperative, are due to the avoidance of unpleasant combinations of sounds.

Thus, for example, in the infinitive the radical consonants г, к change into ч ; д, б, н into с, as :

<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>
Стриг <sup>у</sup> , стриг <sup>ъ</sup> ;	стричь, instead of стригѣ.
Тек <sup>у</sup> , тек <sup>ъ</sup> ;	течь, . . . текѣ.
Кра <sup>ду</sup> , кра(д)л <sup>ь</sup> ;	красть, . . . крадѣ.
Греб <sup>у</sup> , грѣб <sup>ъ</sup> ;	гребти, . . . грѣбѣ.
Кля <sup>ну</sup> , клял <sup>ь</sup> ;	клясть, . . . клянѣ.
Вед <sup>у</sup> , вѣ(д)л <sup>ь</sup> ;	вести, . . . ведѣ.



TABLE No. 2. VERBS OF IRREGULAR FORMATION.

Class.	INFINITIVE MOOD.			INDICATIVE MOOD.		IMPER. MOOD.	PARTICIPLE PASSIVE.
	Imperf. or Perf. Asp.		Iter. Asp.	Present or Fut.	Past.		
1.	To shave	брѣть	брѣвать	брѣю	брѣлъ	брей	брѣтый
	To sing	пѣть	пѣвать	пою	пѣлъ	пой	пѣтый
	To howl	выть	—	вб.	вы	во	—
	To cover	крыть	кры	крѡ	кры	кро	крѣтый
	To wash	мыть	мы	мѡ	мы	мо	мытый
	To grieve	ныть	ны	нѡ	ны	но	—
	To dig	рыть	ры	рѡ	ры	ро	рытый
	To rot	гниѣть	гни	гни	гнилъ	—	—
	To beat	бить	би	бѡ	би	бе	бѣтый
	To twine	вить	ви	вѡ	ви	ве	вѣтый
	To pour	лить	ли	лѡ	ли	ле	лѣтый
	To drink	пить	пи	пѡ	пи	пе	пѣтый
	To sew	шить	ши	шѡ	ши	ше	шѣтый
	To repose	* чѣть	—	чѣю	чѣлъ	чѣй	—
2.	To build	* здѣть	здѣать	зѣжду	зда	зѣжди	здѣнный
	To send	слѣть	слѣать	шлю	сла	шли	слѣнный
	To spread	стѣть	стѣать	стѣлю	стѣла	стѣли	стѣнный
5.	To take	брѣть	бирѣть	берѣу	бра	берѣй	брѣнный
	To tear	дрѣть	дирѣть	дерѣу	дра	дерѣй	дрѣнный
	To drive	гнѣть	ганѣвать	жепѣу	гна	женѣй	гнѣнный
	To call	звѣть	звѣать	зовѣу	зва	зовѣй	звѣнный
6.	To live	жить	жи	жи	жи	жив	—
	To be reputed	слѣть	слы	слы	слы	слѣвъ	—
	To take	* ять	имѣть	имѣу	ялъ	имѣй	ятый
	To press	жатъ	жим	жму	жа	жми	жѣтый
	To reap	жатъ	жин	жну	жа	жни	жѣтый
	To stretch	* (рас) пѣть	пин	пѣу	пѣлъ	пини	пѣтый
	To begin	* (на) чѣть	чинѣть	чну	чѣлъ	чини	чѣтый
	To put	* (на) дѣль, р.	дѣвѣть	дѣну	дѣлъ	день	дѣтый

TABLE No. 3. VERBS OF IRREGULAR FORMATION.

INFINITIVE MOOD.			INDICATIVE MOOD.		IMPERAT. MOOD.	PARTICIPLE PASSIVE.
Imperf. or Perf. Aspect.		Iter. Asp.	Present or Future.	Past.		
To become	стать, р.	* ставать	стану	сталъ	стань	—
To grind	молотъ	малывать	мелю	молотъ	мели	молотый
To curse	клясть	клинать	кляну	клялъ	кляни	клятый
To row	гре(б)сти	гребать	гребу	греб(а)ъ	гребй	гребённый
To scrape	скрестъ	скребать	скребу	скребъ	скреби	скребённый
To keep	блюсти	блюдать	блюд	блютъ	блюд	блюдённый
To rumble	брести	—	бред	брё	бред	—
To lay	клясть	клядывать	клад	кла	клад	клядённый
To fall	* пасть	—	пад	па	пад	—
To spin	прясть	прида́ть	пряду	пря	пряди	прядённый
To go	грясти	—	гряду	—	гряди	—
To steal	красть	крадывать	краду	кра	крадь	крадённый
To sit	сѣсть, р.	—	сяду	сѣ	сяд	—
To sweep	мести	мет	мет	мё	мети	метённый
To perturb	мясти	мят	мят	мя	мят	мятённый
To press	* гнестй	* гнет	гнет	гнё	гнет	гнетённый
To plait	плестъ	плет	плет	плё	плет	плетённый
To bloom	цвѣсти	цвѣ	цвѣт	цвѣ	цвѣт	—
To find	* (об) рѣсти	(об)рѣ	рѣт	рѣ	рѣт	рѣтённый
To count	* честь	чит	чит	чѣ	читй	чтённый
To dawn	* свѣсти	свѣт	свѣт	свѣтъ	—	—
To grow	расти	раст	раст	росъ	расти	—
To preserve	беречь	берег	берег	берёгъ	берег	бережѣ
To guard	стеречь	стерег	стерег	стерё	стерег	стережѣ
To put to	* прячь	пряг	пряг	пря	пряг	пряже
To burn	жечь	жиг	жг	жѣ	жг	жжѣ
To shear	стричь	стриг	стриг	стри	стриг	стриже
To lie	лечь, р.	—	лягу	лѣ	лягъ	—
To be able	мочь	могать	могу	могъ	моги	—
To pound	толочь	—	толку	толотъ	толки	толчённый
To care	пещись	—	пекусь	пёкся	пекись	—

The radical vowels are also sometimes changed, a vowel or a consonant being inserted in the present tense for the sake of euphony. These changes, with the exception of a few, form groups of verbs conjugated in the same way, but a table of these verbs will be more useful to learners than any number of rules.

Observations on the Tables of Verbs No. 2 and 3:—

The inflexions not given in the Tables No. 2 and 3, are formed regularly.

With respect to the class of verbs in the No. 3 Table, *молѣть* belongs to Class III. and *клясть* to Class VI.; all the rest in this table are conjugated according to the examples given in Class VII. of the Table of Regular Verbs (Lesson 55).

Verbs marked with an asterisk are used only with prefixes, and those marked with p. are of perfect aspect.

To draw close,	{ Пододвигаться къ, } with
	{ Пододвинуться, p. a. } dat.
To sit near by,	Подсѣдѣть, p. a. подсѣсть.
To take a seat,	Усаживаться, p. a. усесться.
To squeeze, to press,	Пожимать, пожать.
He was in the habit of squeezing his hand.	Онъ пожималъ ему руку.
He squeezed his hand.	Онъ пожалъ ему руку.
To pass, to ride through,	{ Проѣхать по, with the dat.
	{ Выѣхать за, with the instr.
They passed through the town.	Онѣ проѣхали по городу.
He passed through the barrier.	{ Онъ выѣхалъ за заставу.
	{ Онъ проѣхалъ заставу.

To sleep, to pass the night,  
To wind upon,  
To turn on, to be wound on,

Tears used to come into his eyes.

Tears came into his eyes.

In a friendly manner,  
To lay down, to spread,  
To be spread,

To warrant,

To fly open,

To be satisfied,

Was he satisfied ?

They will be satisfied.

Itself,

The horizon itself.

Up to the verge of the horizon.

To ride up to,

To cross, to ride across,

Почевать, р. а. переночевать.

Навёртывать, р. а. навернуть.

Навёртываться, р. а. навер-  
нуться.

Слёзы навёртывались у него на гла-  
зяхъ.

У него навернулись на глазахъ слёзы.

По пріятельски, по дружески.

{ Разсти́лать по } with the  
{ Разоси́лать, р. а. } dat.

Разсти́латься, р. а. разо-  
сти́латься.

{ Руча́ться за, } with the  
{ Поручи́ться, р. а. } accus.

Раскрыва́ться, р. а. рас-  
кры́ться.

{ Быть } дово́льнымъ.  
{ Остава́ться }

Оста́лся ли онъ дово́ленъ ?

Они оста́нутся дово́льны.

Са́мый.

Са́мый небоскло́нь (горизо́нтъ).

До са́маго небоскло́на.

{ Доѣ́зжать до, } with the  
{ Доѣ́хать, р. а. } gen.

{ Переѣ́зжать чрезъ, } with  
{ Пере́хать, р. а. } the acc.

To call on,                      { Заѣзжать къ, } with the  
    { Заѣхать, р. а. }        dat.

To damp, мочить;	perf. asp. помочить.
To fade, линять;	. . . . . полинять.
To drive away from, — отгонять;	. . . . . отогнать.
To drive away, угонять;	. . . . . угнуть.
To devour, to eat, пожирать;	. . . . . пожрать.
To appoint, назначать;	. . . . . назначить.

Hard, твёрдый, сильный.  
 A back yard, задний дворъ.  
 Smooth, гладкий.  
 A casket, шкатулка.  
 A country house, дача.  
 Dark blue, тёмносиний.  
 Timid, боязливый.

Further, дальнѣйшій.  
 A paved road, шоссе.  
 A porch, крыльцо.  
 A drover, погонщикъ.  
 Monotonous, однообразный.  
 Dark grey, тёмносерый.  
 Endless, безконечный.

### EXERCISE CXIX.

Harness the grey horses and go for the children.—After having brought them home, come to me for further orders. At what time did you leave (выѣхать изъ) town?—At a quarter-past two.—Narrate to me the details of your travelling.—With pleasure.—At the hour appointed for the journey there came to the porch a coach, harnessed with four post-horses, and after taking our seats we rode out of our street to one of the best streets of the capital.—We went along that street for about ten minutes and at length we came to a stone bridge.—After crossing the bridge we called on our aunt, in order to take leave.—She was living (use pres. tense) in one of the most magnificent houses of that part of the town, but not finding her at home we continued our journey, and after half-an-hour passed through the town barrier and went on along a smooth paved road.—On both sides of the road stood pretty country houses with

little gardens; in the fields, in a luxuriant grass there were many beautiful flowers to be seen.—The view on both sides of the road, although picturesque, seemed to us rather monotonous, and as we went on we saw nothing but endless fields, spreading to the verge of the horizon.—In this way, without meeting a single tree or a single hillock, we came up to the last station, where we slept, and on the following day, early in the morning, went on foot to the village; the rest you know.—Did you hurt yourself in falling off the chair?—You are mistaken, it was not I, but my sister who fell off the chair; but she was not hurt.—Should the children run out into the yard without my permission, inform me of it immediately.—Yes, sir.

#### EXERCISE CXX.

Do you shave yourself?—No, the barber shaves me. Take my measure and make me a frock-coat.—Of what colour do you wish it to be?—Dark blue or black?—Is this cloth durable, and do you warrant me that it will not fade? It is very durable, although rather thin.—It seems to me that after being damped it will be rough.—I have no doubt you will be satisfied with it.—The shops in our town are magnificent, are they not?—Yes, you have many excellent shops, but one sees often at the door of some of those shops some poor man in rags, timidly looking around to see whether someone will give him a penny, which he wants to buy a piece of bread.—Are the carpets laid down on the floors?—Not yet, but we will lay them down immediately after the servant has finished washing the floors.—This gentleman at every meeting squeezes my hand in a friendly manner, although we hardly know one another.—He

squeezed his hand so hard that tears came into his eyes. He pressed the spring of the lock and the casket flew open. Is the corn reaped?—No, they are now reaping it.—Sit nearer to the window.—I would rather draw nearer the fire, for I feel cold.—Where does this drover drive these sheep to?—He drives them to the slaughter-house.—Drive this cow away from the window, or she will eat all the flowers.—I have driven her away twice already; I had better go and tell the servant to drive her away to the back yard.

---

## SIXTIETH LESSON.

### Шестидесятый Урокъ.

#### GOVERNMENT.

Nouns and verbs govern other words either directly or by means of prepositions.

The genitive, dative, accusative and instrumental cases are governed in both ways, but the prepositional case never stands in immediate relation to the governing word of a sentence, as it is never used without a preposition.

#### OF THE GENITIVE.

The genitive case without a preposition may be used as an attribute or a complement.

A. As an attributive or determinative word the genitive is used :

a. With nouns to indicate possession, direct dependence

or influence, and answers the question *whose?* for animate, or of *what?* for inanimate objects.

The father's house.	Домъ отца.
The peasant's son.	Сынъ крестьянина.
The commander of the fleet.	Начальникъ флота.

*b.* To express a quality attributed to a noun, and answering the question : *what kind or quality?* or *which year, month, day, etc.* :

A man of great intelligence.	Человѣкъ большаго ума.
He is tall.	Онъ высокаго роста.
On which day of the month?	Котораго числа?
On the first.	Перваго числа.

**B.** The genitive as a complement is governed by :

*a.* Nouns denoting quantity, measure, weight, etc., as also collective nouns.

A dozen spoons.	Дюжина ложекъ.
A handful of salt.	Горсть соли.
A crowd of people.	Толпа народа.

*b.* The pronouns *много*, 'many, much;' *сколько*, 'how much;' *только*, 'so much;' *несколько*, 'a few, some;' *мало*, 'a little;' *довольно*, 'enough;' *болѣе*, 'more;' *менѣе*, 'less;' the numerals beginning from five, in the nominat. or accus., and the numerals *двое*, *трое*, *четверо*, etc., in the nominative.

How many days are there in the year?	Сколько дней въ году?
365 days.	365 дней.
How many of you were there?	Много ли было васъ?
There were ten of us.	Настъ было десятеро.
He has plenty of work and little time.	У него много работы, но мало времени.
I was there more than a month.	Я былъ тамъ болѣе мѣсяца.
Less than this.	Менѣе этого.



OBS. 1.—The genitive case is also used with impersonal verbs when one of the pronouns, such as *много*, *мало*, *несколько*, etc., is understood.

Many guests came.

На́халю (много) гостѣй.

There was some increase of business.

Прибавилось (несколько) дѣла.

c. Those active verbs of perfect aspect in which the action relates only to a part of the object, and when *много*, *мало*, *несколько*, etc., in the accusative case are understood :

To sow some corn.

Посѣять пше́нцы.

To bring some water.

Принести́ води́.

To obtain some money.

Достать де́негъ.

OBS. 2.—The imperfect aspect of the same verbs governs the accusative :

To sow corn.

Сѣять пше́нцу.

To bring water.

Носи́ть водо́.

To obtain money.

Доставать де́ньги.

d. Common reflexive verbs with the prefix *на*, denoting abundance :

He read a great many books.

Онъ на́читѣлся кни́гъ.

I saw a great many curious things.

Я на́глядѣлся дикови́нъ.

e. The comparative of adjectives and adverbs, when not followed by the conjunction *нежели*, or *чѣмъ*, 'than :'

Moscow is more ancient than St.

Москва́ дре́вѣе С. Петербу́рга.

Petersburg.

Gold is dearer than silver.

Золото́ доро́же серебра́.

f. The following neuter verbs :

To wish, *желать*.

To ask, *спрашивать*.

To will, *хотѣть*.

To expect, *ожидать*.

To hunger, *ѣкать*.

To attain, *достигать*.

To thirst for, *жаждать*.

To be worth, *стоить*.

To deign, *удостоивать*.

To hope, *чать*.

And the adjective *достойнъ*, 'worthy.'

*g. Neuter and common verbs expressing fear, loss, or privation :*

He fears him.	Онъ боится его.
He lost his father.	Онъ лишился отца.
He is devoid of vice.	Онъ чуждъ порока.
He is deprived of the honour.	Онъ лишёнъ чести.
They are worthy of their respect.	Они достойны ихъ уваженія.

*h. All active verbs preceded by the negative adverb не, as also the impersonal verbs вѣтъ, не стало, не видно, не имѣется, не случается and others, denoting privation or absence:*

Do not waste time.	Не теряй времени.
Do not do evil.	Не дѣлай зла.
There is no change to be seen.	Не видно переменъ.
Nothing happened.	Ничего не случилось.
There is no news.	Нѣтъ вѣстей.

Obs. 3.—The adverb не governs the genitive indirectly, that is, through the verb to which it is attached.

#### OF THE DATIVE.

*A. The dative without a preposition, used as an attribute, denotes a direct dependence or influence upon the object to which it relates :*

He is my friend.	Онъ мнѣ другъ.
He is master of this house.	Онъ хозяинъ этому дому.
A list of things.	Списокъ вещамъ.
The head of the family.	Глава семейству.

*B. The dative, as complement of a sentence, is used with:*

*a. Nouns and verbs denoting a state or quality relating to an object, as also with those indicating the object for whose gain or loss the action is performed.*

I see him.	Онъ мнѣ видѣтъ.
He wants me.	Я ему нуженъ.

We are equal to them.  
 He has got into debt with him.  
 He owes him.  
 They injure him.  
 She helps them.

Мы имъ равны.  
 Онъ задолжалъ ему.  
 Онъ долженъ ему.  
 Они вредятъ ему.  
 Она помогаетъ имъ.

б. Impersonal verbs, denoting a state or feeling attributed to an animate object :

He is merry, but I feel dull.	Ему весело, а мнѣ скучно.
We want to eat.	Намъ хочется ѣсть.
I pity him.	Мнѣ жаль его.
I cannot go.	Мнѣ нельзя идти.

Obs. 4.—The copula *быть* in the infinitive is followed by the dative to express a state or condition, this form being used for the infinitive of passive verbs.

To be merry.	Быть веселу.
To be loved.	Быть любиму.
To be alone.	Быть одному.

c. And the following compound adverbs :

Suitably, соответственно.	Contrary, вопреки.
Decently, прилично.	In order to reproach, въ укоръ.
Similarly, подобно.	In order to annoy, на зло.
Moderately, въ мѣру.	In spite of, наперекоръ.
Compliantly, въ угоду.	In derision, на смѣхъ.
Matching in size, подъ стать.	Matching in colour, подъ цвѣтъ.

#### OF THE ACCUSATIVE.

The accusative without a preposition is used only as a complement to active verbs, as :

He reads a book.	Онъ читаетъ книгу.
I gave the paper.	Я далъ бумагу.
Remember what you read.	Помни читаемое.
They know him.	Они его знаютъ.

Obs. 5.—The accusative without a preposition may be

also used with neuter, reflective, reciprocal and passive verbs, but in this case it expresses the circumstances of place, or time, and has the meaning of an adverb, as :

I walked a mile.	Я прошёлъ милью.
He was lazy the whole day.	Онъ лѣнился цѣлый день.
He washed himself for two whole hours.	Онъ мылся два часа.
The bridge was in a damaged state all the year round.	Мостъ былъ испорченъ круглый годъ.

### OF THE INSTRUMENTAL.

The instrumental case without a preposition is used,

a. With passive verbs, to designate the subject of a proposition, and answering the question *by whom*?

By whom is this brought?	Кѣмъ это принесено?
It is brought by me.	Это принесено мною.

b. With active, neuter and other verbs, to express the means or the instrument by which the action was performed, and answering the question, *by whom*? or *by what*? (*with what*?)

I write with a pen.	Пишущу письмо перомъ.
They are occupied with work.	Онѣ заняты работою.
He played with his gold chain.	Онъ игралъ его золотой цѣпочкой.

In the form of an adverb in the instrumental case are put :

a. Nouns denoting the manner in which the action is performed, and answering the question *how*?

The letter is written in large characters.	Письмо написано крупными буквами.
The raspberry grows in bushes.	Малина растётъ кустами.
The army was drawn up in line.	Войско построилось рядами.
They went by sea.	Онѣ поѣхали моремъ.

The dust rose in clouds.  
 We are going at a walking pace.  
 He stood with his face turned to-  
 wards me.  
 To buy tobacco by pounds.

Пыль поднялась столбомъ.  
 Мы идёмъ шагомъ.  
 Онъ стоялъ ко мнѣ лицомъ.  
 Покупать табакъ фунтами.

b. Names of seasons and parts of the day, in answer to the question *when* ?

In spring, весной.  
 At night, ночью.

| In summer, лѣтомъ.  
 | In the morning, утромъ.

c. Substantives or adjectives to designate the name, sur-  
 name or quality attributed to an object.

They call him John.  
 He was considered an intelligent  
 man.  
 I found this reading difficult.

Его зовутъ Иваномъ.  
 Его считали умнымъ (человѣкомъ).  
 Я нашёлъ это чтеніе труднымъ.

To heat a stove,  
 To light the fire,

Топить печь.  
 Затопить, р. а.

They ordered the fire to be lighted.  
 The house is heated with iron  
 stoves.

Онѣ приказали затопить печь.  
 Домъ отапливается желѣзными пе-  
 чами.

To master,  
 To give one's self to,

Даваться, } govern the  
 Даться, р. а. } dat.

He cannot master the foreign lan-  
 guages.  
 He mastered sciences.  
 I cannot get hold of him.

Ему не даются иностранные языки.  
 Ему дались науки.  
 Онъ мнѣ не даётся въ руки.

To get hold of,

{ Завладѣвать, } govern the  
 { Завладѣть, р. а. } instr.

To become ill,

{ Занемогать, } govern the  
 { Занемочь, р. а. } instr.

To spit blood,

{ Хѣркать крѣвью.  
{ Хѣркнуть, р. of unity.

To have the name of—

Слыть, р. а. прослыть.

To shrink.

Пожимать, р. а. пожать.

To shake.

Покѣчивать, р. а. покатать.

To move.

Шевелить, р. а. шевельнуть.

A manager.

Управляющій.

An accident.

Пронесёнье.

Exertion.

Напряженье.

Firmness.

Твёрдость.

## EXERCISE CXXI.

What does he ask him for?—He asks him for some money.—What is he afraid of?—He is afraid lest some one should ask him for something.—What she was frightened at?—She was frightened at the storm.—Take a friend's advice, you know he is a friend to you and therefore would not advise you badly.—How many months old is this child?—It is seven months old.—Of what height is your uncle?—He is very tall.—Were there many of you at the princess's ball?—There were seven of us.—What are you waiting for?—I am waiting for orders.—When you go to your merchant, buy for me, if you please, some pens, pencils and paper.—All goods at your neighbour's are much better and cheaper than those of your merchant.—What did this frock-coat cost you?—It cost me five pounds ten shillings.—Does he not like his teacher?—Yes, he does, but he does not obey him.—Have you ordered the fire to be lighted?—Not yet, but I ordered some fire-wood to be brought, and as soon as he brings it, I will order the fire to be lighted.—Do you know why he does not visit me any more?—He is ashamed of his lies, dreads your reproaches, and is too proud to acknowledge his fault and ask your

par-lon.—He need not dread my reproaches, as I know that he did not tell a deliberate lie, but only repeated what was said by others.—When did you leave town, and were you riding long?—We left town in the evening, were riding the whole night and came home early in the morning.

#### EXERCISE CXXII.

May one believe everything that is said?—On the contrary, not only one may not, but even should not, believe. What do you wish for?—I am wishing to go for a walk. Do you feel dull here, then?—No, but I feel warm here. Does your brother learn diligently?—He is as diligent as ever, but he cannot master the mathematics, although he learns with facility foreign languages.—So he is a man of good memory and slow intellect.—You would vex him much were you to tell him that.—I want to give you this diamond ring.—I should be very glad of the present, but am afraid that, in accepting it, I shall deprive your nephew, for whom it was intended, of the pleasure.—Who has got hold of my knife?—Peter; he is making his pen with it. Well, but tell him not to cut his pencils with it.—What sort of pen are you writing with?—I am not writing with a pen, but with a pencil.—What are you surprised at? We are surprised at your being here earlier than us by a whole hour, although we rode and you walked.—I went out early in the morning and walked through the forest and without stopping once, whilst you rode by the main road and stopped many times.

#### EXERCISE CXXIII.

Does Mr. B. still manage that estate of yours, which abounds in game?—Yes, and he has the name of being an

honest and clever manager; but he is now very ill, poor fellow (ὁβελήρας).—What is the matter with him?—A few days ago he was riding over the bridge at a trot, his horse stumbled against a stone, and he fell and hurt himself very much. On the following day he began to spit blood, and is now ill with fever.—Does his doctor consider his illness dangerous?—He is silent about it, and only shrugs his shoulders and shakes his head.—I pity his poor wife; she wept bitterly while communicating to me the news of this sad accident.—Now she tends him like a child, as he cannot move his arms or legs.—Is she not afraid of becoming ill also from exertion which deprives her of rest day and night?—She does not seem to pay any attention to it; one is really surprised at her strength, patience and firmness. Where is that son of his now who was last year at the university as a student?—He is now in our town as a doctor.

## SIXTY-FIRST LESSON.

### Шестьдесят первый Урокъ.

#### PREPOSITIONS AND PREPOSITIONAL ADVERBS GOVERNING THE GENITIVE.

##### Without,

A man without fortune.  
We cannot do without money.  
Five all but two.  
A quarter to two o'clock.  
For (for the sake of).  
I came here for your sake.  
Pens are necessary for writing.  
In order to.

##### Безъ.

Человѣкъ безъ состоянія.  
Намъ нельзя обойтись безъ денегъ.  
Пять безъ двухъ.  
Два часа безъ четверти.  
Для.  
Я пришёлъ сюда для васъ.  
Перья нужны для писанія.  
Для того чтобы.



Until, up to, } До.  
Before, as far as, }

He was faithful to him till death.  
I waited until the evening.  
It came to such a pass that there  
was not a single penny left.  
That happened before your arrival.  
This does not concern you.  
I have something to ask you.  
What business is it of yours.  
Before the birth of Christ.  
He read on to the end.  
Up to this place.  
He rode as far as the village.

Онъ ему былъ вѣренъ до смерти.  
Я ждалъ до вечера.  
Дошло до того, что у насъ не оста-  
лось ни одного пѣни.  
Это случилось до вашего прибытія.  
Это до васъ не касается.  
У меня до васъ просьба.  
Какое вамъ до этого дѣло.  
До Рождества Христова.  
Онъ читалъ до конца.  
До сего (этого) мѣста.  
Онъ ѣхалъ до деревни.

Out of, from, for, } Изъ.  
Пзъ.

He came out of the house.  
They concluded from this that he  
was wrong.  
He did this of his own free will.  
He works for money.  
They received him out of charity.  
To lose one's temper.

Онъ вышелъ изъ дому.  
Изъ этого они заключили, что онъ не  
правъ.  
Онъ сдѣлалъ это изъ доброй воли.  
Онъ работаетъ изъ плъты.  
Его приняли изъ милости.  
Выходить изъ себя.

Between, amidst, } Между, межъ, промежду,  
Among, } промежь, (implying di-  
rection or motion).

The water penetrated between the  
planks.  
I fell among strangers.

Между досокъ проникла вода.  
Я попалъ между незнакомыхъ.

Obs. 1.—Между, when not implying direction or motion,  
governs the instrumental case.

Along, } Вдоль.  
I walked along the shore. Я гулялъ вдоль рѣки.

Instead of, for,

He took this book instead of that one.

Instead of learning his lessons, he is playing.

Will you go there for me?

Within,

His house is within the fortification.

Out of, beyond, outside,

The fortifications are outside the town.

He is out of his wits.

Beside, by, near,

He is sitting beside me.

They live next to us.

His garden is near the village.

I was riding and he was running alongside of me.

Except, besides,

There was no one except you in our house.

I eat nothing but bread.

Without joking.

By, past,

He passed by our house.

About, round,

We went round the garden.

He lives somewhere near the forest.

We were waiting for about two hours.

Вмѣсто.

Онъ взялъ эту книгу вмѣсто той.

Вмѣсто того чтобы учить уроки, онъ играетъ.

Хотите пойти туда вмѣсто меня?

Внутри.

Его домъ находится внутри укрѣпленій.

Внѣ.

Укрѣпленія находятся внѣ города.

Онъ внѣ себя.

Возлѣ, подлѣ.

Онъ сидитъ возлѣ меня.

Они живутъ подлѣ насъ.

Его садъ подлѣ деревни.

Я ѣхалъ верхомъ, а онъ бѣжалъ подлѣ меня.

Кромѣ.

Кромѣ васъ у насъ никого не было.

Я ничего не ѣмъ кромѣ хлѣба.

Кромѣ шутокъ.

Мимо.

Онъ шелъ мимо нашего дома.

Около.

Мы обонли около сада.

Онъ живетъ гдѣ-то здѣсь около лѣса.

Мы ожидали около двухъ часовъ.

## Around,

There is not a single garden 'around  
the town.  
A dense fog hangs round the moun-  
tain peak.

## From, out of, since,

They went away from us.  
From the house to the forest.  
He fell ill from trouble.  
A remedy against head-ache.  
He did not know what he was doing  
from joy.  
From year to year.  
From day to day.  
He dismissed him from his service.

## Behind, from behind,

He was walking behind me.  
He attacked him from behind.

## Upon, over,

He put a fur coat over his frock-  
coat.  
We saw him upon the water.

## After, afterwards,

He came after me.  
After having written, he rose.

## Before, formerly,

He came before you.

## Against, opposite,

He went against the enemy.

{ Вкругъ, вкругъ.  
{ Окрестъ (seldom used).

Вокругъ города пѣтъ ни одного сада  
Окрестъ горной вершинны висѣлъ гус-  
той туманъ.

## Отъ, ото.

Онъ ушли отъ насъ.  
Отъ дому до лѣсу.  
Онъ заболѣлъ отъ заботъ.  
Лѣкарство отъ головной боли.  
Онъ не зналъ что дѣлалъ отъ ра-  
дости.  
Годъ отъ году.  
День ото дня.  
Онъ ему отказалъ отъ мѣста.

## Позади, сзади.

Онъ шѣлъ позади меня.  
Онъ напалъ на него сзади.

## Повѣрхъ.

Онъ надѣлъ шубу повѣрхъ сюртука.  
Мы видѣли его повѣрхъ воды.

## Послѣ.

Онъ пришѣлъ послѣ меня.  
Онъ всталъ послѣ того какъ напи-  
салъ.

## Прѣжде (of time).

Онъ пришѣлъ прѣжде васъ.

Противъ, противу (move-  
ment).

Онъ шелъ противъ непріятеля.

Against, opposite,

Напрóтивъ, насупротивъ,  
(rest).

He lives opposite our house.

Онъ живётъ напрóтивъ (or насупро-  
тивъ) насъ.

On the contrary.

Напрóтивъ.

For the sake of,

Рáди.

He serves for honour's sake.

Онъ служи́тъ рáди чести.

He did it for your sake.

Онъ сдѣлалъ это рáди васъ.

Therefore, on that account.

Чего́ рáди, сего́ рáди.

For God's sake.

Бо́га рáди.

Obs. 2.—Для is generally used instead of рáди: the latter, if used, is usually placed after the noun

Above, in addition to, }  
Besides,

Сверхъ.

This is above his understanding.

Это́ сверхъ его́ по́пáтiя.

He bought for him two books be-  
sides.Онъ купи́лъ ему́ сверхъ того́ и двѣ  
кни́ги.

To the middle, among,

{ Посредѣ, (movement).  
{ Средѣ, (rest).

He steered the ship amidst reefs.

Онъ провёлъ корáбль посредѣ под-  
водныхъ камней.The monument is erected in the  
middle of the square.Па́мятникъ поста́вленъ средѣ пло-  
щади.

In broad day.

Посредѣ б́лаго дня.

From, since, about,

Съ, со.

From this place up to that place  
they measured the distance.Съ этого́ мѣста по то́ мѣсто они́ вѣ-  
мѣрили расто́яніе.He was absent from the 1st of May  
to the 5th of June.Онъ былъ въ отлúчкѣ съ пѣрваго  
Ма́я по пýтое́ Ю́ня.

We worked from morning till evening.

Мы работали съ утра́ до вѣчера.

It was raining from five till six.

Дождь шёлъ съ пýтаго до шестáго  
часá.

He took the book from the table.  
 He took the hat off his head.  
 He changed his seat.  
 The boat rolled from side to side.  
 From day to day and from hour to  
     hour we expected him.  
 On Tuesday night.  
 Between the 1st and 2nd day of the  
     month.  
 He died of grief.  
 He did it with my consent.  
 His estate was sold by auction.  
 If I may be allowed to say.  
 They lost their way.  
 He went out.  
 On all sides.  
 He knocked me down.  
 Since then we saw him no more.

Онъ взялъ книгу со стола.  
 Онъ снялъ съ головы шляпу.  
 Онъ пересѣлъ со стула на стулъ.  
 Лодка качалась съ боку на бокъ.  
 Со дня на день и съ часу на часъ  
     мы его ожидали.  
 Въ ночь со вторника на среду.  
 Съ перваго на второе число.  
 Онъ умеръ съ горя.  
 Онъ сдѣлалъ это съ моего согласія.  
 Имѣніе его продано съ молотка.  
 Съ позволенія сказать.  
 Они сбѣжались съ пути.  
 Онъ ушёлъ со двора.  
 Со всѣхъ сторонъ.  
 Онъ сбилъ меня съ ногъ.  
 Съ тѣхъ поръ мы его болѣе уже не  
     видѣли.

OBS. 2.—Съ governs also the accusative and the instr.

At, near, beside, by,

He lives at his father's.  
 She has white hands.  
 Our house lies by the river.  
 He sits by the window.  
 I waited for him at the door.  
 His field lies quite close to the  
     forest.

У.

Онъ живётъ у отца.  
 Руки у ней бѣлы.  
 Нашъ домъ стоитъ у рѣки.  
 Онъ сидитъ у окна.  
 Я ожидалъ его у дверей.  
 Поле его у самаго лѣса.

## PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE DATIVE.

To, towards, for,

He came to me.  
 We touched the shore.  
 We arrived there towards evening.  
 He went to mass.  
 The enemies met face to face.  
 Love of one's native country.

Къ, ко.

Онъ пришёлъ ко мнѣ.  
 Мы привалили къ берегу.  
 Мы приѣхали туда къ вечеру.  
 Онъ пошёлъ ко обеднѣ.  
 Враги сошлись лицомъ къ лицу.  
 Любовь къ отечеству.

He is invited to dinner.  
 He sought a pretext for a quarrel.  
 I was going towards the palace.  
 This becomes her.

On, upon, over, }  
 At, for, }

We took a walk in the fields.  
 He tapped me on the shoulder.  
 I wandered about in the world.  
 The soldiers fired at the besiegers.  
 How much is it a pound?  
 One shilling a pound.  
 We were there in the morning.  
 They selected the apples for their  
 size, and the handkerchiefs for  
 their quality.  
 He acted in this affair conscientiously.  
 He is the first in his class for good  
 behaviour.  
 He is the oldest in years and the  
 highest in rank of all here.  
 They dress according to the fashion.  
 He counted on his fingers.  
 We used to live there for weeks at  
 a time.  
 I was travelling by land and he by  
 sea.  
 The post arrives every Tuesday.  
 He is clad in summer attire.  
 They are walking two by two.  
 He serves in the artillery.  
 According to my opinion.

OBS. 3.—По governs also the accusative and the prepositional cases.

Contrary, against, }  
 In spite of, }

He acted against common sense.

Онъ приглашенъ къ обѣду.  
 Онъ искалъ предлога къ ссорѣ.  
 Я шелъ ко дворцу.  
 Это ей къ лицу.

По.

Мы гуляли по полю.  
 Онъ потрепалъ меня по плечу.  
 Я странствовалъ по свѣту.  
 Солдаты стрѣляли по осаждающимъ.  
 По чѣмъ за фунтъ?  
 По шиллингу за фунтъ.  
 Мы были тамъ поутру.  
 Онъ выбирали яблоки по величинѣ,  
 а платки по добротѣ.

Онъ въ этомъ дѣлѣ поступилъ по  
 совѣсти.  
 Онъ въ классѣ первый по поведѣ-  
 нію.  
 Онъ здѣсь старшій по лѣтамъ и по  
 чину.  
 Онъ одѣваются по модѣ.  
 Онъ считалъ по пальцамъ.  
 Мы жили тамъ по недѣлямъ.

Я ѣхалъ по сухому пути, а онъ по  
 морю.  
 Почта приходитъ по вторникамъ.  
 Онъ одѣвается по лѣтнему.  
 Онъ идѣтъ по два въ рядъ.  
 Онъ служитъ по артиллеріи.  
 По моему мнѣнію.

Вопреки.

Онъ поступилъ вопреки здравому  
 смыслу.

He did it against all sense of decency.

He married contrary to his father's wishes.

To receive, to take,

We used to receive him.

He has taken the medicine.

To fortify,

To protect,

Impregnable, неприступный.

Naval, морскóй, флóтскій.

A rampart, валъ.

Онъ здѣлалъ это вопреки приличіямъ.

Онъ женился вопреки желанію своего отца

{ Принимать, I. 1.  
Принять, I. 6.

Мы принимали его.

Онъ принялъ лекарство.

Укрѣпять, р. а. укрѣпить.

Защищать, р. а. защититъ.

Impassable, непроходимый.

A forester, лѣсничій.

Truthfulness, достовѣрность.

#### EXERCISE CXXIV.

Is it far from here to the frontier?—About fifty miles. From what do you conclude that he is lazy?—From the fact that he learns his lesson only by (изъ) compulsion. For whom are these illuminations being prepared?—For the new governor of the town.—Does he drink wine?—He drinks nothing except water.—When did you arrive here? I came here before spring and will stay here till next spring.—Has the enemy much of an army?—He has from ten to twelve thousand men.—Against whom have you fought?—I fought against the Hungarians in the year 1849. When going to the war did you pass by our village?—I do not recollect it now, but as your village lies near the river along which our regiment went, it is probable that we did pass it.—The letter sent from my brother to his friend did not reach him.—What did he get ill from?—He got ill from trouble.—Take a seat near me, and I will take a pen and write you a prescription for fever.—Do not, however.

ake this medicine after dinner, and to-morrow during the morning, if you are not better, come to me again.—Is this town well fortified?—On all sides it is defended by impregnable batteries and ramparts, and, besides that, on one side it is protected by lofty mountains impassable for troops. Up to which day of the month will you be in town?—From the second to the tenth.—The bird flew from the cage to the table.—Will your sons return soon?—We expect them every hour.—At what time are you going out?—About nine, or at twenty minutes to two.—Since what o'clock have you been waiting for him?—I have been waiting for him since half-past eight.—He was waiting for you from three to five o'clock.

#### EXERCISE CXXV.

To whom did he apply?—He applied to his chief.—Which of these two roads leads to the forester's house?—When you come to the nearest village, turn to the right and go straight up to the river; there, after crossing the bridge, you will see on a hillock the forester's house; so you cannot now lose your way.—While taking a walk in the fields and enjoying the pleasant evening air we came to a little house lying (срѣтъ) at the foot of the hill.—Is it true that the rich banker is going to marry the daughter of a naval officer?—There is such a rumour in town, but I could not answer for its truthfulness.—From which battery did the enemy fire at your troops?—He fired at us from his ships, in spite of their heavy (сильный) rolling from side to side. Did he act according to your orders?—No, he acted contrary to my orders.—How are you going abroad?—From here to town we are going by rail, and thence by sea.—Does he go to church every Sunday?—He goes to church not



only on Sunday, but on week days.—At how much per foot do you buy this mahogany?—At two shillings and threepence per foot.—In what order did the soldiers march? They marched six in a row.

## SIXTY-SECOND LESSON.

### Шестьдесятъ второй Урокъ.

#### PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE.

##### Into, in, to, at,

He went into the garden.  
I am going to Vienna.  
I came on Monday in the afternoon,  
and he came at one in the afternoon.  
We came in time.  
His house is a two storied one.  
I will write this in one hour.  
He tore the handkerchief to pieces.  
We believe in God.  
To look through spectacles.  
He set out on a journey.  
To speak through the nose.  
To play at cards.  
To give a deposit.  
To agree thoroughly.  
To paint black.  
He put his head out of his window.  
A seat in the theatre at two roubles.  
It is seven times as high.  
To sell at a loss.  
I translated word for word.  
His sister resembles her father.

##### Въ, во (movement).

Онъ пошолъ въ садъ.  
Я ѣду въ Вѣну.  
Я прѣѣхалъ въ понедѣльникъ въ понедѣнь, а онъ въ часъ по полудни.  
Мы пришли въ пору.  
Его домъ въ два этажа.  
Я напишу это въ часть.  
Онъ изорвалъ платокъ въ куски.  
Мы вѣруемъ въ Бога.  
Смотрѣть въ очки.  
Онъ пустился въ дорогу.  
Говорить въ носъ.  
Играть въ карты.  
Дать въ задатокъ.  
Жить душа въ душу.  
Красить въ черную краску.  
Онъ высунулъ голову въ окно.  
Мѣсто въ театрѣ въ два рубля.  
Это въ семь разъ выше.  
Продать въ убытокъ.  
Я перевелъ слово въ слово.  
Его сестра въ отца.

He is in love with her.  
 A room six yards long.  
 A battalion a thousand men strong.  
 In one jump.  
 In time of peace.  
 He died a year afterwards to the  
     very day.  
 The windows look into the garden.  
 He looked out of the window.  
 Once a week.  
 Twice a year.  
 He fired at him.  
 A battalion is drawn up in line.  
 A book folio size.  
 He puts me down as nothing at all.

Онъ влюблёнъ въ неё.  
 Комната длиною въ шесть ярдовъ.  
 Батальонъ въ тысячу человекъ.  
 Въ одинъ прыжокъ.  
 Во время мира.  
 Онъ умеръ годъ спустя день въ день.  
 Окна выходятъ въ садъ.  
 Онъ смотрѣлъ въ окно.  
 Разъ въ недѣлю.  
 Два раза въ годъ.  
 Онъ выстрѣлилъ въ него.  
 Батальонъ построёнъ въ линію.  
 Книга въ листъ.  
 Онъ меня ни во что не ставитъ.

Obs. 1.—Nouns designating state or rank of a person, when preceded by въ, are put in the plural, and being in this case treated as collective nouns take the inflexion of the nominative, as :

He is promoted to the rank of major.  
 He took her for a wife.  
 They elected him as their chief.  
 He enlisted for a soldier.

Онъ произведёнъ въ майоры.  
 Онъ взялъ её себѣ въ жены.  
 Они выбрали его себѣ въ начальники.  
 Онъ записался въ солдаты.

Behind, beyond, for,

За (movement).

He went out of the gate.  
 We are going abroad.  
 He took her by the hand.  
 He always espouses the cause of the  
     innocent.  
 He took vengeance on him for the  
     offence.  
 I live three miles off.  
 This took place an hour ago—a week  
     ago.

Онъ вышелъ за ворота.  
 Мы ѣдемъ за границу.  
 Онъ взялъ его за руку.  
 Онъ всегда заступается за невин-  
     наго.  
 Онъ ему отомстилъ за обиду.  
 Я живу за три мили.  
 Это случилось за часъ передъ сномъ,  
     за недѣлю.

He paid him twopence for a pound  
of flour.

I bought a pound of flour for two-  
pence.

He is turned forty.

They began dinner.

He grasped the hilt of his sword.

She got married to him.

He made proposals of marriage to  
her.

Let us go out of town.

They mistook him for me.

### On, upon,

He sat down on a chair.

I turned to the east.

He went into the field.

I went down on my knees.

I looked at him.

I shall go to Paris via Calais.

He entrusted me with a commission.

On the following day.

In future.

I purchased ten roubles worth of  
cloth.

He is on a year's leave of absence.

To go to work, to war.

Give me some money for tobacco.

He divided it into three parts.

Your coat is longer than mine by a  
foot.

Pray partake of this.

He bought it for ready money.

I sued him.

It came into his mind.

At length, at last.

At last I have finished.

He ran to help him.

He gave him some money for drink.

Онъ заплатилъ за фунтъ муки два  
пенса.

Я купилъ фунтъ муки за два пенса.

Ему уже за сорокъ лѣтъ.

Они сѣли за столъ.

Онъ хватился за шпату.

Она вышла за мужъ за него.

Онъ свѣтается за ней.

Поѣдемъ за городъ.

Его приняли за меня.

### На (movement).

Онъ сѣлъ на стулъ.

Я обратился на востокъ.

Онъ пошелъ на поле.

Я сталъ на колѣни.

Я смотрѣлъ на него.

Я поѣду въ Парижъ на Калѣ.

Онъ возложилъ на него порученіе.

На другой день.

На будущее время.

Я купилъ сукна на десять рублѣй.

Онъ отпуценъ на годъ.

Идти на работу, на войну.

Дай мнѣ денегъ на табакъ.

Онъ раздѣлилъ это на три части.

Вашъ сюртукъ на футъ длиннѣе мо-  
его.

Кѣшайте на здоровье!

Онъ купилъ на наличныя деньги.

Я просилъ на него.

Ему пришелъ на умъ.

Накопецъ.

На силу я окончилъ.

Онъ прибѣжалъ къ нему на помощь.

Онъ далъ ему на водку.

OBS. 2.—*На* governs also the prepositional.

Against,  
He struck the table with his fist.  
He leant against the wall.  
We are separated by a party-wall.  
She was walking arm-in-arm with  
her betrothed.  
Now it is daylight at six o'clock,  
and last month at that hour we  
got up by candle-light.  
He makes a bet.

О, объ, обо.  
Онъ ударилъ кулакомъ объ столъ.  
Онъ оперся объ стѣну.  
Я живу съ нимъ объ стѣну.  
Она шла объ руку съ своимъ жени-  
хомъ.  
Теперь въ шесть часовъ уже свѣтло,  
а въ прошломъ мѣсяцѣ объ эту  
пору мы вставали при свѣчѣхъ.  
Онъ бѣтсѣ объ закладъ.

OBS. 3.—*О* governs also the prepositional case.

Under, beneath, below, Подъ (movement).

In answer to the question :

a. WHITHER ?

He took shelter under the roof.  
He threw the book under the table.  
They descended the hill at a walk-  
ing pace.  
The enemy drew near to the for-  
tress.

Онъ укрылся подъ кровлю.  
Онъ бросилъ книгу подъ столъ.  
Они шли подъ гору шагомъ.  
Непріятель подступилъ подъ крѣ-  
пость.

b. WHEN ?

He arrived about morning.  
He will set off about autumn.

Онъ пріѣхалъ подъ утро.  
Онъ выѣдетъ подъ осень.

c. HOW MUCH ?

He is getting on to forty.

Ему подъ сорокъ лѣтъ.

OBS. 4.—*Подъ* when implying rest governs the instr.

Up to, on,  
He went into the water up to his  
knees.

По.  
Онъ вошелъ въ воду по колѣно.

I measured up to this point.  
Each one received a rouble.  
They live on the other side of the  
river.  
He is standing on my right.

About,

He is about my size.  
A grain as small as a pin's head.  
I stayed there for about a week.

Of, about,

He spoke aside.  
He spoke of you.

Through,

The water sinks through the paper.  
The light comes through the glass  
door.  
The grass is seen through the fence.

Through, by,

He rode across the field and I went  
over the bridge.  
He jumped across the ditch.  
I will come in an hour's time.  
We advertised it in the papers.  
I sent it by a servant.  
In a hundred years from to-day.

To tuck up, to turn up,  
To make an offer, to ask in  
marriage,

To rush after,

To take a situation,

To mend.

Я отмѣрилъ по это мѣсто.  
Каждый получилъ по рублю.  
Онѣ живутъ по ту сторону рѣки

Онъ стоитъ по правую руку.

Съ.

Онъ ростомъ съ меня.  
Зерно съ булавочную головку.  
Я пробылъ тамъ съ недѣлю.

Про (used instead of для  
for or о, объ, about).

Онъ говорилъ про себя.  
Онъ говорилъ про васъ.

Сквозь.

Вода протекаетъ сквозь бумагу.  
Свѣтъ проникаетъ сквозь стеклянную  
дверь.  
Земель видна сквозь заборъ.

Черезъ, чѣрезъ.

Онъ ѣхалъ чѣрезъ поле, а я чѣрезъ  
мостъ.  
Онъ перепрыгнулъ чѣрезъ ровъ.  
Я придѣ чѣрезъ часъ.  
Мы объявили чѣрезъ газеты.  
Я послалъ чѣрезъ слугу.  
Чѣрезъ сто лѣтъ отъ сего дня.

Засучивать, р. а. засучить.

{ Свѣтаться за, } with the  
{ Посвѣтаться, р. а. } acc.

{ Бросаться за, } with the  
{ Броситься, р. а. } instr.

Паниматься, р. а. панияться.

Чинить, р. а. починивать

To erect.

To give leave of absence.

To tear.

A range of mountains.

A great general.

Сооружать, р. а. соорудить.

Отпускать, р. а. отпустить.

Драть, р. а. разодрать, издрать.

Цепь горь.

Славный полководецъ.

Unpleasantness, неприятность.

A chest of drawers, комодъ.

An instructor, наставникъ.

A ditch, ровъ.

## EXERCISE CXXVI.

Did he enter the room?—He has been a long time in the room already.—Were there many guests there?—There were about ten men.—Were they a long time in building this shed?—They were about a week building it.—What have you torn your coat against?—Against a nail.—Take it to the tailor towards evening, but do not pay him for mending it, as he owes me about ten roubles.—On the right there was a river flowing, and on the left a range of mountains was seen.—What did he pay for the horse which he bought for his daughter?—It cost him about £300. Does it match his other horse in size?—It matches his other horse both in size and colour.—If you want to wash yourself turn up your sleeves to the elbow.—Have you been staying long in town?—Since the 5th November.—Has your brother made an offer to our neighbour's daughter?—I know that he is in love with her, but I cannot say whether he has made her an offer.—What did they prize him for? For diligence.—Has the tailor been here?—Yes, the tailor came here two hours ago.—Put the bracelet on the table. It is lying on the chest of drawers.—What price are these cigars?—Threepence each.—Did he get leave of absence from school for a long time?—For two days.

## EXERCISE CXXVII.

Is your brother tall?—He is about my uncle's size.—We have snow still lying in March, but in southern countries about this time the fields are covered with grass.—Where did this little dog rush to after the kitten?—He rushed after it under the table.—What is your uncle's age?—He is getting on to fifty.—Whither did he throw the stone? He threw it into the water.—What did you hear about him? I do not like to say of people that which I have not seen myself, but only heard.—These panes are so dirty that light can hardly come through (проникать) them.—After having crossed the bridge, they had to jump across a deep ditch.—In whose memory is this monument erected?—In memory of the great general Koutousoff.—When will he be at your house?—In five days' time.—Through whom did this unpleasantness arise (взъити)?—Through him. What are they doing?—They are playing at cards.—Whom do you take as your instructor?—Your former teacher. Was he wounded?—Yes, he was wounded in the leg. Whom do you take as your witness?—I take you as my witness.—What is your brother doing now?—He took a situation as clerk.

## SIXTY-THIRD LESSON.

Шестьдесятъ третій Урѣкъ.

PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE INSTRUMENTAL.

Beyond, behind, За.

In answer to the question

WHERE?

The sea is beyond the hills.  
I stand behind the house.

Море за горами.  
Я стою за домомъ.

ON WHOSE ACCOUNT?

The delay is caused by him alone.  
One hears nothing for the noise.  
Why did you not come ?  
Because it was impossible.

За нимъ однимъ остановка.  
За шумомъ ниче́го не слышно.  
За чѣмъ ты не пришёлъ ?  
За тѣмъ что нельзя.

AT WHAT?

He was sitting at his work.  
He was sitting at his meal.

Онъ сидѣлъ за работою.  
Онъ сидѣлъ за столомъ.

BEHIND OR AFTER, WHOM OR WHAT?

Walk behind me.  
Shot after shot is heard.  
He went to find a doctor.

Ступайте за мною.  
Слышенъ выстрѣлъ за выстрѣломъ.  
Онъ пошёлъ за докторомъ.

FOR WHAT PURPOSE? (used instead of Для).

Why are you here?  
On my own business.

За чѣмъ ты здѣсь.  
За своимъ дѣломъ.

Over, on, upon,

The bird hovers over her nest.  
I experienced it myself.  
The rock overhangs the water.  
He gets the upper hand of him.  
We laughed at him.  
They gained a victory over the enemy.

Надъ.

Птица летаетъ надъ гнѣздомъ.  
Я испыталъ это надъ собою.  
Скала выставлялась надъ водою.  
Онъ берётъ верхъ надъ нимъ.  
Мы смѣялись надъ нимъ.  
Онъ одержалъ побѣду надъ непріятелемъ.

Under, underneath,

The bird built her nest beneath the roof.  
The dog is lying under the table.  
He is known by the name of Smith.  
He stood at the foot of the hill.  
She was under his protection.

Подъ (implying rest).

Птица свила гнѣздо подъ крышей.  
Собака лежитъ подъ столомъ.  
Онъ извѣстенъ подъ именемъ Шмита.  
Онъ стоялъ подъ горюю.  
Она была подъ его защитою.



In front of, before.

There is a garden before the house.  
He stood in front of me.  
He has the preference over him.

He woke up before daylight.

Between, among, amidst,

He is sitting between us.  
The difference between good and evil.

Among plants some are medicinal  
and some poisonous.

During business hours he did not  
like talking.

In the meantime.  
Whilst.

With,

He rode with a guide and I without  
one.

Come to us with your wife.

He did it with our assistance.

France borders on Germany.

I congratulated him on his birth-  
day.

I do not know him at all.

I have no money by me.

Yes, sir ; no, sir.

Предъ, передъ, (implying rest).

Передъ домомъ находится садъ.

Онъ стоялъ предо мною.

Онъ имѣетъ преимущество предъ нимъ.

Онъ проснулся предъ разсвѣтомъ.

Мѣжду, межъ (implying rest).

Онъ сидитъ между нами.

Различіе между добромъ и зломъ.

Мѣжду растеніями находятся цѣлеб-  
ныя и ядовитыя.

Мѣжду дѣломъ онъ не любилъ разго-  
варивать.

Мѣжду тѣмъ.

Мѣжду тѣмъ какъ.

Съ, (opposed to безъ).

Онъ ѣхалъ съ провожатымъ, а я безъ  
провожатаго.

Пріѣзжайте къ намъ съ женою.

Онъ сдѣлалъ это съ нашею помощію.

Франція граничитъ съ Германіей.

Я поздравилъ его со днѣмъ его рож-  
денія.

Я его вовсемъ не знаю.

Со мною денегъ нѣтъ.

Да-съ ; нѣтъ-съ.

## PREPOSITION GOVERNING THE PREPOSITIONAL.

In, at,

I live in London.

He is endowed with great capacities.

Въ (implying rest).

Я живу въ Лондонѣ.

Въ немъ большія способности.

He is in debt.  
 He was caught in the act of stealing.  
 At the head of the army.  
 He is invited.  
 We were made fools of.  
 He stood before ladies with his hat  
 and gloves on.  
 He wears spectacles.  
 He came in the beginning of the  
 year.  
 What o'clock is it ?  
 Just struck nine.  
 Just upon two o'clock.  
 Between twelve and one.  
 He arrived in the early part of  
 September.  
 There will be a fine harvest this  
 year.

## On, upon,

He is lying on a sofa upstairs.  
 He has been at sea.  
 There are stars in the heavens.  
 I am in the service.  
 The soldier is on sentry duty.  
 We were in the open air.  
 Last week.  
 He saw a good many things in his  
 lifetime.

## About, concerning,

He spoke about me.  
 He writes upon the war.  
 A three-legged stool.  
 He came about holiday-time.

## After, according-

On entering church.  
 After the death of Alexander.

Онъ въ долгѣхъ.  
 Онъ пойманъ въ воровствѣ.  
 Во главѣ войска.  
 Онъ позванъ въ гости.  
 Мы остались въ дуракахъ.  
 Онъ стоялъ передъ дамами въ шляпѣ  
 и въ перчаткахъ.  
 Онъ въ очкахъ.  
 Онъ пріѣхалъ въ началѣ года.

Который часъ.  
 Въ началѣ десятый.  
 Второй въ исходѣ.  
 Въ первомъ часу.  
 Онъ пріѣхалъ въ первыхъ числахъ  
 сентября.  
 Въ нынешнемъ году будетъ хоро-  
 шая жатва.

## На, (implying rest).

Онъ сидитъ на вереху на диванѣ.  
 Онъ служилъ на морѣ.  
 На пёсь звёзды.  
 Я нахожусь на службѣ.  
 Солдаты стоятъ на часахъ.  
 Мы были на воздухѣ.  
 На прошлой недѣлѣ.  
 Онъ видѣлъ многое на своёмъ вѣку.

## О.

Онъ говорилъ обо мнѣ.  
 Онъ пишетъ о войнѣ.  
 Стулъ о трёхъ ножкахъ.  
 Онъ пріѣхалъ о праздникахъ.

## По.

По входѣ въ церковь.  
 По смерти Александра.

The son inherited the estate from  
his father.

She lamented her late husband.  
In my opinion.

Near, in the time of,  
St. Petersburg lies near the mouth  
of the Neva.

A parcel was sent with the letter.  
He is a servant of mine.

This happened in my presence.  
In the reign of Alexander the  
Second the peasants were freed  
from serfdom.

He was present at the taking of the  
fortress.

He shudders at the bare idea of it.  
He is at his hour of death.

To take shelter,

To be exposed,

To shudder,

To establish,

To view,

To take a stroll,

To reign, царствовать.

To labour, трудиться.

The besieger, осаждающій.

Want, недостатокъ.

Willingness, охота.

A dispatch, депеша.

A medium, средняя.

A table of contents, оглавление.

Augustus, Августъ.

A consul, консулъ.

Сынъ по отцѣ наследовалъ имѣніе.

Она плакала по своему мужу.  
По мнѣ.

При.

Петербургъ при устьѣ Невы.

При письмѣ отправлена посылка.

Онъ при мнѣ лаксемъ.

Это случилось при мнѣ.

При Александрѣ Второмъ освобожден-  
ны крестьяне.

Онъ былъ при взятіи крѣпости.

Онъ содрогается при мысли о томъ.  
Онъ при смерти.

Укрываться, р. а. укрѣтиться.

{ Подвергаться, } govern the  
{ Подвергнуться, } dative.

Содрагаться, р. а. содрог-  
нуться.

Учреждать, р. а. учредить.

Обозрѣвать, р. а. обозрѣть.

Прохаживаться по, with the  
dat.

To march, идти.

To be situated, находиться.

The besieged, осажденный.

Superfluity, излишество.

Experiment, опытъ.

A declaration, объявление.

A brink, край.

A preface, предисловіе.

Tiberius, Тиберій.

Bernard, Бернार्дъ.

Fasces, орудія карательныя.

## EXERCISE CXXVIII.

Have you been out of town to-day?—No, I could not go out on account of the rain.—Why did you not go in a coach then?—Because coaches were not to be had.—Have you been sitting down a long time at drawing?—For about an hour.—What were they talking about at dinner?—That after the despatch the declaration of war will follow.—Are the things you sent for brought?—They will be brought in an hour.—Hold the umbrella over my head, because both my hands are occupied.—What are you labouring over? I am making an experiment on this medicine.—Do not stand on the brink of the precipice, or you will fall into it. With whom were you at his house.—With two friends. Where were you at the time it rained.—I took shelter under the porch.—On what pretext did he leave the room.—He left on the pretext that an organ was playing under the window.—Were the bescigers standing a long time close on to the town.—For about a month.—Where is your market situated?—In the square in front of the church. Lictors were marching in front of the consul carrying the fasces.—What were you doing before dinner?—I was taking a stroll in the town.—There is a medium between want and superfluity.—We are now hovering (находиться) between fear and hope.—With willingness and diligence one succeeds in everything; but without those qualities all efforts are useless.—Of what crime is he accused?—He is accused of theft.

## EXERCISE CXXIX.

Is it true that you were walking in the garden without a hat and without boots?—No, I was walking with my hat

and boots on.—In the beginning of winter it is still dark at half-past four in the morning, but in the beginning of summer daybreak begins soon after two.—Are horses sold here every day?—No, only in the first days of each month. At the very idea of the danger to which his son was exposed he shuddered.—From what spot did you view the suburbs of the town?—From the hill.—When did you ascend the Mount St. Bernard?—Last week.—Is the fire-wood burning in the stove?—Yes, but badly; one should put (подложить) some fresh dry wood on.—Who reigned after the death of Augustus?—Tiberius.—For whom are you in mourning?—For my parents.—Is there a table of contents to the book?—Yes, and there is also a preface.—How many legs has this stool?—Three.—Did this happen before witnesses.—No, without them.—When was the Senate first established in Russia?—In the reign of Peter the Great. Are there any paintings (живопись) on the walls and ceiling of that church?—Yes, the walls and ceiling are painted by the celebrated French artist, Horace Vernet.

---

## SIXTY-FOURTH LESSON.

### Шестьдесят четвёртый Урокъ.

Words which govern by means of prepositions may be divided into compound and simple words.

A. Compound verbs, as also their derivatives, are generally followed by the same preposition as the one prefixed to them, provided that it is susceptible of being used separately.

Thus verbs with the prefix :

<i>Въ</i>	require <i>въ</i> :	<i>внести въ</i> домъ, to bring into the house.
<i>До</i>	„ <i>до</i> :	<i>дойти до</i> дому, to go as far as the house.
<i>За</i>	„ <i>за</i> :	<i>зайти за</i> уголъ, to go round the corner.
<i>Изъ</i>	„ <i>изъ</i> :	<i>избрать изъ</i> множества, to select from a quantity.
<i>На</i>	„ <i>на</i> :	<i>набъхать на</i> мель, to run on a shoal.
<i>Надъ</i>	„ <i>надъ</i> :	<i>надзирать надъ</i> дѣломъ, to superintend an affair.
<i>Отъ</i>	„ <i>отъ</i> :	<i>отойти отъ</i> стола, to withdraw from a table.
<i>Подъ</i>	„ <i>подъ</i> :	<i>подложить подъ</i> сукно, to lay under a cloth.
<i>Со</i>	„ <i>со</i> :	<i>сойти съ</i> горы, to descend a hill.

Entry into the house is prohibited.	<i>Входъ въ</i> домъ запрещенъ.
The superintendence of this matter is entrusted to me.	<i>Надзоръ надъ</i> этимъ порученъ мнѣ.
The descent down the hill is very steep.	<i>Сходъ съ</i> горы очень крутъ.

Compound verbs with inseparable prefixes, *i.e.* those which modify the meaning, require after them some separable preposition whose meaning is allied to that of the verbal prefix ; such are :

<i>Изъ</i>	requires <i>отъ</i> :	<i>избавить отъ</i> бѣды, to deliver from trouble.
<i>Низъ</i>	„ <i>съ</i> :	<i>низлетѣть съ</i> высоты, to fly down from a height.
<i>Подъ</i>	„ <i>къ</i> :	<i>подойти къ</i> дому, to draw up to the house.
„	„ <i>съ</i> :	<i>поднять съ</i> полу, to lift from the floor.
„	„ <i>на</i> :	<i>поднять на</i> воздухъ, to lift up in the air.
<i>Пере</i>	„ <i>черезъ</i> :	<i>перейти черезъ</i> мостъ, to go over the bridge.
<i>При</i>	„ <i>къ</i> :	<i>прійти къ</i> другу, to come to a friend.
<i>Про</i>	„ <i>сквозъ</i> :	<i>пройти сквозъ</i> огонь, to pass through fire.
<i>Разъ</i>	„ <i>на</i> :	<i>разломить на</i> части, to break to pieces.
„	„ <i>по</i> :	<i>размѣщать по</i> угламъ, to place in the corners.

B. Of the simple words governing by means of prepositions the most important are :

#### GOVERNING THE GENITIVE.

With *изъ*.—Adjectives in the superlative degree, numerals, as also the pronouns *всякъ*, *каждый*, *иной*, *многіе*,

нѣкоторые, when they denote a number from which a selection is made :

The most diligent of all pupils.	Привлѣктивѣйшій изъ учениковъ.
The best of all.	Лучшій изъ всѣхъ.
One of the two will go there.	Одинъ изъ двухъ пойдетъ туда.
The second of them will be rewarded.	Второй изъ нихъ будетъ награжденъ.
Every one of us may be a hero.	Всякій изъ насъ можетъ быть героемъ.
Many of them lost their lives.	Многие изъ нихъ лишились жизни.
Some of the listeners began to slumber.	Нѣкоторые изъ слушателей задремали.

With отъ.—Nouns designating protection against something.

A cloak for the rain.	Плащъ отъ дождя.
A shelter from a storm.	Пристаище отъ бури.
A medicine for fever.	Лѣкарство отъ лихорадки.

#### GOVERNING THE DATIVE.

With къ.—Nouns and verbs denoting movement towards an object.

I am going to him.	Я иду къ нему.
He applied to me.	Онъ обратился ко мнѣ.
This letter is to my father.	Это письмо къ моему отцу.
He has a great propensity for music.	У него большая охота къ музыкѣ.
He is appointed as secretary to him.	Онъ назначенъ къ нему въ секретаря.

Nouns denoting some pleasing or displeasing disposition of mind towards an object.

Love and reverence towards parents.	Любовь и почтеніе къ родителямъ.
Hatred of lying.	Ненависть ко лжи.

Obs. 1.—Verbs from which these nouns are derived govern the accusative without a preposition.

To love and revere parents.	Любить и почитать родителей.
To hate lying.	Ненавидѣть ложь.

## GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE.

With **въ**.—The substantive **вѣра**, 'faith,' and its derivatives **вѣровать**, **вѣрующій**, **вѣрованіе**, when speaking of some spiritual object.

Faith in Christ.

Вѣра во Христа.

I believe in one God the Father.

Вѣрую во единого Бога Отца.

With **на**.—Neuter verbs expressive of a movement of feeling or passion, as: **уповѣть**, 'to trust;' **негодовать**, 'to be indignant;' **злѣбствовать**, 'to bear malice;' **роптѣть**, 'to murmur;' **сѣтовать**, 'to lament;' and the common verbs—**надѣяться**, 'to hope;' **полагаться**, 'to rely;' **жаловаться** or **плакаться**, 'to complain;' **сердиться** or **гнѣваться**, 'to be angry;' as also their derivatives.

He murmurs at his fate.

Онъ ропщетъ на судьбу.

To murmur at one's fate is a failing of the weak-minded.

Ропотъ на судьбу—удѣлъ слабымъ.

He complains of you.

Онъ жалуется на васъ.

The complaint about you is already delivered in.

Жалоба на васъ уже подана.

## GOVERNING THE INSTRUMENTAL.

With **надъ**.—Nouns and verbs denoting superiority, power or triumph:

He has power over his subjects.

Онъ имѣетъ власть надъ своими подданными.

He laughed at the stupid persons.

Онъ смѣялся надъ глупыми.

He gained a brilliant victory over the enemy.

Онъ одержалъ блестящую побѣду надъ непріятелемъ.

With **съ**.—All reciprocal verbs:

They fought the enemy.

Они сражались съ непріятелемъ.

We correspond with him.

Мы переписываемся съ нимъ.



## Words designating comparison or resemblance.

He compared me to him.

Онъ сравнилъ меня съ нимъ.

The resemblance to him was striking.

Сходство съ нимъ было поразительно.

## GOVERNING THE PREPOSITIONAL CASE.

With о.—Verbs expressing a mental act, communication of ideas, expression of feelings, as also their derivatives :

I have heard of that.

Я слышалъ о томъ.

We read about the war.

Мы читали о войнѣ.

She is anxious about her son.

Она беспокоится о своёмъ сынѣ.

Her grief for her son was excessive.

Ея печаль о сынѣ была велика.

To fight a duel,

Драться на дуэли, на поединкѣ.

To fight with swords,

Биться на шпагахъ.

Obs. 2.—The preposition на when used after the reciprocal verbs биться, сражаться, драться, 'to fight,' requires the name of the arm chosen for a duel to be put in the prepositional plural.

They fought a duel with pistols.

Они стрѣлялись на пистолетахъ.

We fought with swords.

Мы бились на шпагахъ.

While, so long as,

Пока, покуда.

Until, so long as,

Пока—не.

While you are there I will finish the work.

Пока вы будете тамъ, я окончу работу.

I will not go there until everything is ready.

Я не пойду туда, пока всё не будетъ готово.

Strike the iron while it is hot.

Куй железо пока горячо.

As if, that,

{ Бѣдто, бѣдто бы.

{ Какъ бѣдто, какъ бѣдто бы

They say he is ruined.

Говорятъ бѣдто онъ разорился

I ask him, and he is as silent as if  
he did not hear me.

Have you heard of his becoming a  
maniac ?

Is it possible ?

To arise.

To let out.

To move from.

To be in a reverie.

A poor-box.

Cattle breeding.

Suitable.

Я спрашиваю его, а онъ молчитъ,  
какъ будто бы не слышитъ меня.

Слышали вы что онъ помѣшался ?

Будто бы ?

Пронсходить, р. а. произойти.

Выпускать, р. а. выпустить.

Сдвигать, р. а. сдвинуть.

Мечтать о, with the prep. о.

Ящикъ для бѣдныхъ.

Скотоводство.

Пригодный.

### EXERCISE CXXX.

What are you building this shed for?—For (keeping) firewood.—Are these grounds suitable for cattle breeding? No, the soil here is everywhere unfertile, but the lands over the river are capable of agriculture.—Out of what did the quarrel arise?—From his letting the goldfinch out of the cage.—Make (извлекать) all possible use of the talents with which nature has endowed you.—Of what are these beautiful flowers made?—Of wax.—Of how many battalions is this regiment composed?—Of three.—Where did you take shelter from the rain?—Under a tree.—If you wish to get rid of your cold, and, what is more important, of the frequent visits of your doctor, do not go out of doors in damp weather.—Which of these two stones did he move from this spot?—The one which is three paces from us. The journeymen returning from their work entered the church which stands by the river.—After turning round the corner, he came to a poor-box and dropped in a silver coin.—We have goods of Russian manufacture which are sold for English ones.—What was he angry with him for?

For not answering to him his question.—How long shall you wait?—I shall wait till it is finished; I shall not go until everything is finished.

### EXERCISE CXXXI.

Can you change me this note into small money?—I have no small change myself.—Is this novel translated into English?—No, it is translated only into French.—Whom does she resemble?—Her mother.—This kind nurse looks after the children and tends upon their sick mother.—Have they built a hay-loft over the shed?—No, but in a short time they will build one.—Did you compare the translation with the original?—Yes, and I find it very good.—On whom lies the responsibility for losses in (upon) the sale of goods?—All the fault lies on him.—Can he play the flute? He can play different instruments.—In what language is this Bible written?—In Hebrew.—What did you ask him about?—I asked him what he is in a reverie about.—Have you picked up the pins from the floor?—I do not see a single pin on the floor.—Have you cut this pie into pieces?—Yes, I have cut it into four pieces.—Is it true that your brother has killed the officer who offended your sister?—My brother fought him a duel with pistols, but he did not kill him, he only wounded him in the arm.

---

### SIXTY-FIFTH LESSON.

Шестьдесятъ пятый Урокъ.

POSITION OF WORDS.—(Размѣщеніе Словъ).

Among modern languages the Russian is conspicuous for

its clearness and simplicity. Although it possess by means of its inflexions great facilities for inversion and transposition, it has totally discarded the rhetorical contrivances of the ancients. Its periods, however long, are never involved, and the sequence of the different parts of speech is at once direct and logical. This result, however, is attended without any rigid or inelastic formality.

Its flexibility is shown by the following examples, in which the meaning is in no wise affected by transposition :

Я разговаривалъ съ нимъ о его дѣ- I conversed with him about his  
лахъ. affairs.

This may be rendered also :

Разговаривалъ я съ нимъ о его дѣлахъ.  
Съ нимъ я разговаривалъ о его дѣлахъ.  
О дѣлахъ его я съ нимъ разговаривалъ.  
Съ нимъ о дѣлахъ его разговаривалъ я.

The natural order of words in an affirmative or negative proposition is as follows :

The first place is occupied by the subject (подлежащее) and its adjuncts, if any, and the second by the predicate (сказуемое) followed by its adjuncts, if any.

Богъ сотворилъ міръ въ шесть дней, God created the world in six days,  
и чело́вѣка по образу своему и and man after his own image.  
подобію.

OBS. 1.—The predicate or even a subordinate word may take the first place for the sake of emphasis.

Былъ я вчера въ театрѣ. I was in the theatre yesterday.  
Во Франціи я былъ. I have been to France.

OBS. 2.—The subject is placed after the predicate and at

the end of a clause when it is desired to give to the subject a greater prominence.

Всё что мы видимъ сотворилъ Богъ.      God created all we behold.

Adjectives employed as epithets precede the noun :

Примѣтный ученикъ читаетъ полез-      The diligent scholar reads useful  
ныя книги.      books.

Adjectives employed as attributes or as surnames follow the noun :

Это (есть) дѣло доброе.      This is a good act.  
Его считаютъ человекомъ благо-      He is considered to be a sensible  
мыслящимъ.      man.

The apposition follows the substantive to which it refers :

Колоссъ Родосскій, одинъ изъ семи      The Colossus of Rhodes, one of the  
чудесъ свѣта, былъ вылитъ изъ      seven wonders of the world,  
бронзы.      was made of bronze.

The adverb precedes the verb ; the complement follows the word to which it refers ; words of circumstance follow those which determine them :

И умнѣйшій человекъ не всегда      Even the most sagacious do not  
видитъ выходъ изъ затруд-      always see an escape from dif-  
неній.      ficulties.

When two or more determinative words come together, first the determinative, then the demonstrative pronoun, and lastly the numeral or adjective precede the substantive.

Всѣ эти первыя мѣста уже за-      All these first seats are already  
няты.      taken.

Demonstrative, possessive, indefinite and definite pro- nouns precede the substantive.

Эта книга моя.	This book is mine.
Мой братъ здоровъ.	My brother is well.
Какъ-то домъ горитъ.	Some house is on fire.
Весь домъ горитъ.	The whole house is on fire.

Subordinate clauses follow those on which they depend either in the way of meaning or syntactical connexion :

Скажи брату, что завтра будутъ гости, которыхъ нужно хорошо принять, если онъ не хочетъ прослыть невѣжливымъ.	Tell my brother that to-morrow there will be guests who must be well received, if he wishes not to pass for an uncivil man.
---	---

The relative pronouns *который* or *кой*, 'who, which,' in the genitive precede the substantive of the subordinate clause when the former is without a preposition :

Человѣкъ, котораго словамъ можно вѣрить.	A man whose words one may believe.
Книга, коей содержаніе любопытно.	A book whose contents are interesting.

Obs. 3.—In the same instance, however, the substantive with a preposition precedes the relative pronoun :

Человѣкъ, на словѣ котораго мы можемъ положиться.	A man on whose words we may rely.
Страна, въ предѣлахъ которой мы живѣмъ.	A country in whose limits we dwell.

In interrogative sentences the order varies somewhat from the English, inasmuch as the word which conveys the purport of the question takes the first place :

Съ братомъ ли вы говорили?	Have you spoken to the brother ?
Нѣтъ, съ сестрой.	No, to the sister.
Не сами ли мы виноваты въ нашихъ несчастіяхъ ?	Have we not ourselves to blame for our misfortunes ?

Obs. 4.—Interrogative sentences expressing participation commence with the conjunction *и*.

И онъ тамъ былъ ?	Was he there too ?
И тамъ онъ былъ ?	Was he also there ?
И то онъ знаетъ ?	Does he know even that ?

Obs. 5.—In asking a question, when one is convinced of

the contrary of the fact implied, the sentence begins with the interrogative adverb *пáзвъ* :

*Пáзвъ мѡжетъ челоуѣкъ провести всю жизнь безъ гѡря ?*      Can man go through life without sorrow ?

Obs. 6.—To express doubt the sentence begins with the interrogative adverb *неужели, ужели*.

*Неужели ещё не видите, что вы не можете заставить насъ вѣрить такой сказкѣ*      Do you not yet see that you cannot make us believe such stories.

A question may be expressed by a mere stress of the voice on a particular word, without any interrogative particle:

*Вы вчера разби́ли стака́нъ ?*      Did you break the glass yesterday ?  
*Вы вчера разби́ли стака́нъ ?*      Did you break the glass yesterday ?

Obs. 7.—When the interrogative clause follows an affirmative one, the particle *ли* is retained :

*Я желаю знать, былъ ли онъ тамъ ?*      I want to know whether he was there ?

Obs. 8.—When it is sought to draw attention to the particular thing requiring an answer, the interrogative word is placed after the circumstantial clause.

*Изъ многихъ купленныхъ имъ книгъ, которую онъ подарилъ ему ?*      Which book did he give him of the many he bought ?  
*Въ жизни сколько вы успѣли выстроить воздушныхъ замковъ прежде, нежели вы окончательно поселились въ нынѣшней вашей скромной обстановкѣ ?*      How many castles in the air have you had time to make in your lifetime, before you finally settled down in your present humble position ?

To forebode, to foretell,

*Is the owl a bird of good omen ?*  
*No, it is of ill omen.*

*Предвѣщать.*

*Хорошая ли предвѣстница сова ?*  
*Нѣтъ, она дурная предвѣстница.*

To use bad words,  
To come to blows,  
To separate, n. v.,  
To be wroth with—.

Браниться, р. а. побраниться.  
Подражаться, р. а.  
Расходиться, р. а. разойтись.  
Быть въ сердцахъ на, with  
the acc.

To dress (wounds).  
To rejoin (in speaking).

Перевязывать, р. а. перевязать.  
Возражать, р. а. возражать.

To argue, спорить.  
Superstitious, суевѣрный,  
A cuckoo, кукушка.

To pass through, проходить.  
Bruised, избитый.  
Simpleton, простакъ.

#### EXERCISE CXXXII.

One fine morning two peasants, John and Peter, were out walking together, and, while passing through a wood, heard the cry of a cuckoo for the first time. "The cuckoo is a bird of good omen," said the superstitious John. "Her cry foretells something lucky for me; at least a purse full of money."—"And why to thee?" rejoined Peter, who was not wiser than John. "I do not know why the cuckoo should foretell luck to thee alone. I am somewhat older and a better man than thou art, and I am sure her cry will bring me luck." Instead of enjoying the beauties of the morning they began to argue, and then to use bad words. After some quarrelling they came to blows, and at length the two friends separated, both very much bruised and wroth with each other. On the following day they met at the doctor's, and whilst he dressed their wounds, they recounted to him how the quarrel arose (произошёл), and asked him for whose benefit the cuckoo really had cried. The doctor laughed and said: "She cried for the benefit of neither of you, you simpletons, but for mine, because you have come to me to be treated, and will have to pay me for my treatment and medicine."



## SIXTY-SIXTH LESSON.

## Шестьдесятъ шестой Урокъ.

POSITION OF WORDS (*Continued*).

In an imperative clause the first place is occupied by the verb, followed by the complement and its adjuncts.

Читайте книгу, которую вы сегодня купили.      Read the book which you bought.

OBS. 1.—The personal pronoun precedes the verb in the imperative only for the sake of pointing out contrast or opposition.

Вы оставайтесь здесь, а я пойду.      You remain here, and I will go home.

OBS. 2.—The personal pronoun or the subject follows the verb when the imperative is employed instead of the potential or subjunctive mood.

Сдѣлай это я, всё на меня нападутъ.      Were I to do this, everybody would attack me.

When the imperative is formed by means of the conjunction *пусть* or *пускай*, 'let,' the subject may be placed between *пусть* and the verb.

Пусть люди говорятъ.      Let them speak.  
Пускай онъ проситъ.      Let him ask.

OBS. 3.—But the conjunction *да* is never separated from the verb in the imperative.

Да будетъ свѣтъ.      Let there be light !

The auxiliary *быть* and *стать*, usually placed before adjectives, participles or the infinitive, come after them when to the compound verb an adverb, conjunction or other adjunct is added.

Я *бѣду* *готовѣть*

Я *стану* *работать*.

*Скоро* *готовѣть* *бѣду*.

*Скоро* *работать* *стану*.

I shall be ready.

I shall begin to work.

I shall be ready soon.

I shall soon begin to work.

The conjunction *бы*, by means of which the potential mood is formed, is placed immediately after the word to which it refers, but the conjunctions *же*, *ли*, *такъ*, *то* are generally inserted between *бы* and the word preceding it.

Онъ *же бы* *сдѣлать* *это*

Онъ *то бы* *сдѣлать*.

Ему *такъ бы* *послушаться*.

*Сдѣлать ли бы* онъ?

*Полезно ли бы* было?

He, however, would do it.

He would do it himself.

He ought to have obeyed nevertheless.

Would he do it?

Would it be useful?

The following extract will serve to illustrate the foregoing rules.

Въ литературѣ *каждаго народа* есть свой великіе люди.

Каждый народъ съ гордостью указываетъ на немногихъ избранниковъ въ общемъ кругу своихъ литературныхъ дѣятелей, и называетъ ихъ великими потому, что они стоятъ выше всего окружающаго ихъ, потому, что ихъ дѣятельность не укладывается въ тѣ узкія рамки, которыя служатъ естественною границею для дѣятельности ихъ современниковъ и соотечественниковъ.

There are great men in the literature of every nation.

Each with pride points to a chosen few in the whole circle of literary workers, and calls them great because they stand higher than all that surround them, for the reason that their activity is not cramped within those narrow frames which serve as a natural limit for the exertions of their contemporaries and colleagues.

Такіе люди обыкновенно увлекают за собою толпу, и окружающую ихъ рай поклонниковъ, уже при жизни, создаётъ имъ то исключительное положеніе, вълѣдствіе котораго великій писатель не приурочивается къ современной ему эпохѣ, а — такъ сказать — эпоха приурочивается къ великому писателю. Его имя даётся наступающему за нимъ періоду и тому новому поколѣнію литераторовъ, которое развилось и выросло подъ непосредственнымъ вліяніемъ его произведеній и представляетъ собою его школу.

Such men usually draw the masses after them, and the swarm of admirers surrounding them already in their lifetime creates for them that exceptional position, in consequence of which a great writer does not conform himself to his epoch, but the epoch—so to say—conforms itself to the great writer. His name is given to the period coming after him and to the new generation of authors which has developed itself and grown under the immediate influence of his works and represents his school.

## II. ПОЛЕВОЙ.

P. POLEVOY

It came to pass,

To interrupt,

To revive, а. v.

To take heart,

To extend, простира́ть.

To bound forth, выпрыгнуть.

False, подѣльный.

Abruptly, отрывисто.

Shudder, трепеть.

Concourse, стеченіе.

Fraud, подлогъ.

A token, знакъ.

A roar, рыканіе.

Gallienus, Галліенъ.

{ Однѣжды.

{ Случилось такъ.

{ Перебивать, р. а. перебить

{ Прерывать, р. а. прервать.

Оживлять, р. а. оживить.

Ободряться, р. а. ободриться.

To thrill, to tremble, трепетать.

To proclaim, объявлять.

Wretch, несчастный.

A den, яма, берлога.

Supplication, мольба.

Arena, циркъ, арена.

A crier, глашатый.

An offender, обидчикъ.

Amphitheatre, амфитеатръ.

Salonica, Салоника.

A praetorian guard, преторианецъ.

## EXERCISE CXXXIII.

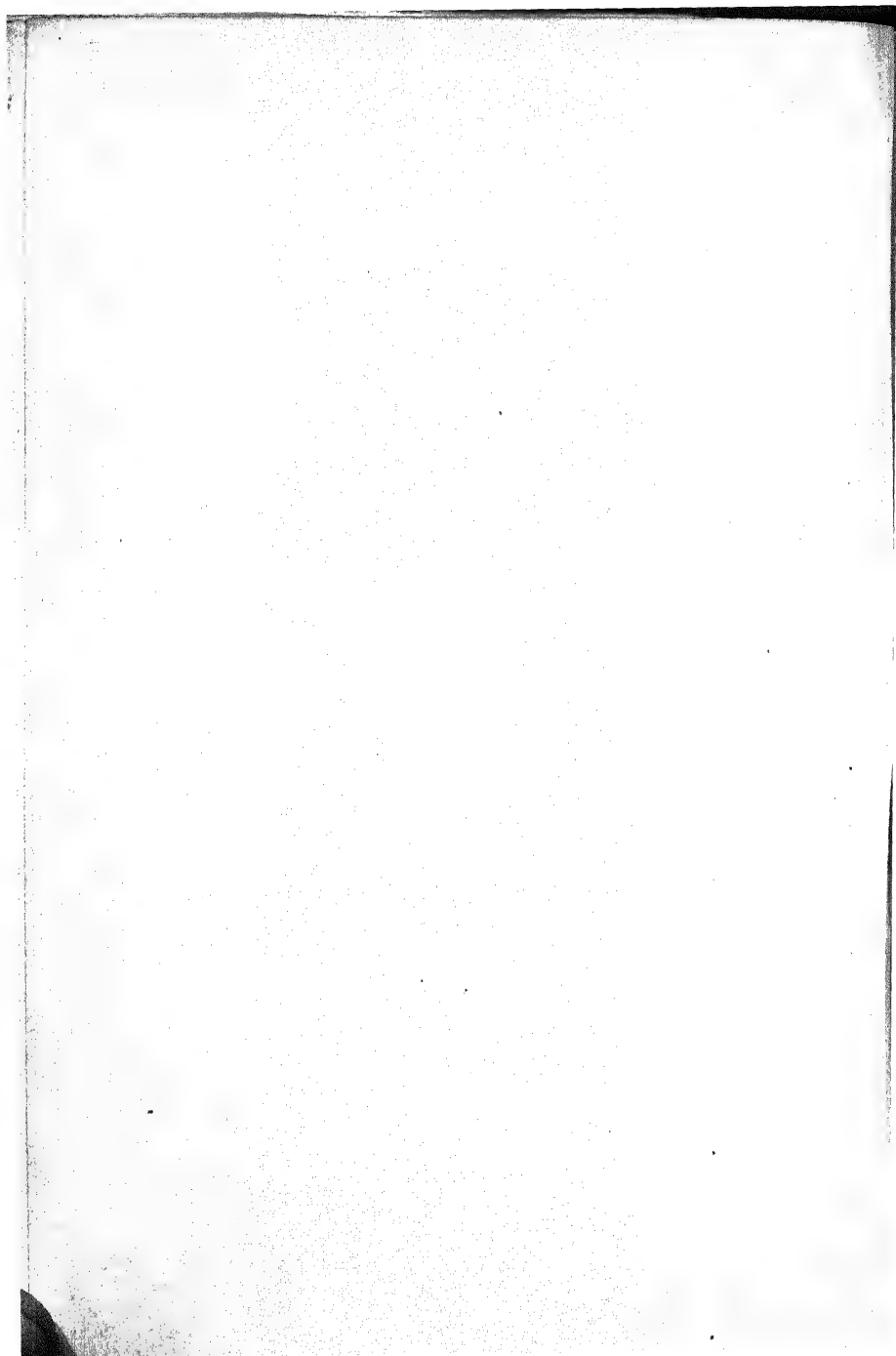
Gallienus, the Roman Emperor, had a beautiful wife, named Salonica, whom he tenderly loved. It came to pass that a diamond merchant sold her some false precious stones. Salonica discovered (замѣтивъ) the fraud, flew to her husband and demanded that he should punish the offender. "Certainly," replied Gallienus, "nothing is easier. A lion has been lately sent to me from Africa; I shall have him exhibited to-morrow in the arena; he will be very hungry, and—" "He will be very hungry!" interrupted Salonica with a shudder. "Enough! not a word more," rejoined the Emperor abruptly, and calling a prætorian guard he gave him an order in a low voice. On the following day there was a great concourse of sightseers in the amphitheatre at the appointed hour. The terrible roar of the lion was heard from the dens below. Among the crowd, thrilled with expectation of a favourite spectacle, it was said that the diamond merchant who had cheated Salonica was about to be thrown to the lion. The sound of a trumpet and the voice of the crier soon stopped the general talk (рѣчь). The door of one of the dens was suddenly thrown open (отворѣвъ), and out of it was brought the trembling criminal pale as death and extending his arms in token of supplication towards Gallienus. The roaring of the lion grew louder and louder; the unhappy diamond merchant fell upon his knees, bowed (склонивъ) his head on his breast and covered his face with his hands. The fatal moment arrived. The door of another den flew open (паче-

πίτλ), and lo ! from it bounded forth a—lamb. The laughter of the spectators somewhat revived the despairing wretch ; he opened his eyes, sighed (βздохпύτл) and took heart again. Then the crier proclaimed to the crowd that according to the orders of Gallienus the deceiver had been punished in his turn with deception. Salonica giving her hand to her husband thanked him for the lesson.

**END OF PRACTICAL PART.**

# APPENDIX:

CONTAINING A BRIEF RECAPITULATION OF  
RULES, WITH ALL THE PARADIGMS OF  
DECLENSION AND CONJUGATION.



## APPENDIX.

## I. ETYMOLOGY.—Словопроизведение.

## INTRODUCTION.

1. ALL the words of the Russian language are divided into eight parts of speech, (части рѣчи), viz :

- (1) The Substantive, имя существительное.
- (2) The Adjective, имя прилагательное.
- (3) The Pronoun, мѣстоименіе.
- (4) The Verb, глаголь.
- (5) The Adverb, нарѣчіе.
- (6) The Preposition, предлогъ.
- (7) The Conjunction, союзъ.
- (8) The Interjection, междометіе.

2. The first four parts of speech being subject to changes in their terminations are called variable (измѣняемыя), the four last are invariable (неизмѣняемыя), except the adverb, which has degrees of comparison.

3. Words are either primitive (первообразныя), or derivative (производныя).

*Primitives.**Derivatives.*

Лицо, image, face ;	лицо, face.
Зрѣть, to see ;	зрѣніе, sight.

4. There are no articles in the Russian language.



## THE SUBSTANTIVE.

5. Substantives are either proper (имя собственное), common (имя нарицательное), or collective (имя собирательное), as: **Никола́й**, 'Nicholas'; **человѣкъ**, 'man'; **ста́до**, 'flock.'

To all substantives belong gender, number and case.

### GENDER (ро́дъ).

6. There are three genders, masculine (му́жескій), feminine (же́нскій) and neuter (сре́дній).

The gender of animate beings is known by their sex, and that of inanimate objects by their terminations.

(1) Of the masculine are:

a. Names of males: **оте́цъ**, 'father'; **дѣ́дъ**, 'uncle.'

b. Names of inanimate and abstract objects ending in **ъ**, **й**, and some in **ь**: **са́дъ**, 'garden'; **поко́й**, 'room'; **кора́бль**, 'ship.'

(2) Of the feminine are:

a. Names of females: **же́на**, 'wife'; **до́чь**, 'daughter.'

b. Names of inanimate and abstract objects ending in **а**, **я** and some in **ь**: **вода́**, 'water'; **зе́мля**, 'land'; **вла́сть**, 'power.'

(3) Of the neuter are:

a. Names of animate beings when no distinction of gender is shown: **дитя́**, 'child'; **существо́**, 'a being.'

b. Names of inanimate and abstract objects ending in **о**, **е**, **мя**: **сло́во**, 'word'; **мо́ре**, 'sea'; **и́мя**, 'name.'

7. Some nouns denoting animate beings have a common

inflexion for the masculine and feminine, and are therefore common as to gender; such are: сиротá, 'orphan;' бродáга, 'vagabond.'

8. Some nouns denoting animate beings form the feminine gender from the masculine by changing the termination of the latter, as: гость, 'guest,' fem. гостя; левъ, 'lion,' fem. львица,

9. As to the gender of nouns ending in **ь**, the following rules are to be observed:

a. Common nouns denoting animate beings are masculine: царь, 'czar;' олень, 'stag.'

*Except*—Мать, 'mother;' дочь, 'daughter;' свекровь, 'mother-in-law;' and some names of animals ending in **ь**, нь, пь, ль, дь, ть, сь, шь, which are feminine, as: лошадь, 'horse;' мышь, 'mouse,' etc.

b. Names of abstract objects ending in **ь** are feminine, as: жизнь, 'life;' власть, 'power.'

*Except*—день, 'day;' вопль, 'cry;' вихрь, 'whirlwind;' дождь, 'rain;' ливень, 'pouring rain;' перечень, 'extract;' and the following foreign words: спектакль, 'spectacle;' пароль, 'parole;' стиль, 'style;' контроль, 'control.'

c. Names of inanimate objects ending in **ь** are feminine, as: цѣпь, 'chain;' дверь, 'door;' except the following, which are masculine.

Алькоголь, alcohol.  
Алтарь, altar.  
Бандероль, band.  
Бемоль, a flat.  
Биль, billiard ball.  
Бредень, drag-net.

Букварь, ABC-book.  
Бюлетень, bulletin.  
Бѣксель, bill of exchange.  
Бѣнзель, monogram.  
Волдырь, boil.

Гвоздь, nail.  
Госпиталь, hospital.  
Гребень, comb.  
Грифель, slate-pencil.  
Груздь, toadstool.  
Дѣготь, tar.

Дождь, rain.	Поготь, finger-nail.	Ставень, window-shut- ter.
Жёлудь, acorn.	Ноль, zero.	Стебель, stalk.
Пябёръ, ginger.	Огонь, fire.	Стихёръ, surplice.
Календарь, almanack.	Панцырь, coat of mail.	Сухарь, biscuit.
Камень, stone.	Пень, stamp.	Тополя, poplar.
Картофель, potatoes.	Перистиль, peristyle.	Трэнзель, curb.
Кашель, cough.	Перкаль, shirting-ca- lico.	Трюфель, truffle.
Киль, keel.	Пёрстень, ring.	Туфель, slipper.
Копонель, hemp.	Пистоль, pistol.	Уголь, coal.
Коготь, claw.	Пламень, flame.	Уровень, level.
Козырь, trump.	Пластырь, plaster.	Фитиль, linstock.
Колёдезь, well.	Плётень, hedge.	Флигель, wing (of a house).
Корабль, ship.	Портфель, portfolio.	Фонарь, lantern.
Корень, root.	Поршень, piston.	Хмель, hops.
Косарь, mower.	Профиль, profile.	Хрусталь, crystal.
Костыль, crutch.	Пузырь, bladder.	Циркуль, pair of com- passes.
Кочень, heart of a cab- bage.	Пупырь, pimple.	Шкворень, pole-bolt.
Кремень, flint.	Пустырь, vacant land.	Шпиль, a capstan.
Кремль, Kremlin.	Пусть, road.	Штэмпель, stamp.
Кривдаль, cracknel.	Рашпиль, rasp.	Щавель, sorrel.
Куль, sack.	Ревень, rhubarb.	Щёбень, rubbish.
Лагеръ, camp.	Ремёнь, strap.	Ърь, the letter ъ.
Ляпотъ, list-shoe.	Рубль, rouble.	Эль, the letter л.
Ларь, large chest.	Рубель, batlet.	Якорь, anchor.
Локоть, elbow.	Руль, helm.	Янтарь, amber.
Ломоть, slice.	Сбитень, honey-tea.	Ясень, ash-tree.
Миндаль, almonds.	Сераль, seraglio.	Ячмень, barley.
Миткаль, calico.	Складень, necklace.	
Монастырь, convent.	Словарь, dictionary.	
Нашатырь, nitre.		

The above list comprises all the most useful words.

#### NUMBER.—Число.

10. There are two numbers, singular (единственное) and plural (множественное), each number having seven cases.

## CASE.—Падѣжъ.

11. There are seven cases, viz :

(1) The Nominative (именительный), giving the name of an object in answer to the question *who?* or *what?*

Кто это? who is it? — Ученикъ, the pupil.

(2) The Vocative (звательный), indicating the name of the object addressed :

Ученикъ! будь прилеженъ. Scholar! be diligent.

The vocative is the same as the nominative in all substantives, except a few used in addressing the Deity, as : Богъ, Господь, 'God, Lord;' vocat. Бѣже, Гѣсподи.

(3) The Genitive (родительный), indicating possession, and answering to the question *whose?* or *of what?*

Чья книга? whose book? — Ученика, 'the pupil's.'

(4) The Dative (дательный), indicating the person or thing to which an object refers, and answering to the question *to whom?* or *to what?*

Кому сказалъ онъ?

To whom did he say?

Ученику,

To the pupil.

(5) The Accusative or Objective (винительный), answering to the question *whom?* or *what?*

Кого онъ учитъ?

Whom he teaches?

Ученика.

The pupil.

(6) The Instrumental (творительный), indicating the means or cause, and answering to the question *by whom?* or *by or with what?*

Кѣмъ онъ любитъ?

By whom is he loved?

Ученикомъ,

By the pupil.

Чѣмъ это написано?

With what is this written?

Перомъ,

With a pen.

(7) The Prepositional (предложный), answering to the question *about whom or what? in whom or what? on whom or what?* etc.

It is termed prepositional inasmuch as it is always preceded by one of the following prepositions : о (объ), въ, на, по, при.

О комъ онъ говоритъ?  
Объ ученикѣ.

About whom is he speaking?  
About the pupil.

In nouns denoting animate beings the accusative masc. singular and the plural of all genders is the same as the genitive, and in inanimate or abstract objects like the nominative.

#### DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

12. Nouns, in regard to their declension are classed, as regular (правильныя) and irregular (неправильныя).

The three declensions, according to gender, are given in the practical part.

13. Regular nouns in respect of their similarity of inflexions in the genit. dat. and instrum. cases are divided into two declensions, with fifteen different terminations in the nom., as shown in the annexed table.

(1) To the first declension belong all nouns of the first ten terminations, the genit. of which ends in а, я; dat. у, ю; and instrum. омъ, емъ.

(2) To the second declension belong all nouns of the other five terminations, the genit. of which ends in ы, и; dat. ѣ, и; instr. ою, ею, бую.

## DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES.													
Terminat.	SINGULAR.							PLURAL.					
	Nominative and Vocative.		Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Instr.	Prep.	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	A c.	Instr.	Prep.
1	ъ		а	у		омъ	ѣ	ы	овъ	амъ		ами	ахъ
2	и		я	ю		емъ	ѣ	и	евъ	ямъ		ями	яхъ
3	и after i		я	ю		емъ	и	и	евъ	ямъ		ями	яхъ
4	ъ after ж, ш, ч, щ		а	у		емъ	ѣ	и	ей	амъ		ами	ахъ
5	ъ of masculine nouns		я	ю		емъ	ѣ	и	ей	ямъ		ями	яхъ
6	о		а	у		омъ	ѣ	а	ъ	амъ		ами	ахъ
7	е after ж, ч, ц, щ		а	у		емъ	ѣ	а	ъ	амъ		ами	ахъ
8	е after л, р		я	ю		емъ	ѣ	я	ей	ямъ		ями	яхъ
9	é (accented) after e, ve		а	ю		емъ	ѣ	я	и, ей	ямъ		ями	яхъ
10	е after i, ve unaccented		я	ю		емъ	и	я	и, ии	ямъ		ями	яхъ
11	а		ы	ѣ	у	ою	ѣ	ы	ъ	амъ		ами	ахъ
12	я after consonants		и	ѣ	ю	ею	ѣ	и	ъ	ямъ		ями	яхъ
13	я after а, е, ѣ, ы, о, у, ъа		и	ѣ	ю	ею	ѣ	и	и, ей	ямъ		ями	яхъ
14	я after i and ъа unaccented		и	ѣ, и	ю	ею	ѣ, и	и	и, ии	ямъ		ями	яхъ
15	ъ of feminine nouns		и	и	ь	ью	и	и	ей	ямъ		ями	яхъ

## DECLENSION OF MASCULINE NOUNS.

*Singular.*

N. { Слопъ, Elephant.	{ Садъ, Garden.	{ Конъ, Horse.	{ Карабѣль, Ship.
G. Слопа.	сада.	коня.	корабля.
D. Слопу.	саду.	коню.	кораблю.
A. Слопа.	садъ.	коня.	корабля.
I. Слопомъ.	садомъ.	конёмъ.	кораблёмъ.
P. О слонѣ.	о садѣ.	о конѣ.	о кораблѣ.

*Plural.*

N. Слопы,	Сады,	Коня,	Корабли,
G. Слоповъ.	садовъ.	коней.	кораблей.
D. Словъ.	садамъ.	конямъ.	кораблямъ.
A. Словъ.	сады.	коней.	корабли.
I. Словъ.	садами.	конями.	кораблями.
P. О словахъ.	о садахъ.	о коняхъ.	о корабляхъ.

*Singular.*

N. { Герой,	{ Покѣй,
{ Него.	{ Room.
G. Героя.	покоя.
D. Герою.	покою.
A. Героя.	покой.
I. Героемъ.	покемъ.
P. О героѣ.	о покое.

*Plural.*

{ Герои,	{ Покѣи,
{ Негое.	{ Rooms.
героевъ.	покоевъ.
героямъ.	покоюмъ.
героевъ.	покои.
героями.	покоюми.
о герояхъ.	о покояхъ.

## DECLENSION OF FEMININE NOUNS.

*Singular.*

N. { Жена,	{ Вода,	{ Няня,	{ Бѣня,
{ Wife.	{ Water.	{ Nurse.	{ Bath.
G. Жены.	воды.	няни.	бани.
D. Женѣ.	водѣ.	нянѣ.	банѣ.
A. Жену.	воду.	няню.	баню.
I. Женѣю.	водѣю.	нянею.	банею.
P. О женѣ.	о водѣ.	о нянѣ.	о банѣ.

*Plural.*

N. ЖѢНЫ,	ВѢДЫ,	НѢНН,	БѢНН,
G. ЖЕНѢ.	ВѢДѢ.	НѢНѢ.	БѢНѢ.
D. ЖЕНАМЪ.	ВѢДАМЪ.	НѢНАМЪ.	БѢНАМЪ.
A. ЖЕНѢ.	ВѢДЫ.	НѢНѢ.	БѢНН.
I. ЖЕНАМИ.	ВѢДАМИ.	НѢНАМИ.	БѢНАМИ.
P. О ЖЕНАХЪ.	О ВѢДАХЪ.	О НѢНАХЪ.	О БѢНАХЪ.

*Singular.*

N. { Свекрѣвъ,	{ Страсть,
Mother-in-law.	Passion.
G. Свекрѣви.	страсти.
D. Свекрѣви.	страсти.
A. Свекрѣвъ.	страсть.
I. Свекрѣвью.	страстью.
P. О свекрѣви.	о срѣсти.

*Plural.*

{ Свекрѣви,	{ Стрѣсти,
Mothers-in-law	Passions.
G. свекрѣвей.	страстѣй.
D. свекрѣвамъ.	страстѣямъ.
G. свекрѣвей.	страстѣи.
I. свекрѣвами.	страстѣями.
P. о свекрѣвахъ.	о страстѣяхъ.

## DECLENSION OF NEUTER NOUNS.

*Singular.*

N. { Слово,	{ Море,	{ Имя,
Word.	Sea.	Name.
G. Слова.	моря.	имени.
D. Слову.	моря.	имени.
A. Слово.	море.	имя.
I. Словоу.	моремъ.	именемъ.
P. О словѣ.	о морѣ.	объ имени.

*Plural.*

N. Слова,	Моря,	Именѣ,
G. Словѣ.	морей.	именѣ.
D. Словамъ.	морѣямъ.	именѣямъ.
A. Слова.	морѣя.	именѣя.
I. Словами.	морѣями.	именѣями.
P. О словахъ.	о морѣяхъ.	объ именѣяхъ.

14. According to the above examples are declined all regular nouns, with the following changes, which are to be observed in consulting the preceding table of declension.



(1) After ж, ч, ш, щ, г, к, х the termination ы is changed into и: ножъ, 'knife;' plur. ножи; туча, 'cloud;' plur. тучи.

(2) After ж, ц, ч, ш, щ the term. о is changed into е: улица, 'street;' instr. улицею, instead of улицою.

(3) After ж, ч, ш, щ in the dat. instr. and prep. cases of the fifteenth termination the vowel я is changed into а: ночь, 'night;' dat. ночамъ, instr. ночами, prep. ночахъ.

(4) The vowel о or е is inserted in some terminations for the sake of euphony: связка, 'bundle;' gen. plur. связокъ; бревно, 'beam;' gen. plur. бревенъ.

(5) Nouns of the 11th, 12th, 13th and 14th terminations may take in the instrum. sing. the contracted termination ой, ей, instead of ою, ею: забáva, 'amusement;' недѣля, 'week;' instr. забáвой, недѣлей.

15. Irregular nouns are of two kinds, firstly, those of mixed declension (разныхъ склоненій), and secondly, those of mixed inflexion (разныхъ окончаний).

Of mixed declension are :

(1) The ten neuter nouns in мя: бремя, 'burden;' время, 'time;' вымя, 'udder;' знамя, 'standard;' имя, 'name;' пламя, 'flame;' племя, 'tribe;' стремя, 'stirrup;' семя, 'seed;' темя, 'temple,' which take in all the cases the syllable ен, as shown in the example имя. According to their instr. sing. in емъ, they belong to the first declension, and according to their gen. and dat. in и to the second.

(2) The nouns дитя, 'child;' пламень, 'flame;' and путь, 'road.'

Nouns of mixed inflexion deviating in some cases either in the sing. or plur. are fully treated of in the Practical Part.

### DERIVATION.

16. Russian derivative nouns are formed from nouns, adjectives and verbs by adding the following suffixes :

#### *Derived from Nouns.*

Аръ,	звонарь, bellringer ;	from	звонъ, ringing.
Яръ,	столяръ, cabinetmaker ;	„	столъ, table.
Никъ,	мѣдникъ, coppersmith ;	„	мѣдь, copper.
Чикъ,	переводчикъ, translator ;	„	переводъ, translation.
Щикъ,	трактирщикъ, innkeeper ;	„	трактиръ, inn.
Акъ,	рыбакъ, fisherman ;	„	рыба, fish.
Якъ,	морикъ, seaman ;	„	море, sea.
Акъ,	трубачъ, trumpeter ;	„	труба, trumpet.
Никъ,	чайникъ, teapot ;	„	чай, tea.
Нна,	баранина, mutton ;	„	баранъ, ram.
Нл,	пивоварня, brewery ;	„	пивоваръ, brewer.
Смо,	рабство, slavery ;	„	рабъ, slave.

#### *Derived from Adjectives.*

Ецъ,	мудрецъ, wise man ;	from	мудрый, wise.
Якъ,	бѣдникъ, poor man ;	„	бѣдный, poor.
Нна,	тишина, quietness ;	„	тихий, quiet.
Нна,	равнина, plain ;	„	равный, equal.
Ость,	новость, novelty ;	„	новый, new.
Есть,	свѣжесть, freshness ;	„	свѣжиль, fresh.
Смо,	богатство, riches ;	„	богатый, rich.

#### *Derived from Verbs.*

Арь,	писарь, writer ;	from	писатьъ, to write.
Ецъ,	купецъ, merchant ;	„	купить, to buy.
Тель,	владелецъ, possessor ;	„	владѣть, to possess.
Унъ,	лгунъ, liar ;	„	лгать, to lie.
Бище,	кладбище, cemetery ;	„	класть, to put.
Лище,	училище, school ;	„	учить, to teach.
Смо,	бѣгство, flight ;	„	бѣгать, to run.

17. Besides the above there are also augmentative and diminutive terminations, which will be found fully explained in the Practical Part (Lessons 26 and 27).

18. Compound nouns are formed by coupling a noun, an adjective, a pronoun, a verb, adverb or preposition with a noun, the first word ending in e or o, unless it be an adverb or preposition, as :

Кораблекрушѣніе, shipwreck ;	from	корабль, ship, крушѣніе, breaking.
Доброжелатель, well-wisher ;	„	добрый, good, желатель, wisher.
Единодушіе, unanimity ;	„	единъ, one, душа, soul.
Самоучитель, self-instructor ;	„	самъ, self, учитель, teacher.
Злополучіе, ill-luck ;	„	зло, evil, получить, to receive.
Несчастье, misfortune ;	„	не, not, счастье, fortune.
Бездѣйствіе, inaction ;	„	безъ, without, дѣйствіе, action.
Надгробіе, epitaph ;	„	надъ, over, гробъ, tomb.

### THE ADJECTIVE.

19. Adjectives in Russian are divided into :

Qualifying (качественныя), as, бѣлый, white.

Possessive (притяжательныя), as, царѣвъ, of the king.

Relative (относительныя), as, англійскій, English.

Numeral (числительныя), as, одинъ, one ; первый, first.

Verbal (дѣйствительныя), as, играющій, playing ; игранъ, played.

20. Adjectives are used either as epithets, as, добрый человекъ, 'the good man ;' or as attributes, человекъ (есть) добръ, 'the man is good.'

21. Qualifying and passive participles, when employed as attributes, undergo apocope and become indeclinable.

a. The full or declinable terminations of adjectives are:

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Masc. <i>ий, ій, ой.</i>	<i>ис, іе.</i>
Femin. <i>ая, яя, ѣя.</i>	<i>ія, іа.</i>
Neut. <i>ое, ее, ъе.</i>	

b. Apocopated terminations are:

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Masc. <i>ъ, ѣ.</i>	<i>ы, и.</i>
Femin. <i>а, я.</i>	<i>ы, и.</i>
Neut. <i>о, е.</i>	<i>ы, и.</i>

22. Possessive adjectives (Lesson 30), according to their terminations, are of two classes:

(1) Ending in *овъ, евъ, инъ, цынъ, ѣ*, as: *Пѣановъ домъ*, 'John's house;' *дѣдинъ садъ*, 'uncle's garden.'

(2) Ending in *ій, овій, евій*, as: *бараній рогъ*, 'ram's horn;' *медвѣжій мѣхъ*, 'bear-skin.'

23. Relative adjectives (Lesson 38) have the following terminations:

(1) *скій, ской, цкій, овскій, евскій*, as: *человѣчскій*, 'human;' *русскій*, 'Russian.'

(2) *овый, евый, овой, овный, евный, евой, енный, ный, яный, яной, янный*, as: *горный*, 'mountainous;' *деревянный*, 'wooden.'

(3) *ій, жій, чій*, preceded by a consonant or a semi-vowel, as: *лѣтній день*, 'summer day.'

24. Numeral adjectives are divided into cardinal (*количественныя*) and ordinal (*порядочныя*).

(1) Cardinal numerals are: *одинъ*, 'one;' *два*, 'two;' *три*, 'three,' etc.; as also *двое, трое, четверо*, etc., and *полъ*, 'half;' *полтора*, 'one and a half;' *полтретья*, 'two and a half,' etc.

(2) The ordinal numerals are : *пёрвый*, 'first,' *второй*, 'second,' etc.

To these belong the adjectives *другой*, 'another,' and *последний*, 'last.'

25. To adjectives belong gender, number and case. They are divided into two declensions :

a. Of the first declension are, qualifying, possessive and ordinal numerals.

b. Of the second are cardinal numerals.

#### A. FIRST DECLENSION.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>	
	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>Masc. Fem. &amp; Neut.</i>	
N.	<i>пёрвый</i> , new,	<i>пёрвая</i> ,	<i>пёрвое</i> .	<i>пёрвые</i> ,	<i>пёрвыя</i> .
G.	<i>пёрваго</i> ,	<i>пёрвой</i> ,	<i>пёрваго</i> .		
D.	<i>пёрвому</i> ,	<i>пёрвой</i> ,	<i>пёрвому</i> .		<i>пёрвыхъ</i> .
A.	<i>пёрвый</i> or <i>пёрваго</i> ,	<i>пёрвую</i> ,	<i>пёрвое</i> .		<i>пёрвымъ</i> .
I.	<i>пёрвымъ</i> ,	<i>пёрвою</i> , ой,	<i>пёрвымъ</i> .	like the N. or Gen.	
P.	<i>пёрвомъ</i> ,	<i>пёрвой</i> ,	<i>пёрвомъ</i> .		
				<i>пёрвыми</i> .	<i>пёрвыхъ</i> .

According to the above are declined all qualifying adjectives in *ый*, *ой*, *и́й*, *и́й*, *и́й*, *и́й*, *и́й*, relative in *ый*, *ой*, *и́й*, and the ordinal numerals *пёрвый*, 'first,' *второй*, 'second,' etc.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>	
	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>Masc. Fem. &amp; Neut.</i>	
N.	<i>царёвъ</i> , king's,	<i>царёва</i> ,	<i>царёво</i> .	<i>царёвы</i> .	
G.	<i>царёва</i> ,	<i>царёвой</i> ,	<i>царёва</i> .	<i>царёвыхъ</i> .	
D.	<i>царёву</i> ,	<i>царёвой</i> ,	<i>царёву</i> .	<i>царёвымъ</i> .	
A.	<i>царёвъ</i> or <i>царёва</i> ,	<i>царёву</i> ,	<i>царёво</i> .	<i>царёвы</i> or <i>царёвыхъ</i> .	
I.	<i>царёвымъ</i> ,	<i>царёвою</i> ,	<i>царёвымъ</i> .	<i>царёвыми</i> .	
P.	<i>царёвомъ</i> ,	<i>царёвой</i> ,	<i>царёвомъ</i> .	<i>царёвыхъ</i> .	

According to the above are declined all possessive adjectives of the first class in овъ, евъ, инъ, цынъ, fem. а, neut. о, and qualifying adjectives of apocopated termination, as: Петровъ, а, о, 'of Peter's;' новъ, а, о, 'new.'

<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i> <i>For all Genders.</i>
	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	
N. господень, Lord's	господня,	господне,	господни.
G. господня,	господней,	господня,	господнихъ.
D. господню,	господней,	господню,	господнимъ.
A. Like the N. or G.	господню.	господне,	Like the N. or G.
I. господнимъ,	господнею,	господнимъ,	господними.
P. господнемъ,	господней,	господнемъ,	господнихъ.

According to the above are declined all qualifying and possessive adjectives in ъ, жъ, чъ, and also the qualifying in шъ, щъ, as: синъ, 'blue;' похожъ, 'resembling;' горячъ, 'hot;' хорошъ, 'good;' свѣдущъ, 'skilled.'

<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>F. &amp; N.</i>
N. сыновній, filial,	сыновняя,	сыновнее,	сыновіе,	іа.
G. сыновняго,	сыновней,	сыновняго,	сыновнихъ.	
D. сыновнему,	сыновней,	сыновнему,	сыновнимъ.	
A. Like the N. or G.	сыновнюю,	сыновнее,	Like the N. or G.	
I. сыновнимъ,	сыновнею,	сыновнимъ,	сыновними.	
P. сыновнемъ,	сыновней,	сыновнемъ,	сыновнихъ.	

According to the above are declined qualifying and relative adjectives in ій (fem. яя, neut. ее), and also those in жій, чій, шій, щій, (fem. ая, neut. ее), синій, 'blue;' похожій, 'resembling;' горячій, 'hot;' свѣдущій, 'skilled;' старшій, 'eldest.'

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>For all Genders.</i>
N.	трѣтій,	трѣтя,	трѣтье,	трѣти.
G.	трѣтяго,	трѣтей,	трѣтяго,	трѣтихъ.
D.	трѣтьему,	трѣтей,	трѣтьему,	трѣтьимъ.
A.	Like the N. or G.	трѣтью,	трѣтье,	Like the N. or G.
I.	трѣтьимъ,	трѣтью,	трѣтьимъ,	трѣтьими.
P.	трѣтьемъ,	трѣтей,	трѣтьемъ.	трѣтихъ.

According to the above are declined relative adjectives of the second class in *iii*, (fem. *ья* or *ія*, neut. *ье* or *іе*), as : ба-  
ра́нiй, 'of the ram ;' говѣ́жiй, 'of meat.'

## B. SECOND DECLENSION.

26. Cardinal numerals are declined in two ways :

(1) The numerals *одинъ*, 'one ;' *два*, 'two ;' *три*, 'three ;' *четыре*, 'four ;' as also their derivatives *двое*, *трое*, *четверо* etc., like adjectives.

	<i>Singular.</i>		
	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
N.	одинъ,	одна,	одно.
G.	одного,	одной,	одного.
D.	одному,	одной,	одному.
A.	Like the N. or G.	одну,	одно.
I.	однимъ,	одною (ой),	однимъ.
P.	одномъ,	одной,	одномъ.

	<i>Plural.</i>		
N.	одни́,	однѣ́,	одни́,
G.	одни́хъ,	однѣ́хъ,	одни́хъ,
D.	одни́мъ,	однѣ́мъ,	одни́мъ,
A.	Like the Nom. or Gen.		одни́,
I.	одни́ми,	однѣ́ми,	одни́ми.
P.	одни́хъ,	однѣ́хъ,	одни́хъ.

*M. and N. Fem.*

N.	два,	двѣ,	три,	четыре.
G.	двухъ,		трѣхъ,	четырёхъ.
D.	двумъ,		трёмъ,	четырёхъ.
A.	Like the N. or G.		Like the Nom. or Gen.	
I.	двумя,		тремя,	четырьмя.
P.	двухъ,		трѣхъ,	четырёхъ.

*Plural.**For all Genders.**For all Genders.*

N.	двое,	трое,	четыре.
G.	двоихъ,	троихъ,	четырёхъ.
D.	двоимъ,	троимъ,	четырьмя.
A.	двоихъ,	троихъ,	четырёхъ.
I.	двоими,	троими,	четырьмя.
P.	двоихъ,	троихъ,	четырёхъ.

The other collective numerals, *пятьеро*, 'five,' *шестьеро*, 'six,' etc., are declined like *четыре*.

27. Numerals ending in *ь*: *пять*, 'five;' *шесть*, 'six;' up to *тридцать*, 'thirty,' are declined like nouns of the 15th termination (see Lesson 13, Obs. 10).

For the declension of *сорокъ*, 'forty;' *девяносто*, 'ninety;' *сто*, 'hundred;' *двѣсти*, 'two hundred,' and other compound numerals, see Lesson 44.

For the declension of *полторá*, 'one and a half;' *полпѣтъ*, 'two and a half;' and *полтора́ста*, 'hundred and fifty,' see Lesson 47.

28. *Ты́сяча*, 'thousand,' and *миллио́нъ*, 'million,' are declined like substantives.

29. Like substantives are declined also *пятьо́къ*, 'five;' *десято́къ*, 'ten;' *дюжи́на*, 'dozen;' *со́тня*, 'hundred;' as also *дво́йка*, *тро́йка*, *четве́рка*, *пятье́рка*, *шесте́рка*, *семерка*, *восьме́рка*, *дев'ятка*, and *деся́тка*, these latter being used in card playing, as: *трефо́вая дво́йка* or *дво́йка тре́тъ*, 'the two of



clubs;’ червѣнная девѣтка or девѣтка, червѣй, ‘the nine of hearts.’

### DEGREES OF COMPARISON.—Степени Сравненія.

30. There are three degrees of comparison :

(1) Positive (положительная степень), as :

Добрый, добръ, ‘kind.’

(2) Comparative (сравнительная степень), as :

Добрѣйшій, or добрѣе, ‘kinder.’

(3) Superlative (превосходная степень), as :

Самый добрый, or всехъ добрѣе, ‘kindest.’

For the formation of degrees of comparison, see Lessons 35 and 36.

Besides the degrees of comparison, adjectives have also augmentative and diminutive terminations (Lesson 37).

### DERIVATION.

31. Adjectives derived from substantives are the possessive and relative already enumerated.

32. Those derived from verbs are formed by changing the termination of the infinitive into **пый** (ной), **мый**, **мый**, **кій**, **жій**, **чій** :

Учѣный, learned ;	from	учить, to teach.
Выкупной, ransomed ;	„	выкупить, to ransom.
Рослый, stalwart ;	„	ростъ, to grow.
Игривый, playful ;	„	играть, to play.
Ломкий, fragile ;	„	ломить, to break.
Похожий, similar ;	„	походить, to resemble.
Пѣвчій, singing ;	„	пѣть, to sing.

33. Compound adjectives are formed by coupling an adjective, a substantive or a particle with an adjective, the first word taking usually an **o** or **e**, with the exception of particles :

Остроумный, witty;	from острый, sharp, уныый, intelligent.
Тёмносерый, dark-gray;	„ тёмный, dark, серый, grey.
Гостеприимный, hospitable;	„ гость, guest, приёмный, receiving.
Очевидный, evident;	„ очи, eyes, видный, visible.
Международный, international;	„ между, between, народный, national.
Безподобный, incomparable;	„ безъ, without, подобный, like.

### THE PRONOUN.—Мѣстоимѣіе.

34. Pronouns are divided into :

- (1) Personal (личныя).
- (2) Interrogative (вопросительныя).
- (3) Demonstrative (указательныя).
- (4) Relative (относительныя).
- (5) Determinative (опредѣлительныя).

35. The *personal* pronouns are : я, 'I;' ты, 'thou;' онъ, 'he' (fem. она; neut. оно); plur. мы, 'we;' вы, 'you;' они (fem. онѣ), 'they.'

Besides the above three personal pronouns, there is the reflective personal себя, 'self,' which serves for all persons, genders and numbers.

36. Interrogative pronouns have their corresponding demonstratives in the following way :

#### OF THE OBJECT.

##### *Interrogative.*

Кто? who? Что? what?

##### *Demonstrative.*

Тотъ, to, 'that;' нѣкто, 'somebody;' нѣчто, 'something;' никто, 'nobody;' ничто, 'nothing;' всякъ, 'every;' каждый, 'each;' всё, 'all;' прочій, 'other.'

#### OF QUALITY.

Какій, какѡвъ? What sort of?

Такой, такѡвъ, 'such, such a one;' другой, 'other;' всѣмъ, 'every'

(sort) ' некоторый, 'certain ;' никакой, 'not any ;' одинакий, 'same ;' разный, 'diverse ;' никакой, 'different.'

#### OF QUANTITY.

Какой? which? Сколько? how much?

Такой, 'such a one.'

Столько, 'so many, so much ;' много, 'much ;' мало, 'few ;' несколько, 'some ;' несколько, 'not any.'

#### OF PLACE OR ORDER.

Какой? which?

Сей, этот, этот, 'this ;' какойнибудь, 'any one ;' некоторый, 'not any.'

#### OF POSSESSION.

Чей? whose?

Мой, 'my, mine ;' твой, 'thy, thine ;' его, 'his ;' наш, 'our ;' ваш, 'your ;' их, 'their ;' and the reflexive свой used for all three persons.

These last are termed possessive pronouns (притяжательныя мѣстоимѣнія).

Indefinite pronouns answering the question чей? 'whose?' are :

Чей-то, 'somebody's ;' чейнибудь, 'anybody's ;' and the negative ничей, 'nobody's.'

37. The interrogative pronouns кто, что, который, какой, чей also serve as relatives when they refer to an antecedent. To the relative pronouns belong also кой, каковъ, 'who,' or 'he who,' which have not the signification of the interrogative.

38. The determinative pronouns are :

a. Those expressive of size and quantity: весь, 'all ;' оба, 'both.'

To these are added the numerals одинъ, двое, трое, etc., when used as pronouns.

б. Those expressive of identity: самъ, самый, 'self.'

Determinative pronouns are employed with personal and demonstrative pronouns, as also with substantives, as:

Мы все, 'all of us;' мы оба, 'both of us;' вы трое, 'three of you;' я одинъ, 'I am by myself;' весь народъ, 'all people;' обе стороны, 'both sides;' онъ самъ, 'he himself;' самый домъ, 'the house itself.'

The pronoun самый before qualifying adjectives serves to strengthen their signification and to express the superlative degree, as: самый добрый, 'the kindest.'

39. Pronouns vary their terminations, like adjectives, according to gender, number and case.

#### DECLENSION OF PRONOUNS.

40. The first two personal pronouns and the reflexive personal have no genders, and are declined like substantives in the feminine, as:

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. я, I,	ты, thou,	N. мы, we,	вы, you.
G. меня,	тебя,	G. насъ,	васъ.
D. мнѣ,	тебѣ,	D. намъ,	вамъ.
A. меня,	тебя,	A. насъ,	васъ.
I. мною (ой),	тобою (ой),	I. нами,	вами.
P. мнѣ,	тебѣ,	P. насъ,	васъ.

41. The pronoun себѣ has no nominative nor plural, and is declined like the second personal pronoun, viz., gen. acc. себѣ, dat. and prep. собою (ой).

42. The third personal pronoun онъ and all others are declined like adjectives, as:

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>	
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>M. and N. Fem.</i>	
N. онъ, he,	оно́, it,	она́,	N. ону́,	онѣ.
G. его́,		ея́ (еѣ),	G. ихъ.	
D. ему́,		ей,	D. имъ.	
A. его́,		еѣ,	A. ихъ.	
I. имъ,		ѣю,	I. ими.	
P. (н)ѣмъ,		(н)ей,	P. (н)ихъ.	

This pronoun takes an *н* prefixed in all oblique cases when preceded by a preposition, as: *для него́, для ней́*, 'for him, for her;'; *о нѣмъ, о ней*, 'about him, about her.'

43. The genitive of the third pers. pron. singular and plural is also used as possessive, without however taking the prefix *н*, as: *для его́ брата́*, 'for his brother;'; *о его́ брата́*, 'about his brother.'

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
<i>Masc. and Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>For all Genders.</i>	
N. нашъ, на́ше,	на́ша,	на́ши.	
G. на́шего,	на́шей (ей),	на́шихъ.	
D. на́шему,	на́шей,	на́шимъ.	
A. Like the N. or G.	на́шу,	Like the N. or G.	
I. на́шимъ,	на́шею (ей),	на́шими.	
P. на́шемъ,	на́шей,	на́шихъ.	

According to the above is declined *вашъ*, 'your, yours.'

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
<i>Masc. and Neut.</i>	<i>Femin.</i>	<i>For all Genders.</i>	
N. свой, своѣ́,	своѣ́,	своѣ́.	
G. своего́,	своеѣ́ ей),	своѣ́хъ.	
D. своему́,	своеѣ́,	своѣ́мъ.	
A. Like the N. or G.	свою́,	Like the N. or G.	
I. своимъ́,	своею́ (ей),	своѣ́ми.	
P. своимъ́,	своеѣ́,	своѣ́хъ.	

According to the above are declined *мой, твой* and *коѣ́*, the last not being used in the nom. and acc. sing.

*Singular.*

<i>Masc. and Neut. Fem.</i>			<i>Masc. and Neut. Fem.</i>		
N.	то́тъ, то,	та,	весь,	всё,	вся.
G.	тогó, той,		всего́,	всей(и).	
D.	тому́, той,		всему́,	всей.	
A.	Like the N. or G. ту,		Like the N. or G.		всю.
I.	тѣмъ,	тою́ (и),	всѣмъ,	всёю(ей)	
P.	томъ,	той,	всѣмъ,	всей.	

*Plural.**For all Genders.*

тѣ,	всѣ.
тѣхъ.	всѣхъ.
тѣмъ,	всѣмъ.
Like the N. or G.	
тѣми,	всѣми.
тѣхъ.	всѣхъ.

The pronouns *кто* and *что* have no plural, and are declined, the first like *то́тъ* and the second like *весь*.

*Singular.*

<i>Masc. and Neut.</i>		<i>Fem.</i>
N.	како́й, како́е,	кака́я,
G.	како́го,	како́й,
D.	како́му,	како́й,
A.	Like the N. or G.	
I.	каки́мъ,	како́ю (ой)
P.	како́мъ,	како́й,

*Plural.**Masc. Fem. & Neut.*

какі́е, какі́а.
какі́хъ.
какі́мъ.
Like the N. or G.
какі́ми.
какі́хъ.

According to the above are declined *тако́й*, *пѣка́кій*, *эта́кой*, and the three following, used only in the plural—*ско́лькій*, *сто́лький*, and *пѣско́лькій*.

44. The pronouns *ко́торый*, *всѣ́кій*, *дру́гой*, *и́ной*, *ка́ждый*, *како́вый*, *ко́лікій*, *о́ный*, *са́мый*, *тако́вый*, *то́лікій* are declined like the adjective *но́вый*.

45. The pronouns *тако́въ*, *и́наковъ*, *оди́наковъ* follow the declension of the adjective *па́рѣвъ*, except in the genitive, which takes the full termination, as, *тако́ваго* instead of *тако́ва*.

46. The pronouns *ско́лько*, *сто́лько*, *пѣско́лько*, *мнóго* and *мáло* have no declension, except in the dat. when preceded by the prefix *по*, as, *по ско́лку*, *по сто́лку*, etc.

## THE VERB.—Глаголь.

47. Verbs are divided into six voices (залогъ), viz.:

(1) The *active* (дѣйствительный), denoting the action of an agent upon an object, as, кидать, 'to throw.'

(2) The *passive* (страдательный), formed from the active, and denoting the condition or state of the object on which the action is exerted, as, быть кидаему, 'to be thrown.'

(3) The *reflective* or *pronominal* (возвратный), formed from the active by adding the contracted pronoun ся, and denoting an action falling upon the agent, as, одѣваться, 'to clothe one's self.' The reflective is often used in the sense of the passive, especially when speaking of inanimate objects, as, книга читается, 'the book is read.'

(4) The common (общій) ending also in ся, without which the verb by itself cannot be used, and denoting an internal feeling influencing the agent, as, бояться, 'to fear;' смѣяться, 'to laugh.'

(5) The *reciprocal* (взаимный), ending also in ся, and denoting an action falling mutually upon two or more agents, and answering the question *with whom*, as, сражаться, 'to fight.'

(6) The *neuter* (срѣдній), which has a threefold signification, and therefore a threefold form, viz.,

*a.* Denoting an action not passing over to an object, as, сидѣть, 'to sit;' стоять, 'to stand.' In this sense it has the form of the active.

Of this class are verbs denoting the gradual acquirement of a quality, as, бѣлѣть, 'to grow white;' сохнуть, 'to dry.'

b. Denoting a state or quality independent of an action, as, быть веселы, 'to be merry.' In this it has the form of the passive.

c. Denoting a capability of action or possession of a quality, as, крапива жжётся, 'the nettle stings.' In this sense it has the form of the reflective.

48. Verbs undergo certain changes of structure and inflexions, to indicate :

1. The aspects.
2. The moods.
3. The tenses.
4. Gender, person and number.

49. There are three principal aspects :

(1) The imperfect aspect (несовершённый видъ).

Verbs of this aspect are subdivided into definite (опредѣлённые) and indefinite (неопредѣлённые). Lesson 52.

(2) The perfect aspect (совершённый видъ) is subdivided into :

- a. Perfect inchoative (начина́тельный).
- b. Perfect of duration (длительный).
- c. Perfect of unity (однокра́тный).

(3) The iterative (многokráтный).

For explanation of aspects, see Lesson 51.

For formation of aspects, see Lesson, 53, 54, and 55.

50. The moods (накло́нения) are three, viz :

1. The infinitive (неопредѣлённое).
2. The indicative (изъявительное).
3. The imperative (повелительное).



The subjective (сослагательное) is formed in Russian by adding the particle бы to the past tense.

The first two moods are found in all the three aspects, but the imperative is found in the imperfect and perfect aspects only.

51. There are three tenses (временá), viz :

1. The present (настоящее).
2. The past (прошедшее).
3. The future (будущее).

52. The tenses are only found in the indicative, and vary in number according to the voice and aspect.

(1) The active, reflective, common, reciprocal and neuter voices take all the three tenses in the imperfect aspect.

(2) The perfect aspect takes only the past and future.

(3) The iterative takes only the past.

(4) The passive voice having a double conjugation, takes double tenses, as shown in subsequent examples.

53. The persons (лица) of the present and future tenses are distinguished by inflexions, and therefore may be used without their pronouns; but those of the past, which take only the terminations of gender, require the personal pronouns.

54. Verbs are either simple (простые) or compound (сложные).

(1) The simple are those consisting of one word only, as :

дѣлать, 'to do;' любить, 'to love.'

(2) Compound verbs are formed by adding an auxiliary verb to the infinitive or to the participle passive, as :

Я сталъ страдать, 'I began to suffer;' онъ былъ убитъ, 'he was killed.'

To these terminations the suffix *ся* is added for the reflective, reciprocal and common voices.

The auxiliaries, which are all of the neuter voice, are :  
*быть, быва́ть*, 'to be,' and *ста́ть*, 'to become.'

55. Participles in Russian, both active and passive, are adjectives formed from verbs, and have gender, number, and the present and past tenses.

(1) Active participles end:

*a. in the present*, *и́дущий, ша́я, шее*, plur. *и́дущие, ша́я*.

*b. in the past*, *и́дущий, ша́я, шее*, plur. *и́дущие, ша́я*.

These participles take the suffix *ся* in reflective verbs, as, *о́дѣва́ющийся*, 'dressing himself.'

(2) Passive participles end:

*a. in the present*, { Full, *и́дущий, ша́я, мое*, plur. *и́дущие, моя*.  
 { *Аросор.*, *мѣ, ма, мо*, plur. *мы*.

*b. in the past*, { Full, { *и́дущий, ша́я, мое*, plur. *и́дущие, моя*.  
 { *и́дущий, ша́я, мое*, plur. *и́дущие, моя*.  
 { *Аросор.*, { *и́дущий, ша́я, мое*, plur. *и́дущие, моя*.  
 { *и́дущий, ша́я, мое*, plur. *и́дущие, моя*.

These participles do not take the suffix *ся*.

56. Apocopated passive participles, with the auxiliaries *быть, быва́ть*, form the moods and tenses of the passive voice.

57. Besides the participles, there are also gerunds (*дѣприча́тіе*) or verbal adverbs (*нарѣ́чія отлаго́льныя*) formed from verbs. They are both active and passive.

(1) The active gerund has neither number nor gender, but has inflexions for the present and past tenses, as :

*Present*, *я, ая, учу* : *лю́бя*, 'in loving ;' *чита́я*, 'while reading.'

*Past*, *въ, ши* : *лю́бивъ*, 'after having loved ;' *чита́вши*, 'after having read.'

(2) The passive gerund is formed by adding *бѹдучи, бывъ (бывши)*, the present and past gerunds of the auxiliary *быть*, to the apocopated participle, and has both gender and number, as: *бѹдучи* or *бывъ по́сланъ*, fem. *по́слана*, neut. *по́слано*; pl. *по́сланы*, 'being or having been sent.'

58. Verbs are either personal or impersonal.

(1) Personal are those which have all the persons and genders.

(2) Impersonal are those used in the third person only without a pronoun or agent expressed, and take in the past tense the neuter gender only. Lesson 49.

59. According to their conjugation, verbs are either regular (*правильные*) or irregular (*неправильные*).

(1) All regular verbs are divided into two conjugations, according to the inflexions of the indicative present.

*a.* Of the first are those whose second person sing. ends in *ешь*, and the third person plur. in *ютъ* or *утъ*, as: *чита́ешь*, 'thou readest;' *чита́ютъ*, 'they read.'

*b.* Of the second are those whose second person sing. ends in *ишь*, and the third person plur. in *ятъ* or *атъ*, as: *говори́шь*, 'thou speakest;' *говори́тъ*, 'they speak.'

(2) Regular verbs are also divided into ten classes in respect of the termination of the infinitive and first person of the indicative present, of which the first eight belong to the first, and the last two to the second conjugation. Lessons 32 to 35.

## 60. CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERBS.

### I. INFINITIVE MOOD.

БЫТЬ, 'to be.' | БЫВАТЬ, 'to be usually.' | СТАТЬ, 'to become.'

### II. INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### a. Present.

<i>Sing.</i>	Есмь, I am. Еси, etc. Есть	Бываю, I am usually. Бываешь, etc. Бываётъ	<i>Wanting.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Есмы Естѣ Суть	Бываемъ Бываєте Бывають	

#### b. Past.

<i>Sing.</i>	Я былъ, а, б, I was. Ты былъ, а, б, etc. Онъ былъ, она была, онѣ было	я бывалъ, а, о ты бывалъ, а, о онъ бывалъ, она бывала, онѣ бывало	я сталъ, а, о ты сталъ, а, о онъ сталъ, она стала, онѣ стало
<i>Plur.</i>	Мы были Вы были Онѣ, онѣ были	мы бывали вы бывали онѣ, онѣ бывали	мы стали вы стали онѣ стали.

#### c. Future.

<i>Sing.</i>	Бѣду, I shall or will be. Бѣдешь, etc. Бѣдетъ	стану станешь станетъ	<i>Wanting.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Бѣдемъ Бѣдете Бѣдутъ	станемъ станете станутъ.	

## III. SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Sing.</i>	Я былъ бы, была бы, было бы, Ты былъ бы, была бы, было бы Онъ былъ бы, она была бы, оно было бы	я бываю бы, ла бы, ло бы, ты бываю бы, ла бы, ло бы онъ бываю бы, она бываю бы, оно бываю бы	я стану бы, стала бы, стало бы, ты стану бы, ла бы, ло бы онъ стану бы, она стала бы, оно стало бы
<i>Plur.</i>	Мы были бы Вы были бы Онѣ, онѣ были бы.	мы бывали бы вы бывали бы онѣ, онѣ бывали бы.	мы стану бы вы стану бы онѣ, онѣ стану бы.

## IV. IMPERATIVE.

2nd pers. будь, pl. будьте, be.	бывай, pl. бывайте	стань, pl. станьте
3rd pers. пусть будетъ, plur. пусть будутъ, let him, them be.	пусть бываеъ, pl. пусть бывають.	пусть станеъ, pl. пусть стануть.

## V. ACTIVE PARTICIPLE.

a. *Present.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Сущій, щая, щее, which is,	бывающій, щая, щее	
<i>Plur.</i>	Сущіе, щія ( <i>Future</i> , буду- щія, щая, щее).	бывающе, щія.	<i>Wanting.</i>

b. *Past.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Бывшій, шая, шее, which was.	бывавшій, шая, шее,	ставшій, шая, шее,
<i>Plur.</i>	Бывшіе, шія.	бывавшіе, шія.	ставшіе, шія.

## VI. GERUND.

a. *Present.*

Будучи, while being.	бывая or бываючи.	<i>Wanting.</i>
-------------------------	-------------------	-----------------

b. *Past.*

Бывъ or бывши, having been.	бывавъ or бывавши.	ставъ or ставши.
--------------------------------	--------------------	------------------

## 61. CONJUGATION OF ACTIVE VERBS.

## I. INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Imperfect Asp. First Conj.*    *Perfect Asp. Second Conj.*  
 Рѣшать, 'to decide.'    Рѣшить, 'to decide thoroughly.'

## II. INDICATIVE MOOD.

## a. Present.

*Sing.* Рѣшаю, I decide.

Рѣшаешь

Рѣшаетъ

*Plur.* Рѣшаемъ

Рѣшаете

Рѣшаютъ.

*Wanting.*

## b. Past.

*Sing.* Я рѣшалъ, ла, ло, I was de-  
 ciding

Ты рѣшалъ, ла, ло, etc.

Онъ рѣшалъ, она рѣшала, онѣ  
 рѣшалию

*Plur.* Мы рѣшали

Вы рѣшали

Онѣ, онѣ рѣшали.

я рѣшилъ, ла, ло, I have decided

ты рѣшилъ, ла, ло, etc.

онъ рѣшилъ, она рѣшила, онѣ рѣ-  
 шило

мы рѣшили

вы рѣшили

онѣ, онѣ рѣшили.

## c. Future.

*Sing.* Бѣду

Бѣдешь

Бѣдетъ

*Plur.* Бѣдемъ

Бѣдете

Бѣдутъ

} рѣшать,

{ I shall  
 or will  
 decide,  
 etc.

} рѣшать.

рѣшѹ, I will decide

рѣшишь, etc.

рѣшишь

рѣшите

рѣшатъ.

## III. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Sing.</i> Я рѣш <sup>а</sup> лъ бы, ла бы, ло бы, I should or would decide	я рѣш <sup>и</sup> лъ бы, ла бы, ло бы, I should have decided
Ты рѣш <sup>а</sup> лъ бы, ла бы, ло бы	ты рѣш <sup>и</sup> лъ бы, ла бы, ло бы
Онъ рѣш <sup>а</sup> лъ бы, она рѣш <sup>а</sup> ла бы, оно рѣш <sup>а</sup> ло бы	онъ рѣш <sup>и</sup> лъ бы, она рѣш <sup>и</sup> ла бы, оно рѣш <sup>и</sup> ло бы
<i>Plur.</i> Мы рѣш <sup>а</sup> ли бы	мы рѣш <sup>и</sup> ли бы
Вы рѣш <sup>а</sup> ли бы	вы рѣш <sup>и</sup> ли бы
Онѣ, онѣ рѣш <sup>а</sup> ли бы.	онѣ, онѣ рѣш <sup>и</sup> ли бы.

## IV. IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>2nd pers.</i> Рѣш <sup>а</sup> й, <i>plur.</i> рѣш <sup>а</sup> йте, decide	рѣш <sup>и</sup> й, <i>pl.</i> рѣш <sup>и</sup> те
<i>3rd pers.</i> Пусть рѣш <sup>а</sup> етъ, let him decide, <i>pl.</i> пусть рѣ- ш <sup>а</sup> ютъ.	пусть рѣш <sup>и</sup> тъ, <i>pl.</i> пусть рѣш <sup>а</sup> тъ.

## V. ACTIVE PARTICIPLE.

*a. Present.*

<i>Sing.</i> Рѣш <sup>а</sup> ющ <sup>и</sup> й, щая, щее, he who decides	<i>Wanting.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Рѣш <sup>а</sup> ющие, рѣш <sup>а</sup> ющ <sup>и</sup> я.	

*b. Past.*

<i>Sing.</i> Рѣш <sup>а</sup> вш <sup>и</sup> й, шая, шее, he who decided	рѣш <sup>и</sup> вш <sup>и</sup> й, шая, шее, he who has decided
<i>Plur.</i> Рѣш <sup>а</sup> вшие, ш <sup>и</sup> я.	рѣш <sup>и</sup> вшие, ш <sup>и</sup> я.

## VI. PASSIVE PARTICIPLE.

*a. Present.*

*Sing.* Рѣш<sup>а</sup>емъ, ма, мо, which is decided ; *plur.* рѣш<sup>а</sup>емы.

*b. Past.*

*Sing.* Рѣш<sup>е</sup>нъ, на, нѣ, which was decided ; *plur.* рѣш<sup>е</sup>ны.

## VII. GERUND.

*a. Present.*

Рѣш<sup>а</sup>я, in deciding | *Wanting.*

*b. Past.*

Рѣш<sup>а</sup>въ, вши, having decided. | рѣш<sup>и</sup>въ, вши, having decided.

## 62. CONJUGATION OF NEUTER VERBS OF ACTIVE FORM.

### I. INFINITIVE MOOD.

#### *Second Conjugation.*

#### *Imperfect Aspect.*

Дрожа́ть, 'to tremble.'

#### *Perfect Inchoative Aspect.*

Задрожа́ть, 'to begin to tremble.'

### II. INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### *a. Present.*

*Sing.* Дрожу́, I am trembling  
Дрожи́шь, etc.

*Plur.* Дрожи́мъ  
Дрожи́те  
Дрожа́тъ.

*Wanting.*

#### *b. Past.*

*Sing.* Я дрожа́лъ, ла, ло, I was  
trembling

ты дрожа́лъ, ла, ло, etc.

Онъ дрожа́лъ, она́ дрожа́ла,  
оно́ дрожа́ло

*Plur.* Мы, вы, они́, дрожа́ли.

я задрожа́лъ, ла, ло

ты задрожа́лъ, ла, ло

онъ задрожа́лъ, она́ задрожа́ла, оно́  
задрожа́ло

мы, вы, они́, задрожа́ли.

#### *c. Future.*

*Sing.* Буду́ } дрожа́ть, { I shall  
Буде́шь } tremble  
Буде́тъ } etc.

*Plur.* Буде́мъ } дрожа́тъ.  
Буде́те }  
Буду́тъ }

задрожу́  
задрожи́шь  
задрожи́тъ  
задрожи́мъ  
задрожи́те  
задрожа́тъ.

### III. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Sing.* Я дрожа́лъ бы, I should  
tremble

*Plur.* Мы дрожа́ли бы, etc.

я задрожа́лъ бы, etc.

мы задрожа́ли бы, etc.



## IV. IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>2nd pers.</i> Дрожа́й, plur. дрожа́йте.		задрожа́й, plur. задрожа́йте.
<i>3rd. pers.</i> Пусть дрожа́тъ, plur. пусть дрожа́тъ.		пусть задрожа́тъ, plur. пусть задрожа́тъ.

## V. ACTIVE PARTICIPLE.

*a. Present.*

<i>Sing.</i> Дрожа́ющий, щая, щее.		<i>Wanting.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Дрожа́щие, шия.		

*b. Past.*

<i>Sing.</i> Дрожа́вший, щая, щее.		задрожа́вший, щая, щее.
<i>Plur.</i> Дрожа́вшие, шия.		задрожа́вшие, шия.

## VI. PASSIVE PARTICIPLE.

*Wanting.*

## VII. GERUND.

*a. Present.*

Дрожа́.		<i>Wanting.</i>
---------	--	-----------------

*b. Past.*

Дрожа́в or дрожа́вши.		задрожа́в or задрожа́вши.
-----------------------	--	---------------------------

## 83. CONJUGATION OF VERBS OF ITERATIVE ASPECT AND OF PERFECT OF UNITY.

## I. INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Iterative Aspect.*                      *Asp. Perfect of Unity.*

Бро́сить, 'to throw repeatedly.'      Бро́силъ, 'to throw once.'

## II. INDICATIVE MOOD.

*a. Present.*

<i>Wanting.</i>		<i>Wanting.</i>
-----------------	--	-----------------

*b. Past.**Sing.* Я кидывалъ, ла, ло.

Ты кидывалъ, ла, ло

Онъ кидывалъ, она кидывала,

оно кидывало

*Plur.* Мы, вы, они кидывали.

я кинулъ, ла, ло.

ты кинулъ, ла, ло

оно кинулъ, она кинула, оно кину

ло

мы, вы, они кинули.

*c. Future.**Wanting.**Sing.* кину

кинешь

кинетъ

*Plur.* кинемъ

кинете

кинутъ.

## III. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Sing.* Я кидывалъ бы, etc.*Plur.* Мы кидывали бы, etc.

я кинулъ бы, etc.

мы кинули бы, etc.

## IV. IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Wanting.**2nd pers.* кинь, plur. киньте.*3rd pers.* пусть кинетъ, plur.

пусть кинутъ.

## V ACTIVE PARTICIPLE.

*a. Present.**Wanting.**Wanting.**b. Past.**Sing.* Кидывавшій, шая, шее.*Plur.* Кидывавшіе, шія.

кинувшій, шая, шее.

кинувшие, шія.

## VI. PASSIVE PARTICIPLE.

*a. Present.**Wanting.**Wanting.**b. Past.**Sing.* Кидыванъ, на, но.

Кидываны.

кинутъ, та, то.

кинуты.

## VII. GERUND.

a. *Present.**Wanting.*

|

*Wanting.*b. *Past.*

Кидывавъ or кидывавши.

| кинувъ or кинувши.

## 64. CONJUGATION OF REFLECTIVE, RECIPROCAL AND COMMON VERBS.

## I. INFINITIVE MOOD.

*First Conjugation.**Second Conjugation.*

Кидаться, 'to throw one's self.' Веселиться, 'to enjoy one's self.'

## II. INDICATIVE MOOD.

a. *Present.*

*Sing.* Кид<sup>а</sup>юсь  
Кид<sup>а</sup>ешься  
Кид<sup>а</sup>ется  
*Plur.* Кид<sup>а</sup>емся  
Кид<sup>а</sup>етесь  
Кид<sup>а</sup>ются.

весел<sup>ю</sup>сь  
весел<sup>и</sup>шься  
весел<sup>и</sup>тся  
весел<sup>и</sup>мся  
весел<sup>и</sup>тесь  
весел<sup>и</sup>тся.

b. *Past.*

*Sing.* Я кид<sup>а</sup>лся, лас<sup>ь</sup>, лос<sup>ь</sup>  
Ты кид<sup>а</sup>лся, лас<sup>ь</sup>, лос<sup>ь</sup>  
Он<sup>ъ</sup> кид<sup>а</sup>лся, он<sup>а</sup> кид<sup>а</sup>лась,  
он<sup>о</sup> кид<sup>а</sup>лось  
*Plur.* Мы кид<sup>а</sup>лись  
Вы кид<sup>а</sup>лись  
Он<sup>и</sup>, он<sup>ѣ</sup> кид<sup>а</sup>лись.

я весел<sup>и</sup>лся, лас<sup>ь</sup>, лос<sup>ь</sup>  
ты весел<sup>и</sup>лся, лас<sup>ь</sup>, лос<sup>ь</sup>  
он<sup>ъ</sup> весел<sup>и</sup>лся, он<sup>а</sup> весел<sup>и</sup>лась, он<sup>о</sup>  
весел<sup>и</sup>лось  
мы весел<sup>и</sup>лись  
вы весел<sup>и</sup>лись  
он<sup>и</sup>, он<sup>ѣ</sup> весел<sup>и</sup>лись.

c. *Future.*

*Sing.* Б<sup>у</sup>ду } кид<sup>а</sup>ться.  
Б<sup>у</sup>дешь }  
Б<sup>у</sup>детъ }  
*Plur.* Б<sup>у</sup>демъ } кид<sup>а</sup>ться.  
Б<sup>у</sup>дете }  
Б<sup>у</sup>дутъ }

б<sup>у</sup>ду } весел<sup>и</sup>ться.  
б<sup>у</sup>дешь }  
б<sup>у</sup>детъ }  
б<sup>у</sup>демъ } весел<sup>и</sup>ться.  
б<sup>у</sup>дете }  
б<sup>у</sup>дутъ }

## III. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Sing.</i> Я кидáлся бы, лась бы, лось бы	я веселíлся бы, лась бы, лось бы
Ты кидáлся бы, лась бы, лось бы	ты веселíлся бы, лась бы, лось бы
Онъ кидáлся бы, она кидáлась бы, онó кидáлось бы	онъ веселíлся бы, она веселíлась бы, онó веселíлось бы
<i>Plur.</i> Мы кидáлись бы, вы кидáлись бы, онí онѣ кидáлись бы.	мы веселíлись бы, вы веселíлись бы, онí, онѣ веселíлись бы.

## IV. IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>2nd pers.</i> Кидáйся, plur. кидáйтесь.	веселíсь, plur. веселíтесь.
<i>3rd pers.</i> Пусть кидáется, plur. пусть кидáются.	пусть веселíться, plur. пусть веселíтся.

## V. ACTIVE PARTICIPLE.

*a. Present.*

<i>Sing.</i> Кидáющійся, щаяся, шееся.	веселíющійся, щаяся, шееся.
<i>Plur.</i> Кидáющіеся, щіеся.	веселíющіеся, щіеся.

*b. Past.*

<i>Sing.</i> Кидáвшийся, вшаяся, вшееся.	веселíвшийся, вшаяся, вшееся.
<i>Plur.</i> Кидáвшиеся, вшіеся.	веселíвшиеся, вшіеся.

## VI. PASSIVE PARTICIPLE.

*Wanting.**Wanting.*

## VII. GERUND.

*a. Present.*

Кидáясь от кидáючись.	веселíясь.
-----------------------	------------

*b. Past.*

Кидáвшись.	веселíвшись.
------------	--------------

## 65. CONJUGATION OF PASSIVE VERBS.

Participle Passive Pres. Ки́дае́мъ, 'which is thrown.'

" " Past, Ки́данъ, 'which was thrown.'

I. INFINITIVE.  
'To be thrown.'

<i>Masc. &amp; N.</i>	БЫТЬ ки́дае́му,	<i>M. &amp; N.</i>	БЫТЬ ки́дану.
<i>Fem.</i>	БЫТЬ ки́дае́мой	<i>Fem.</i>	БЫТЬ ки́даной.
<i>Plur.</i>	БЫТЬ ки́дае́мымъ	<i>Plur.</i>	БЫТЬ ки́даны́мъ.

## II. INDICATIVE.

## a. Present.

<i>Sing.</i>	Я (есмь) ки́дае́мъ, а, о	я (есмь) ки́данъ, а, о
	Ты (еси) ки́дае́мъ, а, о	ты (еси) ки́данъ, а, о
	Онъ (естъ) ки́дае́мъ, она́ (естъ)	онъ (естъ) ки́данъ, она́ (естъ) ки́-
	ки́даема, оно́ (естъ) ки́дае́-	дана, оно́ (естъ) ки́дано.
	мо	
<i>Plur.</i>	Мы (есмы)	мы (есмы)
	Вы (есте)	вы (есте)
	Они́, онѣ́ (суть)	они́, онѣ́ (суть)
	} ки́дае́мы.	} ки́даны.

## b. Past.

<i>Sing.</i>	Я былъ, а́, о́ ки́дае́мъ, а, о	я былъ, а́, о́ ки́данъ, а, о
	Ты былъ, а́, о́ ки́дае́мъ, а, о	ты былъ, а́, о́ ки́данъ, а, о
	Онъ былъ ки́дае́мъ, она́ была́	онъ былъ ки́данъ, она́ была́ ки́дана,
	ки́даема, оно́ было́ ки́даемо	оно́ было́ ки́дано
<i>Plur.</i>	Мы были	мы были
	Вы были	вы были
	Они́, онѣ́ были	они́ были
	} ки́дае́мы.	} ки́даны.

## c. Future.

<i>Sing.</i>	Я бу́ду	я бу́ду
	Ты бу́дешь	ты бу́дешь
	Онъ, она́, оно́	онъ, она́, оно́
	бу́детъ	бу́детъ
<i>Plur.</i>	Мы бу́демъ	мы бу́демъ
	Вы бу́дете	вы бу́дете
	Они́, онѣ́ бу́дутъ	они́, онѣ́ бу́дутъ
	} ки́дае́мы.	} ки́даны.

## III. SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Sing.</i> Я былъ бы кидаемъ	я былъ бы киданъ
Я была бы кидается	я была бы кидана
Я былъ бы кидается, etc.	я былъ бы кидано, etc.
<i>Plur.</i> Мы были бы кидаемы, etc.	мы были бы киданы, etc.

## IV. IMPERATIVE.

<i>2nd pers.</i> Будь кидаемъ, ема, емо	будь киданъ, а, о
<i>plur.</i> будьте кидаемы	<i>plur.</i> будьте киданы
<i>3rd pers.</i> Пусть будетъ кидаемъ,	пусть будетъ киданъ, а, о
кидается, о	
<i>plur.</i> пусть будутъ кидаемы.	<i>plur.</i> пусть будутъ киданы.

## V. PARTICIPLES.

*Wanting.*

## VI. GERUND.

*a. Present.*

<i>Sing.</i> Будучи кидаемъ, а, о	будучи киданъ, а, о
<i>Plur.</i> Будучи кидаемы.	будучи киданы.

*b. Past.*

<i>Sing.</i> Бывъ от бывши кидаемъ, а, о	бывъ от бывши киданъ, а, о
<i>Plur.</i> Бывъ от бывши кидаемы.	бывъ от бывши киданы.

66. Compound prepositional are conjugated in the same way as the simple verbs (Lessons 56, 57, 58).

67. Irregular verbs are those which deviate from the rules of conjugation. They are divided into those of mixed conjugation and those of mixed class (Lesson 59).

68. Active and neuter derivative verbs are formed from substantives and adjectives by changing the termination of the primitive into *ить, ёть, ать, ять, or овать, etc.*

Солить, to salt,	from соль, salt.
Шуметь, to make a noise, „	шумъ, noise.
Защищать, to defend, „	защита, defence.
Мѣрить, to measure, „	мѣра, measure.
Торговать, to trade in, „	торгъ, trade.
Красѣть, to blush, „	красный, red.
Бѣлить, to whitewash, „	бѣлый, white.
Радовать, to please, „	радъ, glad.

69. Compound verbs may be formed by coupling a substantive, adjective, pronoun, verb, adverb or a proposition with a verb, etc.

Путешествовать, to travel,	from путь, road, шествовать, to march.
Злодѣйствовать, to do evil, „	злой, wicked, дѣйствовать, to act.
Единоборствовать, to combat singly, „	единый, one, бороться, to wrestle.
Любопытствовать, to be curious, „	любить, to love, пытаться, to inquire.
Паразирѣчить, to contradict one's self, „	разно, differently, рѣчь, to speak.
Противодѣйствовать, to counteract, „	протѣвъ, against, дѣйствовать, to act.
Находить, to find, „	на, upon, ходить, to walk.

### THE ADVERB.—(Парѣчїе.)

70. Adverbs, according to their meaning, are divided into:

#### (1) Adverbs of *quality* (Качественныя).

а. Manner, as : такъ, 'thus,' 'so ;' иначе, 'otherwise ;' хорошо, 'well ;' нарочно, 'intentionally ;' наугадъ, 'at random.'

To this class belong all adverbs derived from adjectives.

б. Measure of time and space, as : скоро, 'quickly ;' долго, 'long time ;' часто, 'often ;' близко, 'near ;' далеко, 'far.'

To these may be added the gerunds or verbal adverbs.

(2) Adverbs of *quantity* (Количественные).

- a. Measure, as: много, 'much'; мало, 'a little.'  
 б. Number and order, as: однажды, 'once'; дважды, 'twice'; пятью, 'fivefold'; десятью, 'tenfold'; во первых, 'firstly'; во вторых, 'secondly'; на конец, 'lastly.'

(3) Adverbs of *time* (Времени).

- a. Point of time, as: теперь, 'now'; вчера, 'yesterday'; завтра, 'tomorrow'; сегодня, 'to-day'; уже, 'already'; прежде, 'before'; после, 'after.'  
 б. Duration and repetition, as: всегда, 'always'; никогда, 'never'; редко, 'seldom'; опять, 'again'; иногда, 'sometimes'; снова, 'anew'; вообще, 'generally.'

(4) Adverbs of *place* (Места).

- a. Rest, as: там, 'there'; здесь, 'here'; дома, 'at home'; где-то, 'somewhere'; нигде, 'nowhere.'  
 б. Motion, as: отсюда, 'hence'; оттуда, 'thence'; сзади, 'from behind'; сюда, 'hither'; туда, 'thither'; домой, 'homewards'; вперёд, 'forwards.'

(5) Adverbs of *interrogation* (Вопросительные).

Разве? неужели? ужели?

(6) Adverbs of *mood* (Положительности).

- a. Affirmation, as: истинно, 'truly'; в самом деле, 'in fact'; действительно, 'really'; да, 'yes.'  
 б. Negation, as: не, ни, нет, 'not.'  
 в. Probability or doubt, as: авось, 'perchance'; может быть, 'perhaps'; едва ли, 'scarcely'; может статься, 'may be.'

(7) Adverbs of *measure* (Меры).1st. Strengthening the *affirmation*.

- a. Used with the positive degree, as: весьма, очень, 'very'; отлично, 'excellently'; слишком, 'too'; крайне, 'extremely'; нарочито, 'on purpose'; довольно, 'sufficiently'; and the prefix пре, as: премного, 'very much.'



б. With the comparative, as : гораздо, 'far, much ;' несравненно, не-  
впримѣрно, 'incomparably ;' вдвое, 'doubly.'

в. With the superlative ; the prefix наи, as : наибольшій, 'the largest ;'  
наилучшій, 'the best.'

## 2nd. Strengthening the *negation*, as :

вовсе, 'at all ;' совсѣмъ, 'entirely ;' нисколько, 'not in the least ;' нисколь-  
ко, ничуть, 'not at all.'

## 3rd. Modifying the *affirmation* or *negation*, as :

едва, чуть, 'hardly,' 'scarcely ;' нѣсколько, 'somewhat ;' немного, 'a little ;'  
отчасти, 'partly ;' почти, 'almost.'

71. Many substantives and adjectives are used ad-  
verbially, as :

(1) Substantives in the instrumental and other cases, as : верхомъ,  
'on horseback ;' даромъ, 'gratis,' 'although ;' шагомъ, 'at a walking pace ;'  
на показъ, 'for show ;' въ торопяхъ, 'in haste ;' годино, 'yearly ;' еже-  
мѣсячно, 'monthly ;' попеременно, 'alternately.'

(2) Apocopated qualifying adjectives in the neuter singular, as : хо-  
рошó, 'well ;' дурно, 'badly.'

(3) Possessive and relative adjectives in the dative, with the prefix  
по, as : по лѣтнему, 'summer like ;' по звѣринóму, 'like beasts.'

Those ending in сѣи, ии, take the termination ски, ѣи, as : порусски,  
'in Russian ;' подружески, 'in a friendly manner ;' порибби, 'like a fish.'

72. The pronouns столько, много, мало, нѣсколько and  
сколько become adverbs when referring to a verb or an ad-  
jective, as : много трудиться, 'to work much ;' нѣсколько  
робокъ, 'somewhat timid.'

73. Adverbs formed from verbs end in мя or ма, смъ, as :  
дождь ливня лѣтъ, 'it is a pouring rain ;' живёмъ, 'alive.'  
This last form is seldom used.

74. Adverbs formed from apocopated qualifying adjectives have:

(1) Degrees of Comparison, as:

Positive :—много, 'much ;' хорошо, 'well.'

Comparative :—болѣе, 'more ;' лучше, 'better.'

Superlative :—болѣе всего, 'most ;' лучше всего, 'best.'

To the comparative of adverbs the prefix *по* may be added, as, поболѣе, 'a little more.'

The superlative in adverbs may be formed as in adjectives by adding the prefix *на* to the comparative, as, наиболѣе, 'most.'

(2) Augmentatives and Diminutives, as:

a. Augmentative, бѣлѣхонько, 'thoroughly white ;' громко, 'very loud.'

b. Diminutive, бѣловато, 'whitish ;' немножко, 'rather a little. (Lesson 37.)

### THE PREPOSITION.—(Предлогъ.)

73. Prepositions are used in two ways :

(1) Separately, to indicate the relation in which objects stand to each other, as, на столѣ, 'on the table.'

(2) Conjointly with nouns, adjectives and verbs, *i.e.* as, prefixes: найтѣ, 'to find.'

74. The following is a complete list of primitive prepositions, classed according to their use, as:

(1) Used both conjointly and separately.

Безъ, without.

Въ, (во), in, into.

До, until, before.

За, behind, for.

Изъ (из), out of, from.

На, on, upon.

Надъ (над), over, above.

О (объ, обо), about, against.

Отъ (от), from.

По, after, according.

Подъ (под), under.

Предъ (перед), before, in.

Передъ (перед), front of.

При, in the time of, near.

Съ (со), with, from.

У, at, near.

## (2) Used separately only :

Къ (ко), 'towards, to,' and the prepositional adverbs для, 'for ;' кромѣ, 'besides ;' изъ за, 'from behind ;' изъ подъ, 'from under.'

## (3) Used as prefixes only :

Въ (воз, возо), 'up ;' вы, 'out ;' низъ (низо), 'down ;' на, пере, пра, пре, разъ, (разо), розъ, су.

## 75. As prepositions, are also used—

a. The following adverbs, близъ, 'near ;' вдоль, 'along ;' вмѣсто, 'instead ;' внутри, 'in, inwards ;' вне, 'out of ;' вблизи, 'beside, near ;' вопреки, 'contrary to ;' между, (межъ, промежъ), 'between ;' мимо, 'by ;' насупротивъ, 'opposite ;' около, 'about ;' окрестъ, 'around ;' поверхъ, 'over ;' подлѣ, 'near ;' позади, 'behind ;' послѣ, 'after ;' среди, 'amidst ;' прежде, 'before ;' противъ (противу), 'against ;' ради, 'for the sake of ;' сверхъ, 'besides ;' сзади, 'from behind ;' сквозь, 'through.'

b. The following adverbs formed from adjectives : относительно, 'with regard to ;' касательно, 'concerning ;' сообразно, 'in conformity with ;' соответственно, 'corresponding to ;' соразмѣрно, 'in proportion to.'

c. Some gerunds, as : исключая, 'except ;' не смотря на, 'notwithstanding.'

d. Substantives in different cases, as : посредствомъ, 'by means of ;' по мѣрѣ, 'in proportion to.'

## THE CONJUNCTION.—(Соевъ).

76. Conjunctions are for the most part derivatives, and are used to connect words and different parts of a sentence.

According to their signification they are divided into :

(1) *Copulative* (соединительные), as : и, 'and ;' да, 'and, but, let ;' же (жѣ) 'but, then ;' также, 'also ;' еще, 'yet ;' даже, 'even ;' то, 'that ;' отчасти, частью, 'partly.'

(2) *Distributive* (раздѣлительные), или, либо, 'or ;' ни, 'nor.'

(3) *Interrogative* (вопросительные), ли, или.

(4) *Relative* (изъяснительные), что, 'that ;' будто, якобы, 'as if ;'

молъ, де and дѣскать, 'quoth'; то, ёто, вѣдь, used after nouns, pronouns and adverbs.

(5) *Comparative* (сравнительные), словно, будто бы, 'as, as if'; пёже-ли, чѣмъ, 'than'; какъ, 'as.'

(6) *Conditional* (условные), ежели, если, буде, 'if'; когда, 'when, if.'

(7) *Desiderative* (желательные), дабы, чтобы, 'in order that'; ежелибъ, есипбъ, 'would it were'; да, 'may, let.'

(8) *Concessive* (уступительные), хотѣ, 'although'; пусть, пускай, 'let'; правда, 'true'; пожалуй, 'if you like.'

(9) *Adversative* (противительные), а, же, да, но, 'but'; однако, 'how-ever'; если же, 'if then'; такъ, 'for all that.'

(10) *Causative* (вспословные), такъ, 'thus'; то, 'then'; и такъ, 'and so'; посему, 'hence'; почему и, 'wherefore'; следовательно, стало быть, 'consequently'; потому, 'therefore.'

77. Of the above, the following when repeated become correlatives:

и, или, ни, то, отчасти, частью, иногда, гдѣ.

78. The other correlatives are:

какъ—такъ и, 'as—as'; не только—но и, 'not only—but'; тогда—когда, 'then—when'; тамъ—гдѣ, 'there—where'; отсюда—откуда, 'thence—whence'; чѣмъ—тѣмъ, 'the (more)—the (more)'; сколько—столько, 'as—as.'

79. There are also many other simple and compound conjunctions, as also conjunctive phrases formed from other parts of speech. The following may be taken as examples:

то есть, 'that is'; а именно, 'namely'; притомъ, 'besides'; подобно какъ, 'as'; наконецъ, 'at last'; какъ ни, 'however'; сколь ни, 'however much'; равнообразно, 'equally'; какъ-то, 'such as'; etc.

## THE INTERJECTION.—(Междометіе.)

80. The principal interjections in Russian are the following, denoting:

*Surprise*: а! ахъ! 'ah!'; о! ой! 'oh! ой ли? 'is it?'

*Encouragement*: славно! 'glorious!' ура! hurrah! 'исполать!' 'well done!'

*Assurance*: ей! право! 'indeed!' upon my word!

*Affirmation*: да! 'yes!' конечно! 'of course!'

*Refusal*: нѣтъ! 'no!'

*Repulsion*: прочь! 'off!' долбй! 'away!' полно! 'cease!'

*Call*: эй! гей! 'holla!'

*Response*: а! ась! 'what!'

*Offer*: на! plur. на-те! 'take it!'

*Indication*: се! 'behold!' вотъ! 'there!' вонъ! 'out!'

*Prohibition*: стъ! тсъ! 'hush!' молчать! 'silence!'

*Threat*: ужб! 'beware!' добрб! 'never mind!'

*Aversion*: фу! 'faugh!'

*Indignation*: тьфу! 'fie!'

*Grief*: ахъ! охъ! 'ah! oh!' горе! бѣда! 'woe!' увы! 'alas!'

*Compulsion*: ну! plur. ну-те! 'come!' ну-же! 'now then!'

81. Besides the above, expressive of emotion, there are also others imitating different sounds, as, бухъ! шмякъ! бацъ! хлопъ! etc. From these may be formed verbs, as, бухнуть, шмякнуть, бацнуть, хлопнуть, etc.

## II. SYNTAX.—(Словосочинѣніе.)

### 1. CONCORD.—(Согласованіе.)

82. The predicate, if an adjective or a finite verb, agrees with the subject in person, gender, number and case.

Она читала,

She was reading.

Она добра,

She is kind.

83. When, however, the predicate is a noun, it may differ from the subject in gender and number, agreeing in case only. The copula when expressed agrees in number with the subject.

Римляне были народъ воинственный, The Romans were a warlike people.

84. Determinative words, either adjectives or pronouns, agree in gender, number and case with the word they qualify.

Моя хорошая книга. My good book.

85. But when the determinative word is a substantive, it agrees in case and may differ in number and gender.

Городъ Москва обширенъ. The city of Moscow is large.

86. When the subject is followed by an attribute, the predicate, whether an adjective or a verb, agrees with the former and not with the latter in gender and number.

Рѣка Дунай судоходна.

The river Danube is navigable.

Рѣка Дунай замёрзла.

The river Danube is frozen over.

87. The numerals два, три, четыре, пять, etc., and the pronoun оба, agree with their noun in number and case, except in the nom. and acc., when the noun takes the termination of the genit. sing.

Два стола, two tables ; gen. двухъ столовъ, etc.

Оба пріятеля, both friends ; gen. обоихъ пріятелей, etc.

88. Other numerals, from five up to eighty, as also двое, три, четверо, etc., agree in all cases except the nom. and acc., which require the noun in the genit. plur.

Пять столовъ, five tables ; dat. пяти столѣмъ, etc.

Восемьдесятъ городѣвъ, eighty towns ; dat. восьмидесяти городѣмъ, etc.

89. In compound sentences having two or more subjects and predicates, the rules of concord depend chiefly on the conjunctions uniting the subjects, as also on whether or not the latter are of the same gender and number (Lesson 32, Obs. 3 to 7.)

90. With regard to compound numerals, the noun agrees with the last.

Двадцать одинъ столъ,  
Пятьдесятъ два стола,

Twenty-one tables.  
Fifty-two tables.

91. The relative pronoun *который, кой, кто, что*, agreeing in gender and number with the noun or pronoun in the principal clause, take the case governed by the verb or noun in the subordinate clause.

Человѣкъ, котораго я люблю,

The man whom I love.

92. The gerund of the subordinate and the verb of the principal clause must express an action of the same agent.

Онѣ сѣдя работаютъ,

They work sitting.

93. When an action indicated in the subordinate takes place at the same time as that of the principal clause, the gerund present is employed not only with verbs in the present, as,

Сѣдя пишу,

I write sitting.

but also with verbs in the past and future tenses, as :

Сѣдя писалъ,

I wrote sitting.

Сѣдя буду писать,

I will write sitting.

94. When one action precedes another, then the preceding one is expressed by a gerund in the past tense, which likewise may agree not only with a verb in the past, as,

Одѣвшись, онъ вышелъ,

After dressing, he went out ;

but also with verbs in the present and future tenses, as :

Одѣвшись, я выхожy,

After dressing I go out.

Одѣвшись, я выйду,

After dressing I will go out.

## 2. GOVERNMENT.—(Управлѣніе.)

95. This part of Syntax will be found fully treated of in

the Practical Part. For direct government, see Lesson 60 ; and for government through prepositions, see Lessons 61, 62 and 63.

### III. ORTHOGRAPHY.—(Правописа́нiе.)

#### 1. USE OF LETTERS.

96. The proper and accidental sounds of each letter were explained in the beginning of this work, and it will be remembered that some letters have more than one sound, and, on the other hand, that there are some different ones which represent the same sound. Hence it follows that it is impossible to write Russian correctly by the ear alone. In cases of doubt, the proper letter may be ascertained either by finding the radical form of the word, or by going through its inflexions; but since this process entails some trouble, and even then is not always successful, certain rules are here given, in alphabetical order, for the convenience of reference.

A occurs in the genit. sing. of adject. and pronouns ending in the nom. in *ый, ой, as, добраго, святаго, котораго*.

A is not written after hard vowels, except some foreign words, thus—*Гёнуя*, and not *Гёнуа*.

Б (as also в, м, п, ф) when followed by ю take *л*, as, *любл-ю, лобл-л-ю, купл-л-ю, графл-л-ю*.

Г.—After *г*, in inflexions, *я, е, ы* are changed into *а, о, и*, thus—*стрёгаго, лёгонькiй, сапогi*, and not *стрóгаго, лёгенькiй, сапогý*.



**Д.**—The sound of *д* when given to the prefix *от* must never be written, as, *отдѣлать, отзывать*.

**Е.**—In the inflexions of true Russian words, *е* is changed into *о* before *г, к, х*, as, *лёгонькій, ма́конькій, сѹхонькій*.

*Е* is found in the apocorated termination of adjectives ending in *йный, льный*, as, *споко́йный, во́льный*; аросор. *спокó-ень, во́л-ень*.

*Е* final accented after *ж, ч, ш, щ* is changed into *о*, as, *лицó, свѣжó*, instead of *лицé, свѣжé*.

**Ж.**—After this letter, *ы* and *о* are changed into *и* and *е*, as, *лóжи, лóжею*, instead of *лóжы, лóжою*.

**З** is preserved in the prefixes *воз, низ, раз, из* only before *с, ц, ш*, as, *из-сунѣть, раз-царѣнать, раз-щипѣть*; but before all other consonants it is changed into *с*, as, *ис-чѣзнуть, рас-хаживать, рас-нилѣть*. In the prefixes *безъ* and *чрезъ*, *з* is never changed into *с*, as, *безсмѣртный, чрезмѣрный*.

**З** is written before *мъ* final of foreign words, as, *матерья́лизмъ, барба́ризмъ*.

**И** is written :

- a. Before consonants and at the end of words : *идѣ, идѣи*.
- b. Before vowels only in the inflexions of the numer. *пять, шесть*, etc., in compound words, as, *пятиуго́льный, семна́дцатый*, etc.
- c. In the inflexion of the second person pres. indicat. of verbs of second conjugation, as, *смотре́ть, гово́рить*, second pers. *смóтришь, гово́ришь*.

**I** is written before vowels : *Іюль, Іюнія.*

**I** must not be confounded with *ы* or *о* in the termination of the adjectives, numerals and pronouns : *ію* is written in the nom. sing. of adjective having the gen. in *юго*, and *ый* or *ой* of those having the gen. in *аго*.

**К** never precedes *я, ю, ь*, except in foreign words, as, *кюмень, кяхта.*

**Н** is doubled :

*a.* In words ending in *никъ, ный, ній*, if these latter are formed from words ending in *н*, as, *плѣнникъ, плѣн-ный, осѣн-ній*, derived from *плѣнь, босень.*

*b.* In passive particip. and qualif. adjectives ending in *ан-ный, ян-ный, ен-ный*, as, *желанный, деревянный, убійственный.*

**И** is prefixed to personal pronouns after prepositions, to distinguish them from the possessive, as : *у негѣ, 'he has ;' у егѣ брата, 'at his brother's.'*

**О** is written in the nom. of masculine adjectives and pronouns having an accented termination, as, *золотѣй, какѣй.*

*Ого* is written in the gen. sing. of the pron. *какѣй, такѣй.*

**С** is doubled in nouns ending in *ство, скій*, if formed from words ending in *с* : *искус-ство, Рус-скій.*

**Т** is doubled when *отъ* is prefixed to a word beginning with *т* : *оттого, оттаять.*

**Ц.**—After *п, ы* is written instead of *п, ас*, *цыплёнокъ, цырульникъ.* Except foreign words, as, *цита́та, медицина.*

**И** must not be written instead of *тс* or *дс* if *т* or *д* belong to the root and *с* to the termination, thus—ара-вітекій, переідекій, and not аравіцкій, переіцкій.

**Ч** is not followed by *я*, *ю*, *ы*, thus—чаять, чүткій, чинь, and not чяять, чюткій, чынь.

**Ш** is not followed by *я*, *ю*, *ы*, which are changed into *а*, *у*, *и*, thus—пшшая, пшшую, пшшие, and not пшняя, пшнюю, пшные.

**Щ** is not followed by *о*, *ы*, *я*, *ю*, but by *е*, *и*, *а*, *у*, thus—гүщею, гүщи, гүща, гүщу, and not гүщою, гүщы, гүщя, гүщю.

This letter must not be written instead of *жч*, or *сч* if *ж*, *ч*, *с* belong to the root or to the prefix, thus—муж-чина, с-читать, счствие, and not мущина, щтать, щствие.

**Ы.**—This sound is sometimes confounded with *и*, and some grammarians do not change *и* into *ы* when *и* belongs to the prefix and *и* to the root, as, отыгрывать, предидүиі; others in the same instance use *ы*, as, отыгрывать, предидүиі. **Ы**, however, is beginning to be generally adopted.

**Ъ, Ъ.**—These two semivowels when final do not always give a distinct hard or soft sound to the preceding consonant, but are mute after *ж*, *ч*, *ш*, *щ*.

For the placing of *ъ* or *ь* after *ж*, *ч*, *ш*, *щ*, the following rules are to be observed :

**Ъ** is used :

*a.* In the nom. sing. of mascul. nouns and adjectives,

as, мужъ, мечъ, камышъ, плащъ, горѣть, похобѣть,  
as also in the nom. of the pron. нашъ and вашъ.

b. In the gen. plur. of nouns ending in е and а, as,  
училишъ, тучъ, ложъ, ношъ, and in that of the  
numerals тысячъ.

c. In the conjunction жъ contracted from же, as, тожъ,  
тогдажъ, from тоже, тогдаже.

d. In the prepositions межъ, промежъ.

**Б** is written :

a. In the nom. of femin. nouns, as, почъ, мышъ, вещь.

b. In the second pers. sing. pres. indicat., as, дѣлаешъ,  
говоришъ.

c. In the second pers. of the imperative, as, плачь,  
ѣшь, рѣжь.

d. In the infinitive of verbs ending in чъ, as, жечь,  
толочь.

e. In the terminations of the adverbs : лишь, прочъ,  
точь въ точь, and some others.

**Ъ**, pronounced like е, is used in the following roots and  
terminations :

(1) **Ъ** is initial in only two words and their derivatives :  
ѣхать, 'to ride,' and ѣсть, 'to eat.'

**Ѣ** occurs in the middle of the following and their  
derivatives :

Бесѣда, conversation.

Блѣдный, pale.

Бѣгать, бѣжать, to run.

Бѣда, woe, (бѣдный, poor; по-  
бѣда, victory.)

Бѣлый, white.

Бѣсъ, demon.

Бѣда, the name of the letter а.

Бѣдать, to know.

Бѣтъ, age.

Вѣна, Vienna.

Вѣнецъ, crown.

Вѣникъ, a broom.  
 Вѣрить, to believe.  
 Вѣра, faith.  
 Вѣсить, to weigh.  
 Вѣсть, intelligence.  
 Вѣсъ, weight.  
 Вѣтъ, branch.  
 Вѣтръ, wind.  
 Вѣко, eye-lid.  
 Вѣять, to blow.  
 Гнѣвъ, anger.  
 Гнѣдой, bay.  
 Гнѣздо, nest.  
 Грѣхъ, sin.  
 Дуи́рь, } names of rivers.  
 Дуи́стръ, }  
 Дѣва, a virgin.  
 Дѣвать, дѣтъ, (except одѣжда,  
 clothes).  
 Дѣдъ, grandfather.  
 Дѣлить, to divide.  
 Дѣти, children.  
 Дѣять, дѣлать, to do.  
 (Надѣяться, to hope, except на-  
 дѣжда, hope.)  
 Желѣза, glands.  
 Желѣзо, iron.  
 Затѣя, devices.  
 Звѣзда, star.  
 Звѣрь, beast.  
 Змѣй, serpent.  
 Зѣвать, to yawn.  
 Зѣница, pupil (of the eye).  
 Калѣка, a cripple.  
 Кѣтъ, chamber.  
 Кѣтка, cage.  
 Колѣно, knee.  
 Крепкій, strong.  
 Лелѣять, to fondle.  
 Лѣвый, left.

Лѣзть, to climb.  
 Лѣнь, idleness.  
 Лѣпнѣть, to stick.  
 Лѣса, fishing line.  
 Лѣсъ, forest.  
 Лѣто, summer.  
 Лѣчить, to cure.  
 Лѣкарь, a physician.  
 Медвѣдь, a bear.  
 Мѣдь, copper.  
 Мѣлъ, chalk.  
 Мѣна, change.  
 Мѣра, measure.  
 Мѣсто, place.  
 Мѣсяцъ, month.  
 Мѣшать, to hinder.  
 Мѣтить, to mark.  
 Мѣхъ, fur, bag.  
 Невѣста, bride.  
 Нѣ, (prefix used with pronouns  
 and adverbs).  
 Нѣга, indulgence.  
 Нѣжный, tender.  
 Нѣдро, bosom.  
 Нѣмецъ, a German.  
 Нѣтъ, no.  
 Нѣваться, to deny.  
 Обѣдъ, dinner.  
 Обѣтъ, vow, promise.  
 Орѣхъ, nut.  
 Печенѣгъ, (name of people).  
 Плѣнь, captivity.  
 Плѣсень, mould.  
 Плынь, a bald pate,  
 Повеѣтъ, district.  
 Полѣно, log.  
 Посѣтить, to visit.  
 Прорѣха, a hole, slit.  
 Прѣсный, sweet.  
 Пѣглый, dappled, piebald.

Пѣна, froth.  
 Пѣпѣть, to reproach.  
 Пѣхота, infantry.  
 Пѣшій, a pedestrian.  
 Рѣдкій, scarce.  
 Рѣдка, radish.  
 Рѣзать, to cut.  
 Рѣзвый, playful.  
 Рѣка, river.  
 Рѣпа, turnip.  
 Рѣсница, eye-lash.  
 Рѣсті (root deriv. встреча,  
 meeting).  
 Рѣчь, speech.  
 Рѣшетѣ, sieve.  
 Рѣшѣть, to decide.  
 Рѣять, to gush.  
 Свѣрѣный, ferocious.  
 Свѣжѣ, fresh.  
 Свѣтъ, the light.  
 Слѣдъ, trace.  
 Слѣпой, blind.  
 Смѣяться, to laugh.  
 Снѣгъ, snow.  
 Спѣхъ, haste.  
 Стрѣла, arrow.  
 Стѣна, wall.  
 Сѣверъ, north.  
 Сѣдой, grey.

Сѣно, hay.  
 Сѣнь, tabernacle.  
 Сѣра, sulphur.  
 Сѣрый, gray.  
 Сѣтовать, to lament.  
 Сѣть, net.  
 Сѣчь, (сѣку), to hew, to whip.  
 Сѣять, to sow.  
 Сѣмя, seed.  
 Тѣло, body.  
 Тѣнь, shadow.  
 Тѣсный, narrow.  
 Тѣсто, dough.  
 Тѣшить, to amuse.  
 Хлѣбъ, bread.  
 Хлѣвъ, stay.  
 Хрѣпъ, horseradish.  
 Хѣръ, the letter x.  
 Цвѣтъ, colour.  
 Цѣдить, to filter.  
 Цѣловать, to kiss.  
 Цѣлый, whole.  
 Цѣль, aim.  
 Цѣна, price.  
 Цѣпенѣть, to grow stiff.  
 Цѣпъ, a flail.  
 Цѣпь, chain.  
 Человѣкъ, man.

**Ъ** occurs in the following terminations:

- (1) In the comparative degree, as, добрѣе, добрѣйшій.
- (2) In the prepositional case of nouns of the first declension, except those ending in іи, ie, as, на столѣ, въ полѣ.
- (3) In the dative and prepositional sing. of nouns of the second declension, except those ending in ія, ь; also in the dative and prepositional of the pronouns я, ты, себя, as, водѣ, муѣ, тебѣ, себѣ.

- (4) In the instrumental sing. of the pronouns *кто, что, тотъ, всеъ*, as, *кѣмъ, чѣмъ, тѣмъ, всѣмъ*.
- (5) In the nominat. plur. feminine of the numerals *одниѣ, два*, and the pronouns *она, она, тотъ, всея*, as, *однѣ, двѣ, онѣ, оубѣ, тѣ, всѣ*.
- (6) In all cases plur. of the numeral feminine *однѣ*, and the pronouns *оубѣ, тѣ, всѣ*.
- (7) In verbs of first conjugation of first class ending in *ѣю, ѣтъ*, the vowel *ѣ* is preserved in all aspects, tenses, moods and derivative words, as, *владѣю, владѣтъ*, perf. asp. *овладѣтъ*, nouns *владѣнiе, владѣтель*, etc.

The verbs *нѣтъ, сѣтъ*, and all verbs of the ninth class having *ѣ* before *тъ* in the infinitive, take it both in the past tense and in the derivative words, as, *нѣтъ, нѣтъи, нѣнiе*, etc.

*Exceptions.*—The participle passive past of verbs of ninth class ending in *дѣтъ, тѣтъ*, in which *д, т* is changed into *ж, ч*, take *е* instead of *ѣ*, as, *верѣтъ, верѣнъ, снѣтъ, снѣнъ*.

- (8) *Ѣ* occurs in the termination of the following adverbs: *вездѣ, вѣтъ, вѣзлѣ, здѣсь, доколѣ, досѣлѣ, доколѣ, индѣ, кромѣ, нѣнѣ, отколѣ, отсѣлѣ, подлѣ, послѣ, развѣ*.
- (9) *Ѣ* is also written in words having a doubtful sound similar to *н*, as in some proper names—*Алекѣи, Сербѣи*, and in the nouns *грамотѣи* and *Анрѣи*.

**Ѣ, V.**—See Practical Part, pp. 14 and 16.

**Ю** if preceded by *ч, м* is changed into *у*.

**Я.**—Occurs in the termination of foreign words ending

in *ia*, *io*, *as*, *Азія*, *матерія*, *Італія*; but in their derivatives, *я* is changed into *a*, *as*, *азіатець*, *матеріальний*.

Those derivatives in which *i* can be contracted into *ь*, are written with *я*, *as*, *итальянскій*.

Θ is found in Greek words written with θ (not φ), in English, French, etc. with *th*, *as*, *Аѳины*, *Θѳодоръ*; but foreign words introduced not earlier than the beginning of the last century, *as* also those met with in common use are written with *т*, *as*, *театръ*, 'theatre,' *теорія*, 'theory,' etc.

## II. CAPITAL LETTERS.

97. Capital letters are used in Russian *as* in English, with a few slight exceptions:

- a. Adjectives are written with capitals only when used *as* proper names, *as* : *Австрійская Имперія*, 'Austrian Empire;' *Французская Республика*, 'French Republic;' *Чѳрное Море*, 'Black Sea.' Otherwise a small letter is used, *as* : *австрійскій солдатъ*, 'Austrian soldier;' *французскій табакъ*, 'French tobacco.'
- b. The pronoun *вы*, 'you,' in all its inflexions takes a capital letter in correspondence.

## III. PUNCTUATION.—(Знаки Препинанія.)

98. The points used in Russian are the following:

- (1) The comma [ , ] (*запятая*).
- (2) The semicolon [ ; ] (*точка съ запятою*).



- (3) The colon [ : ] (двоеточіе).
- (4) The full stop [ . ] (точка).
- (5) The interrogation point [ ? ] (знакъ вопросительный).
- (6) The exclamation point [ ! ] (знакъ восклицательный).
- (7) The hyphen [ - ] (черта́ or знакъ отдѣлительный).
- (8) The point of suspension [ . . . . . ] (знакъ преемъ-  
тельный).
- (9) The parenthesis [ ( ) ] (знакъ вмѣстительный or скобки).
- (10) The quotation marks [ „ ” ] (кавычки or знакъ  
выснпый).

99. They only differ from the English in their use in the following particulars :

- (1) Subordinate clauses, however short or whatever word they begin with, must be separated from the main clause by a comma.

Человѣкъ, котораго вы видите, мой  
братъ.

The man whom you see is my  
brother.

Онъ поступилъ, какъ слѣдовало.

He acted as he ought.

Лучше поздно, чѣмъ никогда.

Better late than never.

- (2) Short sentences, whether connected by the conjunctions и, а, no or not, are likewise separated by commas.

Это справедливо, а то ложно,

This is true and that is false,

100. The semicolon must be employed between two or more members of a period, when they are either complex or comprise subordinate or parenthetical clauses, as :

Не тотъ бѣденъ, кто имѣетъ мало; но  
тотъ, кто желаетъ многого.

Not he is poor who has little, but  
he who desires much.

## IV. THE TONIC ACCENT.—(Слогоударёніе.)

(See page 29).

101. The accent undergoes transposition in inflexion according to fixed and definite laws, which are easily learnt.

102. The oblique cases of nouns generally retain the accent of the nominative, as, *Зако́нъ, тетра́дъ, gen. зако́на, тетра́ди, dat. зако́ну, тетра́ди, etc.*

103. When the accent is transposed, the change is retained in all subsequent cases. The transposition may begin :

a. With the gen. sing., as : *рука́въ, сло́нъ; gen. рукава́, слопа́; dat. рукаву́, сло́ну, etc.*

b. With the nom. plur., as : *чи́нъ, са́дъ; gen. чи́на, са́да; plur. nom. чины́, сады́; gen. чино́въ, садо́въ, etc.*

c. With the gen. plur., as : *зубъ, гробъ; plur. nom. зу́бы, гробы́; gen. зубо́въ, гробо́въ; dat. зубамъ, гробамъ, etc.*

104. In the plural of neuter nouns ending in o, e, when the accent is on the first syllable of the nom. sing., it passes to the last, and when on the last passes to the first, as : *сло́во, вино́; plur. nom. слова́, вина́.*

105. In adjectives and passive participles the accent is shifted :

a. To the apocopated termination of the feminine, as :

*Но́вый, аросор. m. новъ, f. нова́, n. ново́.*

*Ви́дный, „ m. виденъ, f. видна́, n. видно́.*

b. To the apocop. termination of feminine, neuter and plural, as :

*Бѣ́лый, аросор. m. бѣлъ, f. бѣла́, n. бѣло́, pl. бѣлы́.*

*Хоро́шій, „ m. хоро́шъ, f. хоро́ша, n. хоро́шо, pl. хоро́шій.*

To these belong passive participles in аѹъ, ѣѹъ, еѹъ, and possessive adjectives in иѹъ, as :

данъ, fem. дана, neut. дано, plur. дана.  
 Пльиѹъ, „ Пльи́на, „ Пльи́но, „ Пльи́на.

106. In verbs the chief transpositions calling for notice are those of tense, person, gender, and that of number in the past tense.

(1) The present and past tenses of verbs of the first and second class take the accent on the same syllable, as : читáть, ‘to read ;’ pres. чита́ю ; past чита́лъ. But in monosyllabic verbs having two syllables in the present with the accent on the last, the accent is restored to the first syllable in the past, as : пѣ́тъ, ‘to sing ;’ pres. пою́ ; past пѣ́лъ, fem. пѣ́ла, neut. пѣ́ло, plur. пѣ́ли.

(2) Verbs of the fourth class having the accent on the penultimate, transfer it to the final in the past tense, as : ropeвáтъ, ‘to grieve ;’ pres. ropeю́ ; past ropeвáлъ.

(3) Verbs of the second and third classes having the accent on the termination of the first person, transfer it in the second person to the radical syllable, the change being retained throughout, as : opáтъ, ‘to till ;’ коло́тъ, ‘to sting ;’ pres. opю́, колю́ ; second pers. opе́шь, ко́лешь ; third pers. opе́тъ, ко́летъ, etc.

(4) The following three of the ninth class, смотрѣ́тъ, ‘to look ;’ терпѣ́тъ, ‘to bear ;’ and держáтъ, ‘to hold ;’ and most verbs of the tenth class also follow this rule, as : смотрѣ́ю, терпѣ́ю, люблѣ́ю ; second person, смотрѣ́шь, терпѣ́шь, люблѣ́шь, etc.

*Exceptions.*—Давать, 'to give;' сять, 'to send,' preserve the accent in the second pers., as, даю́, шлю́, second pers. даёшь, шлѐшь, etc.

(5) In other classes the transposition takes place as follows :

In the 4th class :—примѹ́, 2nd pers. прѣ́мешь, etc.

7th " могу́, " " мѡ́жешь, "

8th " тяну́, " " тяне́шь, "

107. According to the second person singular is accented the third pers. sing. and all persons of the plural, as, пишѹ́, пишѐшь, пишѐшь, пи́шемъ, пи́шете, пи́шутъ.

108. According to the first pers. sing. are accented the persons of the imperative, as, пишѹ́, imperat. пи́ми, plur. пи́шите. But if the imperative end in ѣ, and the first person pres. in ю́ accented, then the accent necessarily falls on the vowel preceding it, as, стою́, кляю́, imperat. сто́й, кля́й.

109. When the past tense masc. sing. is monosyllabic without counting the prefix or the suffix ся, the accent is shifted for the other genders and number according to the rule of adjectives and participles.

110. Of the above, those having the past in а́тъ, я́тъ, нѣ́тъ, бы́тъ, shift the accent to the feminine only, such are брать, гнать, дать, драть, ждѣть, жрать, звать, здѣть, лгать, врать, тѣтъ, взять, снѣтъ, and others formed from the root ять, as also клясть, вѣтъ, жнѣтъ, лнѣтъ, пнѣтъ, быть, плыть, слыть, ме́рѣтъ, перѣтъ, and their compounds померѣтъ, отперѣтъ, as, for example :

братъ, fem. брата́, neut. бра́ло, plur. бра́ли.

былъ, " была́, " было́, " были́.

принялъ, " приняла́, " приняло́, " приняли́.

111. All other compounds formed from the root ять, which in the masc. take the accent on the prefix, retain it throughout, as, *зѣнѣть*, fem. *зѣнѣла*, neut. *зѣнѣло*, plur. *зѣнѣли*.

112. Most verbs of the eighth class transfer the accent in the past tense to the termination of the fem. and neut., as also to that of the plural, as: вести́, 'to lead;' толо́чь, 'to pound;' past ве́лъ, толо́къ; fem. ве́ла, то́лкла; neut. ве́ло, то́кло; plur. ве́ли, то́кли.

113. Some of the above named, when used in reflective form, transfer the accent in the past to the suffix *en* for the masculine, but for the femin. and neut. as well as the plur. to the syllable preceding it, as :

бразясь, fem. бразясь, neut. бразьсь, plur. бразясь.  
принясясь, „ принясьсь, „ принясьсь, „ принясьсь.

114. The prepositions *взо, во, до, за, изъ, на, надъ, о, оу, оуо, от, отъ, по, под, подъ, пре, перъ, при, про, разъ, раз, со, у*, when prefixed to the past tense of some monosyllabic verbs or their passive participles, take the accent, as follows :

(1) The following twelve verbs and their participles transfer the accent in the past to the prefix for the masculine, neuter and plural, the feminine retaining the original accent ; such are :

дать, звать, ять, чать, клясть, лить, пить, жить, плыть, быть, мереть, переть,  
as for example :

Masc.	Продѣлъ, прожи́лъ ;	participle	продѣвъ, прожи́въ.
Fem.	Прода́я, прожи́ла ;	"	продѣя, прожи́ла.
Neut.	Продѣло, прожи́ло ;	"	продѣно, прожи́то.
Plur.	Продѣли, прожи́ли ;	"	продѣны, прожи́ты.

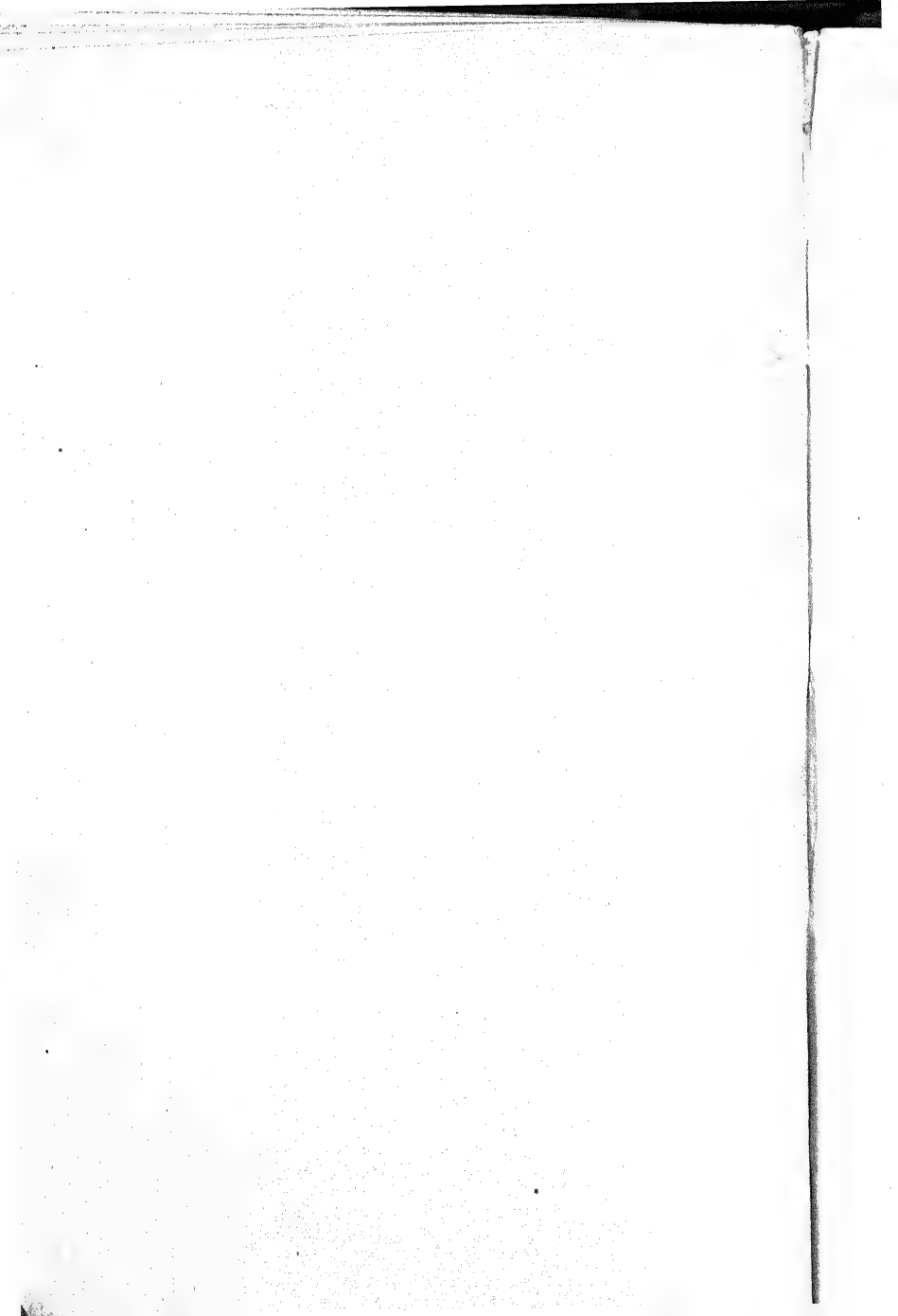
(2) The following passive participles take the accent on the prefix for all genders and plural; such are:

ending in ая: *сбзая, отбзая, разбзая, сбзая, взбзая, прйт-  
ая, аззая, навая, прожая, пожая, из-  
бзая, оббзая, вбзая, пробзая.*

ending in яя: derived from *идти, ая, найдя, прйдя, etc.*

ending in уя: *заякнуть, взбзнуть, побзнуть, etc.*

115. The prefix **вы** takes the accent in verbs of perfect aspect throughout all their inflections and in all their derivatives, as: *вывести*, 'to lead out,' past *вывелъ*, fut. *выведу*; imperat. *выведи*, etc.



# INDEX.

## A.

About, 325, Obs. 4.  
 Abroad, 208.  
 Accent, 29, 557.  
 Accusative (Government), 454.  
 Ache (to), 296.  
 Active Verbs (Conjugation of), 529.  
 Adjective, 510.  
 Adjective (Possessive), 222.  
 Adjective (Relative), 281.  
 Adverb, 538.  
 Against, 312.  
 All, 521.  
 Alone, 95.  
 And, 48.  
 Any, 43.  
 Apocope, 29.  
 Apocope of Adjective, 230.  
 Appendix, 499.  
 Article, 499.  
 As, 269.  
 As—as, 268.  
 As far as, 290.  
 Aspects of Verbs, 205, 374, 523.  
 Augmentative Adjectives, 273.  
 „ Nouns, 85, 184.  
 Auxiliary Verbs (Conjugation of), 527.

## B.

Behave (to), 290.  
 Both, 151, 240.  
 Branches of the Verb, 322.  
 But, 181.  
 By, 297.

## C.

Call (to), 284.  
 Cannot, 164.  
 Capital Letters, 555.  
 Cardinal Numerals, 95, 104, 163, 179.  
 Cases, 503.  
 Collective Nouns, 78, Obs. 7.  
 Common Gender, 500.  
 „ Verbs, 355, 522.  
 Comparative (Formation of Indeclinable), 265.  
 Comparison (Degrees of), 259.  
 Complete Verbs, 377.  
 Compound Adjectives, 516.  
 „ Nouns, 510.  
 „ Verbs, 420, 426, 433, 538.  
 „ Numerals, 348.  
 Concord of words, 544.  
 Conjugation, 238, 257.  
 „ of Active Verbs, 529.

Printed by Manish  
 Bag No 8  
 particulars, ple  
 detts from the  
 They may b  
 Officers of the  
 adets from the  
 passed from the  
 any category m  
 (PS)  
 class 1 Gazette  
 Officers of the  
 tion, with full v  
 by the Execu  
 Officers applying  
 classes of  
 and gaming and  
 al and intern  
 nsive enquiry  
 tre aims at o  
 iliation (USI-CS  
 rmed as USI Ce  
 rces have bee  
 rsthile Cent  
 for Strategic S  
 to properly  
 f service in the  
 forum, without  
 hment, the jou  
 nel is not look  
 that free expres  
 members, and  
 first appeared  
 ence journal in  
 USI Journal  
 Journal  
 a significant and  
 Social Staff Colleg  
 e Defence Ser  
 nations, and for  
 t them in pr  
 urses for office  
 e Institution run  
 sspondence Co  
 ng material. Libr  
 ous and well s  
 archers. The read  
 nals, manuscr  
 icals, biograp



Conjugation of Auxiliary Verbs, 527.

" " Irregular Verbs, 440.

" " Iterative and Perfect  
of Unity, 532.

" " Neuter Verbs, 531.

" " Passive Verbs, 536.

" " Regular Verbs, 406.

" " Reflective Verbs, 534.

Conjunction, 542.

Christian Names, 196.

## D.

Dative (Government), 453.

Declension of Adjectives, 512, 514.

" " Possessive Adjectives,  
223.

Declension of Pronouns, 519.

" " Substantives, 504.

Declension of Substantives and Ad-  
jectives Feminine, 156, 170.

Declension of Substantives and Ad-  
jectives Masculine, 31, 76.

Declension of Substantives and Ad-  
jectives Neuter, 127, 137.

Defective Verbs, 378.

Definite Imperfect Aspect, 375.

Demonstrative Pronouns, 65.

Derivation of Adjectives, 516.

" " Nouns, 509.

" " Verbs, 538.

Diminutive Adjectives, 273.

" " Nouns, 85, 185, 194.

Division of Letters, 9.

Do (to), 67, Obs. 4.

Double Verbs, 377, 382.

## E.

Each other, 311.

Else, 304.

Epenthesis, 29.

Etymology, 499.

Ever, 288.

## F.

Family Names, 224, Obs. 4.

Fear (to), 107.

Feminine Gender, 155.

" " Nouns, 500.

Feminine Nouns (Formation of),  
211, 501.

Few, 146.

For, 191, 319.

Foreign Nouns, 245.

Forty, 325, Obs. 3.

Future Tense, 324.

## G.

Gender, 36, 500.

Generic Possessive Adjectives, 225.

Genitive (Government), 450.

Genitive of Substantives in *y*, 45.

Gerund, 307, 525.

Get (to), 141, 290.

Glad, 254.

Go (to), 131, 197.

Government (direct), 450.

Government of Compound and  
Simple Words, 480.

Government of Prepositions, 459.

## H.

Half, 340.

Have (you), 35, Obs. 1.

He, 520.

His, 47.

However, 338.

Hundred, 325, Obs. 3.

## I.

- I (declension), 519.  
 If you please, 94.  
 Imperative, 330.  
 Imperative for Subjunctive, 316,  
   Obs. 4.  
 Imperfect Aspect, 205, 375.  
 Impersonal Verbs, 361, 526.  
 Impersonal Compound Verbs, 362.  
 In, 304.  
 Inchoative Aspect, 376, 421.  
 Incomplete Verbs, 377.  
 Indefinite Pronouns, 345.  
 Indefinite Imperfect Aspect, 375.  
 Infinitive as complement to Im-  
   personal Verbs, 364.  
 Infinitive Mood, 238, 245, 251, 257.  
 Instrumental (Government), 455.  
 Interjections, 543.  
 Interrogative Sentences, 55, 248,  
   Obs. 11, 363, Obs. 3.  
 Irregular Verbs, 439.  
 It, 36, 81, 162, 180, 520.  
 It is, 246, 363.  
 Iterative Aspect, 205, 376, 389.  
 Iterative Aspect (Conjugation of),  
   532.  
 Itself, 318.

## J.

- Judge of (to be a), 290.  
 Just, 199.

## K.

- Keep a promise (to), 431.  
 Keep on one's guard (to), 218.  
 Knit (to), 386.  
 Knock against (to), 311.  
 Know (to), 95.

## L.

- Learn (to), 227.  
 Leave (to), 287.  
 Left, 288.  
 Lend (to), 319.  
 Let (to), 334.  
 Love, like (to), 66, 192.

## M.

- Many, 146.  
 Marry (to), 277, Obs. 2.  
 Masculine Nouns, 500.  
 Masculine Nouns in *l*, 501.  
 Masculine Nouns having plural in  
   *a*, 92.  
 May, might, 317.  
 Moods, 523.  
 Most, 284.  
 Much, 248.  
 Must, 149.

## N.

- Names of Natives (Formation of),  
   202.  
 Nay, 288.  
 Need (to), 165.  
 Negation in Russian, 51.  
 Negative Pronouns, 345.  
 Negative Sentences, 363, Obs. 3.  
 Neuter Nouns, 500.  
 Neuter Verb, 522.  
 Neuter Verb (Conjugation of), 531.  
 Ninety, 325, Obs. 3.  
 Nor I, 290.  
 Not a, 165.  
 Nouns in *h*, 501.  
 Nouns (Verbal), 369.  
 Now and then, 288.  
 Number, 75, 502.

Number (defective), 123, 178.  
 Numerals, 104.  
 Numerals (declension), 514.

## O.

Of, 72, Obs. 6, 179.  
 One and a half, 348.  
 One's own, 520.  
 Ordinal Numerals, 117.  
 Orthography, 547.  
 Ought, 317.  
 Our, 54, 520.  
 Out, 242.

## P.

Participle (Active), 293.  
 „ (Passive), 300.  
 Participles, 525.  
 Passive Verbs, 356, 522.  
 Passive Verbs (Conjugation of), 536.  
 "Past," 326, Obs. 7.  
 Past Tense, 89, 245, Obs. 2.  
 People, 82.  
 Perfect Aspect, 205, 214, Obs. 4,  
 376, 396.  
 Perfect Aspect of Duration, 376.  
 Perfect Aspect of Unity, 215, 376,  
 397.  
 Perfect Inchoative Aspect, 421.  
 Perfect of Unity (Conjugation of),  
 532.  
 Perfect Simple Verbs, 404.  
 Permutation of Letters, 28.  
 Personal Verbs, 526.  
 Passive Adjectives, 222, 283, Obs. 6.  
 Possessive Case, 46, Obs. 8.  
 Possessive Pronouns, 71.  
 Position of Words, 486, 492.  
 Potential Mood, 315.

Prefixes, 415, 481.

Predicate, 246, 253.

Prepositions, 541.

„ Governing the Genitive, 459.

„ Governing the Dative, 464.

„ Governing the Accusative,  
 468.

„ Governing the Instrumen-  
 tal, 474.

„ Governing the Preposition-  
 al, 476.

Prepositional Verbs, 207, Obs. 9,  
 420, 426, 433.

Present (Formation of), 314.

Present Tense, 59.

Pronoun, 517.

Pronunciation, 9.

Prosthesis, 29.

Punctuation, 555.

## Q.

Qualifying Adjectives, 510.

## R.

Rather, 296.

Reciprocal Verbs, 355, 522.

Reflective Verbs, 151, 353, 522.

Reflective Verbs (Conjugation of),  
 534.

Relative Adjectives, 281.

Remain (to), 287.

## S.

Same, 318.

Self, 215, 519.

Shall, 385.

She, 520.

Should, 316, Obs. 5.

Simple Verbs, 524.

Simple Verbs of Perfect Aspect, 404.

Sir, 110.

Some, or any, 43.

Sore, 297.

Speak (to), 70.

Strong, 234, Obs. 9.

Subjunctive Mood, 315.

Substantive, 30, 500.

Substantives in *OKT*, 39.

Syncope, 29.

Syntax, 544.

#### T.

Tense, 524.

That, 316, Obs. 2, 521.

The—the, 269.

Then, 317, Obs. 7.

This, 70, 180.

Thou, 519.

Tonic Accent, 557.

Trade (to), 132.

Trot (to), 192.

#### U.

Use of letters, 547.

Used to be, 365, 398.

#### V.

Verb, 522.

Verbal Nouns, 369.

Verbs (Conjugation of), 527.

” Irregular, 439.

” Regular, 526.

” Irregular formation, 444.

” Preceded by a negative, 42.

Very much, 103.

#### W.

Wash (to), 181.

Whatever, whenever, wherever,  
whichever, whoever, 338.

Which, 146, Obs. 3, 521.

Who, which, 65, Obs. 1.

Why, 103.

Will, 385.

Words Governing the Genitive, 481.

” ” the Dative, 482.

” ” the Accusative, 483.

” ” the Instrumental, 483.

” ” the Prepositional, 484.

Would, 316, Obs. 5.

#### Y.

Yes, 33.

Your, 33.

Yearly, 380.

Years, 217.